

Organic Reactions

BOOKS BY ADAMS (R.), EDITOR

Organic Reactions

Volumes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10

BOOKS BY COPE (A. C.), EDITOR

Organic Reactions

Volumes 11, 12 and 13

Organic Reactions

VOLUME IX

EDITORIAL BOARD

ROGER ADAMS, *Editor-in-Chief*

A. H. BLATT

DAVID Y. CURTIN

ARTHUR C. COPE

FRANK C. MCGREW

CARL NIEMANN

ADVISORY BOARD

LOUIS F. FIESER

JOHN R. JOHNSON

HAROLD R. SNYDER

ASSOCIATE EDITORS

ELIAS J. COREY

HERBERT O. HOUSE

DELOS F. DETAR

JOHN C. SHEEHAN

K. E. HAMLIN

WILLIAM E. TRUCE

C. H. HASSALL

ARTHUR W. WESTON

H. L. HOLMES

C. V. WILSON

FORMER MEMBERS OF THE BOARD, NOW DECEASED

HOMER ADKINS

WERNER E. BACHMANN

JOHN WILEY & SONS, INC.

New York • London • Sydney

COPYRIGHT © 1957

BY

ROGER ADAMS

All Rights Reserved

*This book or any part thereof must not
be reproduced in any form without
the written permission of the publisher.*

SECOND PRINTING, JULY, 1964

/

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 42-20265

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

PREFACE TO THE SERIES

In the course of nearly every program of research in organic chemistry the investigator finds it necessary to use several of the better-known synthetic reactions. To discover the optimum conditions for the application of even the most familiar one to a compound not previously subjected to the reaction often requires an extensive search of the literature; even then a series of experiments may be necessary. When the results of the investigation are published, the synthesis, which may have required months of work, is usually described without comment. The background of knowledge and experience gained in the literature search and experimentation is thus lost to those who subsequently have occasion to apply the general method. The student of preparative organic chemistry faces similar difficulties. The textbooks and laboratory manuals furnish numerous examples of the application of various syntheses, but only rarely do they convey an accurate conception of the scope and usefulness of the processes.

For many years American organic chemists have discussed these problems. The plan of compiling critical discussions of the more important reactions thus was evolved. The volumes of *Organic Reactions* are collections of chapters each devoted to a single reaction, or a definite phase of a reaction, of wide applicability. The authors have had experience with the processes surveyed. The subjects are presented from the preparative viewpoint, and particular attention is given to limitations, interfering influences, effects of structure, and the selection of experimental techniques. Each chapter includes several detailed procedures illustrating the significant modifications of the method. Most of these procedures have been found satisfactory by the author or one of the editors, but unlike those in *Organic Syntheses* they have not been subjected to careful testing in two or more laboratories. When all known examples of the reaction are not mentioned in the text, tables are given to list compounds which have been prepared by or subjected to the reaction. Every effort has been made to include in the tables all such compounds and references; however, because of the very nature of the reactions discussed and their frequent use as one of the several steps of syntheses in which not all of the intermediates have been isolated, some instances may well have been missed. Nevertheless, the investigator will be able

to use the tables and their accompanying bibliographies in place of most or all of the literature search so often required.

Because of the systematic arrangement of the material in the chapters and the entries in the tables, users of the books will be able to find information desired by reference to the table of contents of the appropriate chapter. In the interest of economy the entries in the indices have been kept to a minimum, and, in particular, the compounds listed in the tables are not repeated in the indices.

The success of this publication, which will appear periodically, depends upon the cooperation of organic chemists and their willingness to devote time and effort to the preparation of the chapters. They have manifested their interest already by the almost unanimous acceptance of invitations to contribute to the work. The editors will welcome their continued interest and their suggestions for improvements in *Organic Reactions*.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
1. THE CLEAVAGE OF NON-ENOLIZABLE KETONES WITH SODIUM AMIDE— <i>K. E. Hamlin and Arthur W. Weston</i>	1
2. THE GATTERMANN SYNTHESIS OF ALDEHYDES— <i>William E. Truce</i>	37
3. THE BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF ALDEHYDES AND KETONES— <i>C. H. Hassall</i>	73
4. THE ALKYLATION OF ESTERS AND NITRILES— <i>Arthur C. Cope, H. L. Holmes, and Herbert O. House</i>	107
5. THE REACTION OF HALOGENS WITH SILVER SALTS OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS— <i>C. V. Wilson</i>	332
6. THE SYNTHESIS OF β -LACTAMS— <i>John C. Sheehan and Elias J. Corey</i> . . .	388
7. THE PSCHORR SYNTHESIS AND RELATED DIAZONIUM RING CLOSURE REACTIONS— <i>DeLos F. DeTar</i>	409
INDEX	463

SUBJECTS OF PREVIOUS VOLUMES

- Acetoacetic ester condensation and related reactions, I
 Acetylenes, V
 Acylation of ketones to β -diketones or β -keto aldehydes, VIII
 Acylins, IV
 Aliphatic fluorine compounds, II
 Alkylation of aromatic compounds by the Friedel-Crafts method, III
 Amination of heterocyclic bases by alkali amides, I
 Arndt-Eistert reaction, I
 Aromatic arsonic and arsinic acids, II
 Aromatic fluorine compounds, V
 Azlactones, III
 Benzoin, IV
 Biaryls, II
 Bischler-Napieralski synthesis of 3,4-dihydroisoquinolines, VI
 Bucherer reaction, I
 Cannizzaro reaction, II
 Carbon-carbon alkylation with amines and ammonium salts, VII
 Catalytic hydrogenation of esters to alcohols, VIII
 Chloromethylation of aromatic compounds, I
 Claisen rearrangement, II
 Clemmensen reduction, I
 Curtius reaction, III
 Cyanoethylation, V
 Cyclic ketones by intramolecular acylation, II
 Darzens glycidic ester condensation, V
 Diels-Alder reaction with cyclenones, V
 Diels-Alder reaction: ethylenic and acetylenic dienophiles, IV
 Diels-Alder reaction with maleic anhydride, IV
 Direct sulfonation of aromatic hydrocarbons and their halogen derivatives, III
 Elbs reaction, I
 Epoxidation of ethylenic compounds with organic peracids, VII
 Friedel-Crafts reaction with aliphatic dibasic acid anhydrides, V
 Fries reaction, I
 Gattermann-Koch reaction, V
 Halogen-metal interconversion reaction with organolithium compounds, VI
 Hoesch synthesis, V
 Hofmann reaction, III
 Hydrogenolysis of benzyl groups, VII
 Hydroxylation of ethylenic compounds with organic peracids, VII
 Jacobsen reaction, I
 β -Lactones, VIII
 Leuckart reaction, V
 Mannich reaction, I
 Metalation with organolithium compounds, VIII
 Nitrosation of aliphatic carbon atoms, VII
 Oppenauer oxidation, VI
 Perlmann reaction, VII
 Periodic acid oxidation, II
 Perkin reaction and related reactions, I
 Pictet-Spengler synthesis of tetrahydroisoquinolines, VI
 Pomeranz-Fritsch synthesis of isoquinolines, VI
 Preparation of amines by reductive alkylation, IV
 Preparation of benzoquinones by oxidation, IV
 Preparation of ketenes and ketene dimers, III
 Preparation of phosphonic and phosphinic acids, VI
 Preparation of thiazoles, VI
 Preparation of thiophenes and tetrahydrothiophenes, VI
 Reaction of diazomethane and its derivatives with aldehydes and ketones, VIII
 Reduction with aluminium alkoxides, II
 Reduction with lithium aluminum hydride, VI
 Reformatsky reaction, I
 Replacement of aromatic primary amino group by hydrogen, II
 Resolution of alcohols, II
 Rosenmund reduction, IV
 Schmidt reaction, III
 Selenium dioxide oxidation, V
 Skraup synthesis of quinolines, VII
 Sommelet reaction, VIII
 Stobbe condensation, VI
 Substitution and addition reactions of thiocyanogen, III
 Synthesis of aldehydes from carboxylic acids, VIII
 Synthesis of ketones from acid chlorides and organometallic compounds of magnesium, zinc, and cadmium, VIII
 Von Braun cyanogen bromide reaction, VII
 Willgerodt reaction, III
 Wolff-Kishner reduction, IV

CHAPTER 1

THE CLEAVAGE OF NON-ENOLIZABLE KETONES WITH SODIUM AMIDE. THE HALLER-BAUER REACTION

K. E. HAMLIN AND ARTHUR W. WESTON

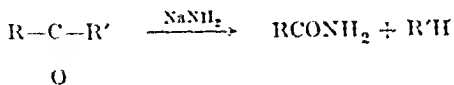
Abbott Laboratories

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	2
MECHANISM	2
SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS	4
The Cleavage of Aliphatic or Alicyclic Phenyl Ketones	5
The Cleavage of Aliphatic Ketones	8
The Cleavage of Diaryl Ketones	9
The Cleavage of Alicyclic Ketones	11
The Action of Sodium Amide upon Miscellaneous Carbonyl Compounds . .	11
RELATED SYNTHETIC PROCESSES	12
Synthesis of Tertiary Carboxylic Acids	12
Synthesis of Tertiary Carbinamines	13
EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS	14
EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES	14
$\alpha,\alpha,\alpha',\alpha'$ -Tetramethylsebacic Acid from Isobutyrophenone	14
1-Methylcyclohexylamine Hydrochloride from Cyclohexyl Phenyl Ketone .	15
α,α -Dimethyl- β -phenylpropionamide from Isobutyrophenone	16
α - <i>n</i> -Butyl- α -methylcaprylic Acid from <i>n</i> -Heptyl Phenyl Ketone	16
TABULAR SURVEY OF CLEAVAGES OF NON-ENOLIZABLE KETONES WITH SODIUM AMIDE	17
Table I. A. Cleavage of Alkyl, Aralkyl, or Cycloalkyl Phenyl Ketones . .	18
B. Cleavage of Alicyclic Phenyl Ketones	26
Table II. Cleavage of Aliphatic Ketones	29
Table III. Cleavage of Aromatic Ketones	30
Table IV. Cleavage of Alicyclic Ketones	32
Table V. Sodium Amide and Miscellaneous Carbonyl Compounds	35

INTRODUCTION

In this chapter the Haller-Bauer reaction is defined as the action of sodium amide on a non-enolizable ketone causing cleavage of a carbon to carbon bond and resulting in the formation of an amide and a hydrocarbon.



Textbook definitions of the Haller-Bauer reaction have limited it to the alkylation of ketones in which sodium amide acts as a condensing agent^{1,2} or have considered it a combination of the alkylation and cleavage reactions.³

The cleavage of ketones by sodium amide was discovered in 1906 by Semmler⁴ in connection with his investigations of the structure of fenchone. Suspecting that fenchone contained no α -hydrogen atoms, Semmler chose sodium amide as a reagent that might effect a cleavage without causing rearrangement of the molecule. As a result, the sodio derivative of fencholic acid amide was obtained. He did not explore the potentialities of the reaction. This was done by Haller and Bauer,⁵ who in 1908 reported the isolation of benzamide after the treatment of benzophenone with sodium amide in boiling benzene or toluene and who followed this observation with an extended study of the reaction.

A modification of the Haller-Bauer reaction involving the use of a fused eutectic mixture of sodium and potassium amides⁶ has been applied to certain alicyclic and bicyclic terpenoid ketones as well as to some amides. The carbonyl group was completely eliminated from these compounds. For example, fenchone was cleaved to 1-methyl-3-isopropylcyclopentane, and 1-benzoylpiperidine gave rise to benzene and piperidine.

MECHANISM

On the basis of their early experiments, Haller and Bauer proposed a mechanism for the reaction of sodium amide with benzophenone which involved a preliminary addition to the ketone.⁵ The "sodium salt of

¹ Cohen, *Organic Chemistry for Advanced Students*, I, 4th ed., p. 217, Longmans, Green and Co., New York, 1924.

² Degering, *An Outline of Organic Chemistry*, 4th ed., p. 321, Barnes and Noble, 1941.

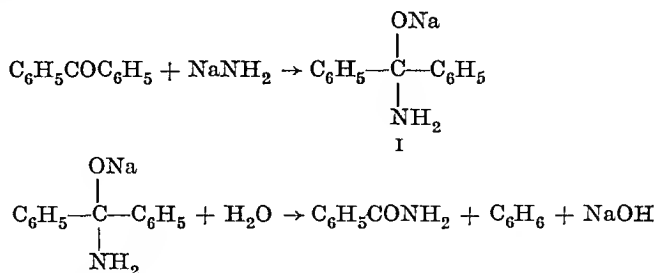
³ *The Merck Index*, 6th ed., p. 1055, Merck and Co., Rahway, N.J., 1952.

⁴ Semmler, *Ber.*, **39**, 2577 (1906).

⁵ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **147**, 824 (1908).

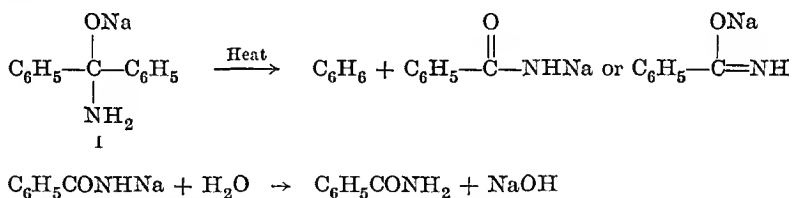
⁶ Freidlin, Balandin, and Lebedeva, *Bull. Acad. Sci. U.R.S.S., Classe sci. chim.*, **1941**, 167 [*C. A.*, **37**, 3749 (1943)].

diphenylaminocarbinol" (I) thus formed could be isolated as a crystalline



product. Upon treatment with water it gave rise to benzamide and benzene. In 1922 Haller published a review article and repeated his ideas on the mechanism of the reaction.⁷

Schönberg in 1924 and 1925 described his researches on the action of sodium amide on diaryl ketones.^{8,9} His observations with benzophenone were in agreement with those of Haller and Bauer; his interpretation of the reaction, however, differed from theirs as far as the decomposition of the adduct I was concerned. It was Schönberg's view that the addition product I undergoes thermal cleavage in boiling benzene or toluene to furnish benzene and the sodio derivative of benzamide,¹⁰ which can be isolated from the reaction mixture. Treatment with water hydrolyzes *this latter* sodio derivative to benzamide.



Further evidence to support this mechanism was provided by the reaction of *p*-phenylbenzophenone with sodium amide. When these materials were heated under refluxing conditions in dry toluene and the solid so formed was removed by filtration, biphenyl was isolated from the filtrate. As both the hydrocarbon and the sodio derivative of the amide were formed in the absence of water it was evident that water was not necessary for the formation of the hydrocarbon. Lea and Robinson¹¹ have carried out additional experiments on the action of sodium amide

⁷ Haller, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] **31**, 1117 (1922).

⁸ Schönberg, Abelsdorff, Kirchrath, Malchov, and Rosen, *Ann.*, **436**, 205 (1924).

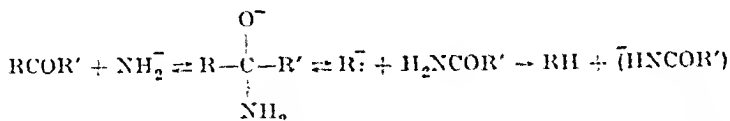
⁹ Schönberg, *Ber.*, **58**, 580 (1925).

¹⁰ Curtius, *Ber.*, **23**, 3038 (1890).

¹¹ Lea and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1926**, 2351.

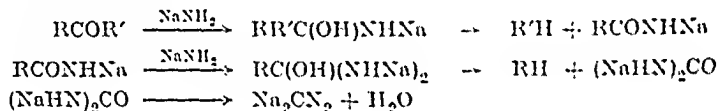
on unsymmetrical benzophenones. Their description of the reaction mechanism is in full agreement with that of Schönberg.

A modern interpretation of the reaction might be written as follows:



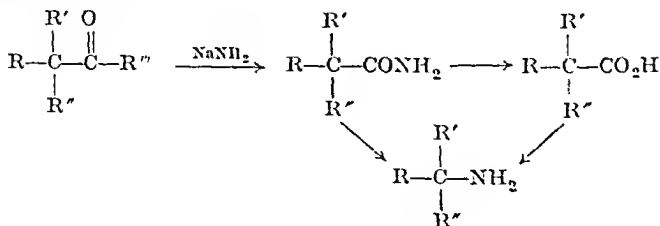
The direction of cleavage depends upon the relative electronegativities of R and R'. If R' in the ketone, RCOR', is more strongly electron repelling than R the primary product is R'CONH₂.

The mechanism suggested by Freidlin⁶ for the modification of the Haller-Bauer reaction in which a fused entectic mixture of sodium and potassium amides reacts with a ketone or an amide is given below. Cleavage occurs to eliminate the carbonyl group with the formation of metal cyanamides.



SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS

The Haller-Bauer reaction has been applied to many non-enolizable ketones¹² and with certain classes of these compounds has considerable synthetic utility. It is one of the few general methods for the synthesis of tertiary carboxamides, compounds which are useful as intermediates for tertiary carboxylic acids or tertiary carbinamines. By hydrolysis of the amides,¹³ many tertiary carboxylic acids have been made available, and an even less accessible class of compounds, the tertiary carbinamines, can be formed by application of the Hofmann, Schmidt, and Curtius reactions to the amides or acids.¹⁴



¹² A few ketones having an α -hydrogen atom have been cleaved by sodium amide during attempted alkylation. Some of these cleavages are considered on pp. 8 and 12; all are cited in Table I.

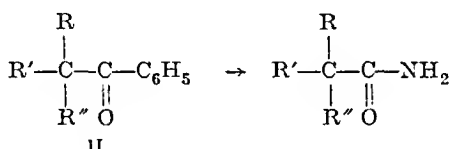
¹³ Sperber, Papa, and Schwenk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 3091 (1948).

¹⁴ *Organic Reactions*, Vol. III, Chapters 7, 8, and 9, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1946.

The Cleavage of Aliphatic or Alicyclic Phenyl Ketones (Table I)

The most important application of the Haller-Bauer reaction is the cleavage of aliphatic or alicyclic phenyl ketones. Broadly, the cleavage occurs in such a way as to produce the tertiary carboxamides. For example, α,α -dimethylpropionophenone when heated in benzene under refluxing conditions with sodium amide affords a nearly quantitative yield of pivalamide. Similarly, 1-methyleyclohexyl phenyl ketone under the same conditions readily forms 1-methyleyclohexanecarboxamide in 88% yield. Since the starting ketones in general are rather easily obtained, the reaction has found considerable application.

When two of the substituents (for example, R and R') of a trialkylacetophenone II are methyl, the third (R'') may be increased in size to C₁₈ without interfering with the normal direction of the reaction. On the



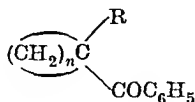
other hand, as R and R' increase in size and complexity, the yields of trialkylacetamides fall off rapidly and the amount of benzamide increases. This effect was studied in detail by restricting one alkyl group to methyl or ethyl and progressively increasing in size the other two.¹⁵ No difficulty was experienced in the preparation of variously branched amides containing up to ten carbon atoms. However, in II, where R, R', and R'' total eleven carbon atoms, certain irregularities became evident and more benzamide resulted. For example, α -methyl- α -*n*-butyl-*n*-hexamide and α -ethyl- α -*n*-propyl-*n*-hexamide were formed readily. On the other hand, α -methyl- α -ethyl-*n*-octamide was obtained in an impure state while α,α -diethylheptamide could not be isolated. With a total of twelve or more carbon atoms in the three substituent groups, the molecules exhibited even greater variation from the normal direction of cleavage. The investigators concluded that failure of the method might be expected with alkyl phenyl ketones of relatively low molecular weight where the three substituents are highly complex.

The results of these workers may be explained partly on the basis of steric hindrance: the more complex the branching about the carbonyl group, the less successful is the cleavage. Recovery of some starting ketone from the reaction mixture is possible with such compounds. However, the isolation of increasing amounts of benzamide indicates that some attack on the carbonyl group occurs.

¹⁵ Carter and Slater, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1946, 130.

The application of Newman's "Rule of Six"¹⁶ to account for the steric effects of branching about the carbonyl group is only partly satisfactory. The results are neither strikingly in agreement nor strikingly in disagreement with the rule.

The cleavage of alicyclic phenyl ketones by their reaction with sodium amide¹⁷⁻²¹ follows the direction reported for alkyl phenyl ketones. Good yields of the expected 1-alkyl alicyclic carboxamides were obtained with little evidence of benzamide where the alkyl substituent (R) was methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, isopropyl, or *n*-butyl.



Anomalous results were reported with 1-methylcyclopropyl phenyl ketone, which furnished benzamide and no 1-methylcyclopropanecarboxamide.¹⁷ On the other hand, replacement of methyl by benzyl changed the direction of cleavage and 1-benzylcyclopropanecarboxamide was obtained readily. This cleavage of 1-benzylcyclopropyl phenyl ketone in the expected manner was confirmed by the hydrolysis of the amide and identification of the 1-benzylcyclopropanecarboxylic acid.²⁰

Diketones of type III provide an excellent source of $\alpha, \alpha', \alpha', \alpha'$ -tetraalkyldiamides. The diketones, where R is methyl and *n* has been varied from 3 to 14, have been converted to diamides.²²⁻²⁴



The reaction also proceeds in the expected manner with diketones such as IV, synthesized by use of a dihalide containing a benzene nucleus. The corresponding *ortho* and *meta* derivatives were also prepared.²⁵

¹⁶ Newman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 4783 (1950).

¹⁷ Haller and Benoist, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] **17**, 25 (1921).

¹⁸ Wash, Shive, and Lochte, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 2975 (1941).

¹⁹ Hamlin and Freifelder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 369 (1953).

²⁰ Piehl and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 5023 (1953).

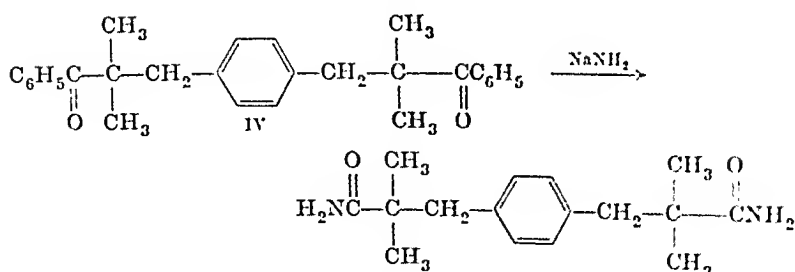
²¹ Hamlin and Biermacher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 6376 (1955).

²² Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **152**, 1638 (1911).

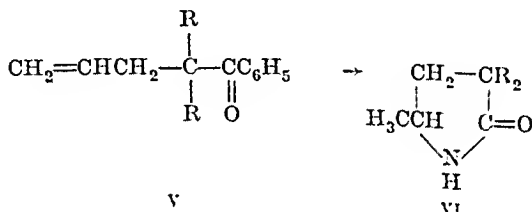
²³ Adams and Anderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 136 (1951).

²⁴ Leonard and Mader, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 5388 (1950).

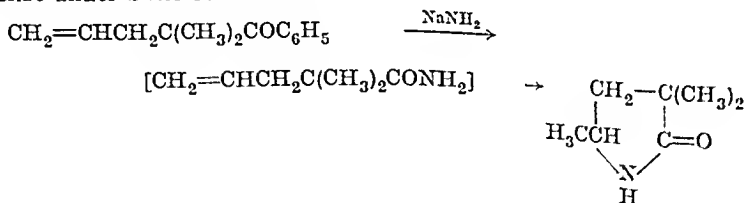
²⁵ Dumesnil, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] **8**, 70 (1917).



An interesting secondary reaction is encountered in a series of 1,1-dialkyl-3-butenyl phenyl ketones (V). These ketones on treatment with sodium amide yield unsaturated amides which cyclize to the corresponding pyrrolidones (VI). Brown and van Gulick²⁶ conclusively proved that for



3,3,5-trimethyl-2-pyrrolidone the reaction takes the course proposed by Haller and Bauer,²⁷ viz., the 2,2-dimethyl-4-pentenamide arising from the sodium amide cleavage of 1,1-dimethyl-3-butenyl phenyl ketone will cyclize under basic conditions.



Several 5-methyl-3,3-dialkyl-2-pyrrolidones have been prepared by this method, and the reaction is considered to be general.²⁸

Most aralkyl and heterocyclic-alkyl phenyl ketones on treatment with sodium amide give the expected substituted alkylacetamides (Table I). However, α,α -dimethyl- γ,δ -epoxybutyl phenyl ketone is not attacked.²⁹

The synthetic utility of the Haller-Bauer reaction is limited by the unavailability of the starting ketones. The simpler ketones are readily obtained by the alkylation of various acetophenones by conventional

²⁶ Brown and van Gulick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 1092 (1955).

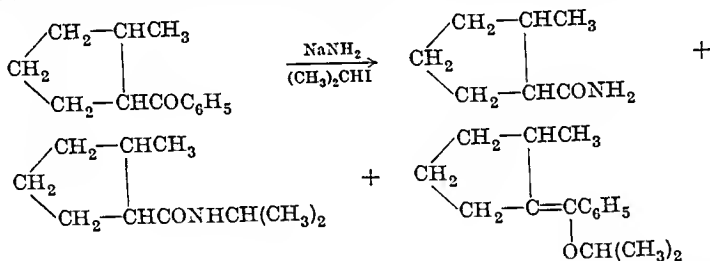
²⁷ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **158**, 1086 (1914).

²⁸ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **160**, 541 (1915).

²⁹ Ramart-Lucas and Haller, *Compt. rend.*, **158**, 1302 (1914).

methods. The introduction of the third group into ketones of high molecular weight is restricted by steric effects. Such alkylations become progressively more difficult as the size of the entering group becomes larger; this is a major drawback to the use of the method for synthesis of acids containing a quaternary carbon atom.³⁰ Thus, it is impossible to methylate ω,ω -di-*n*-decylacetophenone. This barrier to the synthesis of trialkylacetophenones in which two substituents are long chain can be obviated by introducing the small group first into a higher homolog of acetophenone and then replacing the tertiary hydrogen by a long-chain alkyl group.¹⁵

Attempts to introduce an alkyl group in the tertiary position of an alieyclic phenyl ketone sometimes gave anomalous results. Alkylation of 2-methylcyclopentyl phenyl ketone was usually normal, but if the ketone was allowed to react with sodium amide in boiling xylene and then treated with isopropyl iodide a mixture of 2-methylcyclopentanecarboxamide, *N*-isopropyl-2-methylcyclopentanecarboxamide, and the isopropyl ether of the enol form of the parent ketone resulted.^{18,19} Cleavage of this



ketone, containing an α -hydrogen atom, was occurring in place of alkylation. The cleavage of cyclohexyl phenyl ketone by sodium amide resulted in a 1% yield of cyclohexanecarboxamide.¹⁹ Similarly cyclopropyl phenyl ketone with sodium amide in boiling benzene gave a 42% yield of cyclopropanecarboxamide as well as a small amount (2%) of benzamide. These results could not be repeated and do not coincide with those previously reported that, with sodium amide in moist benzene, benzamide was the only product isolated.¹⁷

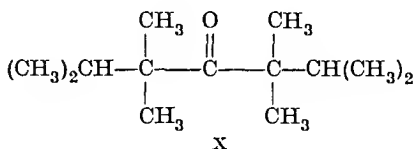
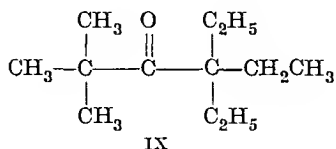
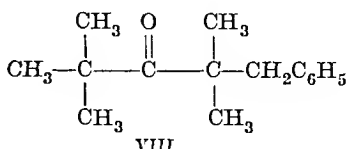
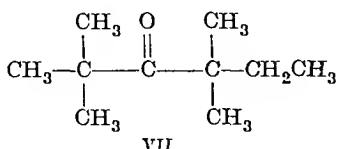
The Cleavage of Aliphatic Ketones (Table II)

Symmetrically substituted acetones react with sodium amide to form the predicted tertiary carboxamide and trialkylated methane.³¹ Thus hexamethylacetone gives an excellent yield of pivalamide by this method.

³⁰ Birch and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1942**, 488.

³¹ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **150**, 664 (1910).

On the other hand, a mixture of the four possible products (two amides and two hydrocarbons) is obtained from 2,2,4,4-tetramethyl-3-hexanone (VII).



Although substituted acetones may furnish a mixture of two possible amides and two hydrocarbons, one direction of cleavage may predominate. 2,2,4,4-Tetramethyl-5-phenyl-3-pentanone (VIII) cleaves exclusively to pivalamide and isobutylbenzene;³² 4,4-diethyl-2,2-dimethyl-3-hexanone (IX) when treated with sodium amide at the boiling point of xylene forms pivalamide and α,α,α -triethylacetamide in a 5-to-1 ratio.³¹

An additional limitation to the practical use of the reaction with aliphatic ketones is encountered when the substituents are highly branched. For instance, the ketone X is inert to the action of sodium amide under vigorous conditions.³² Since in such cases the starting ketone is recovered, the failure of the reaction is possibly attributable to steric hindrance about the carbonyl group.

The Cleavage of Diaryl Ketones (Table III)

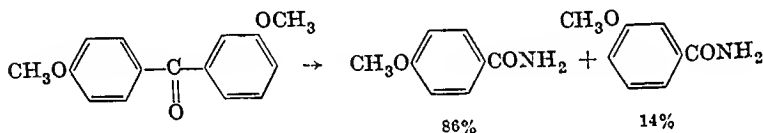
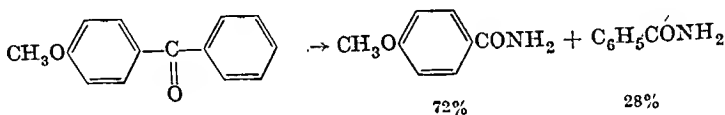
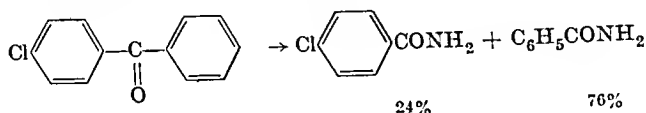
Diaryl ketones are readily attacked by sodium amide. If symmetrically substituted they can yield only one amide and one hydrocarbon. Unsymmetrical diaryl ketones in which the substituents cause one aromatic nucleus to be much more strongly electron donating than the other give predominantly one amide and one hydrocarbon.

From the large number of diaryl ketones falling between these two extremes, four possible products, two amides and two hydrocarbons, are formed in varying amounts. Only the first two types of diaryl ketones are useful for the preparation of amides.

Schönberg^{8,9} and Lea and Robinson¹¹ cleaved a variety of unsymmetrical diaryl ketones and determined the comparative yields of the various

³² Haller and Bauer, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] 1, 5 (1914).

benzamides or benzoic acids. They and, later, de Ceuster³³ drew the conclusion illustrated below that the presence of an electron-supplying group favors cleavage to produce the substituted benzamide. The same substituent in an *ortho* position results in almost complete cleavage to yield the unsubstituted benzamide; e.g., 2-methoxybenzophenone furnishes benzamide almost exclusively.



The effect of conditions upon the Haller-Bauer reaction may be illustrated by the action of sodium amide on α -naphthyl phenyl ketone.³⁴ On heating in benzene under refluxing conditions, only traces of benzamide were found and nearly all the original ketone was recovered. When the ketone and amide were heated under refluxing conditions in toluene for five hours, considerable benzamide was found along with ketone. When the ketone and sodium amide were heated with benzene in a sealed tube for twelve hours, the major product was benzamide accompanied by traces of naphthalene. In contrast, the isomeric β -naphthyl phenyl ketone on treatment with sodium amide in benzene cleaved readily to afford β -naphthamide as the main product along with small amounts of benzamide.^{9,34}

Examples of the action of sodium amide on cyclized aromatic ketones are few. Fluorenone has been shown to yield *o*-phenylbenzamide in the expected manner.^{35,36} However, anthraquinone was recovered unchanged after treatment with sodium amide.²⁹

³³ De Ceuster, *Natuurw. Tijdschr. Belg.*, **14**, No. 3-6, 188 (1932) [*C. A.*, **26**, 4323 (1932) *Chem. Zentr.*, 1932, II, 1296].

³⁴ Lucas, *Ann. chim. et phys.*, [8] **17**, 127 (1909).

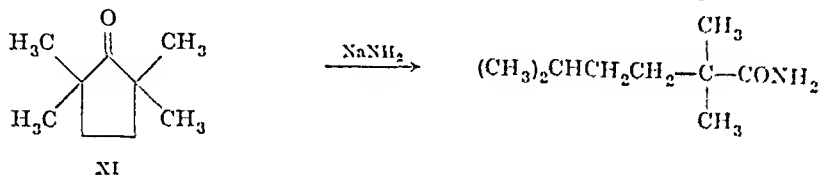
³⁵ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **147**, 824 (1908).

³⁶ Haller and Bauer, *Ann. chim. et phys.*, [8] **16**, 145 (1909).

The Cleavage of Alicyclic Ketones (Table IV)

Following the first use of the Haller-Bauer reaction on fenchone, sodium amide cleavage was used in elucidation of the structure of certain terpenes related to camphor.⁴ Several dialkylcamphors were cleaved by sodium amide to the corresponding dialkylcampholamides.^{27,28} Each ketone cleaved in one direction and gave good yields of 1,2,2-trimethyl-3-alkylcyclopentanecarboxamide.

Symmetrically substituted cyclic ketones react with opening of the ring and give rise to one product only, an aliphatic carboxamide. Thus, with 2,2,5,5-tetramethylcyclopentanone²⁹ (XI) cleavage proceeds as

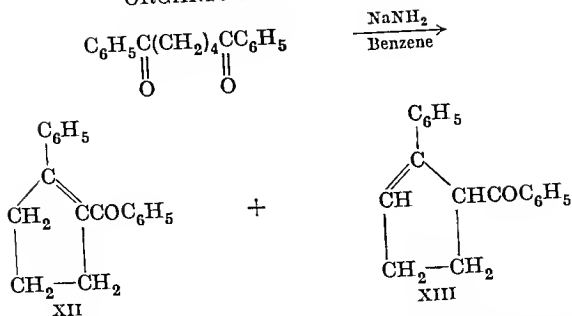


indicated. Unsymmetrically substituted cyclopentanones, however, give a mixture of two aliphatic carboxamides, thereby limiting the usefulness of the reaction. Cyclohexanones are reported⁷ to be very resistant to the action of sodium amide.

The Action of Sodium Amide upon Miscellaneous Carbonyl Compounds (Table V)

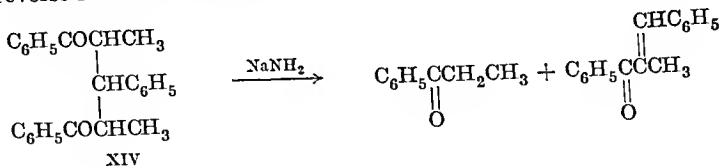
Other types of carbonyl compounds have been treated with sodium amide under similar conditions. Aromatic aldehydes undergo the Cannizzaro reaction to yield the corresponding alcohol and acid.^{40,41} Benzil and substituted benzils give a typical benzilic acid rearrangement.^{41,42} An interesting exception is the reaction of acenaphthadione, which cleaves to oxamide and naphthalene. α -Phenylbenzoin reacts with sodium amide; both the expected products, benzilamide and benzamide, are formed, although the latter predominates.⁸

ORGANIC REACTIONS



reacts in the following manner.⁴³ The mixture of isomers was separated and each isomer was treated with sodium amide. The lower-melting isomer undergoes the Haller-Bauer reaction and hence was assigned structure XII.^{43,44} The higher-melting isomer that has an α -hydrogen does not undergo cleavage with sodium amide and hence could be designated by structure XIII or by an analogous structure in which the double bond is in another position in the ring. A parallel reaction sequence has been established for 1,7-diphenylheptane-1,7-dione.⁴⁵

2,4-Dimethyl-1,3,5-triphenylpentane-1,5-dione (XIV), which contains α -hydrogen atoms, was cleaved with sodium amide in what appears to be a reverse Michael reaction.⁴⁶



RELATED SYNTHETIC PROCESSES

Synthesis of Tertiary Carboxylic Acids. The principal alternative methods for synthesis of tertiary carboxylic acids (trisubstituted acetic acids) are briefly surveyed here. Most of the literature resulted from efforts to synthesize phthioic acid (ethyl-*n*-decyl-*n*-dodecylacetic acid) and similar structures.^{30,47,48}

The aliphatic nitriles may be alkylated to the corresponding trialkyl-acetonitriles,⁴⁹ which may be hydrolyzed first to the amides with 80% sulfuric acid and finally to the acids. Although the difficulty of hydrolysis

⁴³ Bauer and Haller, *Compt. rend.*, **156**, 1470 (1913).

⁴⁴ Bauer and Haller, *Compt. rend.*, **156**, 1684 (1913).

⁴⁵ Bauer, *Ann. chim. Paris*, **1**, 343 (1914).

⁴⁶ Bauer and Haller, *Compt. rend.*, **158**, 1680 (1914).

⁴⁷ Polgar and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1943**, 615.

⁴⁸ Hook and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1944**, 152.

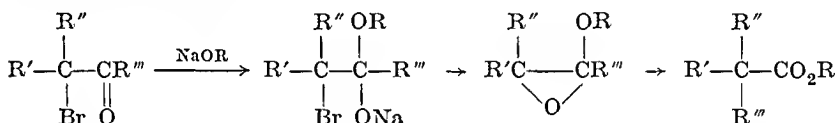
⁴⁹ Ziegler and Ohlinger, *Ann.*, **495**, 84 (1932).

of the nitriles is a serious limitation of the method, a series of trialkyl-acetonitriles in which the alkyl groups contain as many as seven carbon atoms has been successfully hydrolyzed.¹³

Trialkylacetic acids have also been prepared by the carbonation of *t*-alkylmagnesium chlorides.⁵⁰ This method suffers from many disadvantages, principally the difficulty of forming Grignard reagents from tertiary alkyl halides of high molecular weight.

α -Alkylation of esters can be effected by means of sodium triphenylmethyl and an alkyl halide.⁵¹ However, the separation of unreacted disubstituted acetic acids or esters necessitates a tedious purification.

To a limited degree, the Favorski rearrangement of α -halogenated ketones can be used in the synthesis of tertiary carboxylic acids.⁵²⁻⁵⁴ However, wherever the R groups become large or complex only metathesis occurs in the first step.



Synthesis of Tertiary Carbinamines. Synthesis of amines in which the amino group is attached to a tertiary carbon atom has been reported in only isolated instances, and in most of them the simplest member of the series, *t*-butylamine, was the material prepared.

A group of tertiary carbinamines has been synthesized by reaction of certain nitriles with a Grignard reagent.⁵⁵ In this fashion, alkoxyalkyl, aralkyl, or alkenyl cyanides on treatment with allylmagnesium bromide formed tertiary carbinamines in which two of the substituent groups were allyl. Hydrogenation yielded the corresponding propyl compounds.

Tertiary nitriles, prepared by alkylation of primary nitriles,⁴⁹ can be hydrolyzed to the corresponding amides. After conversion to the isocyanates by the Hofmann method, tertiary carbinamines can be obtained by hydrolysis.

The most important innovation in synthetic methods for the preparation of such amines is that developed by Ritter and co-workers,^{56,57} in which treatment of an alkene with a nitrile in the presence of concentrated sulfuric acid produces excellent yields of amides of *t*-carbinamines.

⁵⁰ Whitmore and Badertscher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 1559 (1933).

⁵¹ Hudson and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 2457 (1940).

⁵² Marker and Wagner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 216 (1942).

⁵³ Aston, Clarke, Burgess, and Greenburg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 300 (1942).

⁵⁴ Plattner, Heusser, and Boyce, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **31**, 603 (1948).

⁵⁵ Henze, Allen, and Leslie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 87 (1943).

⁵⁶ Ritter and Minieri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 4015 (1948).

⁵⁷ Ritter and Kalish, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 4018 (1948).

is continued for eight hours, and the mixture is washed with water and distilled. 2,2,9,9-Tetramethyl-1,10-diphenyldecane-1,10-dione distils at $200-265^{\circ}/4-8$ mm. (partial decomposition); yield 70.9 g. (75%).

A suspension of 29.25 g. (0.75 mole) of sodium amide in 600 ml. of anhydrous toluene is prepared in a 2-l. flask equipped with a stirrer, a dropping funnel, and a condenser carrying a drying tube. To the toluene-sodium amide suspension is added 70.9 g. (0.19 mole) of 2,2,9,9-tetramethyl-1,10-diphenyldecane-1,10-dione. The mixture is heated under refluxing conditions with vigorous stirring for four hours and then cooled. After the gradual addition of 500 ml. of water, the mixture is filtered as rapidly as possible. The solid diamide thus obtained is washed with water, and the wash water is added to the filtrate. After the toluene is separated from the filtrate, the aqueous solution is concentrated. Upon acidification, this aqueous fraction yields a small additional amount of diamide. The total yield of crude $\alpha,\alpha,\alpha',\alpha'$ -tetramethylsebacamide is 42 g. (87.5%). Recrystallization from ethanol results in a product melting at $210-213^{\circ}$.

A solution of 42 g. of crude diamide in 320 g. of concentrated sulfuric acid is cooled to $0-5^{\circ}$ and treated with 45 g. of sodium nitrite in the minimal amount of water. The mixture is next heated to 50° , and water is added gradually with stirring. The solid acid that separates is removed by filtration, washed with water, and dissolved in aqueous sodium carbonate. The solution is decolorized with carbon, and the acid is reprecipitated with hydrochloric acid; yield 29.4 g (70%). Purification is effected by recrystallization from ethyl acetate; pure $\alpha,\alpha,\alpha',\alpha'$ -tetramethylsebacic acid melts at $117-118^{\circ}$.

1-Methylcyclohexylamine Hydrochloride from Cyclohexyl Phenyl Ketone.¹⁹ A suspension of 10 g. (0.25 mole) of sodium amide in 200 ml. of anhydrous toluene is prepared in a 500-ml. flask equipped with a stirrer, a dropping funnel, and a condenser carrying a drying tube. To this is added dropwise 47 g. (0.25 mole) of cyclohexyl phenyl ketone. The mixture is stirred and boiled for one hour. It is stirred and cooled in an ice bath while 71 g. (0.5 mole) of methyl iodide is added in one portion. A sudden surge of heat after five minutes causes rapid boiling of the mixture. Stirring at room temperature is continued for twenty-four hours, after which the mixture is washed with water and distilled. The 1-methylcyclohexyl phenyl ketone distils at $134-140^{\circ}/5$ mm., n_D^{25} 1.5316; yield 42 g. (80%).

A suspension of 15.6 (0.4 mole) of sodium amide in 200 ml. of anhydrous toluene is prepared as outlined above. The toluene suspension is stirred while 42 g. (0.2 mole) of 1-methylcyclohexyl phenyl ketone is gradually added. Stirring is continued, and the mixture is heated under refluxing

conditions for six hours. After the reaction mixture is washed with water, the toluene layer is separated and distilled. 1-Methyleyclohexanecarboxamide distills at 151–154°/15 mm. and crystallizes on cooling. The amide is further purified by crystallization from pentane, m.p. 65°; yield 25 g. (88%).

A solution of 28.8 g. (0.18 mole) of bromine in 485 ml. of 20% aqueous potassium hydroxide is stirred and cooled in an ice bath while 25 g. (0.18 mole) of 1-methyleyclohexanecarboxamide is added as a fine powder. After the mixture has been stirred for an additional one-half hour, the resulting isocyanate is extracted with ether. The ethereal extract is added dropwise with stirring to 200 ml. of boiling concentrated hydrochloric acid. After the liberation of carbon dioxide ceases, the hydrochloric acid solution is concentrated in vacuum. The crystalline residue is recrystallized from a mixture of absolute ethanol and ether. A yield of 21 g. (80%) of 1-methyleyclohexylamine hydrochloride, m.p. 285° dec., is obtained.

α,α -Dimethyl- β -phenylpropionamide from Isobutyrophenone.⁶¹

A suspension of 15.6 g. (0.4 mole) of sodium amide in 200 ml. of anhydrous toluene is prepared in a 500-ml. flask equipped with a stirrer, a dropping funnel, and a condenser protected by a drying tube. A solution of 60 g. (0.4 mole) of isobutyrophenone and 68.5 g. (0.4 mole) of benzyl bromide in 100 ml. of anhydrous toluene is added dropwise with stirring. The reaction mixture is heated on a steam bath for forty-eight hours and then is washed with water. The toluene solution is distilled. 2,2-Dimethyl-1,3-diphenylpropan-1-one is obtained in a 75% yield (71.4 g.), distilling at 142–143°/3 mm.: n_D^{20} 1.5652.

The mixture is heated and stirred for an additional hour and then cooled to room temperature, after which 21 g. (0.075 mole) of methyl iodide is added dropwise. Stirring at room temperature is continued for fifteen hours, and the benzene solution is washed with water and dried.

The dried benzene solution thus obtained is added to 6 g. (0.075 mole) of a sodium amide suspension as outlined above. The resulting sodio derivative of α -methyl-*n*-heptyl phenyl ketone is heated in benzene under refluxing conditions, and 37 g. (0.075 mole) of *n*-butyl iodide is added dropwise. This mixture is heated and stirred for an additional four hours. It is cooled, washed with water, dried, and distilled. A yield of 11 g. (55%) of α -*n*-butyl- α -methyl-*n*-heptyl phenyl ketone, b.p. 175-183°/17 mm., is obtained.

This ketone (0.04 mole) is added to a suspension of 1.6 g. (0.04 mole) of sodium amide in anhydrous benzene. The suspension is stirred and boiled for four hours and is then washed with water and distilled. A yield of 9 g. (quantitative) of α -*n*-butyl- α -methylcaprylamide is distilled at 167-169°/18 mm.

Without further purification, the amide so obtained is dissolved in 75 g. of concentrated sulfuric acid, and the resulting solution is cooled in a freezing mixture while an excess of a cold, saturated solution of sodium nitrite is stirred in. The mixture is warmed to about 50°, diluted with water, and extracted with ether. The ethereal extract is in turn extracted with dilute sodium hydroxide solution, and the combined alkaline extracts are acidified. The α -*n*-butyl- α -methylcaprylic acid distills at 189-192°/18 mm.; yield 2.4 g. (28%).

TABLE I
A. CLEAVAGE OF ALKYL, ARALKYL, OR CYCLOALKYL PHENYL KETONES


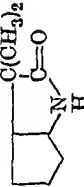

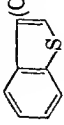
Ketone RCOC_6H_5 R	Product RCONH_2 Formula	Yield, %	References
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{NO}$	Quant.	62, 32, 63
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}$	Quant.	62, 32, 15
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CHCH}_3$ $\text{O}=\text{C}-\text{N}-\text{H}$	—	26, 27
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{NO}$	Quant.	62, 32, 15
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)-$	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}$	—	15, 32, 62
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{NO}$	—	32, 64
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)-$	C_2H_5 $\text{H}_3\text{CC}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CHCH}_3$ $\text{O}=\text{C}-\text{N}-\text{H}$	—	28
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	—	15, 32, 62
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)-$	$\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	—	15, 32, 62
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	56	15
 $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		—	86

TABLE I, Part A—Continued

Ketone RCOC_6H_5	R	Product RCONH_2 Formula	Yield, %	References
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	—	63
$\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	58*	15
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)_n\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	83*	15
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}^\dagger$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}^\dagger$	Quant.*	15
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	Good	69, 72
$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	—	32, 75
$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	—	32, 75
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}^\S$	—	32, 75
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}_2$	—	70, 25, 71, 72
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}_2$	ca. 40	70, 72, 32, 75
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	90, 83	70
$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	ca. 90	83
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	—	83
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	—	83
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_4$	78*	23, 24
		$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)_n\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}^\dagger$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}^\dagger$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}$	Quant.	15
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}$	—	68
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{17}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{—}$		$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}$	—	15, 65, 66

	$\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{15}\text{NOS}$	—	80
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	—	69
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	ca. 40	70, 72, 73, 74
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}\S$	—	25
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}^\dagger\S$	—	77
$n\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}_2$	76	78
$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	—	83
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}$	87*	23
		$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $(\text{CH}_2)_5$	—	15
		$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}^\dagger$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-n)-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}^\dagger$	97*	15
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}$	71	66
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2-$		$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}$	—	80
$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$		$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{17}\text{NOS}$	—	79
	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	—	25, 71
	$\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}\S$	—	66, 67
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)-$		$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}$	—	
$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$				

Note: References 62-96 are listed on p. 36.

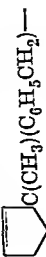
* This was the yield of crude product.

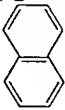
† Benzamide was also isolated.

‡ The principal product was benzamide.

§ The hydrocarbon RH corresponding to the R group in the ketone was also isolated.

TABLE I, Part A—Continued

Ketone RCOC_6H_5 R	Product RCONH_2 Formula	Yield, %	References
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $(\text{CH}_2)_6$	87	23
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n-$	$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{29}\text{NO}^\dagger$	48*	30, 32, 64, 65
$\alpha\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{29}\text{NO}$	—	82
$\beta\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	—	85
 $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	—	86
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2-$	$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$	—	76, 77
$p\text{-(CH}_3)_3\text{CC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}^\dagger$	—	70, 72
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}$	ca. 90	66, 67
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{29}\text{NO}$	59	23
	$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $(\text{CH}_2)_7$	39*	
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11})_n-$	$\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	—	15
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}^\dagger$	Low	15
$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}^\dagger$	—	65
$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}$	—	65
$\alpha\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}$	—	82
$\beta\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)-$	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	—	85

$\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{---}$ 	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	50	85
$\alpha\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{---}$	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	80	81, 82
$\text{o-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{---}$	$\text{o-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{---CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	—	25
$m\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{---}$	$\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $m\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{---CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	—	25
$p\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{---}$	$\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $p\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4\text{---CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	—	25
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}(\text{CH}_3)_2(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{---}$	$\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{---C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	55*	23
$m\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)\text{---}$	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{NO}$	Low	15

Note: References 62-96 are listed on p. 36.

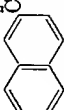



* This was the yield of crude product.

† Benzamide was also isolated.

‡ The principal product was benzamide.

§ The hydrocarbon R_H corresponding to the R group in the ketone was also isolated.

|| The product was isolated as the acid.

$C_6H_5COC(CH_3)_2(CH_2)_{10}C(CH_3)_2-$	23	86*
$n-C_{10}H_{21}C(C_2H_5)(C_4H_9-n)-$	15	—
$n-C_{14}H_{29}C(CH_3)_2-$	68	Quant.
$\begin{array}{c} CH_2C(CH_3)(C_2H_5)- \\ \\ C(CH_3)_3 \end{array}$	82	—
	87	Quant.
 $(CH_2)_{11}C(CH_3)_2-$	30, 68	—
$n-C_{16}H_{33}C(CH_3)_2-$	68	—
 $(CH_2)_{13}C(CH_3)_2-$	68	—
$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH=CH(CH_2)_8C(CH_3)_2-$	68	—
$C_6H_5COC(CH_3)_2(CH_2)_{14}C(CH_3)_2-$	24	—
$n-C_{18}H_{37}C(CH_3)_2-$	65	—
$n-C_{12}H_{25}C(C_2H_5)(C_{10}H_{21-n})-$	15	Low
$CH_2-CHCH_2C(CH_3)_2-$	29	—
		

Note: References 62-96 are listed on p. 36.

* This was the yield of crude product.

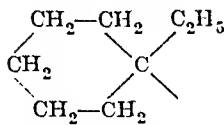
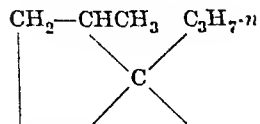
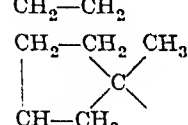
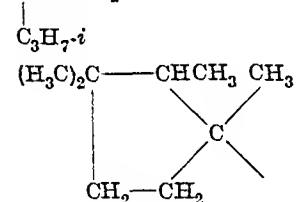
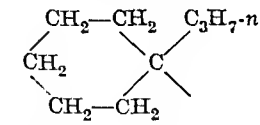
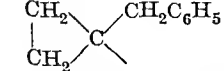
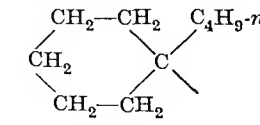
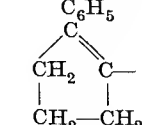
† Benzamide was also isolated.

‡ The principal product was benzamide.

§ The hydrocarbon RH corresponding to the R group in the ketone was also isolated.

|| The product was isolated as the acid.

TABLE I (Part B)—*Continued*

Ketone RCOC_6H_5	Product RCONH_2	Yield, %	Reference
R 	$\text{C}_9\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	65	19
	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	—	18
	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	—	89
	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	68	90
	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	65	19
	$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}$	56	20, 17
	$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}$	66	19
	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}^{*\dagger}$	—	44

Note: References 62–96 are listed on p. 36.

* Benzamide was also isolated.

† The hydrocarbon RH corresponding to the R group in the ketone was also isolated.

TABLE II

CLEAVAGE OF ALIPHATIC KETONES

Ketone RCOR'		Formula	Products	References
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$ $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_9\text{H}_{18}\text{O}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCONH}_2, (\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CH}$	91
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCONH}_2, \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CH}, \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	32, 91
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$ $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2, \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	32, 91
	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{24}\text{O}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCONH}_2, (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCONH}_2$ (ratio 5 : 1); $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CH}, (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CH}$	32, 91
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHC}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHC}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{26}\text{O}$	No reaction	32
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCONH}_2, \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	32
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}-$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2-$	$\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{26}\text{O}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCONH}_2, \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CONH}_2$ (trace) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	32
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2-$	$\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2, \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	32

Note: References 62-96 are listed on p. 36.

TABLE III
CLEAVAGE OF AROMATIC KETONES

Ketone	ArCOAr'	Ar'	Formula	Products	References
C_6H_5-	$Ar-$	Ar'	$C_{11}H_9OS$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $2-C_4H_3SCONH_2$ (ratio 2.5 : 1 as acids)	9
C_6H_5-	$3-BrC_6H_4-$	$3-BrC_6H_4-$	$C_{13}H_9BrO$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $3-BrC_6H_4CONH_2$ (ratio 5.5 : 1 as acids)	8
C_6H_5-	$4-BrC_6H_4-$	$4-BrC_6H_4-$	$C_{13}H_9BrO$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $4-BrC_6H_4CONH_2$ (ratio 2.5 : 1 as acids)	8
C_6H_5-	$3-ClC_6H_4-$	$3-ClC_6H_4-$	$C_{13}H_9ClO$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $3-ClC_6H_4CONH_2$ (ratio 11 : 1 as acids)	8
C_6H_5-	$4-ClC_6H_4-$	$4-ClC_6H_4-$	$C_{13}H_9ClO$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $4-ClC_6H_4CONH_2$ (ratio 3.2 : 1 as acids)	8
C_6H_5-	C_6H_5-	C_6H_5-	$C_{13}H_{10}O$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$	5, 8, 36
C_6H_5-	$4-ONC_6H_4-$	$4-ONC_6H_4-$	$C_{14}H_9NO$	No cleavage*	11
C_6H_5-	$4-CH_3C_6H_4-$	$4-CH_3C_6H_4-$	$C_{14}H_{12}O$	$4-CH_3C_6H_4CONH_2$, $C_6H_5CONH_2$ (slightly more of former)	5, 36
C_6H_5-	$4-CH_3SC_6H_4-$	$4-CH_3SC_6H_4-$	$C_{14}H_{12}OS$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $4-CH_3SC_6H_4CONH_2$	8, 9, 11
C_6H_5-	$2-CH_3OC_6H_4-$	$2-CH_3OC_6H_4-$	$C_{14}H_{12}O_2$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$ (poor yield)	11
C_6H_5-	$3-CH_3OC_6H_4-$	$3-CH_3OC_6H_4-$	$C_{14}H_{12}O_2$	$C_6H_5CONH_2$, $3-CH_3OC_6H_4CONH_2$ (ratio 3.6 : 1 as acids)	11
C_6H_5-	$4-CH_3OC_6H_4-$	$4-CH_3OC_6H_4-$	$C_{14}H_{12}O_2$	$4-CH_3OC_6H_4CONH_2$, $C_6H_5CONH_2$ (ratio 2.5 : 1 as acids)	11, 5, 8, 36
C_6H_5-	$2,4-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3-$	$2,4-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3-$	$C_{15}H_{14}O$	$2,4-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3CONH_2$, $C_6H_5CONH_2$ (mainly the latter)	34
C_6H_5-	$2,5-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3-$	$2,5-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3-$	$C_{15}H_{14}O$	$2,5-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3CONH_2$, $C_6H_5CONH_2$ (mainly the latter)†	34
C_6H_5-	$3,4-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3-$	$3,4-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3-$	$C_{15}H_{14}O$	$3,4-(CH_3)_2C_6H_3CONH_2$, $C_6H_5CONH_2$ (equal amounts)	34

4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ —	C ₁₅ H ₁₄ O ₃	4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ , 3-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ (ratio 6.3 : 1 as acids)	11
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₅ H ₁₄ O ₃	C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ (poor yield)	11
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₅ H ₁₄ O ₃	C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ (poor yield)	11
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₅ H ₁₄ O ₃	C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ , 3,4-(CH ₃ O) ₂ C ₆ H ₃ CONH ₂ (ratio 1.2 : 1 as acids)	11
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₅ H ₁₅ NO	C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ , 4-(CH ₃) ₂ NC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂	8
3-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ —	C ₁₆ H ₁₆ O ₄	3,4-(CH ₃ O) ₂ C ₆ H ₃ CONH ₂ 3-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂	11
4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ —	C ₁₆ H ₁₆ O ₄	3,4-(CH ₃ O) ₂ C ₆ H ₃ CONH ₂ 4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂	11
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₇ H ₁₂ O	C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ , C ₁₀ H ₈ (trace)	34
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₇ H ₁₂ O	2-C ₁₀ H ₇ CONH ₂ , C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ (ratio 6 : 1); (ratio 2 : 1 as acids)	9, 34
4-ClC ₆ H ₄ —	C ₁₉ H ₁₃ ClO	4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ , 4-ClC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ (ratio 2.3 : 1 as acids)	33
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₁₉ H ₁₄ O	C ₆ H ₅ CONH ₂ , 4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ (ratio 3 : 1 as acids)	9, 33
4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄ —	C ₂₀ H ₁₆ O	4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ , 4-CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ (ratio 1.08 : 1 as acids)	33
4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ —	C ₂₀ H ₁₆ O ₂	4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ , 4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ (ratio 1.45 : 1 as acids)	33
1-C ₁₀ H ₇ —	C ₂₃ H ₁₆ O	4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ , C ₁₀ H ₈ (10% of mixture)	33
4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ —	C ₂₃ H ₁₆ O	4-C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CONH ₂ , 2-C ₁₀ H ₇ CONH ₂ (ratio 1.24 : 1 as acids)	33
C ₆ H ₅ —	C ₂₆ H ₂₀ O	No reaction	8

Note: References 62-96 are listed on p. 36.

* In this experiment the cyano group was hydrolyzed and the product was *p*-C₆H₅COC₆H₄CO₂H

† Catalytic quantities of mercury were added in a second experiment; 2,5-dimethylbenzamide and benzamide were obtained in a ratio of 1 : 3.5.

TABLE IV
CLEAVAGE OF ALICYCLIC KETONES

Ketone	Products	Formula	References
	$i\text{-H}_7\text{C}_3$	$\text{C}_9\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}$	92
	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	$\text{C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	39
	$i\text{-H}_7\text{C}_3$	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}$	4
	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$ and $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}$	96
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CONH}_2$	$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{15}\text{NO}$	73, 74, 88

TABLE IV (Continued)

CLEAVAGE OF ALICYCLIC KETONES

Ketone	Products	Formula	Reference
	$C_3H_7CH(CH_3)CH_2CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)_2CONH_2$ and $(C_3H_7)_2CHCH(CH_3)CH_2C(CH_3)(C_3H_7)CONH_2$	$C_{16}H_{33}NO$	93
		$C_{19}H_{29}NO$	38
	$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)CH_2CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CH_2C_6H_5)CONH_2$ and $C_6H_5CH(CH_3)CH(CH_3)CH_2C(CH_3)(CH_2C_6H_5)CONH_2$	$C_{21}H_{29}NO$	93
		$C_{21}H_{31}NO$	38
	No reaction		92

REFERENCES

- ⁶² Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **148**, 127 (1909).
- ⁶³ Grunfeld, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [16] **20**, 301 (1933).
- ⁶⁴ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **149**, 5 (1909).
- ⁶⁵ Mentzer, Bau-Hol, and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **10**, 141 (1943).
- ⁶⁶ Bau-Hol and Cagniant, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **65**, 245 (1946).
- ⁶⁷ Laboratoire Français de chimiothérapie, Brit. pat. 617,892 (1946) [*C. A.*, **43**, 7637 (1949)].
- ⁶⁸ Bau-Hol and Cagniant, *Z. physiol. Chem.*, **270**, 76 (1953).
- ⁶⁹ Rannart and Hoch, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **6**, 838 (1938).
- ⁷⁰ Mentzer, Bau-Hol, and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **0**, 813 (1942).
- ⁷¹ Haller and Dumesnil, *Compt. rend.*, **154**, 111 (1911).
- ⁷² Laboratoire Français de chimiothérapie, Brit. pat. 613,111 [*C. A.*, **43**, 5890 (1949)].
- ⁷³ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **150**, 1472 (1910).
- ⁷⁴ Haller and Bauer, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] **10**, 340 (1921).
- ⁷⁵ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **153**, 21 (1911).
- ⁷⁶ Rannart, Albescu, and Haller, *Compt. rend.*, **174**, 1289 (1922).
- ⁷⁷ Albescu, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] **10**, 216 (1922).
- ⁷⁸ Bau-Hol and Cagniant, *Compt. rend.*, **219**, 455 (1944).
- ⁷⁹ Cagniant, *Compt. rend.*, **220**, 675 (1945).
- ⁸⁰ Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1949**, 382 (5-6).
- ⁸¹ Laboratoire Français de chimiothérapie, Swiss pat. 238,708 (1945).
- ⁸² Cagniant, Mentzer, and Bau-Hol, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **10**, 146 (1943).
- ⁸³ Mentzer and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **15**, 586 (1948).
- ⁸⁴ Mentzer, Bau-Hol, and Cagniant, Swiss pat. 237,879 (1945).
- ⁸⁵ Cagniant and Bau-Hol, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **10**, 349 (1943).
- ⁸⁶ Bau-Hol and Cagniant, *Compt. rend.*, **217**, 26 (1943).
- ⁸⁷ Bau-Hol and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **0**, 356 (1942).
- ⁸⁸ Goldstein and Baylis, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1940**, 1946.
- ⁸⁹ Rouvenot and Levensols, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] **0**, 968 (1910).
- ⁹⁰ Blay, Horcezy, and Lechte, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 2744 (1940).
- ⁹¹ Haller and Bauer, *Compt. rend.*, **150**, 664 (1910).
- ⁹² Harrold and Kagan, *J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.*, **10**, 886 (1946) [*C. A.*, **41**, 2019 (1947)].
- ⁹³ Haller and Cornibert, *Compt. rend.*, **158**, 1739 (1914).
- ⁹⁴ Haller and Rannart-Lucas, *Compt. rend.*, **173**, 682 (1921).
- ⁹⁵ Haller and Bauer, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] **0**, 117 (1917).
- ⁹⁶ Haller and Cornibert, *Compt. rend.*, **158**, 1610 (1914).

CHAPTER 2

THE GATTERMANN SYNTHESIS OF ALDEHYDES

WILLIAM E. TRUCE

Purdue University

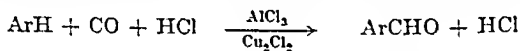
CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	38
MECHANISM	39
SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS	40
Ethers of Monohydric Phenols	40
Monohydric Phenols	41
Polyhydric Phenols	42
Monoalkyl Ethers of Dihydric Phenols	46
Polyalkoxy Derivatives of Benzene	46
Molecules with Two Non-Fused Aromatic Nuclei	46
Aromatic Hydrocarbons	47
Aromatic Amines	49
Pyrroles and Indoles	49
Furans and Benzofurans	51
Thiophenes and Thiazoles	52
Enols	52
ALTERNATIVE METHODS FOR DIRECT INTRODUCTION OF AN ALDEHYDE GROUP	52
EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS	53
Catalysts	53
Solvents	54
Hydrogen Cyanide	54
EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES	54
Mesitaldehyde	54
4-Methoxy-3-methylbenzaldehyde	54
4-Hydroxy-2,6-dimethylbenzaldehyde	55
2-Hydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde	55
2,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde	55
2,4-Dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde	56
p-Anisaldehyde	56
p-Tolualdehyde	57
3,5-Dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	57

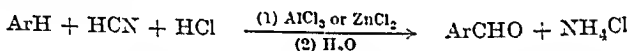
	PAGE
TABULAR SURVEY OF ALDEHYDES PREPARED BY THE GATTERMANN REACTION	57
Table I. Aldehydes Prepared from Aromatic Hydrocarbons	59
Table II. Aldehydes Prepared from Phenols and Their Ethers	61
Table III. Aldehydes Prepared from Naphthols and Their Ethers	69
Table IV. Aldehydes Prepared from Heterocyclic Compounds	70
Table V. Compounds That Did Not Yield Aldehydes.	72

INTRODUCTION

Gattermann developed two methods for introducing the aldehyde group into aromatic compounds. The first of these, known as the Gattermann-Koch reaction,¹ uses a mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride in the presence of a mixture of anhydrous aluminum chloride and cuprous chloride. It is not adaptable to the preparation of aldehydes



from phenols or phenolic ethers, however. The second method employs a mixture of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride with or without a catalyst, and permits the introduction of an aldehyde group into phenols, naphthols, and their ethers, and, under special conditions, into aromatic hydrocarbons and related compounds.² This chapter is concerned with the second method.



Aluminum chloride must be used as a catalyst with certain phenols and phenolic ethers;³ with others, zinc chloride may replace aluminum chloride.⁴ A modification of this method, which was described by Adams and his co-workers,^{5,6} employs zinc cyanide as both a convenient source of anhydrous hydrogen cyanide and as a catalyst. When hydrogen chloride is introduced into the reaction mixture, hydrogen cyanide and zinc chloride are formed *in situ*. In those reactions that require anhydrous aluminum chloride as a catalyst, it may be introduced with the zinc cyanide.⁶ Polyhydric phenols such as resorcinol and phloroglucinol in which the hydroxyl groups are *meta* to each other do not require a catalyst.³

More vigorous conditions are required to introduce the aldehyde group into aromatic hydrocarbons; e.g., the temperature must be raised.^{7,8}

¹ Crounse, *Organic Reactions*, 5, 290, John Wiley & Sons, 1949.

² Gattermann, *Ber.*, 31, 1149 (1898).

³ Gattermann, *Ann.*, 357, 313 (1907).

⁴ Gattermann and von Horlacher, *Ber.*, 32, 284 (1899).

⁵ Adams and Levine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 45, 2373 (1923).

⁶ Adams and Montgomery, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 46, 1518 (1924).

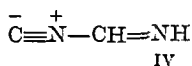
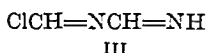
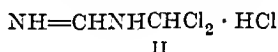
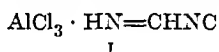
⁷ Hinkel, Ayling, and Beynon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1936, 339.

⁸ Hinkel, Ayling, and Morgan, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1932, 2793.

The choice of solvent and the proportion of aluminum chloride and hydrogen cyanide relative to the amount of hydrocarbon present affect the yields obtained. Zinc cyanide or sodium cyanide may be used in place of hydrogen cyanide.^{8,9}

MECHANISM

The mechanism of the reaction appears to be complex and has not been fully elucidated. Hinkel and his co-workers have presented evidence indicating that the mechanism may vary with the nature of the compound into which the aldehyde group is being introduced and with the conditions of reaction.^{8,10-14} A study has been made of the products of the reaction of hydrogen cyanide, hydrogen chloride, and aluminum chloride with each other in the absence of an aromatic nucleus in order to find one or more species which might be serving as the agent of aromatic substitution. Thus, hydrogen cyanide reacts with aluminum chloride to give a complex with the structure I,¹³ and with hydrogen chloride to give the "sesquichloride" II.^{15,16} In turn, II gives chloromethyleneformamidine (III) when heated to 100°,¹² and iminoformylcarbamide (IV) when heated with quinoline.¹⁷ Aluminum chloride complexes of these latter substances



were also prepared.^{10,12,13} Since modern spectral methods were unavailable at the time this work was carried out, and in view of the experimental difficulties involved in characterizing such compounds, further investigation is desirable before the structures assigned can be considered as definitely established.

Although one or more of the substances mentioned or ions derived from them may serve as intermediates in the Gattermann reaction, it should be noted that yields of aldehydes in excess of 50% based on the hydrogen cyanide employed are often obtained. It follows then that, if an intermediate such as I, II, III, or IV is effective as the aromatic substituting

⁹ Niedzielski and Nord, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 1462 (1941).

¹⁰ Hinkel, Ayling, and Beynon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1935, 674.

¹¹ Hinkel, Ayling, and Beynon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1936, 184.

¹² Hinkel and Dunn, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1930, 1834.

¹³ Hinkel and Dunn, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1931, 3343.

¹⁴ Hinkel and Watkins, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1944, 647.

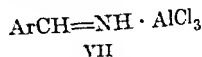
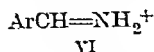
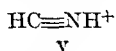
¹⁵ Dains, *Ber.*, **35**, 2496 (1902).

¹⁶ Gattermann and Schnitzspahn, *Ber.*, **31**, 1770 (1898).

¹⁷ Neff, *Ann.*, **287**, 337 (1895).

reagent in these reactions, it must be able to utilize both its carbon atoms for the formation of aldehyde.

In any event the reaction apparently proceeds by the formation of the conjugate acid of hydrogen cyanide (V) or of one of a number of other possible ions, which, with the aid of aluminum chloride, can serve as a



substituting agent in a reaction which is presumably analogous to Friedel-Crafts acylation. Certain reactions, however, proceed without the aid of aluminum chloride or other catalyst. Apparently the product from the Gattermann reaction is the conjugate acid VI or aluminum chloride complex VII of the aldimine or a more complex derivative of it. Generally the nitrogen-containing substance is not isolated but is hydrolyzed directly to the aldehyde.

A detailed discussion of the mechanisms must await a thorough study of the kinetics of the reactions.

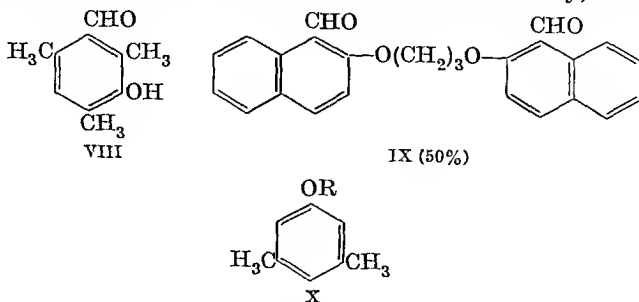
SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS

Ethers of Monohydric Phenols

A methylene formamidine adduct is formed by treating a mixture of a phenol ether, anhydrous aluminum chloride, and anhydrous hydrogen cyanide with anhydrous hydrogen chloride at approximately 40°.² This adduct is readily hydrolyzed to the corresponding aldehyde. The following list illustrates those phenol ethers into which the aldehyde group has been introduced in yields of 80 to 100%:²,³,⁸ anisole, phenetole, *o*- and *m*-chloroanisole, *m*-chlorophenetole, the methyl and ethyl ethers of *o*- and *m*-cresol, and the methyl ether of 1-naphthol. The aldehyde group enters the position *para* to the ether linkage unless the *para* position is occupied, when it enters the position *ortho* to the alkoxy group. For example, *p*-cresyl methyl ether yields 2-methoxy-5-methylbenzaldehyde (80%).²,³ However, the preference of *para* substitution to *ortho* or occasional *meta* substitution is very strong both in the reactions with phenols and in the reactions with phenol ethers. The introduction of an aldehyde group into 2,4,6-trimethylanisole results in the formation of 3-hydroxy-2,4,6-trimethylbenzaldehyde (VIII) in only 5–10% yield along with small amounts of an unidentified hydroxydimethylbenzaldehyde.¹⁸ Demethylation of the ether takes place concomitantly with the introduction of the aldehyde group. Other examples of demethylation of methyl ethers are given in the tables.

¹⁸ von Auwers and Mauss, *Ber.*, 61, 1495 (1928).

With certain activated nuclei, hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride may be used without a catalyst as in the preparation of the dialdehyde IX from the trimethylene ether of β -naphthol.³ Occasionally, zinc chloride



may be used to replace aluminum chloride advantageously, for example, with the methyl and ethyl ethers of 3,5-dimethylphenol (X).³ However, with few exceptions, aldehydes of monohydric phenol ethers can be prepared only with the use of aluminum chloride as a catalyst.

Attempts have been made to avoid the direct use of anhydrous hydrogen cyanide because of the hazard involved therein. Adams and his co-workers supplied a method whereby the phenol ether is treated in dry benzene with 2 equivalents of zinc cyanide.^{5,6} After dry hydrogen chloride is passed through the solution to its saturation point, 1½ equivalents of anhydrous aluminum chloride are added and dry hydrogen chloride is again introduced at a temperature of approximately 40–45°. By the above procedure, excellent yields of anisaldehyde, 2-methoxy-5-methylbenzaldehyde, and 2-methoxy-1-naphthaldehyde have been reported; diphenyl ether gave *p*-phenoxybenzaldehyde in 50% yield.

Replacement of zinc cyanide by sodium or potassium cyanide or replacement of benzene by other solvents generally reduces the yields of aldehydes.^{6,9} Zirconium cyanide in the presence of zirconium chloride in dry benzene gave only a poor yield of anisaldehyde from anisole under the conditions used.^{18a}

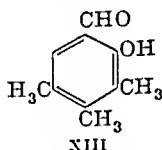
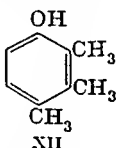
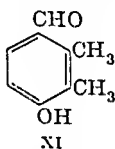
Monohydric Phenols

The procedure just described for introducing an aldehyde group into a phenol ether must usually be modified when introducing an aldehyde group into a monohydric phenol.³ The phenol is treated with hydrogen cyanide in benzene, and the mixture is cooled with a salt-ice bath. Powdered aluminum chloride is slowly added, and the temperature is brought to 40° while anhydrous hydrogen chloride is introduced. The yields appear to vary with the structure of the phenol:^{3,19} phenol (30%),

^{18a} Krishnamurti, *J. Madras Univ.*, (1928) [*C. A.*, 23, 2164 (1929)].

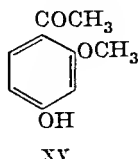
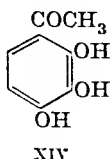
¹⁹ Gattermann and Berchemann, *Ber.*, 31, 1765 (1898).

o-cresol (35–40%), *m*-cresol (45–50%), 2,3-dimethylphenol (60%), 2,5-dimethylphenol (80%), 3,5-dimethylphenol (quantitative), carvacrol (30%), *m*-chlorophenol (50%), *m*-bromophenol (10%), *p*-cresol (5%). Only one aldehyde group is introduced, and it always enters *para* to the hydroxyl group if that position is unoccupied. If the *para* position is blocked, the reaction may not proceed at all or it may lead in poor yield to a product in which the aldehyde group is *ortho* to the hydroxyl group. 2-Naphthol is an exception in that an excellent yield of 2-hydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde is obtained.³ 2,3-Dimethylphenol yields 4-hydroxy-2,3-dimethylbenzaldehyde (XI) in 60% yield with only a trace of the compound in which the aldehyde group has entered *ortho* to the hydroxyl group.^{3,18} 2,3,4-Trimethylphenol (XII), however, also yields 4-hydroxy-2,3-dimethylbenzaldehyde (XI) as the chief product with only a trace of 2-hydroxy-3,4,5-trimethylbenzaldehyde (XIII), showing that the driving force towards *para* substitution is so strong that replacement of an alkyl group by an aldehyde group is preferred to *ortho* substitution. Several other examples of ring dealkylation are given in the tables.



Zinc chloride or the Adams modification may be substituted for aluminum chloride in the reactions with monohydric 2-naphthols that are unsubstituted in the 1-position and with 1-naphthols that are unsubstituted in the 4-position; the products containing the aldehyde group in the 1- and 4-position, respectively, are formed in almost quantitative yields.^{3,4} In general, however, monohydric phenols fail to react unless aluminum chloride is added as a catalyst.⁶ Using the Adams modification with aluminum chloride, the following phenolic aldehydes were prepared: 4-hydroxy-3-methylbenzaldehyde (38%),⁶ 4-hydroxy-5-isopropyl-2-methylbenzaldehyde (quantitative),^{6,20,21} *p*-carvacrolaldehyde (good),^{20,21} and 4-hydroxy-2-methylbenzaldehyde (30%).²²

This explanation is supported by the fact that neither gallacetophenone (XIV) nor isopaeonol (XV) yields a γ -substitution product when treated with zinc cyanide, hydrogen chloride, and aluminum chloride.^{32,35} When



γ substitution does occur yields are frequently excellent, e.g., 3-acetyl-2-hydroxy-4,6-dimethoxybenzaldehyde (84%),²⁸ 3,5-diacetbutoxy-2,4,6-trihydroxybenzaldehyde (85%),²⁸ 2,6-dihydroxy-3-propionylbenzaldehyde (64%),³³ 3-carbomethoxy-2,6-dihydroxybenzaldehyde (65%),²⁹ 3-carbalkoxy-2,6-dihydroxy-4-methylbenzaldehydes (quantitative).³⁴

The Adams modification using zinc cyanide and hydrogen chloride in the absence of aluminum chloride has also been successful in the preparation of aldehydes of polyhydric phenols having no nuclear deactivating substituents.^{5,36-40} Representative compounds prepared by this procedure follow: β -resoreylaldehyde (95%),⁵ 2,4-dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde (85%),⁵ 3-ethyl-2,4-dihydroxybenzaldehyde (74-80%),³⁷ and 2,4-dihydroxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde (93%).³⁷ The formation of dialdehydes in low yields has been observed with phloroglucinol and its alkyl-substituted derivatives;³⁸ phloroglucinol-3,5-dicarboxaldehyde is isolated from phloroglucinol in 1.5% yield. The yield of dialdehyde is increased to 6.6% with methylphloroglucinol and to 24% with ethylphloroglucinol.

Zinc chloride has been successfully substituted for aluminum chloride in a number of instances.^{3,23,41,42} Its use with dihydric naphthols has been shown to result in the entrance of the aldehyde group into a free 1- or 4-position in the molecule in preference to a free 2-position.²³ Thus, 1,8-dihydroxynaphthalene when treated with hydrogen cyanide, hydrogen chloride, and zinc chloride gives 4,5-dihydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde (24%) with only a very small amount of 1,8-dihydroxy-2-naphthaldehyde (0.8%). On the other hand, substitution in the 2-position is apparently favored

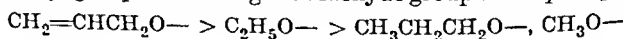
Monoalkyl Ethers of Dihydric Phenols

In the monoalkyl ethers of resorcinol the aldehyde group usually enters *para* to the hydroxyl group rather than *para* to the alkoxy group. For example, employment of Gattermann's procedure with aluminum chloride on the monomethyl ether of resorcinol results in a 75–80% yield of 4-hydroxy-2-methoxy-benzaldehyde.^{3,19} In several instances, zinc chloride has been substituted for aluminum chloride, as in the preparation of 6-hydroxy-3-methyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde.⁵¹ In this latter synthesis, the position *para* to the hydroxyl group is occupied and substitution occurs in the position *para* to the ether linkage.

Polyalkoxy Derivatives of Benzene

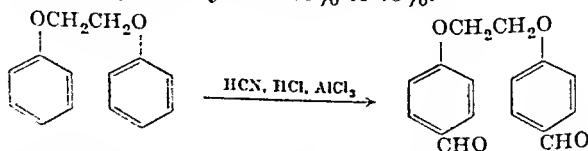
The Gattermann procedure with aluminum chloride is effective for the introduction of the aldehyde group into polyalkoxybenzenes.^{2,3,52} As with polyhydric phenols, the aldehyde group always enters *para* to an alkoxy group if this position is available; resorcinol dimethyl ether is converted to 2,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde in 80% yield by the Adams modification with added aluminum chloride.⁶ Substitution may occur *ortho* to the alkoxy group when the *para* position is blocked; e.g., the dimethyl and diethyl ethers of hydroquinone are reported to give 2,5-dialkoxybenzaldehydes in unspecified yields.³

When mixed ethers are subjected to the Gattermann reaction, a mixture of the possible isomeric aldehydes is formed.^{53,54} Determination of the relative amounts of each has demonstrated the following order of influence by the alkoxy group in directing the aldehyde group to the *para* position:⁵⁵



Molecules with Two Non-Fused Aromatic Nuclei

With molecules having two aromatic nuclei, each of which contains an ether linkage, it is possible to introduce an aldehyde group into each ring. The reaction has been applied to dimethylene and trimethylene ethers of phenol, *o*-cresol, *m*-cresol, 2,5-dimethylphenol, and 1- and 2-naphthol. The yields of dialdehydes vary from 30% to 75%.³



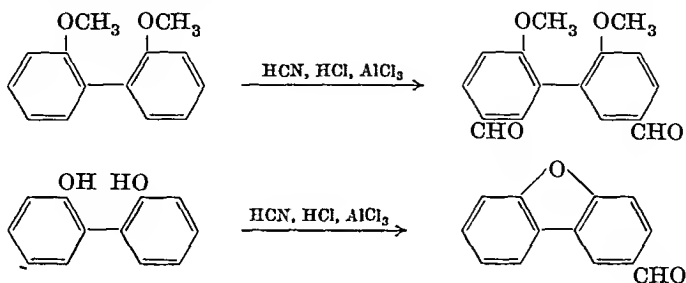
⁵¹ Karrer, Glattfelder, and Widmer, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 3, 548 (1920).

⁵² Gattermann and Eggers, *Ber.*, 32, 259 (1899).

⁵³ Sonn and Patschke, *Ber.*, 58, 1698 (1925).

⁵⁴ Ungnade and Orwall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 65, 1736 (1943).

Similarly, 2,2'-dimethoxy- and 2,2'-diethoxy-biphenyl react to give the 5,5'-dialdehydes.³ The corresponding 2,2'-dihydroxybiphenyl, however, is converted to dibenzofuran by the aluminum chloride, and only one aldehyde group is introduced.⁵⁵



Aromatic Hydrocarbons

Gattermann was unable to introduce the aldehyde group into aromatic hydrocarbons under the conditions he used. Tetralin was an exception, since it formed 3,4-tetramethylenebenzaldehyde in 33% yield. In fact, Gattermann often used benzene and other hydrocarbons as solvents in his reactions. It was later discovered, however, that an aldehyde group could be introduced into benzene provided that the conditions were modified so that free aluminum chloride was present.⁸ At 40°, in benzene, the complex of aluminum chloride with chloromethylene formamidine is not dissociated and reaction does not occur. If the temperature is raised to 80° or above, the complex appears to dissociate to some extent, yielding free aluminum chloride, and reaction does occur. If excess aluminum chloride is added, the yield of benzaldehyde is increased from 14% to 75%.⁸ It is advantageous to employ a mole-per-mole ratio of aluminum chloride to hydrogen cyanide when the aromatic compound is not very susceptible to polymerization; otherwise, the amount of aluminum chloride must be reduced and the time of reaction increased. The yields of aldehydes reported by Hinkel and his co-workers are based on the amount of hydrogen cyanide used instead of on the amount of aromatic compound as reported by Gattermann. On the assumption that 2 moles of hydrogen cyanide are required for every mole of aromatic compound converted to the aldehyde, the yields (which formerly were calculated to be only 50% based on the aromatic compound) actually correspond to yields of nearly 100% when a 1 : 1 molar ratio of reactants was employed. It is certain, however, that 2 moles of hydrogen cyanide are not necessary for introduction of an aldehyde group into phenols and phenol ethers under all conditions.

⁵⁵ Hinkel, Ayling, and Beynon, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1937, 778.

Just as the yield of benzaldehyde is markedly increased as the temperature is raised from that of the room to 100° ,⁷ so the yield of aldehydes from other aromatic hydrocarbons is also increased. Unfortunately, the increase in temperature also increases the tendency for aluminum chloride to induce polymerization of the hydrocarbon. Hinkel and his co-workers recommend approximately 70° as the optimum temperature for most reactions.⁷

Aldehydes can be prepared from liquid aromatic hydrocarbons by using excess hydrocarbon as the solvent; but, when the hydrocarbons are not liquid, are not easily procurable, or are unstable in the presence of aluminum chloride, the reaction must be modified by employment of inert solvents. Tetrachloroethane, *o*-dichlorobenzene, and chlorobenzene are suitable reaction media since they are good solvents for the hydrocarbons, hydrogen cyanide, and the final products, and since their high boiling points permit their use over a wide temperature range.⁷ Tetrachloroethane appears to promote the aldehyde synthesis, but it also increases the tendency of the aluminum chloride to cause polymerization of the hydrocarbons. Indene is so readily polymerized that introduction of the aldehyde group has not been achieved.

Polymerization can usually be reduced by employing a solvent with a lower chlorine content and by using but a slight excess of aluminum chloride, with a subsequent increase in the time of reaction. The effect of solvent is quite pronounced with biphenyl, which yields a monoaldehyde in chlorobenzene or *o*-dichlorobenzene, and a dialdehyde when the solvent medium is tetrachloroethane. Pertinent to the mechanism of the latter reaction is the fact that the monoaldehyde cannot be converted to the dialdehyde under the same conditions.⁷ A solvent effect has also been observed in the preparation of tolualdehydes from toluene; with excess toluene as solvent both *m*- and *p*-tolualdehyde are obtained, but with chlorobenzene as solvent only *p*-tolualdehyde is obtained.⁵⁶

A few of the aldehydes formed in good yields from the representative hydrocarbons as described by Hinkel and his co-workers are: benzaldehyde (75%), *p*-tolualdehyde (91%), 3,4-dimethylbenzaldehyde (85%), 2,4,6-trimethylbenzaldehyde (67–83%), 4-phenylbenzaldehyde (75%), fluorene-2-carboxaldehyde (76%), and acenaphthene-5-carboxaldehyde (70–90%).^{7,8,10,57}

The Adams modification of the Gattermann reaction using zinc cyanide in the presence of aluminum chloride was employed by Fuson and his co-workers for the preparation of some polyalkylated benzaldehydes.^{58,59}

⁵⁶ Niedzielski and Nord, *J. Org. Chem.*, **8**, 147 (1943).

⁵⁷ Hinkel, Brit. pat. 397,124 (1933) [*C. A.*, **28**, 778 (1934)].

⁵⁸ Fuson, Horning, Rowland, and Ward, *Org. Syntheses*, Coll. Vol. III, 549 (1955).

⁵⁹ Fuson, Horning, Ward, Rowland, and Marsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 31 (1942).

Using tetrachloroethane as the solvent and a reaction temperature of 70°, 1,3,5-trialkylbenzenes are converted to 2,4,6-trialkylbenzaldehydes in 38–83% yield.

Complications that may be encountered with aromatic hydrocarbons are alkylation and alkyl migration; from ethylbenzene both mono- and di-ethylbenzaldehyde can be isolated.⁵⁶

Sodium cyanide and hydrogen chloride with aluminum chloride have also been used.^{9, 56, 60} This combination is generally applicable to aromatic hydrocarbons other than benzene. Aluminum chloride in excess of that required to form a 1 : 1 complex with chloromethyleneformamidine is necessary.⁹ The yields of the corresponding aldehydes obtained from toluene and the isomeric xylenes appear to coincide with the polarity of the hydrocarbon reactants. Under these conditions, extensive migration and alkylation are observed so that some 2,4-dimethylbenzaldehyde is obtained from all three xylenes. The yields of this compound, however, vary with the xylene used: from *o*-xylene 75%, from *m*-xylene 26%, and from *p*-xylene 17%. In the reaction mixtures from *m*-xylene and *p*-xylene, 2,4,5-trimethylbenzaldehyde may be isolated in 13% and 21% yield, respectively; no trimethylbenzaldehyde is obtained from *o*-xylene.⁵⁶

Aromatic Amines

The Gattermann reaction generally cannot be applied to aromatic amines. The preparation of *p*-aminobenzaldehyde by the reaction of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride on aniline in ether solution has been reported but not confirmed.⁶¹ Hinkel and his co-workers have obtained merely complex condensation products instead of aldehydes from aniline, dimethylaniline, and diphenylamine.⁵⁵

Pyrroles and Indoles

The aldehyde group is introduced with great ease into certain pyrroles and indoles. This reaction proceeds so readily that frequently no catalyst is required.^{62–65} Both diethyl ether and chloroform have been employed as solvents. The yields often vary with the solvent and have been considerably better in chloroform than in ether.⁶³ An outstanding example

⁵⁶ Mistrutta and Nord, *Nature*, **145**, 387 (1940).

⁶¹ Wu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1421 (1944).

⁶² Fischer and Ammann, *Ber.*, **56**, 2319 (1923).

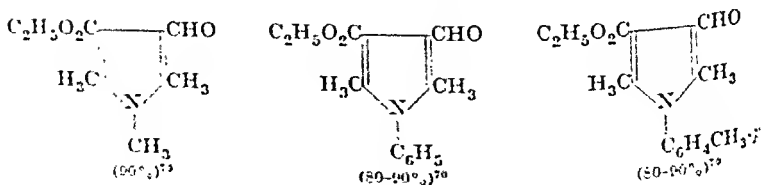
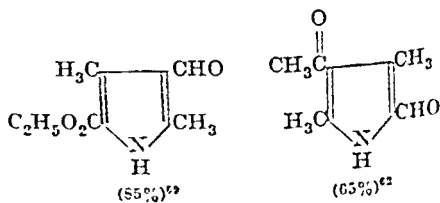
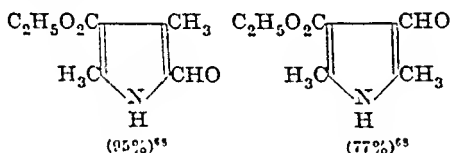
⁶³ Fischer and Zerweck, *Ber.*, **56**, 519 (1923).

⁶⁴ Reichstein, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **13**, 349 (1930).

⁶⁵ Saka, *Ber.*, **56**, 2058 (1923).

is 2,3,5-trimethylpyrrole, which is converted in 67% yield to 2,4,5-trimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde in chloroform solution but which apparently gives no product in diethyl ether.

Aldehyde groups have not been introduced into unsubstituted pyrrole or indole.^{61,66} This failure has been explained as the result of the reaction of the intermediate aldimine hydrochloride with the pyrrole or indole to give complex, colored condensation products.⁶⁶ No difficulty is encountered in introducing the aldehyde group into 1-alkylpyrroles such as 1-methylpyrrole, 1-*n*-butylpyrrole, 1-*i*-amylpyrrole, and 1-furfurylpyrrole.⁶⁶ The aldehyde group enters the 2- or 5-position if one is free, but if both these positions are occupied, it may readily enter the 3- or 4-position. Another noteworthy fact is that the carbethoxy group and various acyl groups apparently do not prevent the reaction; many of the best yields of pyrrole aldehydes have been from pyrroles containing such substituents which are normally nuclear deactivating. In the absence of an open position, a carbethoxy group may be replaced by an aldehyde group.⁶⁷ The aldehydes from a selected list of pyrroles are given below with the yields obtained.



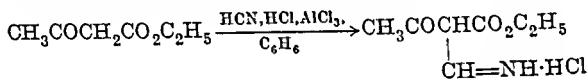
Thiophenes and Thiazoles

Few applications of the Gattermann reaction in the thiophene series have been made. Thiophene is less reactive than furan and pyrrole, and the aldehyde group may be introduced (in poor yield) only in the presence of aluminum chloride.⁶⁴ Undoubtedly, the tendency of thiophene to polymerize under acidic conditions is the chief obstacle to the application of the Gattermann reaction in this series.

2-Hydroxy-4-methylthiazole-5-carboxaldehyde (25%) is prepared by the use of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride in the absence of a catalyst, but 4-methylthiazole fails to react.⁷⁵

Enols

Ethyl acetoacetate dissolved in benzene is converted by hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride in the presence of aluminum chloride into ethyl α -formiminoacetoacetate hydrochloride.⁷⁷



Analogous results are obtained with acetylacetone, and, presumably, other active methylene compounds would act similarly. Simple olefins, however, do not yield the corresponding aldehydes under the conditions of the Gattermann reaction.⁷⁸

ALTERNATIVE METHODS FOR DIRECT INTRODUCTION OF AN ALDEHYDE GROUP

Several alternative methods for the direct introduction of aldehyde groups into aromatic compounds are available. The Gattermann-Koch reaction employing carbon monoxide, hydrogen chloride, and aluminum chloride, often with a cuprous chloride carrier, is used chiefly for the preparation of benzaldehyde and the mono- and poly-alkylbenzaldehydes.¹ It is unsuccessful with phenols, phenol ethers, and heterocyclic compounds.^{1,2}

A second method employs N-methylformanilide and phosphorus oxychloride. It is limited to certain activated compounds such as ethers of the aromatic series,⁷⁹ secondary and tertiary aromatic amines,⁸⁰ and

⁷⁶ Ochiai and Nagasawa, *Ber.*, **72**, 1470 (1939).

⁷⁷ Wieland and Dorrer, *Ber.*, **58**, 818 (1925).

⁷⁸ Wieland and Dorrer, *Ber.*, **63**, 404 (1930).

⁷⁹ Kalischer, Scheyer, and Keller, German pats. 514,415 (1931), and 519,444 (1931) [*Chem. Zentr.*, **102**, II, 3394 (1931).]

⁸⁰ Vilsmeier and Haack, *Ber.*, **60**, 119 (1927).

chloride it reacts as desired.⁹⁷ Zinc cyanide that has been washed thoroughly with water and dried does not react, but after addition of sodium chloride or potassium chloride it does react. The amount of catalyst usually used is slightly more than that needed for formation of the hydrogen cyanide adduct.

Solvents. Benzene is frequently used as a solvent particularly where aluminum chloride and a comparatively low reaction temperature are employed. With zinc chloride or in the absence of any catalyst, ether is a desirable solvent in view of its greater solvent action on polyhydric phenols. Furthermore, with ether as a solvent, the primary reaction product, the pure crystalline imine salt, may separate from solution and thus permit isolation before hydrolysis.¹¹ Chloroform is preferable to ether for the reaction with certain substituted pyrroles.⁶³ The success of and the orientation obtained in the Gattermann reaction are frequently affected by the nature of the solvent.⁵⁶ Tetrachloroethane has been used frequently, as have *o*-dichlorobenzene and chlorobenzene since they dissolve hydrocarbons, hydrogen cyanide, and final products alike and have high boiling points.

Hydrogen Cyanide. Cylinders of anhydrous hydrogen cyanide can be purchased. The acid can also be prepared readily by treating sodium cyanide with sulfuric acid,⁹⁸ or by treating potassium ferrocyanide with sulfuric acid followed by drying by passage over calcium chloride.⁹⁹ Detailed directions for the preparation of hydrogen cyanide from sodium cyanide and sulfuric acid are given in *Organic Syntheses*.¹⁰⁰ Cyanogen bromide as a substitute for hydrogen cyanide appears to have little if any advantage.⁴⁸

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Mesitaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, zinc cyanide, aluminum chloride, tetrachloroethane as solvent). Detailed directions for the preparation of mesitaldehyde in 75–81% yield from mesitylene are given in *Organic Syntheses*.⁵⁸

4-Methoxy-3-methylbenzaldehyde (hydrogen cyanide, hydrogen chloride, aluminum chloride).² *Hydrogen cyanide is extremely poisonous and should be handled with great care. All connections should be thoroughly tested for leaks, and the entire apparatus should be placed in a hood which is in good working order. Rubber gloves should be worn. Adequate ventilation should be maintained at all times. Any vapors escaping from the system*

⁹⁷ Arnold and Sprung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 1699 (1938).

⁹⁸ Ziegler, *Ber.*, **54**, 110 (1921).

⁹⁹ Houben, *Ber.*, **59**, 2878 (1926).

¹⁰⁰ Ziegler, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 1*, 2nd ed., p. 314, John Wiley & Sons, 1941.

should not be allowed to escape freely, but should be destroyed by passage through solutions of potassium permanganate or hydrogen peroxide. Before handling hydrogen cyanide, one should consult textbooks on the handling of dangerous materials and the treatment and first aid of hydrogen cyanide poisoning.

Gaseous hydrogen chloride is passed for one-half hour through a mixture of 25 g. (0.93 mole) of anhydrous hydrogen cyanide and 30 g. (0.25 mole) of *o*-cresyl methyl ether cooled in an ice bath. Aluminum chloride, 30 g. (0.22 mole), is added gradually. While slowly adding more hydrogen chloride, the temperature is raised to 45° and kept there for four to five hours. The reaction mixture is poured over ice and hydrochloric acid. The resulting copious precipitate is heated under reflux with hydrochloric acid. The aldehyde is steam-distilled and then treated with sodium bisulfite solution. The bisulfite addition product is filtered and decomposed with aqueous sodium carbonate. The yield of colorless oil, b.p. 251°, is 30–37 g. (80–100%).

4-Hydroxy-2,6-dimethylbenzaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, hydrogen cyanide, aluminum chloride, benzene as solvent).³ To an ice-cooled solution of 20 g. (0.16 mole) of 3,5-dimethylphenol in 80 ml. of benzene is added 13.8 g. (0.51 mole) of dry hydrogen cyanide. This is followed by 30 g. (0.22 mole) of aluminum chloride. After hydrogen chloride has been passed through the mixture for four hours at a temperature of 35°, it is poured into a mixture of hydrochloric acid and ice. Benzene is removed by steam distillation, and the residue is extracted with ether. The resulting ethereal solution is extracted with sodium bisulfite solution. After the aqueous layer has been washed with ether, it is acidified with dilute sulfuric acid. The precipitated aldehyde is crystallized from ethanol in the form of long yellow needles, m.p. 189–190°, in an almost quantitative yield.

2-Hydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, hydrogen cyanide, zinc chloride, anhydrous ethyl ether as solvent).⁴ To a well-cooled mixture of 15 g. (0.10 mole) of 2-naphthol, 45 ml. of ether, and 6.9 g. (0.10 mole) of dry hydrogen cyanide is added 15 g. (0.11 mole) of anhydrous zinc chloride. Anhydrous hydrogen chloride is passed through this mixture at room temperature for two and one half hours. During this time a dark oil settles to the bottom and eventually solidifies. The solid is washed thoroughly with ether and then heated for a short time with water. The oily material, which crystallizes in almost quantitative yield on cooling, melts at 81° after crystallization from dilute ethanol.

2,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, hydrogen cyanide from potassium ferrocyanide and sulfuric acid, anhydrous ethyl ether as solvent).⁴⁴ Potassium ferrocyanide (200 g.) is heated in a flask with a

mixture of 160 g. of concentrated sulfuric acid and 280 ml. of water. The evolved hydrogen cyanide is led from the flask by means of an air condenser and passed through a calcium chloride drying train kept at 35–40° (hydrogen cyanide liquefies at 26°), and into a flask kept at –5° that contains 1 part of resorcinol dissolved in 3 parts of anhydrous ether. When the increase in weight indicates a 50% excess of hydrogen cyanide, hydrogen chloride is led slowly through the same drying train until it ceases to be absorbed by the ether solution. The semisolid reaction mixture is allowed to stand for several hours, after which it is decomposed with boiling water. The resulting mixture is filtered, and, on cooling, crystals of the aldehyde separate in good yield.

2,4-Dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, zinc cyanide, anhydrous ethyl ether as solvent).⁵ A 500-ml. three-necked round-bottomed flask is fitted with a stirrer, a reflux condenser, and an inlet tube having a wide mouth to prevent clogging and extending nearly to the bottom of the flask. A safety bottle is placed in series with this tube and a dry hydrogen chloride generator. The top of the condenser connects to a tube leading into a wash bottle containing sulfuric acid, then to a safety bottle, and finally to the surface of aqueous sodium hydroxide. To the reaction flask, containing 20 g. (0.16 mole) of thoroughly dried orcinol (freed of water of crystallization) and 200 ml. of dry ether, is added 28.1 g. (0.24 mole) of dry zinc cyanide. The mechanical stirrer is started, and dry hydrogen chloride is passed in rapidly. A pink color develops, and the condensation product begins to separate as a thick oil. After about one and one half hours, the ether becomes saturated with hydrogen chloride; the hydrogen chloride is then passed in more slowly for an additional half hour. After the ether is decanted, the solid residue is boiled for two to three minutes with about 100 ml. of water. The hot solution is filtered and cooled to yield a crystalline product (85%) which, after crystallization from water, melts at 178–180°.

p-Anisaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, zinc cyanide, aluminum chloride, benzene as solvent).⁶ The same type of apparatus may be employed for this preparation as was used above for the preparation of 2,4-dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde. To a mixture of 30 g. (30.1 ml., 0.28 mole) of anisole and 75 ml. of dry benzene is added 52 g. (0.44 mole) of dry zinc cyanide. Dry hydrogen chloride is added rapidly to the cooled and continuously stirred mixture for thirty to sixty minutes. Anhydrous aluminum chloride (49 g., 0.34 mole) is added slowly and with further cooling and stirring. This is followed by a slow stream of hydrogen chloride which is added while the mixture is heated at 40–45° for three to four hours. The contents of the flask are added to an excess of 10% hydrochloric acid, which generally causes a heavy precipitate to separate.

The resulting mixture is heated under reflux for one-half hour, and the aldehyde is steam-distilled. The steam distillate is extracted with benzene, and the benzene is subsequently removed by distillation. The residue is shaken with sodium bisulfite solution, and the anisole is extracted with ether. The aldehyde is released from the bisulfite addition product by warming with aqueous sodium carbonate. The yield of aldehyde, boiling at 246–248°, is 94%.

***p*-Tolualdehyde** (hydrogen chloride, hydrogen cyanide, aluminum chloride, toluene as solvent).⁸ To a mixture of 52 g. (0.39 mole) of aluminum chloride and 50 ml. of toluene cooled in ice is added with shaking 10.3 g. (15 ml., 0.38 mole) of dry hydrogen cyanide during a period of fifteen minutes. After being kept at room temperature for five minutes, the mixture is heated to about 60° and a slow current of hydrogen chloride is passed through. A vigorous reaction occurs, and the mixture is maintained at 100° for two hours while hydrogen chloride is introduced and an additional three hours at 100° after the flow of hydrogen chloride is stopped. The reaction mixture is kept at room temperature overnight. After the viscous mixture is poured over a mixture of ice and concentrated hydrochloric acid, the resulting organic layer is steam-distilled. From the dried ethereal extract of the distillate, the aldehyde is obtained in quantitative yield by fractional distillation; b.p. 200–204°.

3,5-Dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde (hydrogen chloride, hydrogen cyanide, chloroform as solvent).⁶³ To a solution of 4 g. (0.03 mole) of 2,4-dimethylpyrrole in 40 ml. of chloroform that has been previously dried with phosphorus pentoxide is added 5.5 g. (0.2 mole) of dry hydrogen cyanide. The mixture is cooled with an ice bath, and dry hydrogen chloride is introduced for one hour. Without attempting to filter the crystals, the solvent is removed under reduced pressure at room temperature, and the residue is dissolved in cold water. Sodium hydroxide is added, ammonia is evolved, and the aldehyde separates as dark yellow crystals of melting point 89°; yield, 92%.

TABULAR SURVEY OF ALDEHYDES PREPARED BY THE GATTERMANN REACTION

In the following tables an attempt has been made to cover the syntheses of aromatic aldehydes by the Gattermann reaction reported in the literature to January 1, 1954. The first column in the tables lists the aldehydes formed, the second column the reagents and solvents, without parentheses. Also in the second column is listed in parentheses the starting material wherever it is not obvious.

Table I lists compounds obtained from aromatic hydrocarbons, chlorobenzene, and aniline. Usually the substituted benzaldehyde formed is

indicated merely by the substituent groups. Table II gives the aldehydes derived from phenols and phenol ethers; Table III lists the aldehydes obtained from naphthols, naphthol ethers, and phenanthrol. Heterocyclic aldehydes are listed in Table IV; and compounds that did not yield aldehydes are shown in Table V.

The reagents are listed as A, B, C, D, E, and F as defined below:

A: HCl, HCN.

B: HCl, HCN, ZnCl_2 .

C: HCl, HCN, AlCl_3 .

D: HCl, NaCN, AlCl_3 .

E: HCl, Zn(CN)_2 , AlCl_3 .

F: HCl, Zn(CN)_2 .

Appreciation is expressed to Dr. O. L. Norman for his assistance in surveying the literature on which these tables are based.

TABLE I

ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Name of Aldehyde	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
Benzaldehyde	D	11	60
	C	—	57
		16-39	8
	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	75	7
4-Amino-	A, ether (aniline)	—	61
4-Chloro-	C	8	7
4-Methyl-	D	39	9
		20	60
	C	—	57
		14-91	10
		14-quant.	8
4-Ethyl-	D	27	9
		38	60
	C	30	56
	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	22	7
	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	5	7
4-Isopropyl-	D	24	60
4- <i>s</i> -Butyl	D	4	60
4- <i>t</i> -Amyl-	D	8	60
4-Phenyl-	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	75	7
2,4-Dimethyl-	C	—	57
		97	8
	D	26	56
	D, (<i>o</i> -xylene)	75	56
	D, (<i>p</i> -xylene)	17	56
2,5-Dimethyl-	C	85	8
3,4-Dimethyl-	C	85	8
	D	42	9
Diethyl-	D, (ethylbenzene)	13	56
	C, (ethylbenzene)	25	56
2-Isopropyl-5-methyl-	D	25	56
Isopropyl-methyl-	D, (<i>p</i> -cymene)	5-17	56
Diisopropyl-	D, (isopropylbenzene)	12-18	9, 56
	D, (<i>m</i> -diisopropylbenzene)	17-39	56
	D, (<i>p</i> -cymene)	13	56
3,4-Trimethylene-	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$ (hydrindene)	45-60	7

TABLE I—Continued

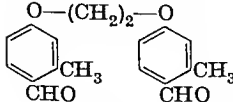
ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Name of Aldehyde	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
3,4-Tetramethylene-	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$ (tetralin)	4	7
	C, C_6H_6 (tetralin)	33	3
2,3,5-Trimethyl-	D, (mesitylene)	13	56
2,4,5-Trimethyl-	D	7	56
	D, (<i>m</i> -xylene)	13	56
	D, (<i>p</i> -xylene)	21	56
2,4,6-Trimethyl-	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	67-83	7
	E, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	75-81	58, 59
	D, (1,2,4-trimethylbenzene)	7	56
2,4,6-Triethyl-	E, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	69	58, 59
Triethyl-	D, (ethylbenzene)	5	56
Diisopropyl-methyl-	D, (<i>p</i> -cymene)	10-16	56
2,4,6-Triisopropyl-	E, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	65	58, 59
Triisopropyl-	D, (<i>m</i> -diisopropylbenzene)	5-16	56
2-Fluorene-carboxaldehyde	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	52-70	7
	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	76	7
	C, <i>o</i> - $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2$	62	7
1-Naphthaldehyde	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	31-60	7
	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	66	7
4-Methyl-1-naphthaldehyde	C, <i>o</i> - $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2$	51	7
2,3-Dimethyl-1-naphthaldehyde	E, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	38	59
2,6-Dimethyl-1-naphthaldehyde	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	60	7
4,7-Dimethyl-1-naphthaldehyde	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	58	7
5-Acenaphthene-carboxaldehyde	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	70-90	7
9-Anthracene-carboxaldehyde	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	50	7
	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	60	7
9-Phenanthrene-carboxaldehyde	C, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	44	7

TABLE II

ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM PHENOLS AND THEIR ETHERS

A. Aldehydes Prepared from Monohydric Phenols or Their Ethers

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Structural Formula	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
4-Hydroxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	30	3, 19
4-Methoxy-	D	43	9
	C	45-89	2, 3, 8
	Zr(CN) ₂ , ZrCl ₄ , C ₆ H ₆	Poor	18
	E, C ₆ H ₆	94	6
4-Ethoxy-	C	80	2, 3
4-(β-Bromoethoxy)-	C, C ₆ H ₆	50	3
4-Phenoxy-	C or E, C ₆ H ₆	50-80	3, 6, 101
(-CH ₂ OC ₆ H ₄ CHO- <i>p</i>) ₂	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
CH ₂ (-CH ₂ OC ₆ H ₄ CHO- <i>p</i>) ₂	C, C ₆ H ₆	30	3
4-(4'-Methoxyphenoxy)-	C, C ₆ H ₆	6	54
2-Bromo-4-hydroxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	10	3
2-Bromo-4-ethoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
2-Chloro-4-hydroxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	50	3
2-Chloro-4-methoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
2-Chloro-4-ethoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	80	3
3-Chloro-4-methoxy-	C	ca. 80	2
	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
2-Hydroxy-4-methyl-	E, C ₆ H ₆	Small	22
2-Hydroxy-5-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	5	3
2-Methoxy-5-methyl-	E, C ₆ H ₆	80	6
	C, with or without benzene	ca. 80	2, 3
2-Ethoxy-5-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	80	3
4-Hydroxy-2-methyl-	E, C ₆ H ₆	30	22
	C, C ₆ H ₆	45-50	3, 19
	E, C ₆ H ₆ (2-isopropyl-5-methylphenol)	Small	20
4-Methoxy-2-methyl-	C	ca. 80	2, 3
4-Ethoxy-2-methyl-	C	90	3
	C, C ₆ H ₆	33	3

¹⁰¹ Slotta and Soremba, *Ber.*, 68, 2059 (1935).

TABLE II—Continued

A. Aldehydes Prepared from Monohydric Phenols or Their Ethers—Continued

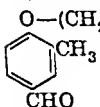
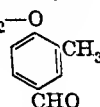
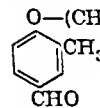
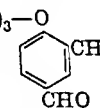
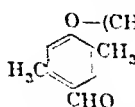
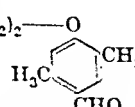
Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Structural Formula	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
4-Hydroxy-3-methyl-	C or E, C_6H_6	35-40	3, 6, 19
	E, C_6H_6 (2-methyl-5-isopropylphenol)	Small	20
4-Hydroxy-3-ethyl-	C, C_6H_6	65	3
4-Methoxy-3-ethyl-	C	90	2, 3
4-Ethoxy-3-ethyl-	C	80	2, 3
4-(β -Bromoethoxy)-3-ethyl-	C, C_6H_6	50	3
 	C, C_6H_6	Almost quant.	3
 	C, C_6H_6	ca. 33	3
2-Hydroxy-3,4-dimethyl-	C	Small	18
2-Hydroxy-4,5-dimethyl-	C, C_6H_6	—	3
2-Hydroxy-6-isopropyl-3-methyl-	E, C_6H_6	Small	20
2-Hydroxy-3-isopropyl-6-methyl-	E, C_6H_6	Small	20
4-Hydroxy-2,3-dimethyl-	C, C_6H_6	60	3
	C	—	18
	C, (2,3,4-trimethylphenol)	52	18
4-Hydroxy-2,5-dimethyl-	C, C_6H_6	80	3
4-Hydroxy-5-isopropyl-2-methyl-	C or E, C_6H_6	Almost quant.	3, 6, 19, 20, 21
4-Hydroxy-2-isopropyl-5-methyl-	C, C_6H_6	30	3
	E, C_6H_6	Good	20, 21
 	C, C_6H_6	66	3
4-Hydroxy-2,6-dimethyl-	C, C_6H_6	Almost quant.	3

TABLE II—*Continued**A. Aldehydes Prepared from Monohydric Phenols or Their Ethers—Continued*

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Structural Formula	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
4-Methoxy-2,6-dimethyl-	B, ether	—	3
4-Ethoxy-2,6-dimethyl-	B, ether	Almost quant.	3
4-Hydroxy-3,5-dimethyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
	C, (2,6-dimethylanisole)	Main product	3
	C, C ₆ H ₆ (2,4,6-trimethylanisole)	—	18
4-Methoxy-3,5-dimethyl-	C	Poor*	3
4-Ethoxy-3,5-dimethyl-	C	Moderate*	3
2-Hydroxy-3,4,5-trimethyl-	C	Small	18
3-Hydroxy-2,4,6-trimethyl-	C, (mesityl methyl ether)	—	18

* This reaction involved some cleavage of the ether group.

TABLE II—Continued

B. Aldehydes Prepared from Dihydric Phenols or Their Ethers

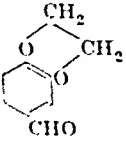
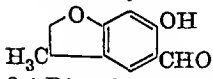
Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Structural Formula	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
2,4-Dihydroxy-	A or F, ether	56-97	3, 5, 11, 41, 43, 44
	HCONH ₂ , POCl ₃ , ether	—	50
	C	Almost quant.	19
		69-82	8
4-Hydroxy-2-methoxy-	BrCN, HCl, ZnCl ₂ , ether	—	48
	C, C ₆ H ₆	75	3
	C	80	19
2,4-Dimethoxy-	C or E, C ₆ H ₆	80-almost quant.	3, 6
	C	ca. 80	2
2-Ethoxy-4-methoxy- and 4-ethoxy-2-methoxy-	B, ether	26 and 32, resp.	53
2-Methoxy-4- <i>n</i> -propoxy- and 4-methoxy-2- <i>n</i> -propoxy-	B, ether	26 and 26, resp.	53
4-Allyloxy-2-methoxy- and 2-allyloxy-4-methoxy-	B, ether	32 and 16, resp.	53
4-Benzoyloxy-2-methoxy- and 2-benzoyloxy-4-methoxy-	B, ether	Total yield, 40	53
4-Methoxy-2-phenoxy- and 2-methoxy-4-phenoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	Total yield, 40-45	54
2,5-Dimethoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
2,5-Diethoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
3,4-Dimethoxy-	C	ca. 80	2
	C, C ₆ H ₆	60	3
3,4-Diethoxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	75	3
	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
4-Methoxy-3-phenoxy- and 4-(2'-methoxyphenoxy)-	C, C ₆ H ₆	40-45	54

TABLE II—Continued

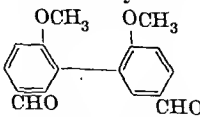
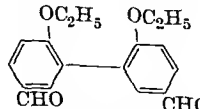
B. Aldehydes Prepared from Dihydric Phenols or Their Ethers—Continued

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Structural Formula	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
2,4-Dihydroxy-3-ethyl-	F	—	37
	A, ether	—	46
2,4-Dihydroxy-3-formyl-	E, ether (2,4-dihydroxy-benzaldehyde)	10	28
2,4-Dihydroxy-3-nitro-	E, ether	—	26
3-Acetyl-2,4-dimethoxy-	C, ether	—	25
	E, ether	80	32
2,4-Dihydroxy-5-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	90	3
2,4-Dihydroxy-5-ethyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	Almost quant.	3
5-Carbomethoxy-2,4-dihydroxy-	F, ether	53	102
	B, ether	—	51
2,4-Dimethoxy-5-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	Almost quant.	3
2,4-Dihydroxy-6-methyl-	A, ether	93	3, 41
	C	Quant.	2
	F, ether	85	5
4-Hydroxy-2-methoxy-6-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
2,4-Dimethoxy-6-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	63	3
3-Acetyl-2,6-dihydroxy-	C, ether	—	25
	E, ether	45	30
2,6-Dihydroxy-3-propionyl-	E, KCl, CH ₃ CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅ , ether	64	33
3-n-Butyryl-2,6-dihydroxy-	E, KCl, CH ₃ CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅ , ether	26	33
3-Benzoyl-2,6-dihydroxy-	E, KCl, CH ₃ CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅ , ether	36	33
	C, ether	—	25
3-Carbomethoxy-2,6-dihydroxy-	C, ether	ca. 30	24
	E, ether	65	29
2,6-Dihydroxy-3-nitro-	E, ether	—	26

¹⁰² Mody and Shah, *Proc. Indian Acad. Sci.*, **34A**, 77 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 11189 (1952)].

TABLE II—Continued

B. Aldehydes Prepared from Dihydric Phenols or Their Ethers—Continued

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde or Complete Structural Formula	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
4,5-Dimethoxy-2-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	Almost quant.	3
5-Ethoxy-4-methoxy-2-methyl-	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
Chloro-dihydroxy-	C, C ₆ H ₆	Almost quant.	3
2,6-Dihydroxy-3,5-dimethyl-	F, ether	—	39
Acetyl-2,6-dihydroxy-3-phenyl-	E, KCl, CH ₃ CO ₂ H ₅ , ether	51	33
3-Acetyl-5-ethyl-2,6-dihydroxy-	E, ether	38	32
3-Carbomethoxy-5-ethyl-2,6-dihydroxy-	E, ether	57	31
3-Formyl-2,6-dihydroxy-4-methyl- or 3-formyl-2,4-dihydroxy-6-methyl-	E, ether (2,4-dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde)	—	27
	E, KCl, ether (2,4-dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde)	11	28
3-Acetyl-2,6-dihydroxy-4-methyl-	C, ether	—	25
	E, ether	26	32
3-Carbomethoxy-2,6-dihydroxy-4-methyl- or carbethoxy- analog	E, ether	Almost quant.	34
3-Ethyl-4,6-dihydroxy-2-methyl-	F, ether	51	39
2,5-Dihydroxy-3,4,6-trimethyl-	E, C ₆ H ₆	47	103
3,5-Diethyl-2,6-dihydroxy-4-methyl-	F, ether	52	39
5-Carbethoxy-2,4-dihydroxy-3,6-dimethyl-	E, ether	62	34
	C, C ₆ H ₆	—	3
	C, C ₆ H ₆	50	3

¹⁰³ Smith and King, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 63, 1889 (1941).

TABLE II—Continued

C. Aldehydes Prepared from Trihydric and Tetrahydric Phenols or Their Ethers

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
2,3,4-Trihydroxy-	C, C_6H_6	—	19
	B, ether	50	3, 41
2,4-Dihydroxy-3-methoxy-	F, ether	45	5
2,4,5-Trihydroxy-	F, ether	93	40
	B, ether	Almost quant.	3, 41
2,5-Dihydroxy-4-methoxy-	A, $Zn(CN)_2$, ether	39	35
2-Hydroxy-4,5-dimethoxy-	A, $Zn(CN)_2$, ether	85	35
4-Ethoxy-2-hydroxy-5-methoxy-	A, $Zn(CN)_2$, ether	86	35
5-Ethoxy-2-hydroxy-4-methoxy-	A, $Zn(CN)_2$, ether	71	35
2,4,5-Trimethoxy-	C, C_6H_6	Very good	52
2,4,6-Trihydroxy-	A, ether	Good	3, 41
2,4-Dihydroxy-6-methoxy- or 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methoxy-	$BrCN$, HCl , $ZnCl_2$, ether	—	48
6-Ethoxy-2,4-dihydroxy-	B, ether	—	42
3-Ethyl-2,4,6-trihydroxy-	A, ether	97	45
3-Formyl-2,4,6-trihydroxy-	A, ether	78	47
3-Acetyl-2,4,6-trihydroxy-	F, ether (phloroglucinol)	2	38
	E, ether	32	28
2,6-Dihydroxy-4-methoxy-3-methyl-	C, ether	51	32
4-Ethoxy-2,6-dihydroxy-3-methyl-	E, ether	—	25
3-Formyl-2,4-dihydroxy-6-methoxy-	A, ether	72	28
6-Hydroxy-2,4-dimethoxy-3-methyl-	E, ether (2,4-dihydroxy-6-methoxybenzaldehyde)	71	45
3-Formyl-2-hydroxy-4,6-dimethoxy-		13	28
3-Acetyl-2-hydroxy-4,6-dimethoxy-	A	56	45
	E, ether (2-hydroxy-4,6-dimethoxybenzaldehyde)	21 crude	28
	E, ether		

TABLE II—*Continued**C. Aldehydes Prepared from Trihydric and Tetrahydric Phenols
or Their Ethers—Continued*

Substituent(s) in Benzaldehyde	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
3-Formyl-2,4,6-trihydroxy- 5-methyl-	A, ether (methylphloro- glucinol)	7	38
5-Ethyl-3-formyl-2,4,6- trihydroxy-	A, ether (ethylphloro- glucinol)	24	38
5- <i>i</i> -Amyl-3-formyl-2,4,6- trihydroxy-	A, ether (<i>i</i> -amylphloro- glucinol)	15	38
3,5-Dicarbethoxy-2,4,6- trihydroxy-	E, KCl, ether	85 crude	28
2,4-Dihydroxy-3,6- dimethoxy-	F, ether (1,4-dimethoxy- 2,6-dibenzoxybenzene)	— 79	36 36

TABLE IV

ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Product	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
2-Furfural	A, ether	35	74
3-Methyl-2-furfural	A, ether	56	105
5-Methyl-2-furfural	A, ether	60	74
5-Ethyl-2-furfural	A, ether	53	74
3,5-Dimethyl-2-furfural	A, ether	12	105
$\left[-\text{H}_2\text{C} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{array} \text{CHO} \right]_2$	A, ether	Poor	74
6-Hydroxybenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	—	51
6-Hydroxy-3-methylbenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	—	51
6-Hydroxy-3,4-dimethylbenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	—	42
4,6-Dimethoxybenzofuran-7-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	9	75
2-Carbethoxy-4,6-dimethoxybenzofuran-7-carboxaldehyde	C, ether	90	75
	B, ether	72	75
Dibenzofuran-3-carboxaldehyde	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$ (<i>o,o'</i> -dihydroxy-biphenyl)	81	55
2-Thiophenecarboxaldehyde	C	8	64
1-Methylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether, CHCl_3	31	64
1- <i>n</i> -Butylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	61	64
1- <i>i</i> -Amylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	62	64
1-(2'-Furfuryl)-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	16	64
5-Phenylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	F, ether	—	72
5-Carbethoxypyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, CHCl_3 , ether	28	64
3,4-Dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	—	106

¹⁰⁵ Reichstein, Zschokke, and Goerg, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 14, 1277 (1931).¹⁰⁶ Fischer and Hofelmann, *Ann.*, 533, 225 (1930).

TABLE IV

ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

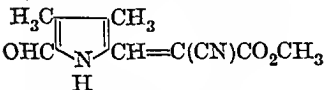
Product	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
2-Furfural	A, ether	35	74
3-Methyl-2-furfural	A, ether	56	105
5-Methyl-2-furfural	A, ether	60	74
5-Ethyl-2-furfural	A, ether	53	74
3,5-Dimethyl-2-furfural	A, ether	12	105
$\left[-\text{H}_2\text{C} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{array} \text{CHO} \right]_2$	A, ether	Poor	74
6-Hydroxybenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	—	51
6-Hydroxy-3-methylbenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	—	51
6-Hydroxy-3,4-dimethylbenzofuran-5-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	—	42
4,6-Dimethoxybenzofuran-7-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	9	75
2-Carboethoxy-4,6-dimethoxybenzofuran-7-carboxaldehyde	C, ether	90	75
Dibenzofuran-3-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	72	75
	C, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$ (o,o'-dihydroxy-biphenyl)	81	55
2-Thiophenecarboxaldehyde	C	8	64
1-Methylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether, CHCl_3	31	64
1-n-Butylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	61	64
1-i-Amylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	62	64
1-(2'-Furfuryl)-pyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	16	64
5-Phenylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	F, ether	—	72
5-Carboethoxypyrrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, CHCl_3 , ether	28	64
3,4-Dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	—	106

¹⁰⁵ Reichstein, Zschokke, and Goerg, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **14**, 1277 (1931).

¹⁰⁶ Fischer and Höfelmann, *Ann.*, **533**, 225 (1930).

TABLE IV—Continued

ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Product	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
3,5-Dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, CHCl_3	92	63
	A, ether	Moderate	63
	HCONH_2 , POCl_3	—	50
4-Bromo-3,5-dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	22	67
4-Ethyl-3,5-dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, CHCl_3	8	107
3-Carbethoxy-4,5-dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	—	109
4-Carbethoxy-3,5-dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	95	68
4-Acetyl-3,5-dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether or CHCl_3	65	62
5-Ethyl-3-methyl-4-propionylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	—	109
	A, CHCl_3 , ether	35	106
2,4,5-Trimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, CHCl_3	67	63
5-Ethyl-2,4-dimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, H_2O	77	108
5-Carbethoxy-2,4-dimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	85	69
	HCONH_2 , POCl_3 , ether	—	50
4-Carbethoxy-2,5-dimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	77	68
	HCONH_2 , POCl_3 , ether	—	50
4-Carbethoxy-1,2,5-trimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	ca. 90	70
4-Carbethoxy-2,5-dimethyl-1-p-tolylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	80–90	70

¹⁰⁷ Fischer and Schubert, *Ber.*, **56**, 1202 (1923).¹⁰⁸ Fischer and Walach, *Ann.*, **447**, 38 (1926).¹⁰⁹ Fischer and Klarer, *Ann.*, **447**, 48 (1926).

TABLE IV—Continued

ALDEHYDES PREPARED FROM HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Product	Reagents	Yield, %	Reference
4-Carbethoxy-1-phenyl-2,5-dimethylpyrrole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, ether	80-90	70
2-Methylindole-3-carboxaldehyde	B, ether	75	71
	F, ether	10	73
	A, CHCl_3	90	66
	A, ether	87	65
2-Carbethoxyindole-3-carboxaldehyde	A, CHCl_3	—	66
	F, ether	83	73
2-Carbethoxy-7-methylindole-3-carboxaldehyde	F, ether	Good	73
2-Hydroxy-4-methylthiazole-4-carboxaldehyde	A, ether, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{CHCl}_2$	25	76

TABLE V

COMPOUNDS THAT DID NOT YIELD ALDEHYDES

Starting Material	Reference	Starting Material	Reference
Indene*	7	o-Methoxybiphenyl†	55
Nitrobenzene†	55	Pyrrole*	64
2-Nitrophenol†	55	2-Carboxypyrrole*	64
Benzoic Acid†	55	2-Acetylpyrrole‡	64
Cinnamic Acid†	55	Indole	66
Aniline†	55	Furfuryl methyl ether*	74
Diphenylamine†	55	Difurfuryl ether*	74
N,N-Dimethylaniline†	55	2-Carbomethoxy-4,7-dimethoxy-6-hydroxy-benzofuran	36
Azobenzene†	55	4-Methylthiazole‡	76
Benzophenone†	55	Benzofuran‡	74
Anthraquinone†	55	Ethyl 2-furoate‡	74
1,5-Dihydroxyanthraquinone†	55	2-Acetylfuran‡	74
o-Hydroxybiphenyl†	55		

* A polymeric solid was formed.

† The starting material was recovered or a polymeric solid was formed.

‡ The starting material was recovered.

CHAPTER 3

THE BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

C. H. HASSALL

University College of the West Indies, Jamaica

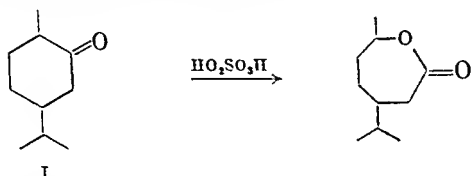
CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	74
MECHANISM OF THE REACTION.	74
SCOPE OF THE REACTION	76
Saturated Aliphatic Ketones	76
Alicyclic Ketones	78
Aromatic Ketones	80
α,β -Unsaturated Ketones	81
Polycarbonyl Compounds	82
Aldehydes	84
Side Reactions	86
SELECTION OF EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS	87
Peroxides	87
Hydrogen Peroxide	90
Persulfuric Acid	90
Perbenzoic Acid	90
Monoperphthalic Acid	91
Peracetic Acid	91
Solvents and Catalysts	91
Temperature and Time	92
EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES	92
Catechol	92
3,4-Dihydroxyphenanthrene	92
Phenyl <i>p</i> -Nitrobenzoate	93
Etiocholan-3 α ,12 α ,17 β -triol	93
Diphenic Acid	93
2-Acetoxyindan-1,3-dione	94
Lactone C ₂₁ H ₃₂ O ₄ from Isoandrosterone Acetate	94
TABULAR SURVEY OF THE BAEYER-VILLIGER REACTION	94
Table I. Oxidation of Saturated Aliphatic Ketones	95
Table II. Oxidation of Alicyclic Ketones	96

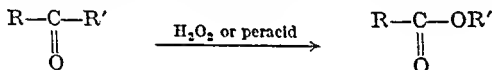
	PAGE
Table III. Oxidation of Aliphatic Aromatic, Alicyclic Aromatic, Aromatic, and Heterocyclic Ketones	98
Table IV. Oxidation of α,β -Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds	100
Table V. Oxidation of Polycarbonyl Compounds	101
Table VI. Oxidation of Aldehydes	103

INTRODUCTION

In 1899, Baeyer and Villiger¹ showed that the oxidation of the alicyclic ketones menthone, tetrahydrocarvone (I), and camphor with permonosulfuric acid led to the formation of lactones.



Further studies, using a variety of ketones or aldehydes and hydrogen peroxide or peracids in various media, have established that the oxidation represented by the following equation is of wide applicability.



This oxidation, the Baeyer-Villiger reaction, is the subject of this review. As the oxidation normally employs mild conditions, gives reasonable yields, and shows a high degree of selectivity, it has proved useful in a variety of both synthetic and degradative studies. Recent investigations have led to a better definition of favorable experimental conditions and have extended appreciably the scope of the reaction.

MECHANISM OF THE REACTION

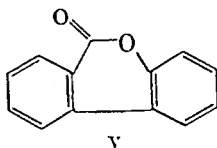
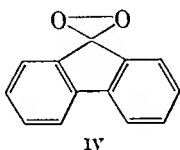
It is now generally agreed that the Baeyer-Villiger reaction is ionic in character. The favored reaction pattern was first outlined by Criegee in 1948.² It assumes that in the first instance addition of the peroxide to the carbonyl group yields a hydroxyperoxide (A). This dissociates to give an electron-deficient ion (B), which rearranges to C with cleavage of a carbon-carbon bond. The postulated carbonium ion C decomposes to the ester D in a normal way.

This mechanism has recently been the subject of detailed discussion by a number of authors.³⁻⁹ The scheme accounts for the observation that in the oxidation of substituted acetophenones with perbenzoic acid the

¹ Baeyer and Villiger, *Ber.*, **32**, 3625 (1899).

² Criegee, *Ann.*, **560**, 127 (1948).

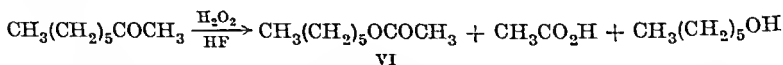
supported by the observation that fluorenone peroxide, formulated as IV, rearranged to the lactone V on heating.¹⁴ There is now evidence that fluorenone peroxide is a molecular complex of fluorenone and fluorenone hydroperoxide.¹⁵ There is no evidence for the existence of stable "oxoxides."



It has been postulated that hydroxyl radicals may participate in the oxidation by interacting with the enolic form of the ketone.¹⁶ It is unlikely that such a step is involved in the Baeyer-Villiger reaction, as many ketones that are not capable of enolization undergo the reaction. Also, in cases where it is established that attack on enols takes place, hydroxylation and not Baeyer-Villiger oxidation occurs.¹⁷ It has been shown that unsaturated ketones may undergo Baeyer-Villiger oxidation without the olefinic bonds being attacked.¹⁸ This would not be expected if free hydroxyl radicals were involved.¹⁹

SCOPE OF THE REACTION

Saturated Aliphatic Ketones. There is only one example of the Baeyer-Villiger oxidation of a simple ketone of the type $\text{RCH}_2\text{COCH}_2\text{R}'$ to an ester. Methyl *n*-hexyl ketone gives *n*-hexyl acetate (VI) and its hydrolysis products on treatment with hydrogen peroxide in hydrofluoric acid.²⁰



It has been shown that hydrogen peroxide in the presence of sulfuric acid may oxidize such ketones to ketone peroxides and α -ketols.²¹ Perbenzoic acid is said to have no significant action.²² However, as peracids have not yet been used under the most favorable conditions there is no decisive evidence that they will not react with these simple ketones.

¹⁴ Wittig and Pieper, *Ber.*, **73**, 295 (1940).

¹⁵ Criegee, Schnorrenberg, and Beeke, *Ann.*, **565**, 7 (1949).

¹⁶ Böseken, *Proc. Acad. Sci. Amsterdam*, **33**, 134 (1930) [*C. A.*, **24**, 3806 (1930)].

¹⁷ Kritchevsky and Gallagher, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **179**, 507 (1949).

¹⁸ Karrer and Schneider, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **30**, 859 (1947).

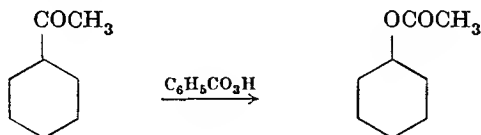
¹⁹ Baxendale, Evans, and Park, *Trans. Faraday Soc.*, **42**, 155 (1946).

²⁰ Hudleky, *Chem. Listy*, **45**, 380 (1952) [*C. A.*, **47**, 8012 (1953)].

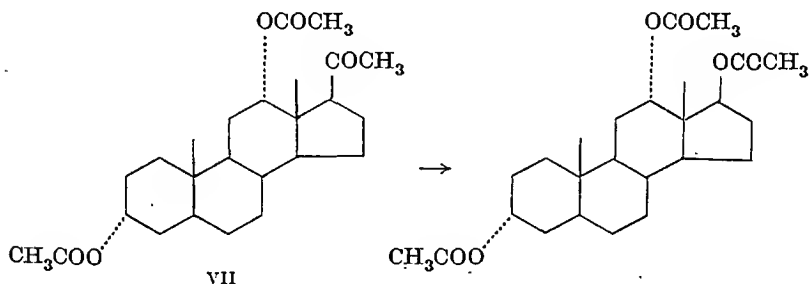
²¹ Pastureau, *Compt. rend.*, **140**, 1592 (1905); *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] **5**, 227 (1909).

²² Baeyer and Villiger, *Ber.*, **33**, 1569 (1900).

When ketones with the carbonyl group attached to at least one secondary carbon atom are treated with peracids, esters are formed. The secondary grouping rearranges in preference to a primary one. In the series of alicyclic methyl ketones from methyl cyclobutyl ketone to methyl cycloheptyl ketone, oxidation with perbenzoic acid gives yields of acetates ranging from 58 to 78%.²³



Steroid alcohols with the hydroxyl group attached to C-17 may be prepared conveniently by the Baeyer-Villiger oxidation of 20-keto steroids, such as pregnan-3 α ,12 α -diol-20-one diacetate (VII).



This method was first applied using persulfuric acid,²⁴ but low yields were sometimes obtained,²⁵ and alternative procedures for the preparation of C-17 alcohols appeared preferable.²⁶ However, it has been found that perbenzoic acid and monopero-phthalic acid give higher yields, particularly when acid catalysts are present.^{27, 28} Also, unlike the alternative procedures, which involve ozonization or nitrosation, the reaction may be applied to unsaturated ketones such as pregnenolone.

The oxidation has been used as the key step in a degradation of sarsapogenin (VIII) to pregnan-3,16,20-triol (IX).²⁹

²³ Friess and Pinson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 1302 (1952).

²⁴ Marker and co-workers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 650, 2543, 2621, 3003 (1940).

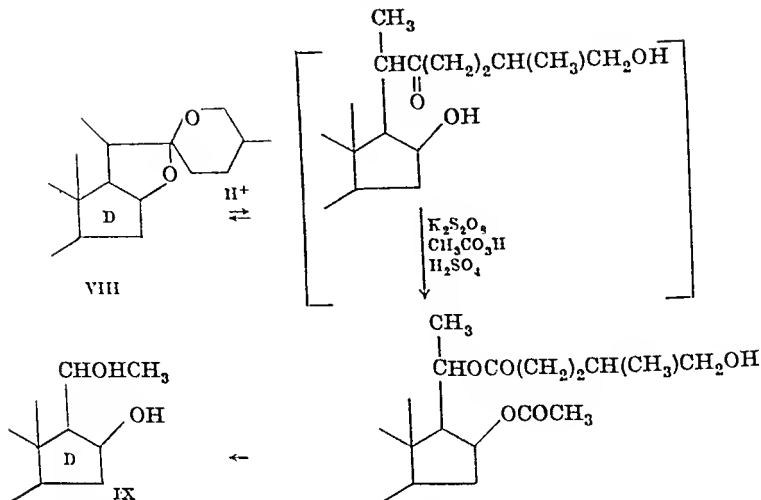
²⁵ Koechlin and Reichstein, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **27**, 549 (1944).

²⁶ Fieser and Fieser, *Natural Products Related to Phenanthrene*, 3rd ed., p. 400, Reinhold Publishing Corp., 1949.

²⁷ Sarett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 2899 (1947).

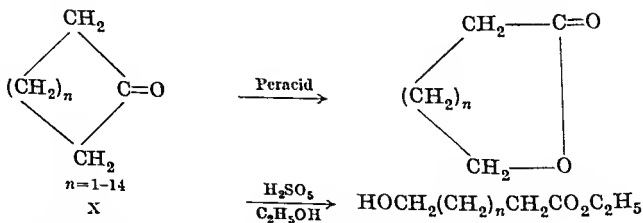
²⁸ Wieland and Miescher, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **32**, 1768 (1949).

²⁹ Marker, Rohrmann, Crooks, Whittle, Jones, and Turner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 525 (1940).



The value of the Baeyer-Villiger reaction in this series is enhanced by decisive evidence that rearrangement occurs with retention of configuration.^{7, 30, 31} This fact has been utilized in the preparation of 2-decalols and C-17 hydroxy steroids of definite configuration.³²

Alicyclic Ketones. Alicyclic ketones ranging from cyclobutanone to cycloheptadecanone (X , $n = 14$)^{5, 33, 34} have been oxidized under Baeyer-Villiger conditions. The reaction provides a convenient method for determining structure and for preparing relatively inaccessible lactones and hydroxy acids. When persulfuric acid or hydrogen peroxide-hydrofluoric acid²⁰ is used for the oxidation, polyesters of the hydroxy acids are obtained. The ethyl esters of the simple hydroxy acids are formed when ethanol is present.³⁵ Organic peracids give excellent yields of lactones.



³⁰ Mislow and Brenner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 2319 (1953).

³¹ Gallagher and Kritschinsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 882 (1950).

³² Dauben and Hoerger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1505 (1951).

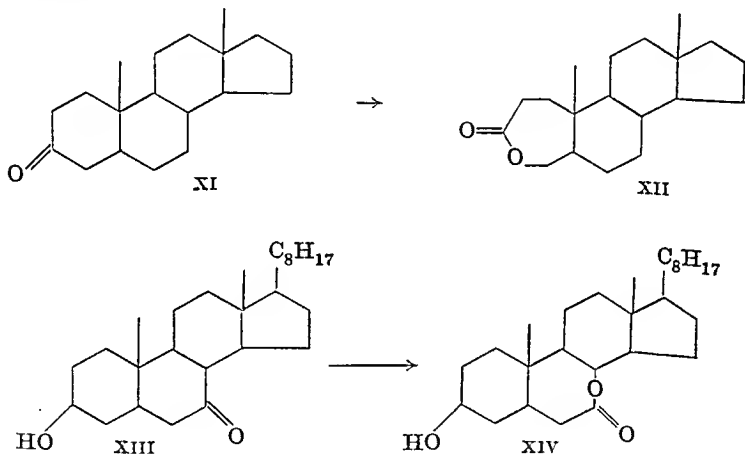
³³ Friess and Frankenburg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 2679 (1952).

³⁴ Ruzicka and Stoll, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **11**, 1159 (1928).

³⁵ Robinson and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 371.

The oxidation has also been carried out under alkaline conditions but the yields recorded are low.³⁶⁻³⁸

In the steroid series the procedure has been applied to compounds having carbonyl groups at C-3,^{28, 39-43} C-7,⁴⁴ and C-17.^{45, 46} It has been demonstrated that conditions suitable for the oxidation of such compounds do not lead to any action on C-11²⁷ or C-12⁴⁰ carbonyl groups, although oxidation at C-12 does occur when a large excess of peracid is used. There is evidence that oxidation of the C-3 carbonyl group of cholestan-3-one and coprostan-3-one with persulfuric acid is inhibited by the presence of bromine in the 2- or 4-positions,⁴⁷ but that is not the case when excess perbenzoic acid is employed.²⁸ The oxidation of androstan-3-one (XI) gives the lactone XII.⁴³ 7-Ketocholestan-3 β -ol (XIII) is oxidized to the lactone XIV.⁴⁴



In the oxidation of 17-keto steroids there is some doubt as to which bond adjacent to the carbonyl group is broken, but the evidence available favors the formulation XV for the lactone.⁴⁶

³⁶ Westerfield, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **143**, 177 (1942).

³⁷ Fling, Minard, and Fox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 2467 (1947).

³⁸ Heine and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1361 (1951).

³⁹ Gardner and Godden, *Biochem. J.*, **7**, 588 (1913).

⁴⁰ Bueckhardt and Reichstein, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **25**, 1434 (1942).

⁴¹ Ruzicka, Prelog, and Meister, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **28**, 1651 (1945).

⁴² Salamon, *Z. physiol. Chem.*, **272**, 61 (1941).

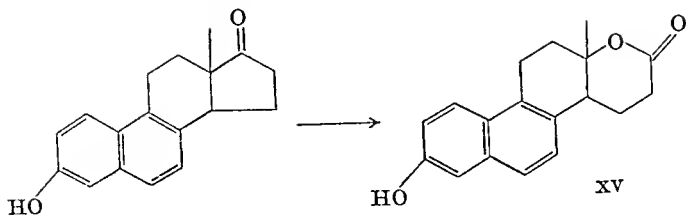
⁴³ Prelog, Ruzicka, Meister, and Wieland, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **28**, 618, 1651 (1945).

⁴⁴ Heusser, Segrè, and Plattner, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **31**, 1183 (1948).

⁴⁵ Jacobsen, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **171**, 61 (1947).

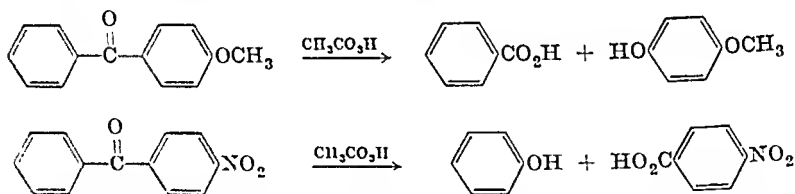
⁴⁶ Picha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 703 (1952).

⁴⁷ Marker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 2543 (1940).

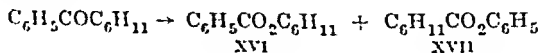


Aromatic Ketones. The oxidation of diaryl ketones with peracids regularly leads to the formation of esters or their hydrolysis products. Although this reaction is of little value as a preparative procedure, it does provide a convenient means of establishing the structures of polysubstituted benzophenones and alkyl aryl ketones.⁴⁸ The method is less drastic and more specific than the degradation procedures involving alkali fusion⁴⁹ or acid hydrolysis⁵⁰ that have been applied to natural products.

In the cleavage of unsymmetrical ketones the migrating group is normally the more electron-releasing one. Substituents in the aromatic nuclei influence the course of reaction in a manner similar to that observed in normal nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Thus treatment of *p*-methoxybenzophenone with peracetic acid gives benzoic acid and hydroquinone monomethyl ether, while cleavage of *p*-nitrobenzophenone gives *p*-nitrobenzoic acid and phenol exclusively.⁴



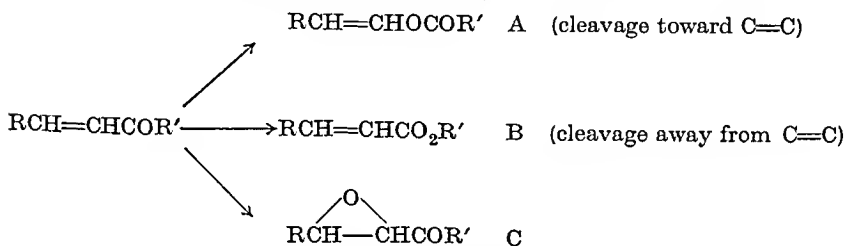
Insufficient information is available to make it possible to predict the course of reaction of alkyl aryl ketones with certainty. Treatment with peracids and hydrogen peroxide in acid or neutral solution may lead to the migration of either the aromatic or the aliphatic group.¹⁰ Thus, with peracetic acid, acetophenone gives a mixture of esters,⁴ and cyclohexyl phenyl ketone gives esters XVI and XVII in the approximate proportion of 5 : 1.²¹



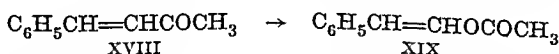
However, in one study of the oxidation of *meta*- and *para*-substituted acetophenones with perbenzoic acid, acetates alone were obtained in good yields.¹⁰

Alkyl aryl ketones containing hydroxyl groups in the *ortho* or *para* position are converted to polyhydric phenols by hydrogen peroxide in alkaline solution. The yields are poor.⁵²

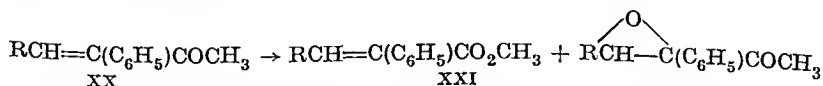
α,β -Unsaturated Ketones. The application of the Baeyer-Villiger reaction to this group of compounds should lead to reaction according to either A or B. Another possibility is preferential attack at the olefinic linkage leading to an α,β -epoxyketone (C).



Although only a limited number of cases have been studied, examples of the formation of all three types of compound are available. The oxidation of benzalacetone (XVIII) with peracetic acid leads exclusively to the ester XIX.⁵³



An α -phenyl- α,β -unsaturated ketone (XX) gives a mixture of epoxyketone and the ester XXI.⁵⁴



Oxidation of Δ^{16-20} -ketosteroids with perbenzoic acid leads to preferential attack at the olefinic linkage. Pregna-5,6-dien-3 β -ol-20-one acetate has been converted in this way to 16,17-epoxypregna-5-en-3 β -ol-20-one acetate, a useful intermediate in the preparation of 17 α -hydroxyprogesterone.⁵⁵

When α,β -unsaturated ketones are treated with hydrogen peroxide in alkaline solution, epoxyketones are formed.⁵⁶⁻⁵⁸ There is no evidence of the Baeyer-Villiger reaction occurring under these conditions.

⁵² Dakin, *Am. Chem. J.*, **42**, 474 (1909).

⁵³ Böseken and Soesman, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **52**, 874 (1933).

⁵⁴ Wenkert and Rubin, *Nature*, **170**, 708 (1952).

⁵⁵ Julian, Meyer, and Ryden, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 367 (1950).

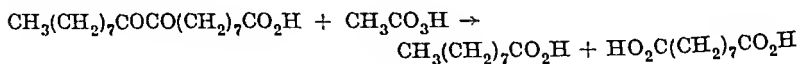
⁵⁶ Kohler, Richtmeyer, and Hester, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **53**, 213 (1931).

⁵⁷ Fieser and co-workers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **61**, 3216 (1939); **62**, 2866 (1940).

⁵⁸ Barkley, Farrar, Knowles, and Raffelson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 4110 (1953).

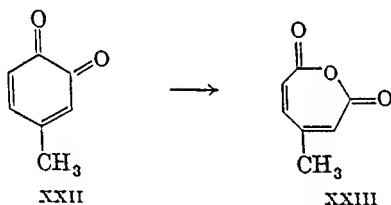
Polycarbonyl Compounds. α -Diketones and α -keto acids react readily with Baeyer-Villiger reagents.⁵⁹⁻⁶⁴ In inert solvents anhydrides are formed,⁶⁵⁻⁶⁷ while in alkaline or acidic media simple carboxylic acids are generally produced in good yields. It would appear from some comparisons of conditions that higher yields are obtained when the oxidations are conducted in alkaline solution.⁶⁸

The oxidation has been used in establishing structure and in the preparation of relatively inaccessible carboxylic acids. As typical examples, 9,10-diketostearic acid is converted quantitatively to azelaic and pclargonic acid,⁶¹

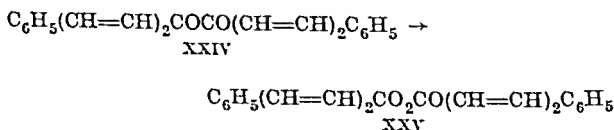


and phenanthraquinone forms diphenic acid.^{69, 70}

Unsaturated α -diketones react in a similar manner. Treatment of 4-methyl-*o*-benzoquinone (XXII) with monoperphthalic acid gives β -methylmuconic anhydride XXIII.⁶⁵



Dicinnamylidenchiacetyl (XXIV) is oxidized to the anhydride XXV,⁶⁵



⁵⁹ French and Sears, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 1279 (1948).

⁶⁰ Holleman, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **23**, 170 (1904).

⁶¹ Boeseken and Sloof, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **49**, 91 (1930).

⁶² Reiser, *Ber.*, **30**, 1041 (1897).

⁶³ Weitz and Scheffer, *Ber.*, **54**, 2327 (1921).

⁶⁴ Bjorklund and Hatcher, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Can.*, (III), **44**, 25 (1950) [*C. A.*, **45**, 7951 (1951)].

⁶⁵ Karrer, Schwyzer, and Neuwirth, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **31**, 1210 (1948).

⁶⁶ Karrer, Cochand, and Neuss, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **29**, 1836 (1946).

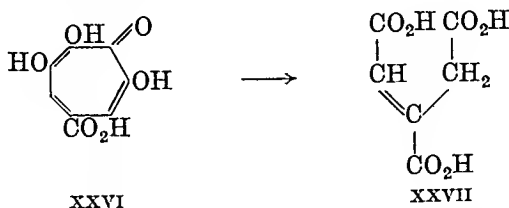
⁶⁷ Karrer and Hohl, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **32**, 1932 (1949).

⁶⁸ Meyer, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **30**, 1970 (1947).

⁶⁹ Linatend and Walpole, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1939**, 855.

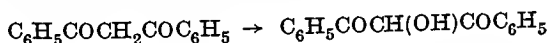
⁷⁰ Perkin, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, **23**, 166 (1907).

and puberulic acid (XXVI), presumably reacting through the keto form, is oxidized to aconitic acid (XXVII),⁷¹

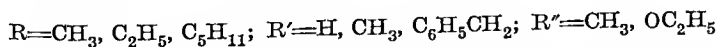
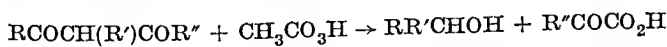


The oxidation of α -diketones normally involves cleavage between the carbonyl groups. However, it has been shown that the reaction of 2,2',4,4'-tetranitrobenzil with alkaline hydrogen peroxide gives 2,4-dinitrophenol and not 2,4-dinitrobenzoic acid which is formed in an acidic medium.⁷²

The oxidation of 1,3-diketones and β -keto acids with peracids does not follow the normal pattern of the Bacyer-Villiger reaction. Treatment of dibenzoylmethane derivatives with perbenzoic acid leads to the formation of the corresponding dibenzoylcarbinols.⁷³⁻⁷⁶



In an earlier study⁷⁷ it was found that an equimolecular amount of peracetic acid oxidized 1,3-diketones or β -keto acids to an acid and an alcohol. With excess peracetic acid a mixture of acids is formed. The first reaction was interpreted as involving migration of the group R' lying between the carbonyl groups.



When β -triketones such as 2-acetyllindan-1,3-dione (XXVIII) are treated with hydrogen peroxide in diethyl ether there is preferential oxidation of the acyl side chain leading to the formation of an ester (XXIX).⁷⁸ In acidic or alkaline media, hydrogen peroxide oxidizes 2-acetyllindan-1,3-dione to a mixture of acetic and phthalic acids.

⁷¹ Corbett, Hassall, Johnson, and Todd, *Chemistry & Industry*, 1949, 626.

⁷² Blatt and Rytina, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 403 (1950).

⁷³ Blatt and Hawkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 81 (1936).

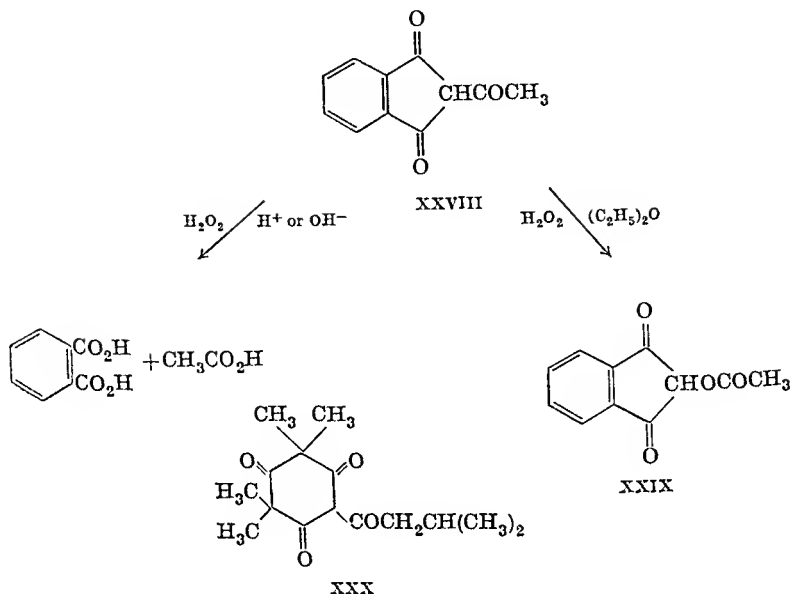
⁷⁴ Karrer, Albers-Schonberg, and Kehrle, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **35**, 1498 (1952).

⁷⁵ Karrer, Kehrle, and Thakkar, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **33**, 1711 (1950).

⁷⁶ Karrer, Kehrle, and Albers-Schonberg, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **34**, 1014 (1951).

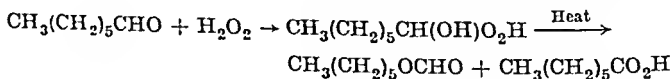
⁷⁷ Böeseken and Jacobs, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **55**, 804 (1936).

⁷⁸ Hassall, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1948, 50.



The Baeyer-Villiger reaction has been used in the elucidation of the structure of the natural product leptospermone (XXX).⁷⁹

Aldehydes. Peroxides generally convert both aliphatic and aromatic aldehydes to carboxylic acids.⁸⁰⁻⁸³ Hydrogen peroxide reacts with aliphatic aldehydes in neutral media to give hydroxyhydroperoxides.^{84, 11} It is significant, however, that such peroxides rearrange readily on heating to give a mixture of the corresponding carboxylic acid and the formate of the next lower alcohol. This behavior suggests that the oxidation of aldehydes with peroxides normally follows the Baeyer-Villiger pattern.



The oxidation of citral (XXXI) to the lower aldehyde XXXII is an example of a similar course of reaction.⁸⁵

⁷⁹ Briggs, Hassall, and Short, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1945, 706.

⁸⁰ D'Ans and Kneip, *Ber.*, 48, 1136 (1915).

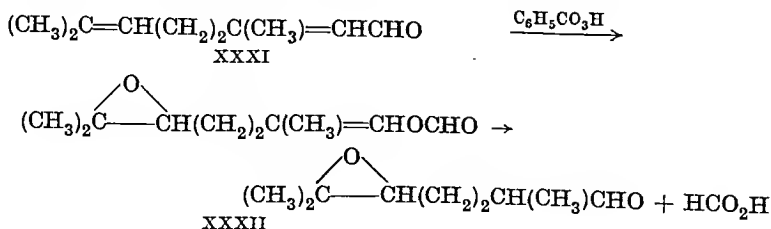
⁸¹ Wieland and Richter, *Ann.* 495, 284 (1932).

⁸² Lyubarskii and Kagan, *J. Phys. Chem.*, 39, 847 (1935).

⁸³ Ross, Gebhart, and Gerecht, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 67, 1275 (1945).

⁸⁴ Ruche, *Alkylperoxyde und Ozonide*, p. 36, Steinkopf, Leipzig, 1931.

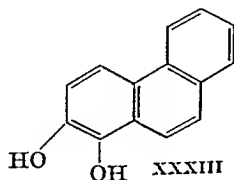
⁸⁵ Pribrjaff, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] 42, 657 (1927).



The oxidation of aliphatic aldehydes with hydrogen peroxide in acid and alkaline solution occasionally leads to the formation of hydrogen and hydrocarbons in addition to carboxylic acids.⁸⁶⁻⁸⁹ Such reactions appear to involve a radical mechanism in addition to the normal ionic process.

Aromatic aldehydes have been oxidized with peroxides in a variety of media. In neutral or acid solution the action of peracids and hydrogen peroxide resembles that with alkyl aryl ketones under similar conditions.^{90, 91} Benzaldehyde reacts with hydrogen peroxide in ether to give benzoic acid and only traces of phenol.⁹² In aldehydes with electron-releasing substituents such as alkoxy, hydroxyl, and amino⁹³ in the *ortho* or *para* positions, the formyl group tends to migrate, producing formates or phenols according to the conditions employed.

The oxidation of aromatic aldehydes in alkaline solution was first studied by Dakin,⁵² who indicated that the reaction occurred only when hydroxyl groups were present in the *ortho* or *para* positions. In such cases good yields of polyhydric phenols are obtained through the replacement of formyl by hydroxyl groupings. As Table VI indicates, the Dakin procedure has been applied successfully to a variety of substituted phenolic aldehydes. It has been used for the synthesis of phenols such as morphol⁹⁴ (XXXIII) which are not readily accessible by other means.



⁸⁶ Payne and Lemon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 226 (1941).

⁸⁷ Fry and Payne, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **53**, 1973 (1931).

⁸⁸ Bezzi, *Gazz. chim. ital.*, **63**, 345 (1933).

⁸⁹ Bach and Generosov, *Ber.*, **55**, 3560 (1922).

⁹⁰ Böseken and Greup, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **58**, 528 (1939).

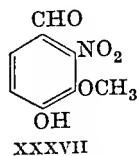
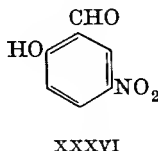
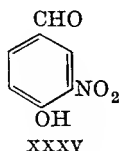
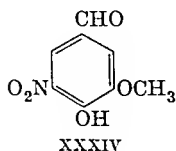
⁹¹ Waack and Bezar, *Ber.*, **74**, 845 (1941).

⁹² Späth, Pailer, and Gergeley, *Ber.*, **73**, 935 (1940).

⁹³ Bamberger, *Ber.*, **36**, 2042 (1903).

⁹⁴ Barger, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **113**, 218 (1918).

It is of interest that the aldehydes XXXIV and XXXV, in which there is a nitro group *ortho* to the hydroxyl, are not attacked, while the aldehydes XXXVI and XXXVII react in the normal way.⁵² The inhibiting effect



is probably due to intramolecular hydrogen bonding. It has been suggested that the Dakin oxidation follows a different course from the Baeyer-Villiger reaction,⁹⁵ but this has not been substantiated.⁹¹

Side Reactions. Structural elements other than carbonyl groups may be attacked under the conditions used for the Baeyer-Villiger reaction. The susceptibility of olefinic linkages to oxidation by peracids is well known.⁹⁶ Aromatic hydrocarbons, such as mesitylene,⁹⁷ methylcholanthrene, and benzpyrene,⁹⁸ which are particularly sensitive to attack by electrophilic reagents, may be oxidized preferentially. The reactivity of other groupings was reviewed in 1949.⁹⁹

There are some isolated examples of oxidation of the normal products of reaction by Baeyer-Villiger reagents. For example, phenols may react with peracids,¹⁰⁰⁻¹⁰² and demethylation of aromatic ethers may occur.¹⁰² Catechols and hydroquinones may be oxidized through quinones⁷⁰ to carboxylic acids.^{103, 104} However, if a large excess of reagent is avoided it is generally possible to obtain substantial yields of phenols from Baeyer-Villiger reactions.⁴⁸ In one example of the Dakin reaction, the oxidation of 2-hydroxy-5-methoxybenzaldehyde, the formation of an unidentified, abnormal product has been reported.¹⁰⁵

There is evidence, in two cases, of oxidation of secondary alcohols by the action of excess peracetic acid. When 1,3-diketones react with excess of this peracid, a ketone is obtained in the place of the secondary alcohol produced with an equimolar amount.⁷⁷ The steroid hydroxy ketone

⁹⁵ Wacek and Eppinger, *Ber.*, 73, 644 (1940).

⁹⁶ Swern, *Org. Reactions*, 7, 378 (1953).

⁹⁷ Fries and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 2611 (1950).

⁹⁸ Eckhardt, *Ber.*, 73, 13 (1940).

⁹⁹ Swern, *Chem. Revs.*, 45, 1 (1949).

¹⁰⁰ Boswelen and Engelberts, *Proc. Acad. Sci. Amsterdam*, 34, 1292 (1931) [*C. A.*, 26, 2970 (1932)].

¹⁰¹ Fernholz, *Chem. Ber.*, 84, 110 (1951).

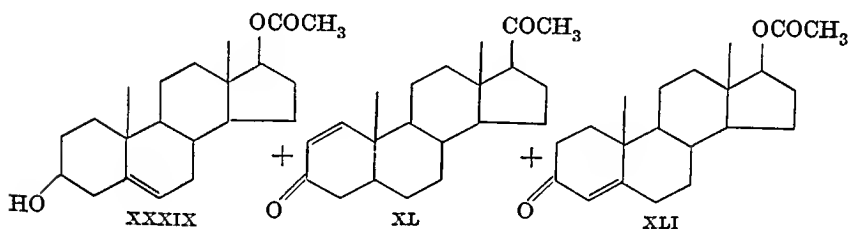
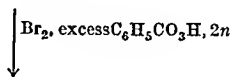
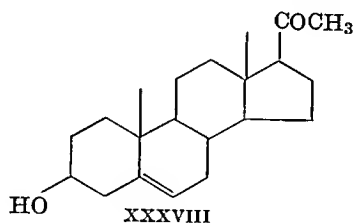
¹⁰² Fries, Soloway, Morse, and Ingersoll, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 74, 1305 (1952).

¹⁰³ Wacek and Fiedler, *Monatsh.*, 80, 170 (1949).

¹⁰⁴ Weitz, Schobert, and Seibert, *Ber.*, 68, 1163 (1935).

¹⁰⁵ Rosenblatt and Rosenthal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 75, 4607 (1953).

XXXVIII is oxidized with excess peracetic acid to the diketone XL and to XLI in addition to the normal product XXXIX.²⁸ The rearrangement of the double bond from the β,γ to the α,β position resembles that observed in other oxidations of Δ^5 -3-hydroxy steroids.¹⁰⁶ The oxidation of *allo*-



pregnan-20-one with persulfuric acid gives, in addition to the normal product androstan-17 β -ol, a significant yield of *allopregnan*-21-ol-20-one.⁴⁷ This arises from the action of the peracid on the enolic form of the C-20 keto group.¹⁸

SELECTION OF EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS

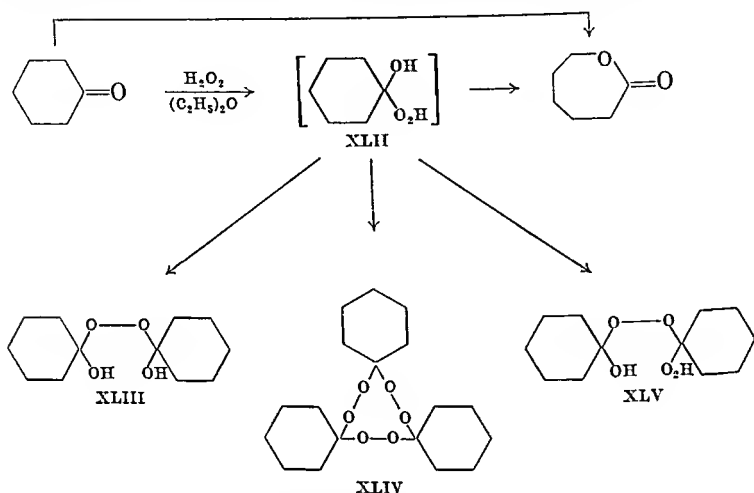
Peroxides. Hydrogen peroxide, permono- and perdi-sulfuric acid, peracetic acid, perbenzoic acid, and monoperphthalic acid have all been used as reagents in the Baeyer-Villiger reaction. Although there is little precise information on the relative efficiencies of these peroxides, there is sufficient evidence to permit some general conclusions.

Hydrogen peroxide in dilute acid or in neutral solution sometimes converts carbonyl compounds to normal Baeyer-Villiger oxidation products, but more frequently hydroxyhydroperoxides and their condensation products are formed. The simple and condensed peroxides XLII-XLV are produced by the action of hydrogen peroxide in diethyl ether on cyclohexanone.^{107, 15} Similar compounds are formed from aliphatic aldehydes¹¹

¹⁰⁶ Djerassi, *Org. Reactions*, **6**, 212 (1951).

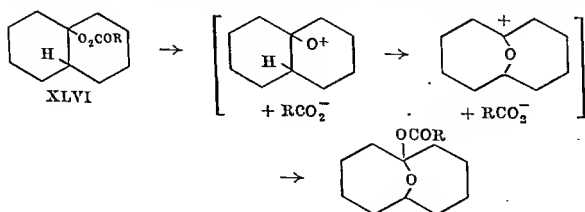
¹⁰⁷ Milas and Panagiotakos, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **61**, 2430 (1939).

and fluorenone¹⁴ under these conditions, although normal Baeyer-Villiger oxidation products are obtained without difficulty when peracids are used.



From these observations and the fact that the peroxides of cyclohexanone, fluorenone, and aliphatic aldehydes are converted by heating or by treatment with acids to the Baeyer-Villiger reaction products, it appears that hydrogen peroxide in ether or dilute acid is less effective since it does not favor the dissociation and rearrangement steps postulated for the Baeyer-Villiger reaction (p. 75).

In the related rearrangement of esters of the hydroperoxide formed from decahydronaphthalene (XLVI),² the dissociation step is influenced both by hydrogen-ion catalysis and by the nature of the acyl group RCO. The



acetate and benzoate rearrange readily on warming. The *p*-nitrobenzoate rearranges more readily than the benzoate, and all attempts to prepare the trichloroacetate lead to the rearrangement product. By analogy, it may be expected that the Baeyer-Villiger reaction is favored by conditions leading to the formation of peroxide esters of relatively strong acids. There is little evidence on this point, but the fact that the organic peracids

have proved more generally useful than hydrogen peroxide is in agreement with this view. The more limited applicability of the persulfuric acids is to be attributed in part to the fact that their use in aqueous solution favors the formation of peroxides. Though persulfuric acids and their salts have been used successfully in non-aqueous media, organic peracids are more convenient.

Hydrogen peroxide in alkaline solution differs in reactivity from other Baeyer-Villiger reagents. In the Dakin reaction and the cleavage of α -diketones, alkaline conditions are to be preferred. With α,β -unsaturated ketones, however, these conditions lead exclusively to epoxyketones rather than Baeyer-Villiger reaction products. There has been a useful study of the kinetic course of the oxidation of mesityl oxide and of ethylideneacetone by hydrogen peroxide in an alkaline medium.^{107a} It would be desirable to obtain further information on the course and kinetics of reactions involving alkaline hydrogen peroxide.

In all peroxide oxidations of new compounds the possibility of reactions occurring with explosive violence must be considered. Trial experiments should be carried out using small quantities of material. Large excesses of reagents should be avoided, and if significant quantities of unconsumed peroxides remain at the end of the reaction they should be destroyed by reducing agents such as sodium bisulfite or ferrous sulfate before isolation of the products is attempted.

It is generally possible to follow the course of the Baeyer-Villiger reaction by estimating the active oxygen at intervals. Blank determinations should be carried out, particularly when long reaction times are involved, as the reagents may decompose under the conditions of the experiment. Information on conditions influencing the stability of peroxides is included in reviews on the general properties of hydrogen peroxide¹⁰⁸⁻¹¹⁰ and peracids.⁹⁹ In addition to temperature and pH, such factors as intensity of illumination, solvent polarity, and trace-metal impurities may play an important role.¹¹¹⁻¹¹³

The following procedures are convenient for the preparation of the peroxides used in the Baeyer-Villiger reaction. Further information on methods of preparation of organic peracids is included in reviews,^{96, 99, 114} and also procedures for the analysis of peroxides have been summarized.¹¹⁵

^{107a} Bunton and Minkoff, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 665.

¹⁰⁸ Shanley and Greenspan, *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, **39**, 1536 (1947).

¹⁰⁹ Medard, *Compt. rend.*, **222**, 1491 (1946).

¹¹⁰ Schumb, *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, **41**, 992 (1949).

¹¹¹ Böeseken and Blumberger, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **44**, 90 (1925).

¹¹² Calderwood and Lane, *J. Phys. Chem.*, **45**, 108 (1941).

¹¹³ Meerwein, Ogait, Prang, and Serini, *J. prakt. Chem.*, **113**, 9 (1926).

¹¹⁴ Criegee, *Fortschr. chem. Forsch.*, **1**, 508 (1950).

¹¹⁵ Swern, *Org. Reactions*, **7**, 392 (1953).

Hydrogen Peroxide. In alkaline solution, hydrogen peroxide decomposes relatively rapidly and is particularly sensitive to impurities.¹⁰⁸ These facts must be taken into consideration to ensure that a sufficient excess of reagent is available. The majority of Baeyer-Villiger oxidations involving alkaline hydrogen peroxide employ dilute sodium hydroxide in slight excess of the amount required to keep the reactants and products in solution. Ammonium hydroxide⁵² and potassium bicarbonate⁶⁸ have also been used, and pyridine has been added in reactions in which the sodium salt of the starting material is relatively insoluble in water.^{79, 94}

Hydrogen peroxide in ether is conveniently prepared by shaking 50 g. of 30% hydrogen peroxide with five 100-ml. portions of diethyl ether. The ether extract is dried first with sodium sulfate and then with calcium chloride. It contains approximately 2% hydrogen peroxide. A more concentrated solution (4-6%) may be obtained by evaporation of ether from the dilute solution at room temperature under reduced pressure.⁹² The concentration of hydrogen peroxide may be determined iodimetrically. Ceric sulfate is used for the titration of hydrogen peroxide when aldehydes are present.^{86, 116}

Hydrogen peroxide has also been used in acetone,⁹⁵ in formic acid-chloroform,¹¹⁷ and in acetic acid.¹¹⁸ It has been shown in the oxidation of androsterone acetate that a dilute solution of peracetic acid in glacial acetic acid is preferable to hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid.¹¹⁹

Persulfuric Acid. Baeyer and Villiger's "dry reagent" is prepared by mixing 10 g. of potassium persulfate with 11 g. of concentrated sulfuric acid in a mortar, adding 30 g. of potassium sulfate, and grinding the mixture to a fine powder.¹ This reagent is stable in the absence of moisture.

Oxidations have been carried out using suspensions of the dry reagent¹ or solutions of persulfuric acid in glacial acetic acid,⁴⁷ in concentrated and dilute sulfuric acid, in petroleum ether,³⁴ and in ethanol-sulfuric acid.³⁵ Methods for the estimation of permono- and perdisulfuric acid have been described.^{120, 121}

Perbenzoic Acid. Details of the preparation of this acid are given in *Organic Reactions*.¹²² A product of 99.7% purity is prepared by vacuum sublimation of crude material at 40°.¹²³

¹¹⁶ Willard and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 3260 (1933).

¹¹⁷ Prelog and Kocor, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **31**, 237 (1948).

¹¹⁸ Mannich, *Ber.*, **74**, 1007 (1941).

¹¹⁹ Levy and Jacobsen, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **171**, 71 (1947).

¹²⁰ D'Ans and Friederich, *Ber.*, **43**, 1880 (1910).

¹²¹ Rius and Zulueta, *Anales real soc. españ. fís. y quim.*, **44B**, 923 (1948) [*C. A.*, **43**, 2121 (1949)].

¹²² Swern, *Org. Reactions*, **7**, 394 (1953).

¹²³ D'Ans, Mattner, and Busse, *Angew. Chem.*, **65**, 57 (1953).

a typical example, benzophenone is oxidized by peracetic acid in glacial acetic acid to phenyl acetate in 44% yield in one hundred and ninety-two hours, but when concentrated sulfuric acid (25%) is added 82% conversion occurs in thirty minutes.⁴

The oxidation of carbonyl compounds with peroxides in the presence of metal catalysts^{132, 133} does not appear to follow the same course as the Baeyer-Villiger reaction.

Temperature and Time. A wide range of temperatures has been employed in Baeyer-Villiger oxidations. In some earlier applications of the reaction the carbonyl compounds were heated under reflux with peroxides in relatively high-boiling solvents. This is not to be recommended as a general procedure. Temperatures above 45° normally lead to excessive decomposition of peroxides, and under such conditions a large excess of reagent is required to replace the loss and may lead to oxidation of the normal products. There are exceptional cases involving the oxidation of aromatic aldehydes and ketones in which higher reaction temperatures have been used successfully, but in these oxidations short reaction times are involved.^{48, 94} The reaction is normally carried out at a temperature of 10–40°. Lower temperatures may lead to excessively long reaction times and to reduced yields.³⁵

When oxidations are carried out with organic peracids or hydrogen peroxide in neutral media, reaction times may vary from several hours to several weeks, according to the molecular species. As a typical example, oxidation of 3-ketosteroids with perbenzoic acid in chloroform is complete in sixteen hours at 16°, although under the same conditions 20-ketosteroids require seven to ten days for cleavage.²⁷

In general, relatively short reaction times are required when oxidations are carried out in alkaline or strongly acidic media.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

The following examples illustrate typical procedures for the Baeyer-Villiger reaction.

Catechol (Dakin modification using hydrogen peroxide and sodium hydroxide solution). Detailed directions for the preparation of catechol from salicylaldehyde (69–73%)¹³⁴ and for a similar preparation of 3-methoxycatechol¹³⁵ are given in *Organic Syntheses*.

3,4-Dihydroxyphenanthrene (Dakin modification using alkaline hydrogen peroxide and pyridine).⁹⁴ A solution of 1.11 g. of 3-hydroxy-4-formylphenanthrene (5 millimoles) in 10 ml. of pyridine is placed in a

¹³² Treibs, *Ber.*, 72, 1194 (1939).

¹³³ Milas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 59, 2342 (1937).

¹³⁴ Dakin, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 1*, 149, 2nd ed., 1941.

¹³⁵ Surrey, *Org. Syntheses*, 28, 90 (1946).

25-ml. flask equipped with a dropping funnel and an exit tube. After the air has been displaced with hydrogen, 0.55 ml. of 30.8% hydrogen peroxide (50 millimoles) and 0.45 ml. of 12.5 *N* potassium hydroxide (5.6 millimoles) are added. The addition of potassium hydroxide causes a considerable rise in temperature. The solution is allowed to boil for a few seconds. It is then cooled, acidified with excess hydrochloric acid, and extracted with diethyl ether. The ether solution is washed with dilute hydrochloric acid to remove pyridine, dried, and evaporated. The crude residue (1.05 g.) is recrystallized from benzene and petroleum ether to yield 0.83 g. (80%) of pure 3,4-dihydroxyphenanthrene, m.p. 142–3°.

Phenyl *p*-Nitrobenzoate (Oxidation of a diaryl ketone using peracetic acid with sulfuric acid as catalyst).⁴ A solution of 4.54 g. of *p*-nitrobenzophenone (20 millimoles) in a mixture of 50 ml. of glacial acetic acid and 30 ml. of concentrated sulfuric acid is treated with external cooling with 8 ml. of 40% peracetic acid (40 millimoles). After thirty minutes at room temperature the mixture is neutralized with sodium carbonate solution and extracted with diethyl ether. The dried ether extract yields on evaporation 4.6 g. (95%) of phenyl *p*-nitrobenzoate, m.p. 128–130°.

Etiocholan-3 α ,12 α ,17 β -triol (Oxidation of a 20-keto steroid using perbenzoic acid with sulfuric acid as catalyst).²⁸ Ninety grams of 3 α ,12 α -diacetoxypregnan-20-one (0.22 mole) and 44 ml. of a 10% solution of sulfuric acid in glacial acetic acid are added separately with external cooling to 440 ml. of a chloroform solution containing 68.6 g. (0.49 mole) of perbenzoic acid. The solution is allowed to stand in the dark at room temperature for ten days. After dilution with diethyl ether, the mixture is washed in turn with water, dilute sodium carbonate solution, and water. The organic layer is dried, and the solvent is evaporated. The residue is saponified by boiling for one hour with a solution of 60 g. of sodium hydroxide in 850 ml. of methanol and 50 ml. of water. After much of the methanol has been removed by distillation under reduced pressure, sufficient ether is added to keep the product in solution. The ether solution is washed with water until neutral, dried, concentrated to 600 ml., and cooled to –10° to precipitate 46.3 g. of etiocholan-3 α ,12 α ,17 β -triol, m.p. 231–232°. Treatment of the concentrated mother liquor with Girard's Reagent P furnishes an additional 0.73 g. of the triol and 6.17 g. of starting material. The total yield of triol is 71%.

Diphenic Acid (Cleavage of an α -diketone using alkaline hydrogen peroxide).¹³⁶ A suspension of 1 g. of 9,10-phenanthraquinone (4.8 millimoles) in 20 ml. of 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide is mixed with 2.5 ml. of 27% hydrogen peroxide (19 millimoles) and allowed to stand with

¹³⁶ C. H. Hassall, unpublished observations.

occasional stirring at 30°. Further additions of 2.5 ml. of 27% hydrogen peroxide are made after six hours and again after an additional twelve hours. After a total of forty-eight hours the mixture is filtered from a trace of insoluble material and acidified. The precipitate of pure diphenic acid formed is collected on a filter, washed with water, and dried; the yield is 1.09 g. (94%), m.p., 229–230°.*

2-Acetoxyindan-1,3-dione (Selective oxidation of a triketomethane derivative using hydrogen peroxide in ether).⁷⁸ A solution containing 1 g. of 2-acetylindan-1,3-dione (5.3 millimoles) in 80 ml. of diethyl ether is treated with 12 ml. (18 millimoles) of 5% hydrogen peroxide in ether and allowed to stand in a closed flask at 15°. After twenty-one days the ether is evaporated. The residue is triturated with 3 ml. of water, filtered, and extracted with chloroform. The chloroform extract is filtered from a trace of phthalic acid and evaporated. The residue is crystallized twice from ethyl acetate-petroleum ether (40–60°) to give 0.70 g. (64%) of 2-acetoxyindan-1,3-dione, m.p. 96°.

Lactone $C_{21}H_{32}O_4$ from Isoandrosterone Acetate (Oxidation of a 17-keto steroid using peracetic acid with *p*-toluenesulfonic acid as catalyst).¹¹⁹ A solution of 0.274 g. of isoandrosterone acetate (0.83 millimole) in 2 ml. of glacial acetic acid, 5 ml. of 9.5% peracetic acid in acetic acid (6.75 millimoles), and 25 mg. of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid are mixed and allowed to stand for twenty-three hours at 35° in the dark. The mixture is then treated with a large excess of water which precipitates 0.252 g. (88%) of the crude lactone, m.p. 156–158.5°. This product is converted by one crystallization from benzene-neohexane to the pure lactone, $C_{21}H_{32}O_4$, m.p. 158–159.5°.

TABLE I
BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF SATURATED ALIPHATIC KETONES

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent*	Product	Yield, %	Reference
C_3H_7O Acetone	H_2SO_3	Acetone peroxide	65	138, 139, 140, 64
C_4H_8O Butanone	H_2O_2, H_2SO_4	Acetone peroxide, hydroxyacetone	—	21
$C_5H_{10}O$ Acetylcyclopropano	H_2O_2, H_2SO_4	Butanone peroxide, 3-hydroxybutanone	—	21, 140
$C_5H_{10}O$ 3-Pentanone	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	No reaction	—	141, 23
$C_6H_{12}O$ Acetylcyclobutane	H_2O_2, H_2SO_4	3-Pentanone peroxide, 2-hydroxypentan-3-one	—	21
$C_6H_{12}O$ Acetylcyclopentane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Cyclobutyl acetate	58	23
$C_7H_{14}O$ <i>cis</i> -1-Acetyl-2-methylcyclopentane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Cyclopentyl acetate	01	23
$C_8H_{16}O$ <i>trans</i> -1-Acetyl-2-methylcyclopentane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>cis</i> -2-Methylcyclopentyl acetate	60	7
$C_8H_{16}O$ Acetylcyclohexane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>trans</i> -2-Methylcyclopentyl acetate	64	7
$C_8H_{16}O$ 2-Octanone	H_2O_2, HF	Cyclohexyl acetate	67	141, 23
$C_9H_{18}O$ <i>cis</i> -1-Acetyl-2-methylcyclohexane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>n</i> -Hexyl acetate	51	20
$C_{10}H_{20}O$ <i>trans</i> -1-Acetyl-2-methylcyclohexane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>cis</i> -2-Methylcyclohexyl acetate	03	7
$C_{10}H_{20}O$ Acetylcycloheptane	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>trans</i> -2-Methylcyclohexyl acetate	55	7
$C_{11}H_{22}O$ 3-Phenylbutan-2-one	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Cycloheptyl acetate	09	23
$C_{12}H_{24}O$ <i>cis</i> - <i>cis</i> -Acetyldodecanaphthalene	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Phenylmethylphenyl acetate	87	30
$C_{13}H_{26}O$ Allopregnan-20-one	$IK_2S_2O_8, CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4$	<i>cis</i> - <i>cis</i> -Decalhydro-2-naphthol	65	32
$C_{17}H_{34}O$ Δ^5 -Pregnen-3 β -ol-20-one	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Allopregnan-21-ol-21-one acetate, androstan-17 β -ol	30-35	47
$C_{21}H_{42}O$ Δ^5 -Pregnen-3 β -ol-20-one acetate		Testosterone acetate, progesterone, Δ^5 -androsten-3 β ,17 β -diol 17-monooacetate	—	28
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Δ^5 -Pregnen-3 β -ol-20-one acetate		Δ^5 -Androsten-3 β ,17 β -diol	63	28, 47
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Pregnan-3 α -ol-11,20-dione acetate		Δ^5 -Androsten-3 β ,17 β -diol	60	28
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Allopregnan-3 β -ol-20-one acetate		Ethiocholan-3 α ,17 β -diol-11-one diacetate†	85	27
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Allopregnan-3 α -ol-20-one acetate		Androstan-3 β ,17 β -diol†	3	40
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Pregnan-3 α -ol-20-one acetate		Androstan-3 α ,17 β -diol diacetate†	—	142
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ 17-Isopregnan-3 α -ol-20-one acetate		Ethiocholan-3 α ,17 β -diol diacetate	52	31, 47
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Pregnan-3 α ,12 α -diol-20-one diacetate		Ethiocholan-3 α ,17 α -diol diacetate	53	31
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Pregnan-3 α -ol-11,20-dione benzoate		Ethiocholan-3 α ,12 α ,17 β -triol	77	28, 27
$C_{23}H_{46}O$ Pregnan-3 α -ol-11,20-dione benzoate		Ethiocholan-3 α ,17 β -diol-11-one 3-benzoate 17-acetate†	18	27

*References 138-164 are listed on p. 100.

• Where CH_3CO_2H is indicated, acetic acid is always present; where H_2SO_3 is shown, sulfurous acid is present; where $C_6H_5CO_2H$ is shown, chloroform is present.
† The configuration at C-17 assigned by the author has been changed. The correction follows from the unequivocal evidence, only available after the completion of the investigation, that the Baeyer-Villiger reaction occurs with retention of configuration.
‡ A catalytic amount of p - $CH_3C_6H_4SO_3H$ was added.
§ Catalytic amount.

TABLE III
BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF ALIPHATIC AROMATIC, ALICYCLIC AROMATIC, AROMATIC, AND HETEROCYCLIC KETONES

	Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
C_8H_7ClO C_8H_8O	<i>p</i> -Chloroacetophenone Acetophenone	$C_6H_5CO_2H$ CH_3CO_2H $C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>p</i> -Chlorophenyl acetate Phenyl acetate Phenyl acetate	57 33 63	10 48, 4 141
$C_8H_8O_2$	<i>o</i> -Hydroxyacetophenone <i>m</i> -Hydroxyacetophenone <i>p</i> -Hydroxyacetophenone	H_2O_2, NH_3 H_2O_2, NH_3 H_2O_2, NH_3	Catechol No reaction Hydroquinone	— — —	52 10-50 52
$C_8H_8O_3$	2,4-Dihydroxyacetophenone 2,5-Dihydroxyacetophenone	H_2O_2, NH_3 CH_3CO_2H	Hydroxyhydroquinone Hydroxyhydroquinone	— —	52 52
$C_9H_7O_2Cl$	2-Methoxy-4-chloroacetophenone	CH_3CO_2H	4-Methoxy-1-chlorophenyl acetate, 5-chloroquinol	60 Trace	18
$C_9H_{10}O$	<i>p</i> -Methylacetophenone Propiophenone	$C_6H_5CO_2H$ $C_6H_5CO_2H$	<i>p</i> -Cresyl acetate Phenyl propionate	73 73	10 111
$C_9H_{10}O_2$	<i>p</i> -Hydroxypropioacetophenone <i>o</i> -Methoxyacetophenone <i>m</i> -Methoxyacetophenone <i>p</i> -Methoxyacetophenone	H_2O_2, NH_3 CH_3CO_2H $C_6H_5CO_2H$ $C_6H_5CO_2H$	Hydroquinone Guaiacol <i>m</i> -Methoxyphenyl acetate <i>p</i> -Methoxyphenyl acetate	— — 52 66	48 10 10, 48, 90, 91
$C_9H_{10}O_3$ $C_{10}H_{10}O_3$ $C_{10}H_{11}NO_2$ $C_{10}H_{12}O_3$	2-Hydroxy-4-methoxyacetophenone <i>p</i> -Acetoxyacetophenone <i>p</i> -Acetaminacetophenone 2,4-Dimethoxyacetophenone 2,5-Dimethoxyacetophenone 2,4-Dihydroxy-3,5-dimethylacetophenone (clavatul)	H_2O_2, NH_3 $C_6H_5CO_2H$ $C_6H_5CO_2H$ CH_3CO_2H CH_3CO_2H $H_2O_2, NaOH$	1,2-Dihydroxy-1-methoxybenzene Hydroquinone diacetate <i>p</i> -Acetaminophenyl acetate 2,4-Dimethoxyphenol 2,5-Dimethoxyphenyl acetate 3-Hydroxy-2,6-dimethylbenzoquinone	— 80 80 — — 30	150 10 71 48 48 151

$C_{11}H_{11}O$	Acetomesitylacet	No product isolated	97
$C_{11}H_{11}O_4$	2,4,5-Trimethoxyacetophenone	2,4,5-Trimethoxyphenyl acetate	48
$C_{13}H_{13}O_4$	2,3,4-Trimethoxyacetophenone	2,3,4-Trimethoxyphenyl acetate	48
$C_{13}H_{13}O_4$	1,3-Diacetyl-4,6-dimethoxybenzene	4,6-Dimethoxyresorcinol diacetate	4
$C_{13}H_{13}O$	Fluorenone	2'-Hydroxybiphenyl-2-carboxylic acid lactone	14
		Fluorenone peroxide,	53
		2'-Hydroxybiphenyl-2-carboxylic acid lactone	20
$C_{13}H_9N_2O_3$	<i>o,p'</i> -Dinitrobenzophenone	2'-Hydroxybiphenyl-2-carboxylic acid lactone	14
$C_{13}H_{11}BrO$	<i>p,p'</i> -Dinitrobenzophenone	No reaction	4
$C_{13}H_{11}ClO$	<i>p</i> -Bromobenzophenone	<i>p</i> -Nitrophenol, <i>p</i> -nitrobenzoic acid	54, 82
	<i>p</i> -Chlorobenzophenone	Phenyl <i>p</i> -bromobenzoate	60
		Phenyl <i>p</i> -chlorobenzoate, phenol, <i>p</i> -chloro- benzoic acid	77
$C_{13}H_{11}NO_3$	<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzophenone	Phenyl <i>p</i> -nitrobenzoate	4, 131
$C_{13}H_{10}O$	benzophenone	Phenyl benzoate	Quantitative
$C_{13}H_{12}NO$	<i>p</i> -Aminobenzophenone	Phenyl <i>p</i> -aminobenzoate	140, 4
$C_{13}H_{16}O$	Phenyl cyclohexyl ketone	Cyclohexanol, benzoic acid, phenol, hexa- hydrobenzoic acid	38
			6, 33, 5, 5
$C_{13}H_{16}O_3$	1,3-Diacetyl-4,5,6-trimethoxybenzene	Cyclohexyl benzoate, phenyl hexahydrobenzoate	71, 15
$C_{14}H_{11}NO_2$	1,3-Diacetyl-2,4,6-trimethoxybenzene	4,5,6-Trimethoxyresorcinol diacetate	51
$C_{14}H_{11}O$	3-Phenyldioxindole	2,4,5-Trimethoxyresorcinol diacetate	48
$C_{14}H_{12}O_2$	<i>p</i> -Methylbenzophenone	<i>o</i> -Aminobenzophenone	162
$C_{14}H_{12}O_2$	<i>p</i> -Methoxybenzophenone	<i>p</i> -Cresyl benzoate	14
$C_{15}H_{12}NO_3$	3-(<i>o</i> -Tolyl)dioxindole	<i>p</i> -Methoxyphenyl benzoate	96
	3-(<i>m</i> -Tolyl)dioxindole	<i>o</i> -Methyl- <i>o'</i> -aminobenzophenone	4
	3-(<i>p</i> -Tolyl)dioxindole	<i>m</i> -Toluic acid	152
$C_{15}H_{12}NO_3$	3-(<i>o</i> -Methoxyphenyl)dioxindole	<i>p</i> -Methyl- <i>o'</i> -aminobenzophenone	152
	3-(<i>m</i> -Methoxyphenyl)dioxindole	<i>o</i> -Methoxy- <i>o'</i> -aminobenzophenone	152
$C_{16}H_{16}O$	Phenyl methyl ketone	<i>m</i> -Toluic acid	152
		<i>p</i> -Methoxy- <i>o'</i> -aminobenzophenone	152
		Benzoic acid	10

ANAL. Reference 155-156 are listed on p. 100.
 * A catalytic amount of p -CH₃C₆H₄SO₃H was added.

TABLE IV
 BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF α,β -UNSATURATED CARBONYL COMPOUNDS

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$C_6H_4O_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	<i>cis</i> -Ethylene oxide dicarboxylic acid	53-6	101
$C_9H_{10}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	1,1-Dimethyl-2-acetylcyclohexene oxide	—	63
$C_{10}H_{12}O_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	α -Naphthoquinone oxide	—	101
$C_{10}H_{16}O_2$	CH_3CO_2H	Enol acetate of phenylacetaldehyde	38	153, 53
$C_{10}H_{16}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	1-Phenyl-2-acetylcyclohexene oxide	70	63, 56, 153
$C_{10}H_{16}O$	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Enol formate of 2,6-dimethyl-5,6-epoxyheptaldehyde	—	85
$C_{10}H_{16}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	2-Methyl-1,4-naphthoquinone oxide	67	57
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	CH_3CO_2H	Enol acetate of methyl benzyl ketone	—	77
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	CH_3CO_2H	Enol propionate of phenylacetaldehyde	60	77
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	CH_3CO_2H	Enol propionate of phenylacetaldehyde	89	63
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	1-Phenyl-2-benzoylcyclohexene oxide	—	58
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	(\pm)-11-Keto-16 α ,17 α -epoxy-21-norprogesterone	—	61
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	10,11-Epoxybenzalanthrone	43	42, 27
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Lactone $C_{10}H_{10}O_3$	—	63
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	$K_2S_2O_8$, CH_3CO_2H , H_2SO_4	2-Dimethylaminoanthranquinone, benzole acid	55	55
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	16,17-Epoxyprogesterone-3-en-3 β -ol-20-one acetate	21	118
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Methyl Δ^4 -11,12-epoxy-3-ketocholene	—	42
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	Lactone $C_{10}H_{10}O_2$	68	—
$C_{11}H_{12}O$	$K_2S_2O_8$, CH_3CO_2H , H_2SO_4	Δ^4 -Cholesten-3-one	—	—

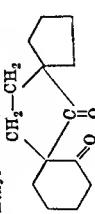
Note: References 138-164 are listed on p. 100.

TABLE V
BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF POLYCARBONYL COMPOUNDS

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
<i>α-Diketones</i>				
$C_4H_6O_2$	Perphthalic acid	Acetic acid	24	67, 61
$C_5H_8O_3$	Perphthalic acid	Monoethyl ester of acetic-carbonic anhydride	—	8
$C_6H_8O_3$	$C_6H_5CO_2H$	2,3,5-Tribromo-4-hydroxymuconolactone	30	17, 154
$C_6Cl_4O_2$	Perphthalic acid	2,3,5-Trichloro-4-hydroxymuconolactone, tetracloromuconic acid	4	155
$C_8H_4O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	<i>cis,cis</i> -Muconic acid	31	01
$C_8H_{10}O_2$	Perphthalic acid	Propionic acid	—	67
$C_8H_6O_3$	Perphthalic acid	β -Methylmuconic anhydride	22	65
$C_8H_6O_3$	Perphthalic acid	Monoethyl ester of benzole-carbonic anhydride	—	8
$C_8H_7NO_5$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	<i>o</i> -Nitrophenylacetic acid	92	62
$C_8H_{10}O_3$	H_2O_2	Tetramethylacetonedicarboxylic acid	Quantitative	79
$C_{10}H_8O_2$	CH_3CO_2H	<i>o</i> -Carboxyvalloinnamic acid	76	61
	CH_3CO_2H	Phthalic acid	22	17
	CH_3CO_2H	<i>o</i> -Carboxyvalloinnamic anhydride	—	156
$C_{11}H_8O_3$	Perphthalic acid	2-Carboxy-5-methoxyinnamic acid	23	59
$C_{12}H_{12}BrO_8$	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	2-Carboxy-5-methoxyinnamic acid	31	59
$C_{12}H_6O_2$	CH_3CO_2H	4-Ketocarboxy-2,3,5-trifluorophenol (?)	—	157
$C_{14}H_8N_4O_{10}$	CH_3CO_2H	Naphthalic acid	—	156
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	2,4-Dinitrophenol	53	72
$C_{14}H_8O_2$	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	2,4-Dinitrophenol	—	72
$C_{14}H_{10}O_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	2,4-Dinitrophenol	Quantitative	72
	$C_2H_5O_2H$, NaOH	Diphenic acid	94	136, 156
	CH_3CO_2H	Benzole acid, ethyl benzoate	70	153
	CH_3CO_2H	Benzole acid	95	61, 70
	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H , $HClO_4$	Benzole acid	83	6
$C_{15}H_{12}O_2$	$C_2H_5O_2H$, NaOH	Benzole acid, phenylacetic acid	61	133
$C_{15}H_{12}O_3$	$C_2H_5O_2H$, NaOH	Anisic acid, benzole acid	79	153
$C_{16}H_{14}O_4$	$C_2H_5O_2H$, NaOH	Anisic acid, ethyl anisate	70	133
	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	Anisic acid	66	6
$C_{18}H_{14}O_2$	Perphthalic acid	2-Styrylacrylic anhydride	26	66

Note: References 138-164 are listed on p. 100.

TABLE V—Continued
 BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF POLYCARBONYL COMPOUNDS

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
<i>α-Diketones—Continued</i>				
$C_3H_8O_2$	$C_2H_5O_2H$, NaOH	Phenylacetic acid, β -isoduryle acid	70	158
$C_8H_{16}O_4$	CH_3CO_2H	Pelargonic acid, azelaic acid	90-95	61
$C_{18}H_{32}O_4$	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	$3\beta,14$ -Dihydroxy-14-iso-17-isooctocholanic acid	27	63
$C_{21}H_{32}O_6$	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	$3\beta,14$ -Dihydroxy-14-iso-17-isooctocholanic acid	90	63
$C_{23}H_{36}O_6$	H_2O_2 , $KHCO_3$ H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	3β -Acetoxy-14-hydroxy-14-iso-20-keto-pregnan-21-carboxylic acid lactone	—	63
<i>β-Diketones</i>				
$C_5H_8O_2$	CH_3CO_2H	Ethanol	—	77
$C_6H_{10}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	Ethyl hydrogen oxalate, ethanol	—	77
$C_7H_{12}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	No reaction	—	77
$C_8H_{14}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	Ethyl hydrogen oxalate	—	77
$C_9H_{16}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	No reaction	—	77
$C_9H_{14}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	Oxalic acid	—	77
$C_9H_{16}O_5$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	2-Acetoxyindan-1,3-dione	64	73
$C_{11}H_{18}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	Benzoic acid, ethyl oxalate	—	77
$C_{11}H_{16}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	Ethyl hydrogen oxalate, methylbenzylcarbinol	—	77
$C_{13}H_{16}O_3$	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	$CH_2=CH_2$	87	118
$C_{14}H_{20}O_2$			12	79
$C_{13}H_{22}O_4$	1-Isovaleryl-2,4,6-triketo-3,3,5,5-tetramethylcyclohexane (leptospermonic)	isovalerate	—	78
$C_{16}H_{20}O_3$	2-Benzoylindan-1,3-dione	2-Benzoyloxyindan-1,3-dione	66	78
$C_{17}H_{14}O_3$	Acetyldibenzoylmethane	No reaction	—	78
$C_{22}H_{18}O_3$	Tribenzoylmethane	Benzoic acid	92	78

Note: References 138-164 are listed on p. 106.

TABLE VI
 BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF ALDEHYDES

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
CH_2O	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_3\text{H}$	Formic acid	Quantitative	80
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Formic acid, hydrogen	—	89, 87
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CO}_3\text{H}$	Acetic acid	—	81
	H_2O_2 , H_2SO_4	Acetic acid, formic acid, methane, hydrogen, carbon dioxide	—	88
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$	H_2O_2	Hydrogen, carbon dioxide, formic acid, unidentified acids	—	86
$\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{O}$	H_2O_2 , H_2SO_4	Propionic acid, acetic acid, formic acid, hydrogen, carbon dioxide, ethane	—	88
$\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}\text{O}$	H_2O_2	Isobutane, hydrogen, carbon monoxide, unidentified acids	—	86
$\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{Br}_2\text{O}_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3,5-Dibromocacetylaldehyde	—	52
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3,5-Dibromohydroquinone	—	52
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{Cl}_3\text{O}_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	4,6-Dibromocacetylaldehyde	—	52
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3,5-Dichlorohydroquinone	—	52
$\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{I}_2\text{O}_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3,5-Dichlorohydroquinone	—	159, 52
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{BrO}_3$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	No reaction	—	52
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	5-Bromocacetylaldehyde	—	52
$\text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{ClO}_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Bromohydroquinone	—	52
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{NO}_2$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	5-Chlorocacetylaldehyde	60-70	52
	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_3\text{H}$	<i>o</i> -Nitrobenzoic acid	—	52
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{NO}_4$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_3\text{H}$	<i>m</i> -Nitrobenzoic acid	99	91
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3-Nitrocacetylaldehyde	90	91
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	5-Nitrocacetylaldehyde	—	52
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{NO}_3$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	No reaction	70	52
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Nitrobenzoquinone	—	52
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{O}$	H_2O_2 , NaOH	No reaction	—	52
	H_2SO_5	Benzaldehyde peroxide	—	52
	H_2O_2 , $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	Benzoic acid, phenol	40	160, 140
	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_3\text{H}$	Benzoic acid	—	92, 161
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{O}_4$	H_2O_2 , CH_3COCH_3	Salicylic acid, catechol	Quantitative	80, 86
			70, trace	95

Note: References 138-164 are listed on p. 106.

TABLE VI—Continued
 BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF ALDEHYDES

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$C_7H_6O_2$	H_2O_2 , pyridine	Salicylic acid, catechol	75, 20	95
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Catechol	Quantitative	52, 131
	CH_3CO_2H	Catechol	89	102, 91, 95
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	No reaction	—	52
<i>m</i> -Hydroxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	<i>m</i> -Hydroxybenzoic acid	74	91
	CH_3CO_2H	Hydroquinone	Quantitative	52
<i>p</i> -Hydroxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Hydroquinone	93	80, 91
	CH_3CO_2H	Hydroxyhydroquinone	—	52
2,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Hydroxyhydroquinone	—	52
3,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Hydroxyhydroquinone	31	93
<i>o</i> -Aminobenzaldehyde	H_2SO_4	<i>o</i> -Aminophenyl formate, <i>o</i> -aminophenol, anthranil	84	80
<i>n</i> -Heptanal	CH_3CO_2H	<i>n</i> -Heptanoic acid	—	11
	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	α -Hydroxyheptylhydroperoxide	60	129
	CH_3CO_2H	3,4-Methylenedioxyphenol	70	91
Plperonal	CH_3CO_2H	4-Methylcatechol	54	91
2-Hydroxy-4-methylbenzaldehyde	CH_3CO_2H	5-Methylcatechol	45	52
2-Hydroxy-5-methylbenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3-Bromo-5-methoxyhydroquinone	—	52
3-Bromo-4-hydroxy-5-methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3-Methoxy-2-nitrohydroquinone	—	52
2-Nitro-4-hydroxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	No reaction	—	163
3-Nitro-4-hydroxy-5-methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2	Benzyl alcohol, formic acid	—	163
Phenylacetaldehyde	H_2O_2 , heat	Phenylacetic acid, benzaldehyde, formic acid, benzole acid	—	
$C_8H_8O_2$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	Gualacol, <i>o</i> -methoxybenzoic acid	—	92
	CH_3CO_2H	Gualacol formate	99	91
<i>p</i> -Methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	Hydroquinone monomethyl ether, <i>p</i> -methoxybenzoic acid	—	92
	CH_3CO_2H	<i>p</i> -Methoxybenzoic acid	Quantitative	80
	H_2O_2 , NaOH	3-Methoxycatechol	63-80	135
2-Hydroxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	4-Methoxycatechol	—	159
2-Hydroxy-5-methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	4-Methoxyresorcinol (?)	—	52
3-Hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde	H_2O_2 , NaOH	Methoxyhydroquinone	Quantitative	52
Vanillin	H_2O_2 , NaOH			

TABLE VI—Continued
BAEYER-VILLIGER OXIDATION OF ALDEHYDES

Carbonyl Compound	Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$C_9H_{10}O_3$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	2,4-Dimethoxyphenol	27	92
	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	3,4-Dimethoxyphenol, 3,4-dimethoxybenzoic acid	—	92
	CH_3CO_2H	3,4-Dimethoxyphenol	66	90, 91
$C_9H_{10}O$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	α -Hydroxybenzylidene	—	11
$C_{10}H_{12}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	3-Ethoxy-4-methoxyphenol	—	90
$C_{10}H_{12}O_4$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	2,4,5-Trimethoxyphenol	18	92
$C_{10}H_{12}O$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	α -1-Hydroxydecylidene	—	11
$C_{11}H_{14}O_3$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	3,4-Dimethoxy-6-ethylphenol, 3,4-dimethoxy-6-ethylbenzoic acid	—	92
$C_{11}H_{22}O$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	α -Hydroxyundecylidene	—	11
$C_{12}H_{16}O_3$	CH_3CO_2H	4-Butoxy-3-methoxyphenol	68	90
$C_{12}H_{16}O$	H_2O_2 , $(C_2H_5)_2O$	α -Hydroxydodecylidene	—	11
$C_{11}H_{11}NO_3S$	H_2O_2 , CH_3CO_2H	4-Nitro-2-(<i>p</i> -toluenesulphonyl)benzoic acid	—	164
$C_{13}H_{18}O_3$	H_2O_2 , $NaOH$	3,4-Dihydroxyphenanthrene	80	94

Note: References 138-164 are listed on p. 106.

REFERENCES TO TABLES

- ¹³⁸ Baeyer and Villiger, *Ber.*, 33, 635 (1900).
- ¹³⁹ Baeyer and Villiger, *Ber.*, 33, 124 (1900).
- ¹⁴⁰ Diltthey, Inckel, and Stephan, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] 154, 219 (1940).
- ¹⁴¹ Friess, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 71, 14 (1949).
- ¹⁴² Marker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 62, 2621 (1940).
- ¹⁴³ Buchi and Jeger, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 32, 540 (1949).
- ¹⁴⁴ Karrer and Haab, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 32, 973 (1949).
- ¹⁴⁵ Schroeter, German pat. 562,827 (*Chem. Zentr.*, 1, 1933, 127).
- ¹⁴⁶ Stoll and Scherrer, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 13, 142 (1930).
- ¹⁴⁷ Jacobsen, Pichia, and Levy, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 171, 81 (1947).
- ¹⁴⁸ Burekhardt and Reichstein, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 25, 821 (1942).
- ¹⁴⁹ Windaus, *Ber.*, 37, 2027 (1904).
- ¹⁵⁰ Dakin, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, 25, 194 (1909).
- ¹⁵¹ Hassall and Todd, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1947, 611.
- ¹⁵² Inagaki, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, 59, 7 (1939) [*C. A.*, 33, 3700 (1939)].
- ¹⁵³ Böseken and Kremor, *Rec. trav. chim.*, 50, 827 (1931).
- ¹⁵⁴ Karrer and Hohl, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 32, 1028 (1949).
- ¹⁵⁵ Karrer and Testa, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 32, 1019 (1949).
- ¹⁵⁶ Charrier and Beretta, *Gazz. chim. ital.*, 54, 988 (1924).
- ¹⁵⁷ Dimroth and Goldschmidt, *Ann.*, 399, 62 (1913).
- ¹⁵⁸ Barnes and Lewis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 58, 947 (1936).
- ¹⁵⁹ Kvalacs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 56, 2487 (1934).
- ¹⁶⁰ Baeyer and Villiger, *Ber.*, 33, 2484 (1900).
- ¹⁶¹ Sandonnini and Giacconello, *Atti reale accad. naz. Lincei*, [6] 19, 43 (1934) (*Chem. Zentr.*, II, 1934, 234).
- ¹⁶² Waack, Eppinger, and Bezahl, *Ber.*, 73, 521 (1940).
- ¹⁶³ Cattaneo, *Gazz. chim. ital.*, 64, 509 (1934).
- ¹⁶⁴ Campbell, Dick, Ferguson, and Loudon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1941, 747.

CHAPTER 4

THE ALKYLATION OF ESTERS AND NITRILES

ARTHUR C. COPE, H. L. HOLMES, AND HERBERT O. HOUSE

Massachusetts Institute of Technology

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	108
MECHANISM	109
SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS	115
General Considerations	115
Nature of the Base and Solvent	115
Monoalkylation versus Dialkylation	120
Order of Introduction of Groups	123
Side Reactions	123
The Active Methylene Compound	132
Malonic Esters	132
Substituted Malonic Esters and Alkylidenemalonic Esters	132
Cyanoacetic Esters	134
Substituted Cyanoacetic Esters and Alkylidencyanoacetic Esters	134
Malononitriles and Alkylidenemalononitriles	135
Monocarboxylic Esters, 3-Aryl-2-benzofuranones and Succinic, Glutaric, and Glutaconic Esters	135
Mononitriles and Alkylidencacetonitriles	136
Alkylating Agents	137
Halogens	137
Alkyl Halides	138
Di- and Poly-halides	139
Vinyl and Aryl Halides	143
Epoxides	144
Dialkyl Carbonates	144
Dialkyl Sulfates, Alkyl Sulfonates, and Nitrates	144
ALTERNATIVE METHODS OF ALKYLATION	145
Reduction of Alkylidene Derivatives	145
Addition of Grignard Reagents to Alkylidene Derivatives	146
Condensation of Aromatic Compounds with Mesoxalic and Tartronic Esters	146
Other Methods	147
SYNTHETIC APPLICATIONS OF THE ALKYLATION REACTION	149

EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS AND PROCEDURES	157
Diethyl <i>n</i> -Butylmalonate	158
Diethyl Benzylmalonate	158
Diethyl Ethyl(phenyl)malonate*	158
Diethyl Ethyl(isopropyl)malonate	159
Diethyl Isopropyl(formamido)malonate	160
Diethyl 1,1-Cyclobutanedicarboxylate	160
Diethyl α -Ethyl- α -methylvalerate	160
3-(β -Diethylaroinoethyl)-3-phenyl-2-benzofuranone	161
Diethyl Ethyl-(1-isopentenyl)malonate	161
Ethyl (1-Ethylpropenyl)methylecyanoacetate	161
Ethyl <i>n</i> -Butyl(isopropyl)cycanoacetate	161
α -Cyclohexylphenylacetone	162
TABULAR SURVEY OF THE ALKYLATION OF ESTERS AND NITRILES	162
Table I. Alkylation of Malonic Esters	164
Table II. Alkylation of Chloro-, Nitro-, Amino-, and Acylaroino-malonic Esters	200
Table III. Alkylation of Monoalkylmalonic Esters	208
Table IV. Alkylation of Polymethylene α,ω -Dimalonic Esters	238
Table V. Alkylation of Alkylidenemalonic Esters	260
Table VI. Alkylation of Cyanoacetic Esters	262
Table VII. Alkylation of Bromo-, Acetamido-, and Phenylacetamido-cyanoacetic Esters	272
Table VIII. Alkylation of Monoalkylcyanoacetic Esters	274
Table IX. Alkylation of Alkylidenemalononitriles and Alkylidencyanoacetic Esters	278
Table X. Alkylation of Malononitrile and Monoalkylmalononitriles	283
Table XI. Alkylation of Monocarboxylic Esters	284
Table XII. Alkylation of 3-Aryl-2-benzofuranones	288
Table XIII. Alkylation of Succinic, Glutaric, and Glutaconic Esters	292
Table XIV. Alkylation of Malononitriles	294
Table XV. Alkylation of Alkylidencetonitriles	314
Table XVI. Reductions Leading to Alkylmalonic Esters or Acids	314
Table XVII. Reduction of the Alkylidene and Arylidene Derivatives of Cyanoacetic Acid, Cyanoacetic Esters, and Malononitrile	316
Table XVIII. Addition of Grignard Reagents to Alkylidenemalonic Esters	318
Table XIX. Addition of Grignard Reagents to Alkylidencyanoacetic Acids and Esters and to Alkylidenemalononitriles	318
Table XX. Arylation of Derivatives of Mesoxalic and Tartronic Acids	320

INTRODUCTION†

This chapter is concerned with the reactions of metal salts (enolates) of active methylene compounds with alkylating agents such as alkyl halides to produce alkyl derivatives. The first example of this reaction is found in the literature of 1863 when Geuther prepared ethyl α -ethyl

* To avoid confusion in the naming of disubstituted active methylene compounds containing two unlike substituents, the name of one of the substituents has been parenthesized.

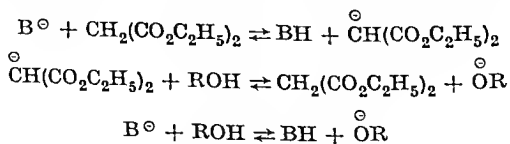
† The authors are indebted to Morton Brown, Norman A. Le Bel, and Theodor A. Liss for checking the literature referred to in the final draft of this chapter.

This ionic resonance hybrid is often called the enolate anion. It may be formed by reaction of the base with either the keto or the enol form of the active methylene compound.⁴

The acidity of active methylene compounds can be attributed to resonance stabilization of the enolate anion, a stabilizing interaction not possible with the un-ionized form. The degree to which various substituent groups enhance the acidity of active methylene compounds appears to decrease in the following order: $-\text{NO}_2 > -\underset{\text{O}}{\underset{||}{\text{C}}}-\text{R} > -\text{C}\equiv\text{N} > -\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 >$

$-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$. The substitution of two or three such groups on a carbon atom further augments the acidity of the remaining hydrogen atoms bound to the same carbon atom. This effect would be anticipated if the additional resonance stabilization available to such a polysubstituted enolate anion is considered (see, however, p. 133). On the other hand, substitution of aliphatic groups at the active methylene carbon atom reduces the acidity of the remaining hydrogen atom. The effect of a number of substituents (R) on the acid strength of monosubstituted acetic esters ($\text{RCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$) has been measured;⁵ the compounds decreased in acidity in the following order: $\text{R} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 > \text{H} > \text{CH}_3 > \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 > n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7 > n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21} > n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33} > \text{cyclohexyl} > i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7$. It is noteworthy that branching of the carbon chain ($\text{R} = i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7$) has a greater effect on acidity than the length of the carbon chain ($\text{R} = n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}$). A similar reduction in the acidity of substituted acetic acids has been ascribed to steric hindrance to solvation of the carboxylate anion.⁶ This explanation would appear to be equally valid for the increased difficulty with which highly substituted acetic esters are converted to their enolate anions.

The formation of the enolate anion, the reactive derivative of the active methylene compound in alkylation reactions, results from an equilibrium reaction between the base and the active methylene compound. Competing equilibria involve the solvent (i.e., ROH , NH_3 , etc.) and either the base or the enolate anion. As a consequence of these equilibria, both the



solvent (i.e., ROH) and the conjugate acid (BH) of the base must be much

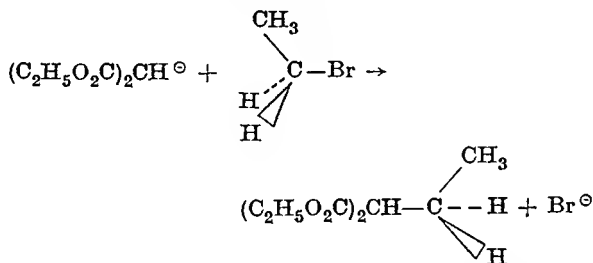
⁴ Alexander, *Principles of Ionic Organic Reactions*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1950, pp. 132-134.

⁵ Brown and Eberly, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 113 (1940).

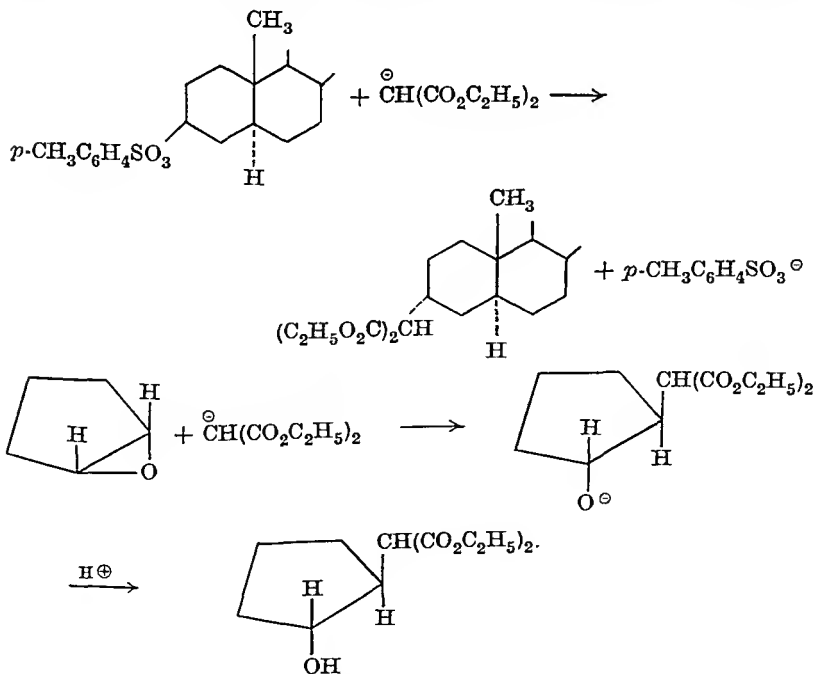
⁶ Hammond and Hogle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 338 (1955).

weaker acids than the active methylene compound if an adequate concentration of the enolate anion is to be present in the reaction mixture.

All available evidence indicates that the enolate anion of the active methylene compound reacts with the alkylating agent by a bimolecular nucleophilic displacement (S_N2) process.⁷⁻⁹ Therefore the structure of the alkylating agent may be expected to influence the course of the alkylation reaction in a manner analogous to the effect of structure on other



S_N2 reactions. Thus, inversion of configuration is noted when the displacement occurs at an asymmetric center. Diethyl 3 α -cholestanylmalonate was produced by the reaction of 3 β -cholestanyl tosylate with

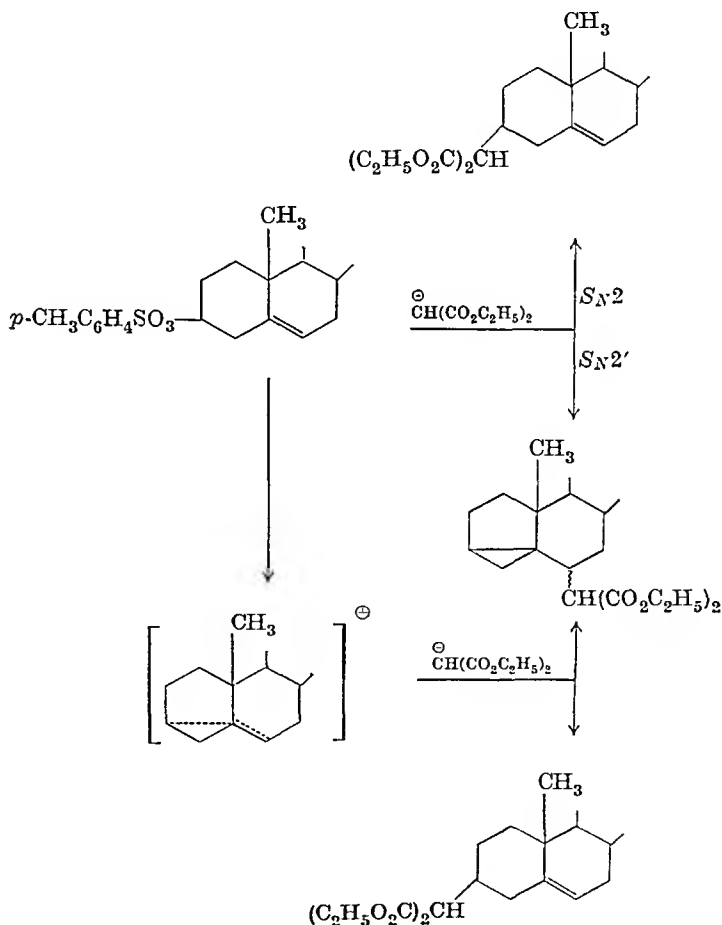
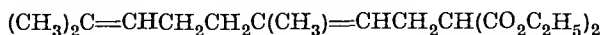
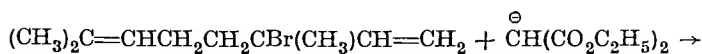


⁷ Grigsby, Hind, Chanley, and Westheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 2606 (1942).

⁸ Newman and VanderWerf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 233 (1945).

⁹ Bartlett in Gilman, *Organic Chemistry*, Vol. 3, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1953, p. 25.

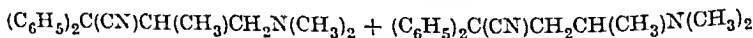
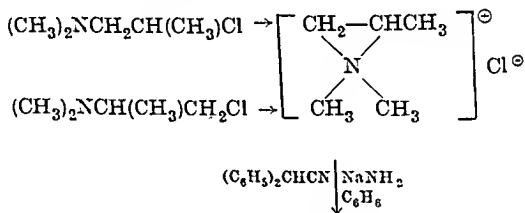
When, in similar systems, the halogen was bonded to a tertiary carbon atom, as in linalyl chloride¹⁸ or linalyl bromide,¹⁹ only the product resulting from an S_N2' displacement was observed.



¹⁸ Barnard and Bateman, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1950, 926.

¹⁹ Dupont and Labaune, *Chem. Zentr.*, 82, II, 138 (1911).

A displacement of the S_N2' type has been postulated to explain the products formed when 1,4-dibromo-2-butene reacted with diethyl sodiomalonate (p. 141).²⁰ A more complicated example of an abnormal alkylation is provided by the reaction of 3 β -cholesteryl tosylate with diethyl sodiomalonate. The products initially reported,^{21,22} diethyl 3-cholesterylmalonate (later shown to be the α -isomer¹⁰) and diethyl 3,5-cyclo-6-cholestanylmalonate, seemed best explained by the simultaneous operation of S_N2 and S_N2' displacements.²³ However, the demonstration¹⁰ that the diethyl 3-cholesterylmalonate fraction is composed mainly of the 3 β -isomer suggests the intervention of an intermediate cholesteryl ion (shown in brackets in the equation on page 113) prior to attack by the enolate anion. A similar anomaly was observed when β -haloamines were used as alkylating agents. When diphenylacetonitrile was alkylated either with 1-dimethylamino-2-chloropropane or with 2-dimethylamino-1-chloropropane similar mixtures of products were obtained.²⁴⁻²⁶ Such a result suggests the formation of a cyclic immonium ion²⁷ prior to the alkylation step.



The alkylation of alkylidene derivatives may be considered a variant of the reaction of monoalkylated sodiomalonate esters with alkylating agents. With the alkylidene derivatives the alkyl group is invariably introduced at the position *alpha* to the activating group with attendant migration of the double bond to the β,γ -position.²⁸

²⁰ Kierstead, Linstead, and Weedon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 3610.

²¹ Kaiser and Svarz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 1309 (1945).

²² Svarz and Kaiser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 847 (1947).

²³ Corey and Sreen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 6234 (1953).

²⁴ Schultz and Sprague, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 48 (1948).

²⁵ Attenburrow, Elks, Hems, and Speyer, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 510.

²⁶ Walton, Ofner, and Thorp, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 648.

²⁷ Schultz, Robb, and Sprague, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 2454 (1947).

²⁸ Coppe, Hartung, Hancock, and Crossley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 314 (1940).

with the alkyl halide.²⁹ Alternatively, the effect of the cation on the rate of alkylation might be attributed to the association of the cation and the enolate anion as ion pairs in the non-polar solvents where the effect of the cation is most pronounced.³⁰ If such ion pairs are less effective than the free enolate anions as nucleophilic reagents, then the rate of alkylation would depend on the extent to which the cation and enolate anion are associated as ion pairs, a property which would be a function of the particular cation employed in a given solvent system.

The reagents most commonly used to prepare the enolates of active methylene compounds include the metal alkoxides and the more basic metal amides, sodium triphenylmethide and sodium hydride, as well as metallic sodium and metallic potassium. A meaningful comparison of relative base strengths can best be made in terms of various base-solvent systems, since the basicity is influenced by the solvent. Many of the comparisons of relative basicity made in this chapter are founded on the success or failure of various bases in certain alkylation reactions, because data concerning relative basicities are not available. Consideration of the enolate-base-solvent equilibria mentioned earlier (p. 110) will make apparent the possibility of increasing the concentration of the enolate anion in the reaction mixture if the solvent is replaced by a solvent of lower acidity. This possibility has been exploited in several instances³¹⁻³³ where alkylation was either unsuccessful or difficult with alcohol as the solvent; replacement of the alcohol with a less acidic solvent such as ether or benzene permitted alkylation to occur. If possible, the base and the enolate should be soluble in the solvent chosen. Otherwise, the surface of the basic reagent may become coated with the metal enolate, preventing further reaction.

The metal alkoxides are usually sufficiently strong bases for use in the alkylation of malonic esters, cyanoacetic esters, malononitriles, and certain mononitriles. The commonly employed metal alkoxides appear to increase in basicity in the following order:³⁴⁻³⁷ $\text{CH}_3\text{ONa} < \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{ONa} < (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHONa} < (\text{CH}_3)_3\text{COK}$. When the active methylene compound and/or the alkylating agent contain one or more ester functions, the alkoxide chosen should correspond to the alkoxyl group of the ester.

²⁹ Brändstrom, *Acta Chem. Scand.*, **7**, 223 (1953).

³⁰ James Cason, private communication.

³¹ Wagner-Jauregg and Arnold, *Ann.*, **529**, 274 (1937).

³² Adams, Stanley, and Stearns, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 1475 (1928).

³³ Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 2212 (1949).

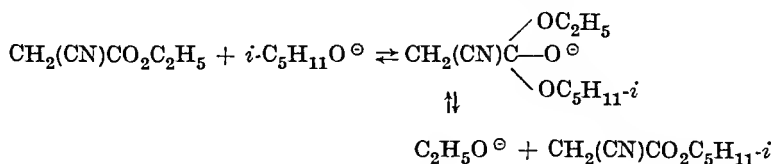
³⁴ Jansson, *Ann.*, **250**, 125 (1888).

³⁵ Kopp and Tchoubar, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1951**, 30.

³⁶ McEwen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 1124 (1936).

³⁷ Copo and Hancock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 2903 (1938).

Otherwise a nonhomogeneous product will result from the ester interchange which takes place concurrently with alkylation.³⁷⁻⁴¹ This problem



is least serious when the highly branched *t*-butoxide anion is employed. Several cases have been reported in which the use of sodium *t*-butoxide in *t*-butyl alcohol led to the successful alkylation of ethyl esters that could not be alkylated readily with sodium ethoxide in ethanol.³⁵

The sodium and potassium alkoxides are normally prepared and used in an excess of the corresponding anhydrous^{43,42} alcohol which serves as the solvent. However, the advantages to be gained from the use of other solvents should not be overlooked. The decarboxylation of malonic and cyanoacetic esters in the presence of ethoxide ion, to be discussed more fully later (p. 127), which sometimes occurs as a side reaction, can be diminished if diethyl carbonate is used as the reaction solvent.^{43,44} In addition, the high boiling point of diethyl carbonate permits the reaction time to be shortened. In general, the low yields obtained from slow alkylation reactions (e.g., with long-chain alkyl halides as the alkylating agents) are improved if the low-boiling solvent, ethanol or ether, is replaced by a higher-boiling solvent such as *n*-butyl alcohol^{45,46} or diethyl carbonate,^{43,44,47-51} or if the reaction mixture is heated in a sealed tube.^{31,52} However, higher reaction temperatures sometimes favor dialkylation⁵³ and dehydrohalogenation of the alkylating agent.⁵⁴

³⁸ Hessler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **38**, 909 (1916).

³⁹ Hessler and Lamb, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **43**, 205 (1921).

⁴⁰ Hessler and Henderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **43**, 672 (1921).

⁴¹ Osman and Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 881 (1944).

⁴² Gyngell, Phillips, and Smith, *Ind. Chemist*, **21**, 526 (1945).

⁴³ Wallingford, Homeyer, and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 2056 (1941).

⁴⁴ Wallingford, Thorpe, and Homeyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 580 (1942).

⁴⁵ Bleyberg and Ulrich, *Ber.*, **64**, 2504 (1931).

⁴⁶ Backer and Strating, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **59**, 933 (1940).

⁴⁷ Simon, Kaufmann, and Schinz, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **29**, 1133 (1946).

⁴⁸ Plattner, Fürst, Wyss, and Sandrin, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **30**, 689 (1947).

⁴⁹ Wiss and Fuchs, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **35**, 407 (1952).

⁵⁰ Blicke and Leonard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **68**, 1934 (1946).

⁵¹ Wallingford and Homeyer, U.S. pat. 2,358,768 [C. A., **39**, 1879 (1945)].

⁵² Marshall, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1931**, 2336.

⁵³ Ziegler and Ohlinger, *Ann.*, **495**, 84 (1932).

⁵⁴ Cope and McElvain, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **54**, 4311 (1932).

The increase in the enolate concentration which results when an alcohol is replaced by a much less acidic or an inert solvent has already been mentioned (p. 116). However, the sodium and potassium alkoxides are relatively insoluble in such inert solvents. Magnesium ethoxide, being soluble in inert solvents,^{55,56} offers an advantage in this respect. This base, which readily converts diethyl malonate to its enolate,⁵⁷ is of especial value for the dialkylation of this ester.^{55,56}

The use of sodium hydride in benzene, toluene, or dimethylformamide is particularly advantageous in alkylation reactions. Sodium hydride reacts irreversibly with an active methylene compound to form an enolate and hydrogen; it has been shown that any sodium hydride which may remain has no effect upon a wide variety of alkyl halides even after prolonged times at elevated temperatures.⁵⁸

Sodium amide is generally used to prepare the sodium derivatives of mononitriles,^{53,59} some monocarboxylic esters,⁶⁰⁻⁶² some alkylmalonic esters, and alkylidenemalonic esters derived from ketones.^{63,64} The lithium, sodium, and bromomagnesium salts of secondary amines have found limited use as bases in the alkylation of mononitriles.^{53,65,66} The use of lithium diethylamide rather than sodium amide as the base for the alkylation of nitriles avoids side reactions involving addition of the amide ion to the nitrile group (p. 129).⁵³ This side reaction is particularly serious with disubstituted acetonitriles.

The alkylation of monocarboxylic esters is usually effected in the presence of the strong base sodium triphenylmethide.⁶⁷⁻⁷⁰ Reactions which employ either sodium amide or sodium triphenylmethide as the base require an inert solvent such as ether, benzene, toluene, or xylene.

Metallic sodium and metallic potassium in inert solvents have been used

⁵⁵ Lund, *Ber.*, **67**, 935 (1934).

⁵⁶ Lund, Hansen, and Voigt, *Kgl. Danske Videnskab. Selskab, Mat-fys. Medd.*, **12**, No. 9, 23 (1933) [*C. A.*, **28**, 2333 (1934)].

⁵⁷ Walker and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **68**, 1386 (1946).

⁵⁸ Cristol, Ragsdale, and Meek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 1863 (1949).

⁵⁹ Ramart, *Compt. Rend.*, **182**, 1226 (1926).

⁶⁰ Ramart and Amagat, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [10] **8**, 273 (1927).

⁶¹ Ramart, *Bull. soc., chim. France*, [4] **35**, 196 (1924).

⁶² Ramart, *Compt. rend.*, **178**, 396 (1924).

⁶³ Cope and Hancock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 2644 (1938).

⁶⁴ Cope, Hofmann, and Hardy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 1852 (1941).

⁶⁵ Cason, Sumrell, and Mitchell, *J. Org. Chem.*, **15**, 850 (1950).

⁶⁶ Ziegler, *Fr. pat.* 581,728 [*C. A.*, **27**, 4251 (1933)].

⁶⁷ Schlenk, Nillemann, and Rodloff, *Ann.*, **487**, 135 (1931).

⁶⁸ Hudson and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 2457 (1940).

⁶⁹ Hudson and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 3156 (1941).

⁷⁰ Polkar and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1943, 615.

extensively to prepare the enolates of malonic ester, cyanoacetic ester, and 3-aryl-2-benzofuranones. Several attempts to use metallic sodium in the alkylation of aliphatic mononitriles have resulted in dimerization of the nitrile.⁷¹⁻⁷³ Metallic sodium and metallic potassium must be avoided as bases for the alkylation of alkylidenemalonic and alkylidene-cyanoacetic esters because partial reduction of the conjugated system accompanies enolate formation.^{28,37,63,74}

Sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide have been employed as bases for the alkylation of active methylene compounds. The alkylation of nitriles, in certain instances at least, appears to offer no complications with these bases.^{34,75-79} Although extensive saponification would be expected to attend the alkylation of esters in the presence of potassium hydroxide, successful alkylations with this base have been reported by several workers.⁸⁰⁻⁸³ These alkylations were usually effected by treatment of the active methylene compound with a suspension of powdered potassium hydroxide in an inert solvent such as di-*n*-propyl acetal followed by addition of an alkyl halide. For example, ethyl cyanoacetate was converted to ethyl benzylcyanoacetate in 30% yield by this procedure.⁸³

Other bases that have had limited use include benzyltriethylammonium hydroxide,⁸⁴ potassium acetate,⁸⁵ ammonia,^{86,87} potassium carbonate,^{88,89} phenylsodium,⁹⁰ and various sodium enolates.⁹¹⁻⁹³ Alkylations have also been effected in the presence of metallic zinc⁹⁴ and inorganic salts of

⁷¹ Hanriot and Bouveault, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [3] 1, 170 (1889).

⁷² Wache, *Jahresber.*, 1889, 644.

⁷³ Holtzwardt, *J. prakt. Chem.* [2] 39, 230 (1889).

⁷⁴ Hugh and Kon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1930, 775.

⁷⁵ von Braun, Fussgänger, and Kühn, *Ann.*, 445, 201 (1925).

⁷⁶ Zelinsky and Feldmann, *Ber.*, 22, 3290 (1889).

⁷⁷ Eisleb, *Ber.*, 74, 1433 (1941).

⁷⁸ Cloke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 51, 1174 (1929).

⁷⁹ Pickard and Yates, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 95, 1011 (1909).

⁸⁰ Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 119, 305 (1921).

⁸¹ Weizmann, Bergmann, and Sulzbacher, *J. Org. Chem.*, 15, 918 (1950).

⁸² Michael, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] 72, 537 (1905).

⁸³ Weizmann, Brit. pat. 582,191 [*C. A.*, 41, 2436 (1947)].

⁸⁴ Jarrouse, *Compt. rend.*, 232, 1424 (1951).

⁸⁵ Kohler, Hill, and Bigelow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 39, 2405 (1917).

⁸⁶ Kohler and Conant, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 39, 1404 (1917).

⁸⁷ Kötz, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] 75, 433 (1907).

⁸⁸ Pettersson, *Acta Chem. Scand.*, 4, 1319 (1950) [*C. A.*, 47, 3847 (1953)].

⁸⁹ Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 125, 226 (1924).

⁹⁰ Bockmühl and Ehrhardt, Ger. pat. 622,875 [*C. A.*, 30, 2991 (1936)].

⁹¹ Bockmühl and Ehrhaert, *Ann.*, 561, 52 (1948).

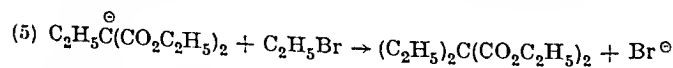
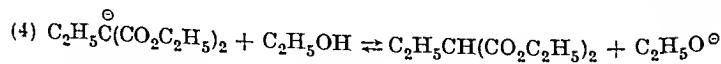
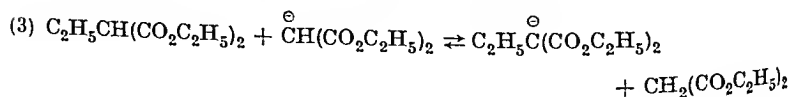
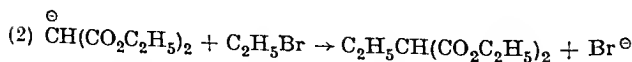
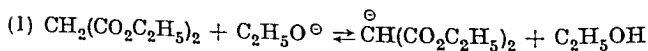
⁹² Case, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 55, 2927 (1933).

⁹³ Bockmühl and Ehrhardt, U.S. pat., 2,230,774 [*C. A.*, 35, 3391 (1941)].

⁹⁴ Shukowski, *J. Russ. Phys. Chem. Soc.*, 1887 (1), 601; *Ber.*, 21, Ref. 57 (1888).

silver.^{95,96} The yields in several alkylation reactions have been improved when copper or a copper salt was added to the reaction mixture.⁹⁷⁻¹⁰⁰

Monoalkylation versus Dialkylation. During the alkylation of diethyl sodiomalonate with ethyl bromide, the diethyl ethylmalonate that is



formed (reaction 2) is in equilibrium with its anion (reactions 3 and 4). The question, therefore, arises as to why little dialkylation (reaction 5) is observed. In a competitive experiment diethyl malonate was alkylated by ethyl bromide (reaction 2) at a rate seventy times the rate of alkylation of diethyl ethylmalonate (reaction 5).³³ The ratio of the ionization constants³³ of the two esters

$$\frac{K_{\text{diethyl malonate}}}{K_{\text{diethyl ethylmalonate}}} = \frac{1.6 \times 10^{-18}}{2 \times 10^{-20}} \sim 10^2$$

indicates that the concentration of diethyl malonate enolate exceeds the concentration of the diethyl ethylmalonate anion.

Of much greater importance here is the acidity of the solvent, ethanol (K ionization = 7.28×10^{-20}).¹⁰¹ As can be seen from the enolate-base-solvent equilibria mentioned earlier (p. 110), a solvent that is more acidic than the active methylene compound will greatly reduce the

concentration of enolate present in the reaction mixture since the molar concentration of the solvent is much larger than the molar concentration of the active methylene compound. In the alkylation of diethyl malonate with ethyl bromide, the presence of a large excess of ethanol in the reaction mixture reduces the concentration of the enolate of diethyl ethylmalonate to such a low level that the rate of dialkylation (reaction 5) becomes negligible. As would be predicted on this basis, the replacement of ethanol with an inert solvent favors dialkylation.¹⁰² As would be expected from the facts mentioned above, the greater acidities of alkylcyanoacetic esters and alkylmalonitriles (for malononitrile K ionization $\sim 10^{-11}$)¹⁰³ cause dialkylation to be a more serious problem.^{95,104-106}

Dialkylation also becomes an important side reaction in the alkylation of active methylene compounds with very reactive halogen compounds such as benzyl halides,^{95,107-119} allyl halides,^{53,56,120-122} phenacyl halides,^{56,106,123,124} and α -chloro thio ethers.^{125,126} The large amount of dialkylation observed with the allyl or benzyl halides or with α -halo ethers may be attributed to the fact that heterolytic cleavage of the carbon-halogen bond in such compounds during bimolecular displacement reactions may occur without substantial aid from the attacking nucleophilic reagent. Therefore, a halide of this type (e.g., benzyl chloride) would be expected to show less discrimination between two nucleophilic

¹⁰² Clemo and Tenniswood, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1931**, 2549.

¹⁰³ Branch and Calvin, *The Theory of Organic Chemistry*, Prentice-Hall, New York, **1941**, p. 269.

¹⁰⁴ Hesse, *Am. Chem. J.*, **18**, 723 (1896).

¹⁰⁵ Cohen, Marshall, and Woodman, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **107**, 887 (1915).

¹⁰⁶ Ráy and Ráy, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **127**, 2721 (1925).

¹⁰⁷ Bischoff and Siebert, *Ann.*, **239**, 92 (1887).

¹⁰⁸ Fittig and Röders, *Ann.*, **256**, 87 (1890).

¹⁰⁹ Hausmann, *Ber.*, **22**, 2019 (1889).

¹¹⁰ Poppe, *Ber.*, **23**, 108 (1890).

¹¹¹ Cassirer, *Ber.*, **25**, 3018 (1892).

¹¹² Reissert, *Ber.*, **29**, 633 (1896).

¹¹³ Maxim, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] **39**, 1024 (1926).

¹¹⁴ Fieser and Seligman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **57**, 942 (1935).

¹¹⁵ Kenner and Witham, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **119**, 1452 (1921).

¹¹⁶ Walker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **125**, 1622 (1924).

¹¹⁷ Gulland, Haworth, Virden, and Callow, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1929**, 1666.

¹¹⁸ Curtius and Mülhäußer, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **125**, 291 (1930).

¹¹⁹ Marvel, *Org. Syntheses*, **21**, 99 (1941).

¹²⁰ Paul and Cottin, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **4**, 933 (1937).

¹²¹ MeBay, Jenkins, and Data, *J. Am. Pharm. Assoc.*, **39**, 138 (1950) [*C. A.*, **44**, 4870 (1950)].

¹²² Ziegler, *Fr. pat.* 728,241 [*C. A.*, **26**, 5573 (1932)].

¹²³ Klobb, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [7] **10**, 168 (1897).

¹²⁴ Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **91**, 1004 (1907).

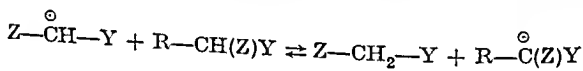
¹²⁵ Walter, Goodson, and Fosbinder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 655 (1945).

¹²⁶ Walter, Goodson, and Fosbinder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 657 (1945).

reagents (e.g., the sodium enolate of diethyl malonate and the more hindered sodium enolate of diethyl benzylmalonate) than would a saturated alkyl halide (e.g., *n*-butyl chloride; cleavage of the carbon-chlorine bond in this case would be greatly facilitated by the attacking nucleophilic reagent).

In addition to the foregoing suggestion, a second factor may account for the large amount of dialkylation observed with phenacyl halides. A monoalkylated product such as diethyl phenacylmalonate would be expected to be more acidic than a monoalkyl derivative such as diethyl ethylmalonate because of the proximity of an electron-withdrawing carbonyl function in the former example. For this reason the proportion of diethyl phenacylmalonate converted to its sodium enolate, a necessary intermediate for dialkylation, would be larger than the proportion of diethyl ethylmalonate converted to its sodium enolate under comparable conditions.

As the reaction leading to the alkylation of an active methylene compound ($Z-CH_2-Y$) proceeds, the ratio of the concentration of the mono-substituted enolate [$R-\overset{\ominus}{C}(Z)Y$] to the concentration of the unsubstituted enolate ($Z-\overset{\ominus}{CH}-Y$) must necessarily increase. An increase in this ratio will increase the proportion of dialkylation that occurs. This unfavorable



$$\frac{[R-\overset{\ominus}{C}(Z)Y]}{[Z-\overset{\ominus}{CH}-Y]} = \frac{K[R-CH(Z)Y]}{[Z-CH_2-Y]}$$

concentration ratio may be overcome to a large extent if an excess of the active methylene compound ($Z-CH_2-Y$) is used,^{7,33,105,116,118,127-135} a possibility first realized by Leuchs.¹³⁶ Dialkylation has also been diminished by the addition of an excess of both the active methylene

¹²⁷ Gagnon, Boivin, and Boivin, *Can. J. Research*, **28B**, 207 (1950).

¹²⁸ Gagnon, Boivin, and Giguère, *Can. J. Research*, **28B**, 352 (1950).

¹²⁹ Skinner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 322 (1937).

¹³⁰ Huber, Clinton, Boehme, and Jackman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 1018 (1945).

¹³¹ Gol'mov, *Zhur. Obshch. Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **19**, 1679 (1949) [*C. A.*, **44**, 1030 (1950)].

¹³² Olynyk, Camp, Griffith, Woiślowaki, and Helmkamp, *J. Org. Chem.*, **13**, 465 (1948).

¹³³ Curtius and Gaier, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **125**, 279 (1930).

¹³⁴ Brigl, *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. physiol. Chem.*, **95**, 161 (1915).

¹³⁵ Weitzel and Wojahn, *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. physiol. Chem.*, **285**, 220 (1950).

¹³⁶ Leuchs, *Ber.*, **44**, 1507 (1911).

compound and the base; such additions serve to increase the concentration of the active methylene enolate ($Z-\overset{\ominus}{\text{CH}}-\text{Y}$).^{112,124,137-139}

Other factors reported to favor monoalkylation include the use of low-boiling solvents⁵³ and the use of alkyl chlorides rather than alkyl bromides.¹⁴⁰

Order of Introduction of Groups. If two alkyl groups are to be introduced into malonic or cyanoacetic ester, the order of introduction of groups may have a profound influence on the yield and purity of the product. When the two alkyl groups are identical best results have been obtained by adding one equivalent of the base and alkyl halide, allowing the reaction mixture to become approximately neutral, and then adding the second equivalent of base and alkyl halide.¹⁴¹ Where two different alkyl residues are to be introduced, it is advisable to introduce the larger group first if both alkylation steps involve displacement at a primary carbon atom.¹⁴²⁻¹⁴⁵ This order is of particular importance if the smaller alkyl residue is a methyl or an ethyl group; in these cases the boiling points of the unchanged ester, the monoalkylated ester, and the dialkylated ester are too close to one another to permit separation without recourse either to very precise fractional distillation¹³⁵ or to a chemical separation (p. 157).

In the dialkylation of malonic ester the introduction of a primary alkyl group should always *precede* the introduction of a secondary alkyl group. If this precaution is not observed the introduction of a second alkyl group is often unsuccessful,^{35,145-149} because of the low acidity of the intermediate *sec*-alkylmalonic ester (p. 110) and the sterically hindered nature of the corresponding enolate anion. This difficulty accompanying the alkylation of *sec*-alkylmalonic esters has occasionally been overcome by the use of a strong base such as sodium *t*-butoxide in *t*-butyl alcohol.³⁵

Side Reactions. Aside from dialkylation, a wide variety of side reactions may attend the alkylation of an active methylene compound. Among these side reactions are the reactions of the alkylating agent with the base

¹³⁷ Hinegardner and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 3724 (1930).

¹³⁸ Leveno and Allen, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **27**, 433 (1916).

¹³⁹ Zaheer and Sidhu, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **24**, 134 (1947).

¹⁴⁰ Hinegardner and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 4139 (1930).

¹⁴¹ Leveno and Cretcher, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **33**, 505 (1918).

¹⁴² Dolique, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [10], **15**, 429 (1931).

¹⁴³ Dolique, *Compt. rend.*, **190**, 878 (1930).

¹⁴⁴ Dox and Yoder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **44**, 1141 (1922).

¹⁴⁵ Crossley and Le Sueur, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 83 (1900).

¹⁴⁶ Kondakova and Katsnel'son, *Compt. rend. acad. sci. (U.R.S.S.) N.S.*, **4**, 403 (1936) [*C. A.*, **31**, 3448 (1937)].

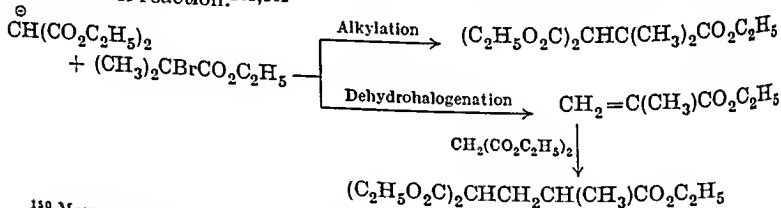
¹⁴⁷ Zelinskii, Bondar, Kost, and Lifshits, *Izvest. Akad. Nauk S.S.S.R., Otdel. Khim. Nauk*, (1951), No. 2, 96 [*C. A.*, **45**, 10205 (1951)].

¹⁴⁸ Shonle, Keltch, and Swanson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 2440 (1930).

¹⁴⁹ Hope and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **95**, 1360 (1909).

and solvent. Provided that an adequate concentration of the enolate anion is present (p. 115) the interaction of the alkylating agent and the solvent and/or the base to produce an ether becomes a serious competing reaction only with very reactive halides such as allyl,¹⁵⁰⁻¹⁵² benzyl,^{153,154} and benzhydryl halides. The low yields obtained in the synthesis of benzhydrylmalonic esters, presumably attributable to solvolysis of the benzhydryl halides in the alcoholic reaction mixture,¹⁵⁵ may be avoided if the reaction is conducted in benzene solution.¹⁵⁶ Triphenylmethyl chloride also has served as an effective alkylating agent in ether solution.⁵⁶

As was noted earlier (p. 112) tertiary alkyl halides that can undergo dehydrohalogenation usually do so more rapidly than they undergo the displacement reaction leading to alkylation; accordingly, they are poor alkylating agents.^{157,159} Olefin formation is less important with secondary alkyl halides¹⁶⁰ and is not a serious side reaction with primary alkyl halides. Halogen compounds like ethyl α -bromoisobutyrate¹⁶¹⁻¹⁶⁷ and ethyl β -bromolevulinate¹⁶⁸ whose dehydrohalogenation leads to an α,β -unsaturated ester or ketone introduce a further complication; the initially formed unsaturated products may add the active methylene compound in a Michael reaction.^{161,162}



¹⁵⁰ Mousseron and Winternitz, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, 1946, 604.

¹⁵¹ Perkins and Cruz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 49, 517 (1927).

¹⁵² Kierstead, Linstead, and Weedon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1953, 1803.

¹⁵³ Mayer, Sieglitz, Fischer, Hagen, Jung, Knies, Kohl, Listmann, Neugebauer, and Schulte, *Ber.*, 55, 1835 (1922).

¹⁵⁴ de Benneville, Clagett, and Connor, *J. Org. Chem.*, 6, 690 (1941).

¹⁵⁵ Hammett, *Physical Organic Chemistry*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1940, p. 167.

¹⁵⁶ Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 56, 721 (1934).

¹⁵⁷ Wideqvist, *Arkiv Kemi, Mineral. Geol.*, B23, No. 4, 6 (1946) [*C. A.*, 41, 1615 (1947)].

¹⁵⁸ St. Pfau and Plattner, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 22, 202 (1939).

¹⁵⁹ Alexander, McCollum, and Paul, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 4791 (1950).

¹⁶⁰ Kazanskii and Lukina, *Doklady Akad. Nauk S.S.S.R.*, 83, 693 (1952) [*C. A.*, 47, 2712 (1953)].

¹⁶¹ Bischoff and von Kuhlberg, *Ber.*, 23, 634 (1890).

¹⁶² Bischoff and Mintz, *Ber.*, 23, 647 (1890).

¹⁶³ Auwers and Jackson, *Ber.*, 23, 1599 (1890).

¹⁶⁴ Zelinsky and Bezedka, *Ber.*, 24, 459 (1891).

¹⁶⁵ Bischoff, *Ber.*, 24, 1041 (1891).

¹⁶⁶ Auwers and Kohner, *Ber.*, 24, 1923 (1891).

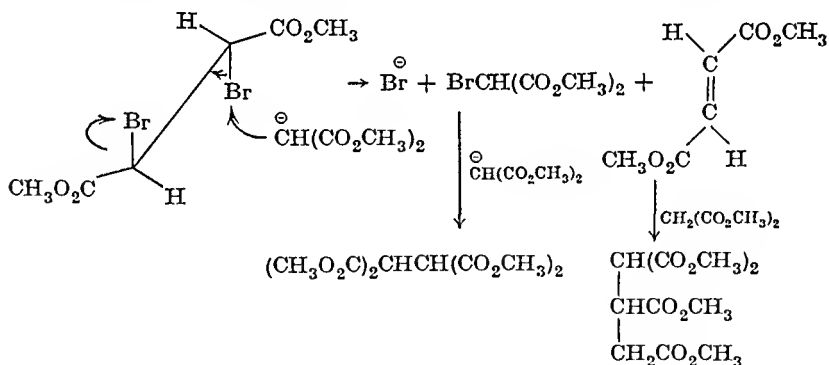
¹⁶⁷ Bone and Sprankling, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 75, 839 (1899).

¹⁶⁸ Emery, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] 53, 308 (1896).

Decarbalkoxylation (p. 127) and side reactions which involve the alkylating agent and the base may be minimized if a mixture of the alkylating agent and the active methylene compound is treated with the base at a rate equal to that at which the base is consumed in the reaction.^{42,121,169,170}

Similarly, the slow addition of the sodium derivatives of mononitriles to allylic halides has been found to minimize the extent of polymerization of both the alkylating agent and the product.¹⁷¹

Certain vicinal dihalides tend to lose their halogen atoms with the simultaneous production of the corresponding olefin under the conditions of the alkylation reaction. Such dihalides include ethylene iodide (but not ethylene bromide),⁹² 2,3-dibromo-2-methylbutane,^{172,173} *o,o'*-dinitrostilbene dibromide,¹⁷⁴ and diethyl *erythro*- α,α' -dibromosuccinate.¹⁷⁵ For each molecule of halogen lost, two molecules of the active methylene compound are coupled in a reaction similar to the coupling of active methylene compounds in the presence of iodine (p. 137). Certain of the olefins produced in this way may add an additional equivalent of the active methylene compound in a Michael reaction.¹⁷⁵ The reaction of



dimethyl *erythro*- α,α' -dibromosuccinate is illustrative. In addition to the major products, dimethyl fumarate, tetramethyl 1,1,2,2-ethanetetracarboxylate, and tetramethyl 1,1,2,3-propanetetracarboxylate, a small amount of racemic tetramethyl 1,1,2,3-cyclopropanetetracarboxylate was formed. The cyclopropane tetracarboxylic ester is believed to arise from

¹⁶⁹ Phillips, *Ind. Chemist*, **21**, 678 (1945).

¹⁷⁰ Mariella and Raube, *Org. Syntheses*, **33**, 23 (1953).

¹⁷¹ Whyte and Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 1999 (1943).

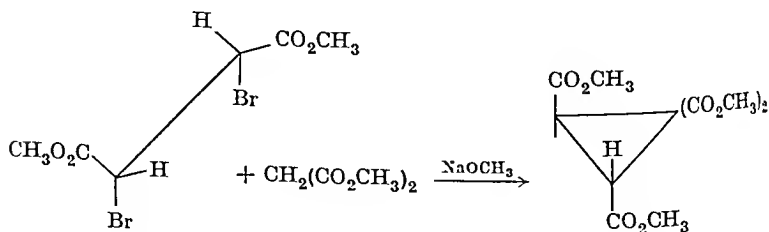
¹⁷¹ Bischoff, *Ber.*, 28, 2824 (1895).

¹¹³ Ipatiew, *J. Russ. Phys. Chem. Soc.*, **30**, 391 (1898) (*Chem. Zentr.*, 1898, II, 660).

¹⁷⁴ Bischoff, *Ber.*, 21, 2071 (1888).

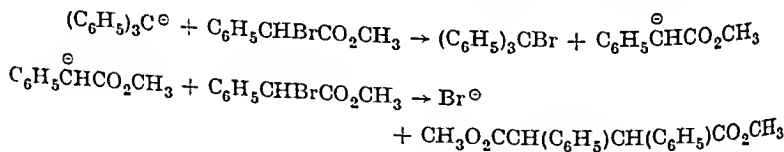
¹⁷⁵ Ing and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **125**, 1814 (1924).

the partial base-catalyzed isomerization of the dimethyl *erythro*- α,α' -dibromosuccinate to the *threo* isomer; dimethyl *threo*- α,α' -dibromosuccinate, when treated with dimethyl sodiomalonate, was converted to

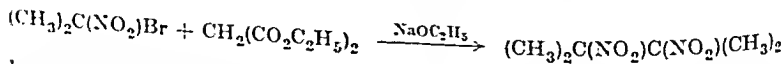


the racemic cyclopropane tetracarboxylic ester in 80–90% yield.¹⁷⁵ A similar base-catalyzed epimerization of the isomeric α,α' -dibromoglutaric esters has been observed.¹⁷⁶

Another side reaction which involves the transfer of a halogen atom is exemplified by the attempted alkylation of methyl diphenylacetate with methyl α -bromophenylacetate in the presence of sodium triphenylmethide.⁶⁷ The product was dimethyl α,α' -diphenylsuccinate.



Similarly, 2-bromo-2-nitropropane and diethyl sodiomalonate underwent partial halogen interchange, the products being tetraethyl 1,1,2,2-ethanetetracarboxylate and 2,3-dimethyl-2,3-dinitrobutane.¹⁷⁷ However, normal alkylation was observed when 2-chloro-2-nitropropane was allowed to react with the sodium enolate of diethyl ethylmalonate.¹⁷⁷ Halogenated nitroalkanes in which the nitro group is bonded to a carbon atom



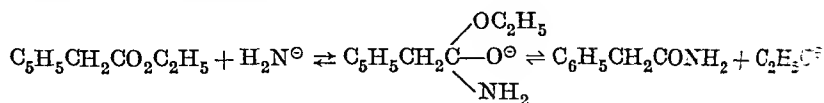
bearing a hydrogen atom cannot be employed as alkylating agents. Instead, the enolate of the nitro compound is formed, since it is less basic than the enolate of malonic ester.

In addition to the side reactions that can occur with the alkylating agent, both the initial active methylene compound and the alkylated product can undergo a number of transformations. The possibility of ester interchange when the alkoxyl group of the ester and the alkoxide ion differ has already been mentioned (p. 117). When sodium amide is

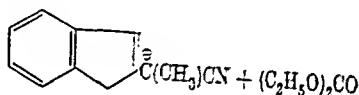
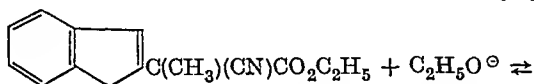
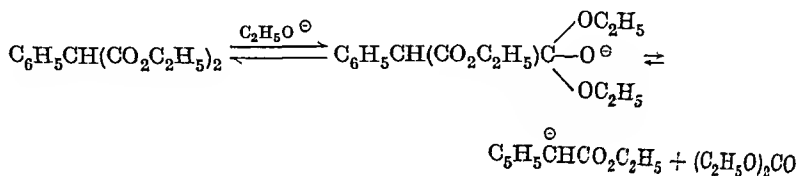
¹⁷⁵ For and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 127, 2387 (1925).

¹⁷⁶ See Tauchen and Van Zyl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 71, 835 (1949).

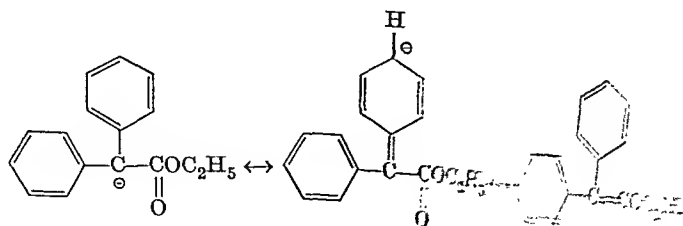
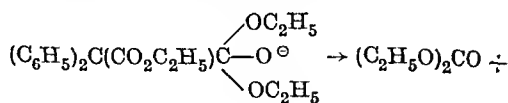
used as the base for the alkylation of esters, amide formation may be a serious side reaction.^{178,179}



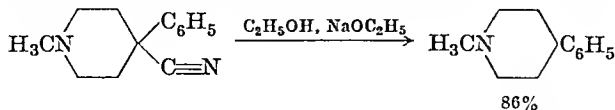
A related side reaction results in the loss of the carbalkoxyl group as the corresponding dialkyl carbonate.¹⁸⁰ Similarly, cyanoacetic esters are converted to mononitriles.¹⁸¹ Among the malonic esters the importance



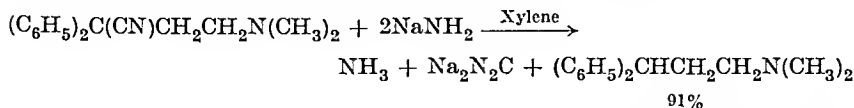
of this side reaction decreases in the following order: diethyl diphenylmalonate > diethyl ethyl(phenyl)malonate > diethyl diethylmalonate.¹⁸²



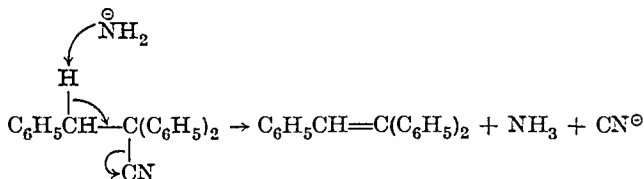
base, sodium amide, does attack the cyano group in such solvents as boiling benzene,¹⁹¹ toluene,¹⁹² or xylene.¹⁹¹⁻¹⁹⁴ Under such conditions



the nitrile function may be eliminated as sodium cyanamide.



The loss of the nitrile function has also been observed with substituted nitriles which have no hydrogen atom on the carbon atom *alpha* to the nitrile group and which have a hydrogen atom and a phenyl group on the carbon atom *beta* to the cyano group.¹⁹⁵ This elimination of hydrogen cyanide may be likened to other bimolecular elimination processes as is shown in the accompanying equation. In the presence of basic catalysts



both acetic esters and mono- and di-substituted acetic esters can condense with themselves in a reaction of the acetoacetic ester type¹⁷⁹ to produce β -keto esters with a consequent diminished yield of the alkylated product.^{178,196} A similar condensation, the Thorpe reaction, occurs as a side reaction and results in poor yields in the alkylation of certain mononitriles.⁷¹⁻⁷³ Such Claisen-type condensations become particularly important with compounds where intramolecular condensation is possible.^{176,197-201} The accompanying example¹⁹⁸ illustrates both a

¹⁹¹ Ruddy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4096 (1951).

¹⁹² Jackman, Nachod, and Archer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 716 (1950).

¹⁹³ Jackman, Bolen, Nachod, Tullar, and Archer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 2301 (1949).

¹⁹⁴ Kleiderer, *Report No. P.B. 981*, Office of the Publication Board, Dept. of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

¹⁹⁵ Hauser and Brasen, to be published.

¹⁹⁶ Scheibler, Marhenkel, and Bassanoff, *Ber.*, **58**, 1198 (1925).

¹⁹⁷ Perkin and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **79**, 729 (1901).

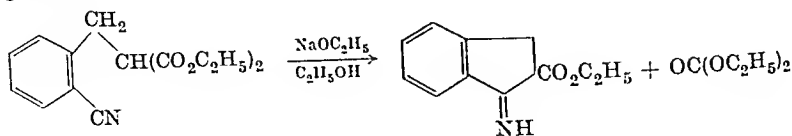
¹⁹⁸ Mitchell and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **97**, 2261 (1910).

¹⁹⁹ Goss and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 1268.

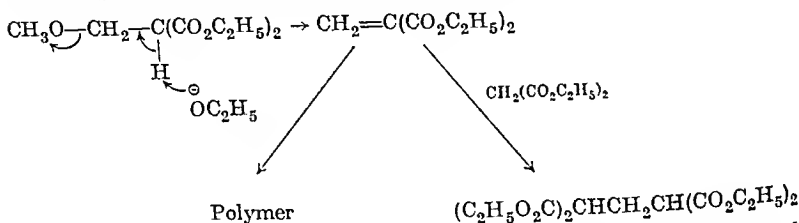
²⁰⁰ Acheson and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 1127.

²⁰¹ Kierstead, Linstead, and Weeden, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1953**, 1799.

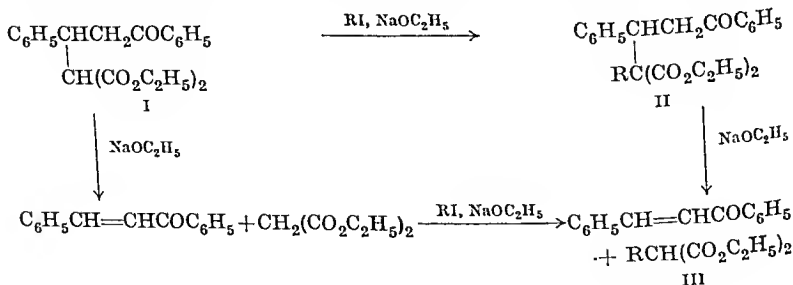
Claisen condensation and the subsequent elimination of a carbethoxy group.



Active methylene compounds having alkoxy²⁰²⁻²⁰⁴ or alkylthio²⁰⁵ functions bonded to the carbon atom *beta* to the activating group have been observed to undergo base-catalyzed elimination under the conditions of the alkylation reaction. The unsaturated compounds initially formed are susceptible to polymerization and Michael reactions.



During the alkylation of certain malonic esters a reverse Michael reaction competes with the alkylation reaction. In such cases the alkylation products of diethyl malonate or diethyl monoalkylmalonates are isolated.^{87,154,206,207} For example, the products of the alkylation of ethyl γ -benzoyl- α -carbethoxy- β -phenylbutyrate (I) were dependent on the alkylating agent employed.¹⁵⁴ With methyl iodide both the keto



²⁰² Ziegler, Schenck, Krockow, Siebert, Wenz, and Weber, *Ann.*, **551**, 1 (1942).

²⁰³ McElvain and Burkett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 1831 (1942).

²⁰⁴ Simonsen, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **93**, 1777 (1908).

²⁰⁵ Böhme and Greve, *Chem. Ber.*, **85**, 409 (1952).

²⁰⁶ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 1500 (1896).

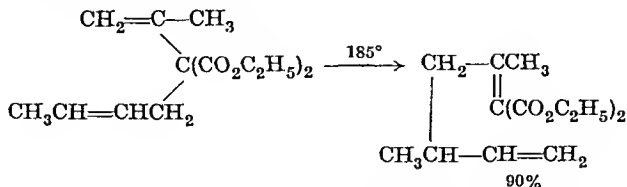
²⁰⁷ Rydon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1935, 420.

ester II ($R = CH_3$) and diethyl methylmalonate (III, $R = CH_3$) were formed. If the less reactive ethyl iodide was employed, only diethyl ethylmalonate (III, $R = C_2H_5$) was produced since the reaction mixture remained basic sufficiently long for the reverse Michael reaction to predominate. Whether the cleavage occurred before or after the alkylation step is not known.

If the active methylene compound employed contains other reactive functions additional side reactions are possible. In the case of diethyl chloromalonate the rate of displacement of the chloride ion by the ethoxide anion exceeds the rate of alkylation except with very reactive alkylating agents such as benzyl chloride²⁰⁸ or 4-(or 5-)chloromethylimidazole.²⁰⁹ Small amounts (1.5%) of diethyl 5-ethoxyhexylmalonate were formed along with diethyl 2-methylcyclohexane-1,1-dicarboxylate when diethyl 5-bromohexylmalonate was cyclized in the presence of sodium ethoxide.²¹⁰

Additional side reactions may accompany the alkylation of alkylidene-malonic esters, alkylidenecyanoacetic esters, and alkylidenemalononitriles. These include polymerization^{28,37,211,212} and reverse aldol reactions.²⁸ If sodium in an inert solvent is used to prepare the enolates of alkylidene esters partial reduction may occur (p. 119).

The products obtained from the alkylation of alkylidene derivatives of malonic ester,^{64,213} cyanoacetic ester,^{64,214-217} malononitriles,^{215,216} and mononitriles¹⁷¹ with allylic halides have been found to undergo thermal isomerization in certain cases, and the products must be distilled at temperatures that do not cause rearrangement. For the various active methylene compounds used, the rates of such rearrangements fall in the order: malononitriles > cyanoacetic esters > malonic esters.^{171,213,215,216}



Steric effects influence markedly the ease of these rearrangements.^{213,215}

²⁰⁸ Conrad, *Ann.*, **209**, 241 (1881).

²⁰⁹ Pyman, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **99**, 1386 (1911).

²¹⁰ Gol'mov, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **23**, 1162 (1953) [*C. A.*, **47**, 12255 (1953)].

²¹¹ Cope and Hoyle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 733 (1941).

²¹² Cope, U.S. pat. 2,222,455 [*C. A.*, **35**, 1802 (1941)].

²¹³ Aldridge and Murphy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1158 (1951).

²¹⁴ Cope and Hardy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 441 (1940).

²¹⁵ Cope, Hoyle, and Heyl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 1843 (1941).

²¹⁶ Foster, Cope, and Daniels, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 1893 (1947).

²¹⁷ Cope and Field, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 1589 (1949).

The Active Methylene Compound

Malonic Esters (Table I). In the many alkylations reported to yield monoalkylmalonic esters, the base-solvent combination generally employed was sodium ethoxide in ethanol. As noted previously (p. 120) such reaction conditions inhibit dialkylation since, in most cases, the monoalkyl derivative is less acidic than ethanol. This advantage, which is not shared with cyanoacetic ester and malononitrile, recommends malonic ester if only the monoalkyl compound is desired. The separation problem that arises in the preparation of methylmalonic esters and ethylmalonic esters (p. 123) is best avoided by employing an alternative synthetic method (p. 147) for these esters. The use of the ethoxymagnesium salt of malonic ester rather than sodiomalonic ester is a valuable modification^{55,56,150,216-220} if the alkylation is to be run in an inert solvent such as ether or benzene (p. 116). Diethyl carbonate (pp. 117, 128) offers advantages as the solvent in some instances.

Substituted Malonic Esters (Tables II, III, and IV) and Alkylidenemalonic Esters (Table V). The reduced acidity⁵ of monoalkylmalonic esters (p. 110) in which the alkyl group is secondary or tertiary^{44,52,145-149,221-226} has resulted in low yields during alkylations in the presence of ethanolic sodium ethoxide. This difficulty, which is much less serious with the analogous cyanoacetic esters (p. 134), has been overcome by recourse to stronger bases and less acidic solvents. The use of sodium *t*-butoxide in *t*-butyl alcohol has permitted the alkylation of diethyl isopropylmalonate,³⁵ diethyl (1-ethylbutyl)malonate,³⁵ and diethyl cyclohexylmalonate.³⁵ Diethyl diisopropylmalonate was prepared by the use of sodium and ether at elevated temperatures in a sealed tube.⁵² Diethyl ethyl(*sec*-butyl)malonate was obtained in 95% yield when the ethanol-free sodium enolate of diethyl *sec*-butylmalonate was heated with ethyl bromide in diethyl carbonate.^{44,51,227} Another striking demonstration of the value of this method is found in the alkylation of diethyl *t*-butylmalonate with allyl bromide, the reaction being effected in 36% yield in the presence of sodium ethoxide and diethyl carbonate.⁴⁴ Benzene and toluene have

²¹⁸ Fuson and Jackson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 351 (1950).

²¹⁹ Ali-Zade and Arbuzov, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **13**, 113 (1943) [*C. A.*, **38**, 352 (1944)].

²²⁰ Terent'ev, *J. Russ. Phys.-Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 85 (1928) [*C. A.*, **22**, 3880 (1928)].

²²¹ Conrad and Guthzeit, *Ann.*, **222**, 249 (1883).

²²² Fischer and Diltney, *Ann.*, **335**, 334 (1904).

²²³ Bischoff, *Ber.*, **29**, 972 (1896).

²²⁴ Cope and Lyman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 3312 (1953).

²²⁵ Marshall, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1930**, 2754.

²²⁶ Weizmann, Sulzbacher, and Bergmann, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1947**, 772.

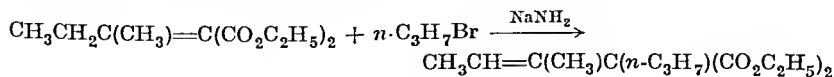
²²⁷ Wallingford and Homeyer, U.S. pat. 2,391,530 [*C. A.*, **40**, 3770 (1946)].

served as solvents for the alkylation of the sodium salts of diethyl benzhydrylmalonate¹⁵⁶ and dibenzhydryl benzhydrylmalonate²²⁴ with benzhydryl bromide.

The introduction of a phenyl group reduces the acidity of diethyl malonate or ethyl phenylacetate, the reduction in acidity being comparable with that resulting from the introduction of a methyl group (p. 110).⁵ An explanation for this phenomenon may be the non-coplanarity of the phenyl derivative, which inhibits effective resonance stabilization of the enolate anion.

Alkylation of chloromalonic ester is successful only with very reactive alkylating agents (p. 131).^{209,228-230} With less reactive alkylating agents, coupling of the malonic ester residues²³¹ or ether formation is the predominant reaction. In the alkylation of nitromalonic ester, the alkyl group is introduced on the carbon atom¹⁸³ rather than on an oxygen atom. Whereas the alkylation of aminomalonic esters results in both C- and N-alkylation,²³² formamido, acetamido, benzamido, and phthalimido derivatives of malonic ester can be alkylated without N-alkylation. The formamido- and acetamido-malonates are most useful since the phthalimido derivatives are hydrolyzed and decarboxylated with difficulty²³³ and many of the alkyl(benzamido)malonic esters are oils.²³² The facile deacylation of formamidomalonates and acetamidomalonates may be disadvantageous if the alkylation reaction is slow. The yields of the isopropyl derivative obtained with diethyl acetamidomalonate (37%)^{234,235} and with diethyl benzamidomalonate (66%)²³³ are explicable in terms of the greater susceptibility of the acetamido group to alcoholysis. The absence of alcohol in the reaction mixture has proved advantageous in the alkylation of diethyl phthalimidomalonate with 1,3-dibromopropane and with γ -phthalimidopropyl bromide.²³⁶

The alkylation of alkylidenemalonic esters produces the α -alkyl derivative of the corresponding β,γ -unsaturated ester. The accompanying



example²³⁷ illustrates the shift of the double bond to yield the more highly

²²⁸ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **53**, 1 (1888).

²²⁹ Kipping, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **53**, 21 (1888).

²³⁰ Titley, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 2571.

²³¹ Kötz and Zörnig, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **74**, 425 (1906).

²³² Albertson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **68**, 450 (1946).

²³³ Redemann and Dunn, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **130**, 341 (1939).

²³⁴ Atkinson and Scott, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1040.

²³⁵ Snyder, Shekleton, and Lewis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 310 (1945).

²³⁶ Sörensen, *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. physiol. Chem.*, **44**, 448 (1905).

²³⁷ Cope and Hancock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 2901 (1938).

substituted vinyl derivative, which occurs when the double bond can migrate into either of two positions. As with saturated alkylmalonic ester derivatives, chain branching markedly reduces the acidity of alkylidenemalonic esters. Although sodium ethoxide may serve as the base for the alkylation of alkylidenemalonic esters derived from aldehydes,²⁸ the branched alkylidene derivatives prepared from ketones require a stronger base.²³⁷ Since the use of sodium in an inert solvent causes reduction of the alkylidene derivative (p. 119), sodium amide in liquid ammonia or in an inert solvent has proved to be most satisfactory for the preparation of enolates from alkylidenemalonic esters derived from ketones.

Cyanoacetic Esters (Table VI). Like malonic esters, cyanoacetic esters are usually alkylated in the presence of ethanolic sodium ethoxide. The increased importance of dialkylation (p. 121) as a side reaction attending the alkylation of cyanoacetic esters has been discussed. The high order of reactivity of the ethyl cyanoacetate enolate has been utilized advantageously to prevent side reactions with very reactive alkylating agents;²³⁸ in such cases reaction of the alkylating agent with the enolate anion is apparently more rapid than the reaction of the alkylating agent with the base or the solvent.

Substituted Cyanoacetic Esters (Tables VII and VIII) and Alkylidenecyanoacetic Esters (Table IX). The use of cyanoacetic esters rather than malonic esters is recommended if the preparation of a dialkyl derivative is desired. Monoalkyl derivatives of cyanoacetic ester are readily alkylated in the presence of ethanol and sodium ethoxide even if the first alkyl group introduced is branched.^{145,225,226,238-240} This property both simplifies the preparation of dialkylcyanoacetic esters and eliminates the need to introduce the primary alkyl group in the first stage of the alkylation as often must be done with malonic esters (p. 123). For example, ethyl ethyl(isopropyl)cyanoacetate was prepared in 86% yield from ethyl isopropylcyanoacetate and ethyl iodide,²³⁹ whereas diethyl ethyl(isopropyl)malonate was obtained from diethyl isopropylmalonate under similar conditions in very poor yield.¹⁴⁵

Ethyl acetamidocyanoacetate^{232,241,242} and methyl (phenylacetamido)cyanoacetate²⁴³⁻²⁴⁵ have been alkylated in the presence of alcoholic

²³⁸ Tabern and Volwiler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **56**, 1139 (1934).

²³⁹ Fischer, Rohde, and Brauns, *Ann.*, **402**, 364 (1914).

²⁴⁰ Fischer and Flatau, *Ber.*, **42**, 2981 (1909).

²⁴¹ Albertson and Tullar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 502 (1945).

²⁴² Fields, Walz, and Rothchild, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1000 (1951).

²⁴³ Ehrhart, *Chem. Ber.*, **82**, 60 (1949).

²⁴⁴ Ehrhart, *Chem. Ber.*, **82**, 387 (1949).

²⁴⁵ Horner and Medem, *Chem. Ber.*, **85**, 520 (1952).

sodium alkoxides without difficulty. Sodium hydride has been recommended as the base for the alkylation of acetamidomalonic ester and acetamidoacyanoacetic ester.²⁴⁶

The alkylation of alkylidenecyanoacetic esters derived from aldehydes has failed because these alkylidene derivatives are rapidly polymerized in the presence of bases.²¹² Aside from the fact that only the alkylidenemalononitriles derived from the simplest ketones are available,^{37,74} the use of alkylidenecyanoacetic esters derived from ketones rather than the malonic ester analogs offers an advantage in that the cyanoacetate derivatives may be alkylated in the presence of ethanolic sodium ethoxide.³⁷ However, sodium isopropoxide in isopropyl alcohol has been recommended for the alkylation of secondary alkylidenecyanoacetic esters.^{37,211,247}

Malononitriles (Table X) and Alkylidenemalononitriles (Table IX). Malononitrile, monoalkylmalononitriles, and alkylidenemalononitriles have been alkylated in the presence of ethanolic sodium ethoxide. However, the usefulness of the reaction is often limited by the simultaneous addition of the alcohol to one of the nitrile groups of the product^{95,104,211} to produce an imido ester (p. 128). In addition the alkylidenemalononitriles derived from aldehydes polymerize very readily.²¹¹ The use of malononitrile to form monoalkyl derivatives is limited by the ease with which it is dialkylated.⁹⁵

Monocarboxylic Esters (Table XI), 3-Aryl-2-benzofuranones (Table XII), and Succinic, Glutaric and Glutaconic Esters (Table XIII). Either sodium anide or sodium triphenylmethide in an inert solvent is the base most often used to produce the enolates of monocarboxylic esters. These sodium enolates have been alkylated with alkyl and allyl halides, with dihalogenated alkanes,²⁴⁸ with phenacyl bromide,²⁴⁸ with nitroaryl halides,²⁴⁸ with 4,7-dichloroquinoline,¹⁷⁸ with epoxides,⁶⁹ with dialkyl sulfates,²⁴⁹ and with alkyl sulfonates.⁶⁹ In contrast to the mononitriles (p. 136), dialkylation is not a serious problem. The 3-aryl-2-benzofuranones most often have been alkylated by treatment with sodium or potassium metal in an inert solvent followed by treatment with an alkylating agent. Several α -bromoglutaric esters have been converted to the corresponding cyclopropane derivatives by self-alkylation, the base used being sodium carbonate or potassium hydroxide.^{80,250}

As cited previously (p. 110), the acidity of acetic esters is reduced by alkyl substitution especially if the alkyl group is branched.⁵ Although the acidity of ethyl acetate is enhanced by the substitution of one phenyl group

²⁴⁶ Shapira, Shapira, and Dittmer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 3655 (1953).

²⁴⁷ Mitter and Dutta, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **25**, 306 (1948).

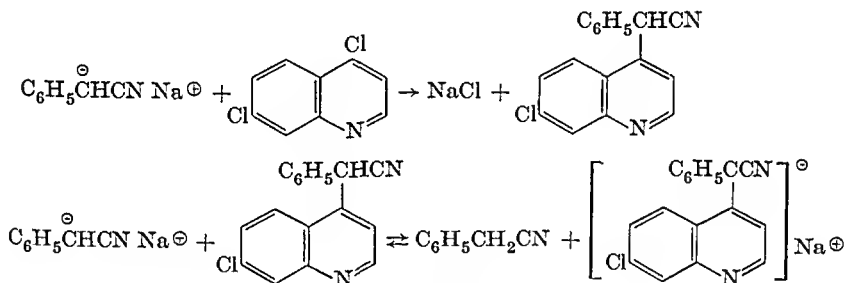
²⁴⁸ Wislicenus and Mocker, *Ber.*, **46**, 2772 (1913).

²⁴⁹ Bowden, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 131 (1938).

²⁵⁰ Perkin and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 48 (1899).

of the base potassium amide in a mixture of liquid ammonia and ether as the solvent has proved advantageous for the alkylation of phenylacetonitrile and diphenylacetonitrile.¹⁹⁵ The alkylating agents employed include alkyl and allyl halides, dihalogenated alkanes, chloropyridines, chloroquinolines, epoxides, dialkyl sulfates, and alkyl sulfonates. In some instances elevated reaction temperatures favor dialkylation,⁵³ elimination of the cyano group,^{91,191-193} or dimerization of the nitrile.⁷¹⁻⁷³ When 2- or 4-chloropyridines or 4-chloroquinolines were employed as the alkylating agent for phenylacetonitrile the yield of product did not exceed 50% unless two equivalents of sodium amide were used.^{178,254} This result has been attributed to the formation of an insoluble sodium salt which removed an additional equivalent of base from the reaction mixture.¹⁷⁸

The metal salts of primary and secondary amines have been used as bases for the alkylation of mononitriles.^{53,66,255} Sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide have also served as bases for the alkylation of nitriles.^{34,75-79,256,257}



Aldehydes^{258,259} and ketones^{171,193,259} condense readily with mononitriles. The alkylidene derivatives formed from ketones are best converted to their sodium enolates with sodium amide. Thus the alkylation of cyclohexylidene(phenyl)acetonitrile failed in ethanolic sodium ethoxide;²⁵⁹ with the stronger base sodium amide in benzene or ether, alkylated products were obtained in yields of 77-82%.¹⁷¹

Alkylating Agents

Halogens. The addition of bromine or iodine to an enolate often results in the coupling of two molecules of the active methylene compound. The

²⁵⁴ Sperber, Papa, Schwenk, Sherlock, and Fricano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 5752 (1951).

²⁵⁵ Ziegler, Ger. pat. 583,561 [*C. A.*, **28**, 1057 (1934)].

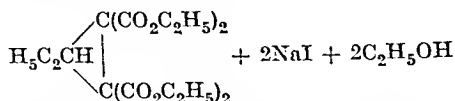
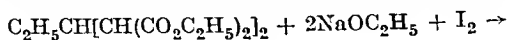
²⁵⁶ Meyer, *Ann.*, **250**, 118 (1888).

²⁵⁷ Haller and Benoist, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [9] **17**, 25 (1922).

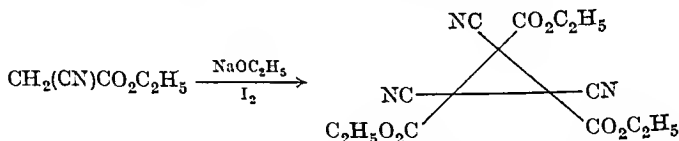
²⁵⁸ Murray and Cloke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 2014 (1936).

²⁵⁹ McRae and Manske, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 484.

probable course of the reaction^{107,260,261} will be seen to resemble the course of an analogous side reaction involving vicinal dihalides (p. 125). Similar dimeric products have been formed from monocarboxylic esters,^{67,69,248} 3-aryl-2-benzo-furanones,^{262,263} and mononitriles.²⁶⁴ However, the enolates of some monosubstituted malonic esters formed only the iodinated derivative of the active methylene compound when treated with iodine.²⁶⁵ That monosubstitution need not always inhibit this coupling reaction is indicated by the treatment of various polymethylene- α,ω -dimalonic esters with iodine and a base; the corresponding carbocycles are formed.^{87,266-269}



When the sodium enolate of ethyl cyanoacetate is treated with iodine a cyclic trimer is formed;²⁷⁰⁻²⁷² the same product results when ethyl bromocyanoacetate is heated with aniline in ether.²⁷³



Alkyl Halides. In reactivity as alkylating agents for active methylene compounds the various halogenated organic compounds lie in the order observed for other bimolecular nucleophilic displacement reactions; the allyl and benzyl halides are more reactive than the alkyl halides,²⁷⁴ which in turn are more reactive than the vinyl^{54,275-277} and aryl^{142,278} halides.

²⁶⁰ Bischoff and Rach, *Ber.*, **17**, 2781 (1884).

²⁶¹ Lennon and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 1513.

²⁶² Löwenbein and Simonis, *Ber.*, **57**, 2040 (1924).

²⁶³ Löwenbein, *Ber.*, **58**, 601 (1925).

²⁶⁴ Auwers and Meyer, *Ber.*, **22**, 1227 (1889).

²⁶⁵ Bischoff and Hausdörfer, *Ann.*, **239**, 110 (1887).

²⁶⁶ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **51**, 1 (1887).

²⁶⁷ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **51**, 240 (1887).

²⁶⁸ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 572 (1894).

²⁶⁹ Haworth and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 591 (1894).

²⁷⁰ Errera and Pereiaboseo, *Ber.*, **33**, 2976 (1900).

²⁷¹ Engler and Meyer, *Ber.*, **38**, 2486 (1905).

²⁷² Thorpe and Young, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 937 (1900).

²⁷³ Goldthwaite, *Am. Chem. J.*, **30**, 447 (1903).

²⁷⁴ Noller and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **48**, 2444 (1926).

²⁷⁵ Benary and Schinkopf, *Ber.*, **56**, 354 (1923).

²⁷⁶ V. Voorhees, Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Wisconsin, 1924.

²⁷⁷ Heyl and Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 669 (1943).

²⁷⁸ Dox and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **45**, 1811 (1923).

Likewise, for a given alkyl group the iodide is more reactive than the bromide,^{34,37,40,142,234,279-281} which is more reactive than the chloride,²⁸²⁻²⁸⁴ the fluoride being almost inert.²⁸⁵ Since very reactive halogen compounds favor dialkylation (p. 121), it is usually advisable to select the least reactive halide as an alkylating agent where dialkylation is expected to be a serious side reaction.^{140,280}

Alkyl halides that are readily dehydrohalogenated (e.g., tertiary alkyl halides) are unsuitable alkylating agents (p. 124), since the yield of alkylated product is materially reduced by the loss of both base and alkyl halide which accompanies dehydrohalogenation.^{44,149,168,286} For example, one-third of the cyclohexyl bromide employed in the alkylation of diethyl malonate was converted to cyclohexene.²⁸⁶

Although the alkyl bromides are usually the most satisfactory alkylating agents, the alkyl chloride is recommended when the corresponding alkyl bromide is very reactive. If the alkyl bromide is relatively unreactive, use of the corresponding alkyl iodide is preferable. If the desired alkyl iodide is not available a satisfactory alternative employs mixtures of the alkyl bromide or alkyl chloride with sodium iodide^{70,287-289,291} or potassium iodide^{290,292} in alcoholic media.

Di- and Poly-halides. Alkylation reactions involving methylene chloride,^{293,294} methylene bromide,²⁹⁵ and methylene iodide²⁹⁶⁻³⁰⁰ have been found to proceed normally. Such dihalides have been especially valuable for the preparation of cyclic systems.^{296,299-302} However, a

²⁷⁹ Rossolymo, *Ber.*, **22**, 1233 (1889).

²⁸⁰ Bischoff, *Ber.*, **28**, 2616 (1895).

²⁸¹ Kuhn, Köhler, and Köhler, *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. physiol. Chem.*, **242**, 171 (1936).

²⁸² Rothstein, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **2**, 80 (1935).

²⁸³ Noyes and Cox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **25**, 1093 (1903).

²⁸⁴ Dey and Doraiswami, *J. Ind. Chem. Soc.*, **10**, 309 (1933).

²⁸⁵ Hoffmann, *J. Org. Chem.*, **15**, 425 (1950).

²⁸⁶ Eykman, *Chem. Weekblad*, **6**, 699 (1909).

²⁸⁷ Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **9**, 99 (1942).

²⁸⁸ Gagnon, Savard, Gaudry, and Richardson, *Can. J. Research*, **25B**, 28 (1947).

²⁸⁹ Birch and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1942**, 488.

²⁹⁰ Rajzman, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1948**, 754.

²⁹¹ Buu-Hoi, Cagniant, and Janicaud, *Compt. rend.*, **212**, 1105 (1941).

²⁹² Pineau, *J. recherches centre natl. recherche sci.; Labs. Bellevue Paris*, **1951**, 292 [*C. A.*, **46**, 416 (1952)].

²⁹³ Perkin and Prentice, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 990 (1891).

²⁹⁴ Tutin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **91**, 1141 (1907).

²⁹⁵ Perkin and Scarborough, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **119**, 1400 (1921).

²⁹⁶ Dressel and Guthzeit, *Ann.*, **256**, 171 (1890).

²⁹⁷ Guthzeit and Dressel, *Ber.*, **21**, 2233 (1888).

²⁹⁸ Zelinsky, *Ber.*, **22**, 3294 (1889).

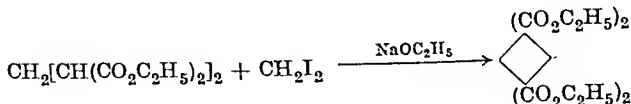
²⁹⁹ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 798 (1891).

³⁰⁰ Kötze and Stalman, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **68**, 156 (1903).

³⁰¹ Pospischill, *Ber.*, **31**, 1950 (1898).

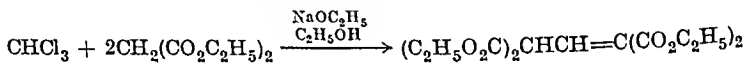
³⁰² Thole and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **99**, 2183 (1911).

similar reaction involving benzylidene chloride and tetraethyl 1,1,5,5-pentanetetracarboxylate led to the formation of the doubly unsaturated

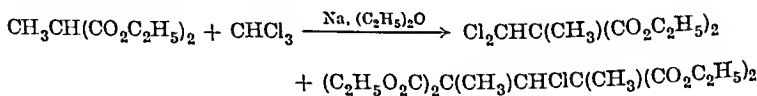


acid α,α' -dibenzylidenepimelic acid, after saponification and decarboxylation,³⁰³ rather than a cyclic compound.

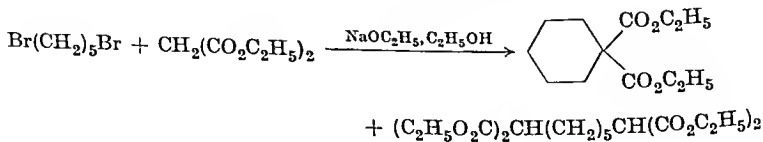
Chloroform, bromoform, iodoform, ethyl trichloroacetate, carbon tetrachloride, and carbon tetrabromide all react with diethyl sodiomalonate to form diethyl α,γ -dicarbethoxyglutaconate, although a similar reaction with 1,1,1-trichloroethane failed. Analogous products are formed with



other active methylene compounds including ethyl cyanoacetate and malononitrile.²³¹ If monoalkylmalonic esters are utilized in a similar reaction, a mixture of products is formed in which either one or two of the halogen atoms of the haloform is retained.²³¹



α,ω -Polymethylene dihalides have served as useful alkylating agents for the preparation of carbocyclic compounds with ring sizes ranging from three to seven.^{92,170,269,304-310} A competing reaction results in the



³⁰³ Perkin and Prentice, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 818 (1891).

³⁰⁴ Dox and Yoder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **43**, 1366 (1921).

³⁰⁵ Knowles and Cloke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **54**, 2028 (1932).

³⁰⁶ Case, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **56**, 715 (1934).

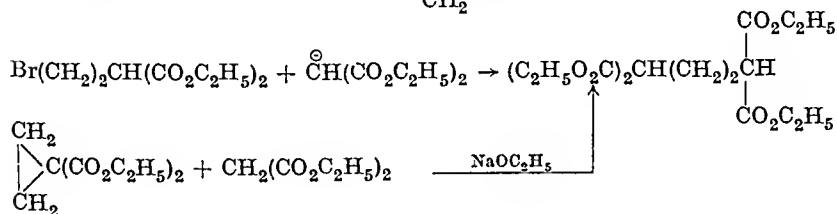
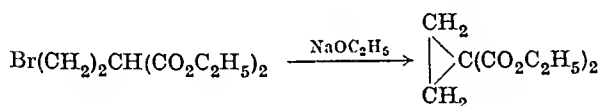
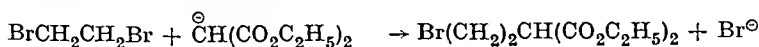
³⁰⁷ Weston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **68**, 2345 (1946).

³⁰⁸ Haworth and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 86 (1894).

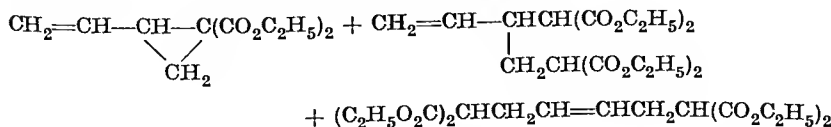
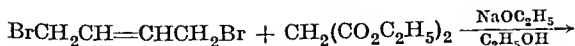
³⁰⁹ Carpenter and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 921 (1899).

³¹⁰ Best and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **95**, 685 (1909).

simultaneous formation of the tetralkyl polymethylene- α,ω -dimalonate.³¹¹ Although this tetracarboxylic ester is usually formed by attack of two diethyl malonate anions on the dihalide,³¹² the cyclopropane derivative obtained when ethylene dibromide serves as the alkylating agent has been found to be susceptible to attack by the enolate of an active methylene compound.^{310,312-314} Thus the tetracarboxylic ester could be formed by either of two routes. The yield of the cyclopropane is better if ethyl cyanoacetate is substituted for diethyl malonate. As would be anticipated, the use of a large volume of solvent favors intramolecular alkylation leading to a cyclic product.^{210,307}



A similar synthesis of cyclopropane derivatives utilizes 1,4-dibromo-2-butene as the alkylating agent.²⁰ The major products are tetraethyl 2-vinyl-1,1,4,4-butanetetracarboxylate and diethyl 2-vinyl-1,1-cyclopropanedicarboxylate, the cyclopropane derivative apparently having been formed by an intramolecular S_N2' process (p. 112).



It has proved difficult to arrest the reaction of polymethylene dihalides and sodiomalonic ester at the monoalkylation stage, since the intramolecular and intermolecular dialkylation reactions described previously

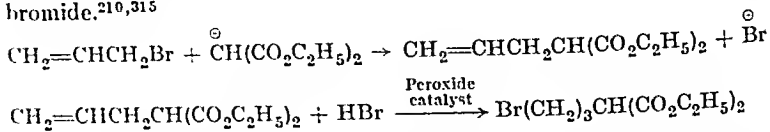
³¹¹ Freer and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 53, 215 (1888).

³¹² Bone and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 67, 108 (1895).

³¹³ Mitchell and Therpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 97, 997 (1910).

³¹⁴ Kierstead, Linstead, and Weedon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 3616.

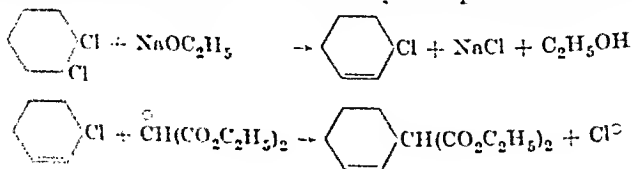
often predominate. However, diethyl γ -bromopropylmalonate has been prepared in 70% yield by the use of a large excess of 1,3-dibromopropane with diethyl malonate.¹³¹ An alternative synthesis for such compounds involves the initial formation of a terminal methylene derivative of malonic ester followed by the peroxide-catalyzed addition of hydrogen bromide.^{210,315}



Monoalkylation of diethyl sodiomalonate with 1-chloro-3-iodopropane would be expected to produce diethyl γ -chloropropylmalonate, displacement having involved the more reactive carbon-iodine bond. However, the alcohol-soluble sodium iodide produced in the reaction mixture converted the chloro ester in part to the corresponding iodo compound. When excess sodium iodide was added to the reaction mixture, only diethyl γ -iodopropylmalonate could be isolated.⁹² In the preparation of diethyl (β -chloroethyl)isoamylmalonate from 1-chloro-2-iodoethane and diethyl isoamylmalonate this problem was avoided by the use of a benzene solution in which sodium iodide is insoluble.³¹⁶

Where one of the halogens of the dihalide is bonded to a secondary carbon atom, some dehydrohalogenation may be expected to accompany alkylation.¹⁶⁰ Halogen atoms bonded to tertiary carbon atoms are lost as the corresponding hydrogen halide.^{173,317,318}

As described earlier (p. 125) certain vicinal dihalides, especially those compounds in which the halogen atoms are bonded to secondary and tertiary carbon atoms, tend to lose the halogen with the resulting formation of an olefin and the coupled product from two molecules of the active methylene compound. Other vicinal dihalides such as 1,2-dichlorocyclohexane,¹⁵⁰ 1,2-dibromocyclohexane,^{150,286,319} 1,2-dibromotetrahydronaphthalene,^{150,320} and 2,3-dibromodecahydronaphthalene¹⁵⁰ undergo



both alkylation and dehydrohalogenation reactions. Thus the product formed from the 1,2-dihalocyclohexanes was the same as the product formed from 2-cyclohexenyl chloride¹⁵⁰ or 2-cyclohexenyl bromide.³¹⁹ Since the alkylation of 1,2-dichlorocyclohexane with diethyl sodiomalonate proceeds much more rapidly than the analogous reaction with cyclohexyl chloride,¹⁵⁰ dehydrochlorination is presumed to be the first step in the reaction sequence. With 2,3-dibromotetrahydronaphthalene only dehydrohalogenation occurred, the product being naphthalene.³²⁰

The reaction of 1,2-dithiocyanocyclohexane with diethyl malonate is completely analogous to the reaction of the 1,2-dihalocyclohexanes. One thiocyno group is lost in an elimination reaction, and the other group is displaced with the production of diethyl 2-cyclohexenylmalonate.³²²

Vinyl and Aryl Halides. Although vinyl and aryl halides, being inert to nucleophilic displacement reactions, are generally of no value as alkylating agents, several successful alkylation reactions involving such halides have been reported. Thus 1,2-dibromoethylene reacted with diethyl ethylmalonate to yield diethyl ethyl-(β -bromovinyl)malonate.⁵⁴ However, 1,2-dichloroethylene failed to alkylate malonic ester.²⁷⁵ The successful alkylation of acetonitrile with chlorobenzene in the presence of potassium amide and liquid ammonia³²³ may be likened to the conversion of chlorobenzene to aniline under similar conditions,³²⁴ in which the amino group may become attached either to the carbon atom from which the chlorine atom is displaced or to an adjacent carbon atom. It is not known whether the position at which the cyanomethyl group enters and the position occupied by the leaving chlorine atom are the same.

If the carbon-halogen bond of the aryl halide is activated by the introduction of electron-attracting groups *ortho* and *para* to the halogen atom, then successful arylation will occur. For example, ethyl *p*-nitrophenylcyanoacetate has been prepared from *p*-nitrochlorobenzene and ethyl cyanoacetate.³²⁵ However, it will be recalled that such electron-attracting substituents also promote decarboxylation (p. 127). When diethyl 2,4-dinitrophenylmalonate was treated with 2,4-dinitrobromobenzene in ethanolic sodium ethoxide, only ethyl *bis*-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)acetate could be isolated.¹⁸⁴ Replacement of halogen atoms situated on negatively substituted benzene rings by hydrogen has also been observed during alkylation reactions.³²⁶⁻³²⁸

³²¹ Cagniant and Buu-Hoï, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] 9, 111 (1942).

³²² Mousseron and Winternitz, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] 11, 120 (1944).

³²³ Bergstrom and Agostinho, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 67, 2152 (1945).

³²⁴ Roberts, Simmons, Carlsmith, and Vaughan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 75, 3290 (1953).

³²⁵ Fairbourne and Fawson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1927, 46.

³²⁶ Jackson and Robinson, *Am. Chem. J.*, 11, 93 (1889).

³²⁷ Jackson and Robinson, *Am. Chem. J.*, 11, 541 (1889).

³²⁸ Jackson and Robinson, *Ber.*, 21, 2034 (1888).

The 2- and 4-halopyridines and the 2- and 4-chloroquinolines, whose reactivity may be likened to that of the nitrochlorobenzenes just described, also serve as effective alkylating agents.

Epoxides. Epoxides have served as alkylating agents for malonic esters, cyanoacetic esters, monocarboxylic esters, and mononitriles. Except in sterically unfavorable instances,⁷ the intermediate hydroxy esters or hydroxy nitriles are converted to the corresponding lactones or cyclic imido esters.^{27,329} The same products are formed if the corresponding alkene halohydrins are utilized.

Dialkyl Carbonates. The dialkyl carbonates cannot be used to alkylate malonic ester,³³⁰ monocarboxylic esters,^{43,129,331,332} or mononitriles^{185,186,189,333} because carbethoxylation of the intermediate anion (p. 128) takes precedence over alkylation. With primary alkylmalonic esters the dialkyl carbonates may be used as alkylating agents, the dialkylated product being obtained in yields of 25-80%.³³⁰ The dialkyl carbonates are unsatisfactory alkylating agents for secondary alkylmalonic esters and for alkylcyanoacetic esters.³³⁰

Dialkyl Sulfates, Alkyl Sulfonates, and Nitrates. Both dimethyl sulfate and diethyl sulfate have been used extensively for the alkylation of all types of active methylene compounds. The yields obtained with these alkylating agents and with the corresponding alkyl iodides are usually similar. In addition the high boiling points of the dialkyl sulfates permit the use of higher reaction temperatures without loss of the alkylating agent.²⁴⁹

The alkyl benzenesulfonates and the alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates have been used to advantage as alkylating agents.⁶⁹ As in the case of the alkyl halides the yields of alkylated products derived from primary alkyl sulfonates are good, but only fair yields are obtained with the sulfonate esters of secondary alcohols. In addition to their high boiling points, the alkyl sulfonates are valuable alkylating agents where conversion of the corresponding alcohol to the alkyl halide is difficult or involves rearrangement.^{238,334,335}

Benzyl nitrate has served as an alkylating agent for malonic ester, both mono- and di-alkylation products being obtained.³³⁶

³²⁹ Easton, Gardner, and Stevens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 2941 (1947).

³³⁰ Wallingford and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 578 (1942).

³³¹ Nelson and Cretcher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 2758 (1928).

³³² Hauser, Abramovitch, and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 2714 (1942).

³³³ Hessler, *Am. Chem. J.*, **32**, 119 (1904).

³³⁴ Braker, Pribyl, and Lott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 866 (1947).

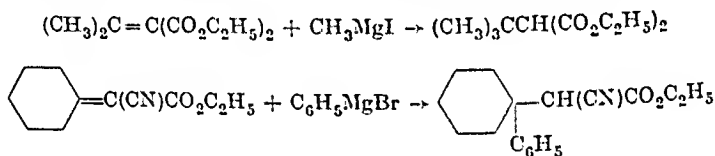
³³⁵ Peacock and Tha, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 2303.

³³⁶ Nef, *Ann.*, **309**, 171 (1899).

component in an acetic acid-piperidine mixture is hydrogenated over palladium on charcoal. This process, termed reductive alkylation, has been found to produce certain alkylcyanoacetic esters in yields of 39-98%.³⁶²⁻³⁶⁴

Reductions of alkylidene derivatives and reductive alkylation are advantageous in that dialkylation, a side reaction in alkylation procedures, is avoided.³⁶³ The use of platinum oxide as the catalyst for reductive alkylation may result in partial reduction of the nitrile group in addition to the expected reductive alkylation.³⁶³

Addition of Grignard Reagents to Alkylidene Derivatives (Tables XVIII and XIX). Extensive dehydrohalogenation precludes the use of tertiary alkyl halides for the preparation of tertiary alkyl derivatives of active methylene compounds (pp. 112, 124, 139). Such tertiary alkyl derivatives can be prepared by the addition of Grignard reagents to the alkylidene derivatives obtained by the condensation of malonic or cyanoacetic esters with a ketone. The mode of addition of Grignard reagents to



substituted cinnamonnitriles is dependent on the structure of the unsaturated compound. Normally, 1,2 addition occurs forming an imino compound;^{365,366} however, if a large group is bonded to the α -carbon atom, 1,4 addition leading to a saturated nitrile has been observed.^{365,366} The addition of aliphatic Grignard reagents to alkylidene derivatives is often accompanied by reduction of the double bond in the alkylidene compound as a side reaction.³⁶⁷ The substitution of the appropriate dialkyl- or diaryl-cadmium for the Grignard reagent has resulted in the formation of the alkylated product in poor yield.³⁶⁷ The addition of copper salts to the reaction mixture has been reported to favor the 1,4-addition of Grignard reagents to alkylidenemalonic esters.³⁶⁸

Condensation of Aromatic Compounds with Mesoxalic and Tartronic Esters (Table XX). Direct alkylation methods usually cannot be applied to the preparation of aryl- and diaryl-malonic esters (p. 143).

³⁶³ Alexander and Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 886 (1944).

³⁶⁴ Sharp and Dohme, Brit. pat. 606,962 [*C. A.*, **43**, 1436 (1949)].

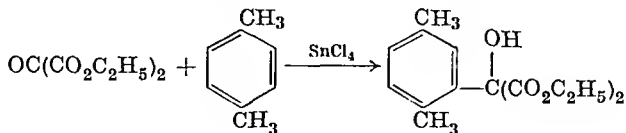
³⁶⁵ Kohler, *Am. Chem. J.*, **35**, 386 (1906).

³⁶⁶ Henze and Swett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4918 (1951).

³⁶⁷ Prout, Huang, Hartman, and Korpics, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **76**, 1911 (1954).

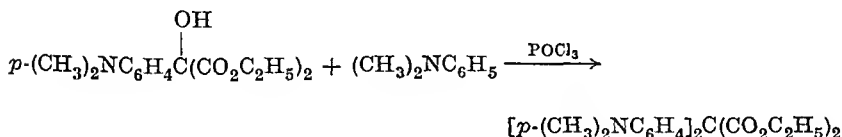
³⁶⁸ Brandström and Forsblad, *Arkiv Kemi*, **6**, 561 (1954).

Aryl-substituted malonic esters have been obtained from diethyl mesoxalate, an oxidation product of diethyl malonate.³⁶⁹ The aryltartronic esters have been obtained either by the condensation of mesoxalic ester with aromatic hydrocarbons in the presence of sulfuric acid or stannic chloride^{370,371} or by the addition of Grignard reagents to mesoxalic ester

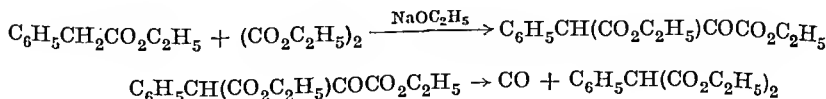


at -70° .³⁷² Diethyl 9-phenanthryltartronate has been converted to 9-phenanthrylmalonic ester by the replacement of the hydroxyl group by a chlorine atom followed by reduction.³⁷²

The diarylmalonic esters have been prepared by the condensation of aromatic hydrocarbons with either mesoxalic esters or aryltartronic esters in the presence of sulfuric acid or phosphorus oxychloride.³⁷³



Other Methods. Among other methods available for the preparation of alkyl- or aryl-malonic esters is the condensation of diethyl oxalate with the appropriately substituted acetic ester.¹⁷⁹ The resultant ethoxalyl derivative is then decarbonylated thermally with³⁷⁴ or without³⁷⁵⁻³⁷⁸ powdered soft glass. This method is of value not only for the preparation



³⁶⁹ Dox, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 1*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1941, p. 266.

³⁷⁰ Riebsomer and Irvine, *Org. Syntheses*, **25**, 33 (1945).

³⁷¹ Riebsomer, Wiseman, and Condike, *Proc. Indiana Acad. Sci.*, **50**, 80 (1940) [*C. A.*, **35**, 5476 (1941)].

³⁷² Cope and Field, *J. Org. Chem.*, **14**, 856 (1949).

³⁷³ Guyot and Michel, *Compt. rend.*, **148**, 229 (1909).

³⁷⁴ Blicke and Zienty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 2779 (1941).

³⁷⁵ Rising and Stieglitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **40**, 723 (1918).

³⁷⁶ Keach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 3440 (1933).

³⁷⁷ Lauer and Hansen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **61**, 3039 (1939).

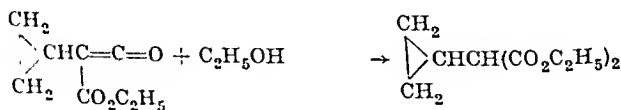
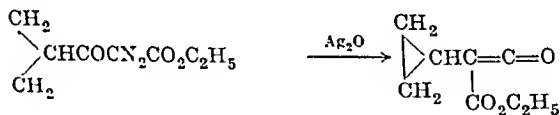
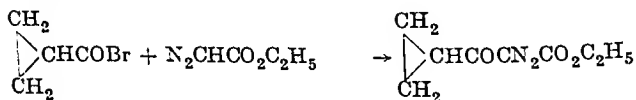
³⁷⁸ Levene and Meyer, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 2*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1943, p. 288.

of arylmalonic esters unobtainable by direct alkylation,³⁷⁹ but also for the preparation of low-molecular-weight monoalkylmalonic esters whose separation from the malonic ester and dialkylmalonic ester present in the product obtained by direct alkylation is difficult (p. 123).^{69,380,381}

A more direct method of carbethoxylation involves the use of diethyl carbonate in the presence of sodium ethoxide. This method is applicable to the synthesis of alkyl and aryl derivatives of malonic ester^{43,129,330-332} and cyanoacetic ester,^{185-189,331,333} the best yields being obtained in the case of the aryl derivatives. Dialkylacetic esters cannot be carbethoxylated by this method.⁴³

The alkylation of aromatic hydrocarbons with α -bromoarylacetic esters, α -bromoarylacetonitriles, or α -bromodiarylacetonitriles in a Friedel-Crafts reaction has served to produce diarylacetic esters,³⁸² diarylacetonitriles,^{27,382,383} and triarylacetonitriles.³⁸³

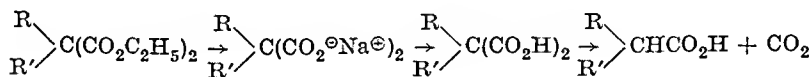
Diethyl cyclopropylmalonate has been prepared from cyclopropane-carboxylic acid by means of the reaction sequence illustrated with the accompanying equations.³⁸⁴



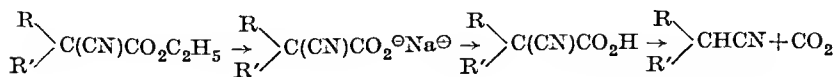
The alkylation of cyanoketene dimethyl acetal with benzyl bromide gave, after acidification, methyl benzylecyanoacetate (21%) and methyl dibenzylecyanoacetate (26%).³⁸⁵

SYNTHETIC APPLICATIONS OF THE ALKYLATION REACTION

The alkylation of active methylene compounds affords a convenient synthetic route to mono-, di-, and tri-substituted derivatives of acetic acid and acetonitrile in which the carbon chain of the alkylating agent has been lengthened by two atoms. Substituted acetic acids are often prepared from the corresponding malonic esters by saponification with aqueous alkali (p. 157) followed by decarboxylation of the substituted malonic acid. With ethyl esters the course of the saponification step may be followed by distilling the ethanol from the reaction mixture as it is formed. With low-molecular-weight substituted malonic acids, decarboxylation is most easily effected by boiling a solution of the malonic acid in 20% (constant-boiling) aqueous hydrochloric acid or aqueous sulfuric acid. The saponification and decarboxylation may be done in the same reaction vessel if a calculated excess of concentrated hydrochloric or sulfuric acid is added to the reaction mixture obtained from the saponification.^{14,386} It is usually more satisfactory to isolate substituted malonic acids of high molecular weight. These acids lose carbon dioxide when they are heated above their melting points.³⁸⁷ Alternatively, a solution of the substituted malonic acid in a high-boiling solvent such as xylene may be boiled under reflux until decarboxylation is complete.



The saponification of substituted cyanoacetic esters followed by the thermal decarboxylation of the corresponding cyanoacetic acid yields substituted acetonitriles.



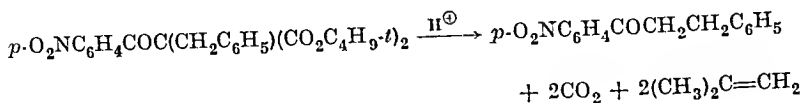
Substituted malonic and cyanoacetic esters may be hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to yield substituted acetic acids in one step by treatment with boiling aqueous acids.³⁸⁸

³⁸⁶ Reid and Ruhoff, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 2*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1943, p. 474.

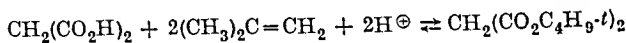
³⁸⁷ Marvel and du Vigneaud, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 2*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1943, p. 94.

³⁸⁸ Clarke and Murray, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 1*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1941, p. 523.

t-Butyl,³⁸⁹ tetrahydropyranyl,³⁹⁰ and benzhydryl²²⁴ esters of substituted malonic acids undergo fission of the carbon-oxygen bond of the ester in acidic media. This rapid fission of *t*-butyl esters³⁹² and tetrahydropyranyl esters³⁹⁰ has been utilized for the synthesis of easily reducible ketones,^{390,393}



by the acidic hydrolysis and decarboxylation of acylmalonic esters. The use of benzyl esters³⁹⁴⁻³⁹⁶ which can be cleaved by hydrogenolysis³⁹⁷ is not feasible for the synthesis of compounds with easily reducible groups. The use of the acid-labile *t*-butyl and tetrahydropyranyl esters is to be recommended for the preparation of substituted malonic or cyanoacetic acids containing other functions which would not survive the reaction conditions required for the hydrolysis of the ethyl esters. The reversible nature of the acidic cleavage permits the synthesis of *t*-butyl esters by the condensation of carboxylic acids and isobutylene in an acidic medium;³⁹³ tetrahydropyranyl esters may be prepared similarly from dihydropyran.



An alternative method for the conversion of diethyl dialkylmalonates to ethyl dialkylacetates involves the removal of a carbethoxyl group at high temperatures. This change is most easily effected by heating an ethanolic solution of the diethyl dialkylmalonate to 250° in the presence of sodium ethoxide (p. 127). Under such conditions diethyl diethylmalonate was converted to ethyl diethylacetate in 82% yield.¹⁸⁰ When an ethereal solution of diethyl diethylmalonate was heated with 2 gram atoms of sodium metal, carbon monoxide (85%) was evolved and ethyl

³⁸⁹ Cohen and Schneider, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 3382 (1941).

³⁹⁰ Bowman and Fordham, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 3945.

³⁹¹ Strain, Plati, and Warren, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 1436 (1942).

³⁹² Breslow, Baumgarten, and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1286 (1944).

³⁹³ Fonken and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 831 (1952).

³⁹⁴ Bowman, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 325.

³⁹⁵ Ames and Bowman, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1951**, 1079.

³⁹⁶ Bowman and Fordham, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1951**, 2758.

³⁹⁷ Hartung and Simonoff in Adams, *Organic Reactions*, Vol. 7, Chapter 5, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1953, pp. 263-326.

diethylacetate was formed in 46% yield.³⁹⁸ Similarly, diethyl diethylmalonate, when heated with ethanol-free sodium ethoxide to 220–230°, yielded ethyl diethylacetate (67%), ether (8%), diethyl carbonate (16%), ethylene (14%), carbon monoxide (25%), and ethanol.¹⁸⁰ The diethyl carbonate was presumably formed from the ethanol generated in the reaction mixture (p. 127).

Substituted acetic acids prepared by means of the alkylation reaction have been used to prepare long-chain hydrocarbons of known structure,^{46,141,399,400} hydrindones,^{114,401–410} tetralones,^{321,411–423} and hydrotetralones.^{424–426}

A number of amino acid syntheses have utilized such starting materials as chloromalonate ester,²⁰⁹ alkylmalonate esters,^{118,119,132,427–433} aminomalonate

³⁹⁸ Krollpfoiffer and Rosenberg, *Ber.*, **69**, 465 (1936).

³⁹⁹ Levene and Taylor, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **54**, 351 (1922).

⁴⁰⁰ Grimshaw, Guy, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1940**, 68.

⁴⁰¹ Lecocq, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [12] **3**, 62 (1948).

⁴⁰² von Braun and Friedsam, *Ber.*, **65**, 1680 (1932).

⁴⁰³ Cagniant and Buu-Hoï, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **9**, 119 (1942).

⁴⁰⁴ Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **9**, 884 (1942).

⁴⁰⁵ Buu-Hoï and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **10**, 151 (1943).

⁴⁰⁶ Fieser and Seligman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **57**, 2174 (1935).

⁴⁰⁷ Bruce and Kahn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 1017 (1938).

⁴⁰⁸ Bruce and Todd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **61**, 157 (1939).

⁴⁰⁹ Fieser and Gates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 2335 (1940).

⁴¹⁰ Martin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1941**, 679.

⁴¹¹ Lévy, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [11] **9**, 44 (1938).

⁴¹² Buchta, Galster, and Luther, *Chem. Ber.*, **82**, 126 (1949).

⁴¹³ Cagniant and Buu-Hoï, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **9**, 841 (1942).

⁴¹⁴ Buu-Hoï and Cagniant, *Compt. rend.*, **214**, 115 (1942).

⁴¹⁵ Ruzicka and Mingazzini, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **5**, 710 (1922).

⁴¹⁶ Ruzicka and Ehmann, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **15**, 140 (1932).

⁴¹⁷ Ruzicka, Ehmann, and Mörgeli, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **16**, 314 (1933).

⁴¹⁸ Rapson and Short, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1933**, 128.

⁴¹⁹ Kon, Narracott, and Reid, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1938**, 778.

⁴²⁰ Cocker and Hayes, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1951**, 844.

⁴²¹ Chakravarti, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **20**, 393 (1943).

⁴²² Dhekne and Bhide, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **28**, 504 (1951).

⁴²³ Späth and Hromatka, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **60**, 117 (1932).

⁴²⁴ Chuang, Tien, and Ma, *Ber.*, **69**, 1494 (1936).

⁴²⁵ Cook and Lawrence, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1935**, 1637.

⁴²⁶ Cook and Lawrence, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 817.

⁴²⁷ Fischer and Schmitz, *Ber.*, **39**, 351 (1906).

⁴²⁸ Fischer and Schmitz, *Ber.*, **39**, 2209 (1906).

⁴²⁹ von Braun and Kruber, *Ber.*, **45**, 384 (1912).

⁴³⁰ Curtius and Sieber, *Ber.*, **55**, 1543 (1922).

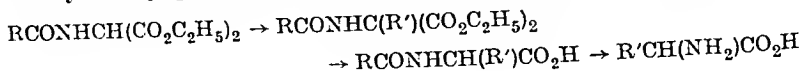
⁴³¹ Sayles and Degering, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 3161 (1949).

⁴³² Carter, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **108**, 619 (1935).

⁴³³ Barry and Hartung, *J. Org. Chem.*, **12**, 460 (1947).

esters,^{434, 435} formamidomalonic ester,^{246, 436, 437} acetamidomalonic ester,^{49, 232, 234, 235, 438-452, 454-457} benzamidomalonic ester,^{233, 453, 458, 459} phthalimidomalonic ester,^{236, 460-468} alkylcyanoacetic esters,^{127, 128, 185, 288, 469-472} and acylaminocyanoacetic esters.^{241, 242, 448}

The reaction sequence utilized for the preparation of amino acids from aminomalonic esters, acylaminomalonic esters, or acylaminocyanoacetic esters involves alkylation followed by saponification and decarboxylation. Finally the acyl group is removed by acid hydrolysis. By the appropriate



⁴³⁴ Putochin, *Ber.*, 56, 2213 (1923).

⁴³⁵ Locquin and Cerchez, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] 47, 1386 (1930).

⁴³⁶ Capková-Jirků, Košťál, and Vondráček, *Chem. Listy*, 44, 19 (1950) [*C. A.*, 45, 8004 (1951)].

⁴³⁷ Weisiger, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 186, 591 (1950).

⁴³⁸ Harington, *Biochem. J.*, 43, 434 (1948).

⁴³⁹ Šorm and Procházka, *Chem. Listy*, 46, 490 (1952) [*C. A.*, 47, 3798 (1953)].

⁴⁴⁰ Erlenmeyer and Grubenmann, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 30, 297 (1947).

⁴⁴¹ Snyder and Pilgrim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 70, 1962 (1948).

⁴⁴² Goering, Cristol, and Dittmer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 70, 3310 (1948).

⁴⁴³ Jones and McLaughlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 71, 2444 (1949).

⁴⁴⁴ Bennett and Niemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 1800 (1950).

⁴⁴⁵ Bennett and Niemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 1806 (1950).

⁴⁴⁶ Jones, Kornfeld, and McLaughlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 4526 (1950).

⁴⁴⁷ Degering and Boatright, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 5137 (1950).

⁴⁴⁸ Burekhalter and Stephens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 56 (1951).

⁴⁴⁹ Allportson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 452 (1951).

⁴⁵⁰ Caldwell and Fox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 2935 (1951).

⁴⁵¹ Burekhalter and Stephens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 3502 (1951).

⁴⁵² Herz, Dittmer, and Cristol, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 171, 383 (1947).

⁴⁵³ Evans and Walker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1947, 1571.

⁴⁵⁴ Elliott and Harington, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 1374.

⁴⁵⁵ Mamalis, Petrow, and Sturgeon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1950, 1600.

⁴⁵⁶ Dalglissh, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 137.

⁴⁵⁷ Armstrong and Lewis, *J. Org. Chem.*, 17, 618 (1952).

⁴⁵⁸ Niemann, Lewis, and Hays, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 64, 1678 (1942).

⁴⁵⁹ Dunn, Smart, Redemann, and Brown, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 94, 599 (1931-1932).

⁴⁶⁰ Kuhn and Quadbeck, *Ber.*, 76, 527 (1943).

⁴⁶¹ Kuhn and Quadbeck, *Ber.*, 76, 529 (1943).

⁴⁶² Sørensen, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [3] 33, 1042 (1905).

⁴⁶³ Sørensen, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [3] 33, 1052 (1905).

⁴⁶⁴ Dey, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1937, 1166.

⁴⁶⁵ Booth, Burnop, and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1944, 666.

⁴⁶⁶ Barger and Weichselbaum, *Org. Syntheses, Coll. Vol. 2*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1943, p. 384.

⁴⁶⁷ Dunn and Smart, *Org. Syntheses*, 30, 7 (1950).

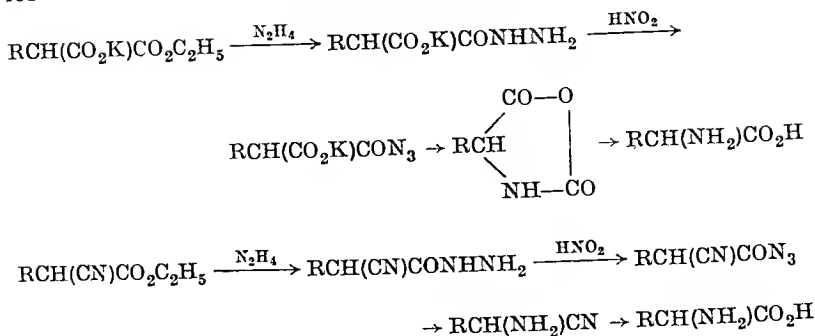
⁴⁶⁸ Overhoff, Boeke, and Gorter, *Rec. trav. chim.*, 55, 293 (1936).

⁴⁶⁹ Gaznon and Nolin, *Can. J. Research*, 27B, 742 (1949).

⁴⁷⁰ Gaznon, Boivin, and Craig, *Can. J. Chemistry*, 29, 70 (1951).

⁴⁷¹ Boivin, Gaznon, Renaud, and Bridgeo, *Can. J. Chemistry*, 30, 994 (1952).

⁴⁷² Curtius and Benckiser, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] 125, 236 (1930).



and some large-ring compounds^{219,269,306,492,493} are readily accessible with the use of dihalogenated alkylating agents or ω -haloalkyl derivatives of active methylene compounds. Alkylating agents of the type $\text{Z}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl})_2$, where Z is an oxygen, sulfur, or nitrogen atom, have been used to synthesize tetrahydropyrans,^{77,494,496-499} tetrahydrothiopyrans,^{77,499} and piperidines.^{77,495,501,503-505} The synthesis of certain polynuclear hydrocarbons by the method of Darzens⁵⁰⁶⁻⁵¹⁶ and by related

⁴⁹² Kenner, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **103**, 613 (1913).

⁴⁹³ Franke and Hankam, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **31**, 177 (1910).

⁴⁹⁴ von Braun and Köhler, *Ber.*, **50**, 1657 (1917).

⁴⁹⁵ Büchi, Leuenberger, and Lieberherr, *Farm. sci. e tec. Pavia*, **6**, 429 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 8015 (1952)].

⁴⁹⁶ Kamm and Waldo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **43**, 2223 (1921).

⁴⁹⁷ Henze and McKee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 1672 (1942).

⁴⁹⁸ Gibson and Johnson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1930**, 2525.

⁴⁹⁹ Eisleb, U.S. pat. 2,242,575 [*C. A.*, **35**, 5647 (1941)].

⁵⁰⁰ Bergel, Morrison, and Rinderknecht, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1944**, 267.

⁵⁰¹ Morrison and Rinderknecht, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 1467.

⁵⁰² Avison and Morrison, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 1471.

⁵⁰³ Eisleb, Brit. pat. 501,135 [*C. A.*, **33**, 5872 (1939)].

⁵⁰⁴ Tanabe Drug Co., Jap. pat. 153,615 [*C. A.*, **43**, 3471 (1949)].

⁵⁰⁵ Eisleb, U.S. pat. 2,167,351 [*C. A.*, **33**, 8923 (1939)].

⁵⁰⁶ Darzens, *Compt. rend.*, **183**, 748 (1926).

⁵⁰⁷ Darzens and Heinz, *Compt. rend.*, **184**, 33 (1927).

⁵⁰⁸ Darzens, *Compt. rend.*, **190**, 1562 (1930).

⁵⁰⁹ Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **194**, 2056 (1932).

⁵¹⁰ Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **199**, 1426 (1934).

⁵¹¹ Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **200**, 469 (1935).

⁵¹² Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **200**, 2187 (1935).

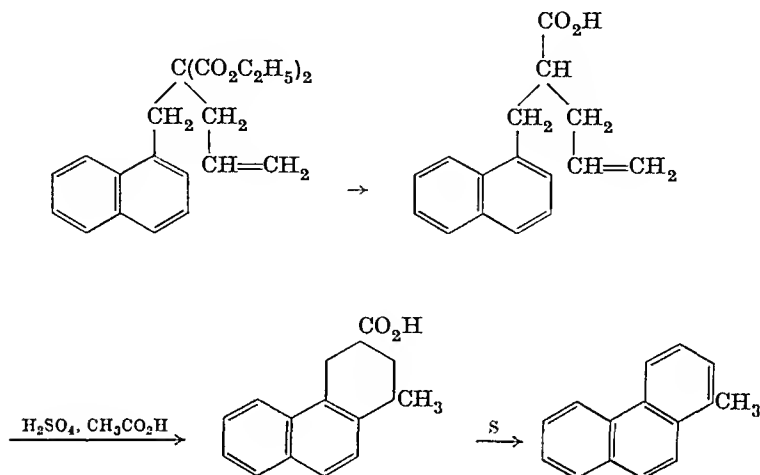
⁵¹³ Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **201**, 730 (1935).

⁵¹⁴ Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **202**, 427 (1936).

⁵¹⁵ Darzens and Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **203**, 669 (1936).

⁵¹⁶ Campbell and Wang, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 2186.

methods⁵¹⁷⁻⁵²⁰ requires as intermediates suitably substituted allylmalonic esters.



Lactones are readily prepared by the treatment of epoxides with the metal enolates of malonic esters,^{8,11,12,282,521-527} cyanoacetic esters,⁵²⁸ or ethyl isobutyrate.⁶⁹ Similarly, mononitriles are converted to cyclic imido esters,^{27,329} which may be hydrolyzed to lactones.²⁵ The reaction of α -bromoisobutyraldehyde with diethyl malonate produced an unsaturated lactone rather than a normal alkylation product.⁵²⁹

⁵¹⁷ Tatevosyan and Vardanyan, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **19**, 327 (1949) [*C. A.*, **43**, 6609 (1949)].

⁵¹⁸ Tatevosyan and Vardanyan, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **19**, 332 (1949) [*C. A.*, **43**, 6609 (1949)].

⁵¹⁹ Tatevosyan and Vardanyan, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **21**, 1170 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 2036 (1952)].

⁵²⁰ Tatevosyan and Vardanyan, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **21**, 1238 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 2037 (1952)].

⁵²¹ Traube and Lehmann, *Ber.*, **32**, 720 (1899).

⁵²² Traube and Lehmann, *Ber.*, **34**, 1971 (1901).

⁵²³ Rothstein, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **2**, 1936 (1935).

⁵²⁴ Rothstein and Ficini, *Compt. rend.*, **234**, 1293 (1952).

⁵²⁵ Rothstein and Ficini, *Compt. rend.*, **234**, 1694 (1952).

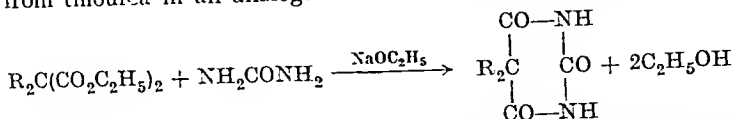
⁵²⁶ Russell and VanderWerf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 11 (1947).

⁵²⁷ Cavallito, Fruehauf, and Bailey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 3724 (1948).

⁵²⁸ Glickman and Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 1012 (1945).

⁵²⁹ Franke and Groeger, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **43**, 55 (1922).

In the synthesis of barbituric acids, malonic esters^{15,35,125,126,129,144,203,278,334,376,379,484,530-561}, cyanoacetic esters,^{562,563} and malononitriles²¹¹ have found extensive use. The barbituric acids are formed when one of the aforementioned active methylene compounds is treated with urea or guanidine⁵⁶³ in the presence of a base. The thiobarbituric acids^{35,126,552-555} have been prepared from thiourea in an analogous manner. The intermediate imino com-



pounds formed in the reaction of substituted cyanoacetic esters or substituted malononitriles with urea or a urea derivative have been hydrolyzed with aqueous acid.

¹⁵⁰ Reichert and Wilke, *Arch. Pharm.*, **276**, 596 (1938).

¹⁵¹ Tanaka, Miyanaga, and Okami, *Bull. Hyg. Research Inst. Japan*, **35**, 105 (1929) [*C. A.*, **24**, 1086 (1930)].

¹⁵² Tiffeneau, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] **33**, 183, (1923).

¹⁵³ Wiehterle and Nemeček, *Chem. Listy*, **37**, 105 (1943) [*C. A.*, **44**, 5815 (1950)].

¹⁵⁴ Morsman, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **18**, 1254 (1935).

¹⁵⁵ Renard and Dony, *Ind. chim. belge*, **16**, 479 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 10108 (1952)].

¹⁵⁶ Shonle and Moment, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **45**, 243 (1923).

¹⁵⁷ Dox and Yoder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **45**, 1757 (1923).

¹⁵⁸ Dox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **46**, 1707 (1924).

¹⁵⁹ Dox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **46**, 2843 (1924).

¹⁶⁰ Volwiler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **47**, 2236 (1925).

¹⁶¹ Creteher, Koeh, and Pittenger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **47**, 3083 (1925).

¹⁶² Hill and Keach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **48**, 257 (1926).

¹⁶³ Dox and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 2033 (1928).

¹⁶⁴ Kirner and Riehter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **51**, 3131 (1929).

¹⁶⁵ Volwiler and Tabern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 1676 (1930).

¹⁶⁶ Keach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 2975 (1933).

¹⁶⁷ Shonle and Waldo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 4649 (1933).

¹⁶⁸ Hooper and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **56**, 484 (1934).

¹⁶⁹ Kleiderer and Shonle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **56**, 1772 (1934).

¹⁷⁰ Shonle, Waldo, Kelch, and Coles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 585 (1936).

¹⁷¹ Shonle and Doran, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 1358 (1936).

¹⁷² Doran and Shonle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 1625 (1937).

¹⁷³ Walter, Goodson, and Fosbinder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 659 (1945).

¹⁷⁴ Walter, Goodson, and Fosbinder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 661 (1945).

¹⁷⁵ Skinner and Mitchell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 1252 (1945).

¹⁷⁶ van Tamelen and Van Zyl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 2979 (1950).

¹⁷⁷ Walton, Doezi, and King, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 4319 (1950).

¹⁷⁸ Skinner and Huber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 3321 (1951).

¹⁷⁹ Maynert, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **195**, 403 (1952).

¹⁸⁰ Ohara, Tamura, Ohmori, and Mochizuki, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **71**, 911 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 4548 (1952)].

¹⁸¹ Tatevtsyan and Tuteryan, *Zhur. Priklad. Khim. (J. Applied Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **20**, 257 (1947) [*C. A.*, **43**, 1725 (1949)].

¹⁸² Conrad, *Ann.*, **340**, 310 (1905).

¹⁸³ Copo and Hancock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **61**, 776 (1939).

EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS AND PROCEDURES

If optimum yields are to be obtained from an alkylation reaction the apparatus, solvent, and reactants must be anhydrous. Although the maintenance of an inert (nitrogen) atmosphere in the reaction is advisable, this precaution is of prime importance if a high-boiling solvent is used or if the reaction is run at a temperature below the boiling point of the solvent. Without protection from the atmosphere afforded by solvent vapor or by an inert gas, many of the alkoxides and enolates are rapidly attacked by molecular oxygen.

If the alkylating agent is relatively volatile an excess of the reagent must be employed if the reaction is to go to completion. In such instances a desirable alternative is the use of dimethyl sulfate, diethyl sulfate, or the appropriate alkyl sulfonate. Although the completion of an alkylation can sometimes be determined by allowing the reaction to proceed until the reaction mixture becomes neutral, in many reactions complete neutrality is never reached. To determine the extent of alkylation in such cases it is advisable to remove aliquots of the reaction mixture periodically and to titrate them with a standard acid. To simplify subsequent extraction procedures the majority of the alcohol should be distilled from an alkylation reaction mixture before the mixture is poured into water.

Monoalkylmalonic esters must be boiled with 50% aqueous potassium hydroxide for two hours to effect saponification,^{82,571} and dialkylmalonic esters require ten hours under similar conditions.^{82,571} With less concentrated alkali longer reaction periods are required. The cyanoacetic esters are more rapidly hydrolyzed, the ester group of ethyl methylcyanoacetate being saponified almost instantly with 10% aqueous sodium hydroxide.⁵⁶⁸ Similarly, ethyl dimethylcyanoacetate is saponified within twenty minutes.⁵⁶⁸

The ease with which alkylidenecyanoacetic esters form water-soluble sodium bisulfite adducts permits these esters to be separated from their alkylation products, which do not react with sodium bisulfite.^{37,64,214,344} Unchanged alkylidenemalonic esters also may be removed by treatment with aqueous ammonium hydroxide. Under such conditions the alkylidene derivative is converted to the aldehyde or ketone and malonic ester in a reverse aldol reaction. The malonic ester so formed is converted to malonamide.⁶³

Diethyl *n*-Butylmalonate.¹³ This *Organic Syntheses* procedure illustrates the standard method used for the alkylation of malonic and cyanoacetic esters. The monoalkylated product is obtained in 80–90% yield from 5.15 moles of diethyl malonate and 5.0 moles of *n*-butyl bromide in the presence of ethanolic sodium ethoxide prepared from 2.5 l. of ethanol and 5 gram atoms of sodium.

Diethyl Benzylmalonate.¹³⁶ If the standard alkylation procedure for malonic esters (cf. diethyl *n*-butylmalonate, above) is applied to a reactive halide such as benzyl chloride, diethyl benzylmalonate is obtained in 51–57% yield, the remainder of the product being diethyl dibenzylmalonate.¹¹⁹ In the procedure of Leuchs an excess of diethyl malonate is used to reduce dialkylation (p. 122).

To an ethanolic solution of diethyl sodiomalonate prepared from 11.5 g. (0.5 gram atom) of sodium, 150 ml. of absolute ethanol, and 160 g. (1.0 mole) of diethyl malonate, is added dropwise, with stirring, 63.2 g. (0.5 mole) of benzyl chloride. The reaction mixture is boiled under reflux until it is neutral to litmus. After most of the ethanol has been distilled from the mixture under reduced pressure, water is added to the residual oil and the mixture is extracted with ether. The ether solution is dried and fractionally distilled. The diethyl benzylmalonate, collected at 163–170°/12 mm., amounts to 107 g. (85%).

Diethyl Ethyl(phenyl)malonate (Inverse Addition Procedure).⁴² In a 2-l. three-necked flask equipped with a dropping funnel, a mechanical stirrer, and an efficient reflux condenser connected to a trap chilled in solid carbon dioxide are placed 264 g. (1.1 moles) of diethyl phenylmalonate

⁴²¹ Norris and Tucker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 55, 4697 (1933).

and 131 g. (1.2 moles) of ethyl bromide. While the contents of the flask are maintained at 45°, a solution of sodium ethoxide, prepared by the addition of 25 g. (1.1 gram atoms) of sodium to 450 ml. of absolute ethanol and followed by dilution of the solution with 10 ml. of ethyl acetate, is added dropwise with stirring. The sodium ethoxide solution is added at such a rate that the reaction mixture never becomes more than slightly basic to moist phenolphthalein paper. Near the end of the addition period any ethyl bromide which has collected in the solid carbon dioxide trap is returned to the reaction vessel. After the addition is complete (time required one and one-half to two hours) the reaction mixture is heated to 45° with stirring for one hour, and then the bulk of the ethanol is distilled from the reaction mixture. After water has been added to the residual oil and the mixture extracted with ether, the ether solution is dried over sodium sulfate and fractionally distilled. The diethyl ethyl(phenyl)malonate is collected at 166–168°/12–13 mm.; yield 248 g. (97%).

Diethyl Ethyl(isopropyl)malonate. (*A*) *Alkylation of Diethyl Ethylmalonate.*¹⁴⁵ To a solution of the sodium enolate of diethyl ethylmalonate, prepared from 24.8 g. (1.08 gram atoms) of sodium, 300 ml. of absolute ethanol, and 200 g. (1.08 moles) of diethyl ethylmalonate, 190 g. (1.12 moles) of isopropyl iodide is added dropwise. After the reaction mixture has been boiled under reflux with stirring for fifteen hours, most of the ethanol is distilled from the mixture and water is added. The product is extracted with ether, and the ether solution is dried over calcium chloride and fractionally distilled. The yield of diethyl ethyl(isopropyl)malonate, b.p. 230–235°, is 113 g. (46%). If the lower-boiling fractions are realkylated, the yield of diethyl ethyl(isopropyl)malonate may be raised to 75%.

diethyl ethyl(isopropyl)malonate, collected at 112–115°/18 mm., amounts to 150 g. (65%).

Diethyl Isopropyl(formamido)malonate.²⁴⁶ Diethyl formamido-malonate⁵⁷² (11.5 g., 0.056 mole) is added in small portions to 1.44 g. (0.06 mole) of sodium hydride in 25 g. of anhydrous dimethylformamide. After the mixture has been allowed to stand for thirty minutes it is filtered and the filtrate is treated with 12.3 g. (0.10 mole) of isopropyl bromide. The resulting mixture is boiled under reflux for two hours, and then most of the solvent is removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue is mixed with 125 ml. of water and allowed to stand in an ice bath until the oil that initially separates has solidified. The crude product is collected on a filter, washed with water, dried, and recrystallized from an ether-petroleum ether mixture. The yield of diethyl isopropyl(formamido)malonate, m.p. 67–73°, is 6.95 g. (50%). An additional recrystallization raises the melting point to 73.5–74°.

Diethyl 1,1-Cyclobutanedicarboxylate.⁵⁷³ A solution of sodium ethoxide is prepared by the addition of 23 g. (1 gram atom) of sodium to 500 ml. of absolute ethanol contained in a three-necked flask equipped with a mechanical stirrer, a reflux condenser, and a long-stemmed dropping funnel. A 200-ml. portion of the solution is drawn into the dropping funnel with suction, and the dropping funnel is attached to the top of the reflux condenser. Diethyl malonate (96 g., 0.6 mole) is then added to the flask, and the mixture is heated to boiling with stirring. Over a period of one hour the sodium ethoxide solution and 101 g. (0.5 mole) of trimethylenbromide are added concurrently to the boiling reaction mixture. After the addition is complete the mixture is boiled under reflux with stirring for ninety minutes, and then about 400 ml. of ethanol is distilled from the reaction mixture. The residue is mixed with water and extracted with three portions of benzene. After the benzene has been distilled from the extract the residue is distilled under reduced pressure. The diethyl 1,1-cyclobutanedicarboxylate, collected at 105–112°/15 mm., amounts to 60–65 g. (60–67%).

Ethyl α -Ethyl- α -methylvalerate.⁶⁸ Ethyl α -methylbutyrate (23.5 g., 0.18 mole) is added to an ethereal solution containing 0.18 mole of sodium triphenylmethide. After the reaction mixture has been shaken for five minutes, 30.7 g. (0.18 mole) of *n*-propyl iodide is added, and the reaction flask is stoppered, shaken, and allowed to stand overnight. The ethereal solution is washed with 200 ml. of water and dried, first over sodium sulfate and then over anhydrous calcium sulfate ("Drierite"). After the ether has been removed, the residue is distilled and the crude ester is

²⁴⁶ Galat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 965 (1947).

⁵⁷³ Cason and Allen, *J. Org. Chem.*, **14**, 1036 (1949).

of ethyl *n*-butylcyanoacetate. After the mixture has been stirred for five minutes, 73.8 g. (0.6 mole) of isopropyl bromide is added during a period of two minutes. The mixture is boiled under reflux with stirring for three hours, and then about 200 ml. of ethanol is distilled from the mixture under reduced pressure. The residue is diluted with 3 volumes of water, acidified by addition of a few drops of hydrochloric acid, and extracted with three portions of benzene. The combined benzene extracts are washed with water and distilled. The crude ester, b.p. 113–115°/6 mm., is shaken with 160 ml. of 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide for one and one-half hours to hydrolyze any unchanged monoalkyl ester present. The ester is extracted with ether, and the extract is washed with water, diluted with benzene, and distilled. The pure ethyl *n*-butyl(isopropyl)cyanoacetate is collected at 115–116°/7 mm., n_D^{25} 1.4327, yield 91.5 g. (87%).

α -Cyclohexylphenylacetonitrile.⁵⁷⁶ This *Organic Syntheses* procedure illustrates the alkylation of a mononitrile in the presence of sodium amide. The reaction of a suspension in toluene of the sodium enolate of phenylacetonitrile (prepared in liquid ammonia from 0.35 mole of phenylacetonitrile and 0.35 mole of sodium amide) with 0.40 mole of cyclohexyl bromide produces α -cyclohexylphenylacetonitrile in 65–77% yield.

TABULAR SURVEY OF THE ALKYLATION OF ESTERS AND NITRILES

The compounds listed in Tables I to XV have been arranged according to the nature of the active methylene compound. Malonic esters precede cyanoacetic esters, which in turn are followed by monocarboxylic esters and mononitriles. In Tables XVI to XX are surveyed several alternative methods of alkylation. Within each table the compounds are listed in order of increasing number of carbon atoms, monoalkyl derivatives preceding dialkyl derivatives. Among the monoalkyl derivatives acyclic groups are found first, followed in turn by saturated carbocyclic, aromatic, and then heterocyclic substituents. The straight-chain alkyl derivatives have been placed before branched-chain derivatives, the latter groups being listed in order of increased branching; the unsaturated substituents follow. Monocyclic precede bicyclic derivatives, the isomers with the smallest rings always being listed first. Oxygen heterocycles will be found before heterocycles containing sulfur. Next are listed the nitrogen heterocycles, followed by substituents containing two or more hetero atoms.

The alkylating agents employed have also been arranged in the order of increasing number of carbon atoms. Within a group of alkylating agents with the same number of carbon atoms the order of arrangement is

⁵⁷⁶ Hancock and Cope, *Org. Syntheses*, 25, 25 (1945).

chlorides, bromides, iodides, unsaturated halides, carbonates, sulfates, sulfonates, dihalides, and epoxides. Ethers have been placed just after their hydrocarbon analogs. For example, $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$ would follow $n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$, and p -methoxybenzyl bromide would follow p -methylbenzyl bromide.

In those reactions where more than one reference is cited the experimental data are taken from the first reference, the remaining references being arranged in numerical order. Where two figures are listed in the column headed "Yield" the first figure refers to the actual yield or conversion, and the second, enclosed in parentheses, is based on the amount of starting material consumed. In cases listed in the tables in which a compound resulting from hydrolysis, decarboxylation, or some other transformation was isolated rather than the initial alkylation product, the formula of the product actually isolated is listed and the yield cited is the yield of that compound. The literature has been reviewed through 1952 with the occasional inclusion of more recent work.

Because of the extent of the literature on alkylation and complexity of searching this literature by subject, there are undoubtedly many examples of alkylation that were not found. To avoid confusion in the nomenclature of disubstituted active methylene compounds with unlike substituents attached to the same carbon atom one of the groups is enclosed in parentheses. For example the ester $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ would be named diethyl ethyl(phenyl)malonate.

TABLE I
ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
I_2	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	100	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol-ether	260, 107, 261
I_2	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	260
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$					
CH_3Br	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	79-83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	570
CH_3I	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	94	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	169, 280, 577-582
CH_3I		82	KOH	None	82
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	None	583
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_3\text{CH}_3$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	336
CH_3Cl	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	335
CH_3I	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	293, 294
CH_3I	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	84	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	296, 297, 298
CHCl_3	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	56	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	221, 584-587
CCl_4	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	588, 172, 589, 590
CBr_4	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	591, 590
CCl_3NO_2	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	591, 590
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	Na	None	280
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	90-94	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	536, 545
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	399, 433, 540, 541, 592-594
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ and $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	595

C_2H_5I	—	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	596
C_2H_5I	Good	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	56
C_2H_5I	60	KOH	Nono	82
C_2H_5I	Poor	Ag_2O	Nono	96
C_2H_5I	75	Na	Nono	280
C_2H_5I	100	Zn	Nono	597, 598
C_2H_5I	100	Zn	Nono	597, 94, 599
$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	—	$MgHg_2$	C_6H_6	596
$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	249
$p-CH_3C_6H_4SO_3C_2H_5$	59	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	220
CH_3CH_2Cl	68	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	335
CH_2ClCH_2Cl	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	268
	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	600
CH_3BrCH_2Br	35-40	Na	C_6H_6	54
CH_2BrCH_2Br	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	601
CH_3BrCH_2Br	27-30	Na	Toluene	602
CH_2BrCH_2Br	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	603, 266
CH_2BrCH_2Br	{ 60-65 } { (65-70) }	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	602
CH_3BrCH_2Br	40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	484, 485, 488, 604
$BrCH_2OCH_2Br$	35	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	219
CH_3ClCH_2OH	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	605, 148
CH_3ClCH_2OH	5-10	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	606

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$ (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)				
Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent
$\text{CH}_3\text{BrCH}_2\text{OH}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OC} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2 \\ \quad \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$	5-10	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
Reference				606
$\text{CH}_3\text{ClCH}_2\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_3$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OC} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2 \\ \quad \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$	5-10	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
Reference				606
$\text{CH}_2\text{BrCH}_2\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_3$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OC} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2 \\ \quad \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
Reference				606, 607
$\text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2$ O O	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OC} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2 \\ \quad \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
Reference				521
$\text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH}_2$ O O	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OC} \text{---} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}_2 \\ \quad \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
Reference				522
CH_3CCl_3 $\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ ClCH_2CN	$\begin{array}{c} \alpha\text{-Carboethoxybutyrolactone} \\ \\ \text{None} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2^* \\ \text{NCCCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \end{array}$	— 49 9 30	NaOC_2H_5 Na Na Na	Ethanol Ether Ether C_6H_6
Reference				608 204, 542, 609 205 610

C_3	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	611, 541
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	80	Na	None	280
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	30	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	612
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	613, 50, 540
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	—	Zn	None	614
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	33	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	612
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	—	Zn	None	614
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{Cl}$	25	Na	Ether	542
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	Na	Ether	205
	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	606
	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OCH}_2\text{Cl})$	70	Na	Ether	535
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Cl}$	100	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	87
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	95	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	169, 47, 387, 545
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	80	NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	227, 51
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	77	Na	None	280
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	577, 569
	Not stated	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	540, 35, 571, 615
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	91	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	121, 506, 571, 615-618
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	50	NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	51
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	Good	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	56
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{I}$	85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	619
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{I}$	100	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	619
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{I}$	—	Zn	None	620

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* Dimethyl malonate was used in this experiment.

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	$\text{NOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	34	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	102
$\text{F}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{F}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	52	NaOCH_3	Ethanol	285
$\text{ClCH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{ClCH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	26	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	621
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	32			
	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	93	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	622, 480, 490, 623
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$[\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	62	NaOC_2H_5	-ether	623, 624
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	8-10	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	624
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	55†	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	170, 625
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{I}$	$\text{I}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	38	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	92
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	131, 136, 627-629
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	15	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	131, 172, 267, 630-632
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	60-65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	573, 160, 172, 266, 483, 488, 491, 627, 633
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{H}_3\text{CCH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \\ \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	336, 626
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	Na	Ether	593, 634
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—			
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	20	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	593
	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2^*$	27	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	635

$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CCl}_2$ $\text{CH}_3-\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3-\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CClCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ α -Carbethoxy- δ -chloro- γ -valerolactone	22 78 —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	636 136, 522 521
$\text{CH}_3-\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3-\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CHONCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CONH}_2)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	637
$\text{CH}_3\text{OICHONCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CBrCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ and $(\text{CH}_2=\text{CBrCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$		—	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol	638, 639
C_4 $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80-90	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	13, 121, 142, 540, 541, 640, 641
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$ $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	75 21 21	NaOC_2H_5 Na Na	Ethanol Ether Ether	399, 141 542 542
$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SO}_3(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	65 77	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol	646 427, 540, 555 642
$sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80-81	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	14, 148, 540, 571, 643, 645
$sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{Cl}$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ [†] $sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78 88 28 27 6 50 70	NaOC_4H_9 - <i>sec</i> NaOC_2H_5 NaNH_2 Na NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	$(sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ Ethanol C_6H_6 -ether Ether Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	51 582 203 535 15, 473 18 647, 648

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* Dimethyl malonate was used in this experiment.

† The reactants were added in inverse order.

‡ Di-*sec*-butyl malonate was used in this experiment.

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	74	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	647
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	54	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	18
$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	2			
$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	552
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	66-70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	649
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	431
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	481, 482
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	Diethyl cyclopentane-1,1-dicarboxylate	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	488, 308, 650
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBr}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	Diethyl 2-methylcyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	50-55§	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	160
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	α -Carboethoxy- γ -ethyl- γ -butyrolactone	58	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	651
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCHClCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	69	Na	Ether	275
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCHClCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	275
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	Diethyl tetrahydropyran-4,4-dicarboxylate	26	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	496, 498
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$[\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	541
$\text{I}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	Diethyl tetrahydropyran-4,4-dicarboxylate	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	494
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{SCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	125
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$	$[\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]$ and $[\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]$	55	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	126
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCHCl}_2$	$\text{ClCH}=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	41	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	636
$\text{CH}_3\text{CCl}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CCl}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	62	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	533, 561, 652
$\text{BrCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCHCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	20

$\text{BrCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2) \cdot$ $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	20
$\text{BrCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHC} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \end{array} \text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	56	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	20
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \text{O} \\ \diagdown \end{array} \text{CH}_2$	α -Carboethoxy- γ -vinyl- γ -butyrolactone	73	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	11, 526
$\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \text{O} \\ \diagdown \end{array} \text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_3\text{OCH}_2\text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \text{O} \\ \diagdown \end{array} \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CN}$	$\text{NC}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	75	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	132
$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	653
$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	C_6H_6	653, 161, 654
$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	67	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	655, 594, 635
$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	87	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	55
4-Chloromethylimidazole hydrochloride	Diethyl (4-imidazolemoethyl)malonate	49	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	209
C_5	$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$	70-85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	545, 148, 543, 656
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80-84	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	662
$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	657, 35, 148, 540, 545, 555, 571, 616, 658
$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	51	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	148, 659
$sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$sec\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70-85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	545, 659
$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	138
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHBr}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	36	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	148

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

§ The product contained up to 18% of unsaturated material.

|| The cyanide group has $-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$.

TABLE I—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$(+)\text{-CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{Cl}$	$\text{rac-CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	660
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	74	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	661
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	666, 47, 616, 663
$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	45	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	664
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\{(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	304 308,
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	Diethyl 2-methylcyclopentano-1,1-dicarboxylate	30			
	Diethyl 2-methylcyclopentano-1,1-dicarboxylate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	665
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CBr}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\{(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	56	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	318, 173, 616
	$\{(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—			667
$\text{F}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{F}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	74	NaOCH_3	Ethanol	285
$\text{NC}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{NC}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	58–59	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	668
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	—	161
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	223, 669
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	58	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	610, 670
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	58	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	671
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	28			
$\text{I}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{CH}_3-\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	672
$\text{CH}_3\text{BrCHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$		77	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	673
$\text{Br}_2\text{C}=\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Not established	Poor	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	674

$\text{BrCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	675
Cyclobutylmethyl tosylate	Low			
Cyclopentyl bromide	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	334
Cyclopentyl iodide	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	31, 148, 677
2-Cyclopentenyl chloride	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	676
2-Cyclopentenyl chloride	70	Na	C_6H_6	287
2-Cyclopentenyl chloride	70	Na	Toluene	678, 151
2-Cyclopentenyl chloride	84-88	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	274, 286, 287, 679-681
<i>trans</i> -1,4-Dibromo-2-cyclopentene	33	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	152
<i>cis</i> -1,4-Dibromo-2-cyclopentene	14			
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$	—			
$\text{H}_3\text{C}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CH}_2$	16	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	152
	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	525
	27	Na	C_6H_6	7
	70-75	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	7
	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	682
	76	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	544
	—	NaH	Toluene	683

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* Dinethyl malonate was used in this experiment.

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
C_6					
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80-85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	282, 538
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	$(n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13})_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	82	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	121
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	90	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	684
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	92	NaOC_2H_5	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OH}$	685
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	62	—	—	691
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	87	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	646
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	686
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	138
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	555
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	35
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50-55	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	282, 555, 687, 688
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	57	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	689
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	690
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	292
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol-toluene	692
$trans\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	54	Not stated	—	693
$cis\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	$cis\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	73	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	210
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	5	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	694
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	23	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	694
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$[\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	20	—	—	—
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHClCH}=\text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	7	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	694


TABLE I—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
1,2-Dichlorocyclohexane	Diethyl 2-cyclohexenylmalonate	<60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150
1-Chloro-2-bromocyclohexane	Diethyl 2-cyclohexenylmalonate	ca. 40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150
	Diethyl 2-cyclohexenylmalonate	66	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	287, 150, 286, 706
1,2-Dibromocyclohexane	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	Ethanol	706
Cyclohexene bromohydrin	Diethyl (2-hydroxycyclohexoxy)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	706
Cyclohexene oxide	Lactone from 2-hydroxycyclohexylacetic acid	—	NaOC_2H_5	—	—
Cyclohexene oxide	Lactone from diethyl (2-hydroxycyclohexyl)malonate	>77	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	8, 707
β -(2-Thienyl)ethyl chlorido	Diethyl [β -(2-thienyl)ethyl]malonate	51	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	50, 708, 709
4-Bromomethylpiperidine	None	—	—	—	710
1-Nitroso-4-bromo-methylpiperidine	Di-(1-nitroso-4-piperidylmethyl)malonic acid	79	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	710
2,4-Dinitrochlorobenzene	Diethyl (2,4-dinitrophenyl)malonate	90	Na	Ether	139, 284
Picryl chlorido	Diethyl (2,4,6-trinitrophenyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	711
2,4-Dinitrobenzene	Diethyl (2,4-dinitrophenyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	184, 712
2,5-Dichloro-1,3-dinitrobenzene	Diethyl (2,6-dinitro-4-chlorophenyl)malonate	22	Na	Ether	713, 714
1-Chloro-4-bromo-2,6-dinitrobenzene	Diethyl (2,6-dinitro-4-bromophenyl)malonate	90	Na	Ether	715
2,4-Dinitro-1,3,5-trichlorobenzene	Dimethyl (2,4-dinitro-3,5-dichlorophenyl)malonate*	—	Na	Ether	714
2,4-Dinitro-1,3,5-tribromobenzene	Diethyl (2,4-dinitro-5-bromophenyl)malonate	40 (53)	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol- C_6H_6	327, 326, 328

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	84	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol- C_6H_6	668
$i\text{-C}_6\text{H}_7\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_7-i)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	38	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	223
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	64	Na	—	721
$\text{ClCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	>50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	722
$\text{BrCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	675
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCHBrCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{COCHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	723, 168
β -Cyclopentylethyl bromide	Diethyl $(\beta$ -cyclopentylethyl)malonate	—	Na	Xyleno	724
β -Cyclopentylethyl bromide	Diethyl $(\beta$ -cyclopentylethyl)malonate	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	725
β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl $[\beta$ -(2-cyclopentenyl)ethyl]malonate	—	Na	Xyleno	726
β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl $[\beta$ -(2-cyclopentenyl)ethyl]malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	727
γ -Tetrahydrofurfurylpropyl bromide	Diethyl $(\gamma$ -tetrahydrofurfurylpropyl)malonate	65-66	—	—	728
Bromomethylcyclohexane	Diethyl (cyclohexylmethyl)malonate	71	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	704
1-Methylcyclohexyl chloride	Diethyl (1-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150
2-Methylcyclohexyl bromide	Diethyl (2-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	49	Na	—	147
3-Methylcyclohexyl bromide	Diethyl (3-methylcyclohexyl)malonate (<i>cis</i> and <i>trans</i> isomers)	Good	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	729
	Diethyl di-(3-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	—	—	—	—

3-Methylcyclohexyl iodido	Diethyl (3-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	352
4-Methylcyclohexyl bromido	Diethyl (4-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	149
4-Methylcyclohexyl iodido	Diethyl (4-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	352
1-Bromomethyl- 1-bromocyclohexano		—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150
1-Methyl-1,2-dibromo- cyclohexano	Diethyl (2-methyl-2-cyclohexenyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150, 730
1-Methyl-1,2-dibromo- cyclohexano	Diethyl (5-methyl-2-cyclohexenyl)malonate (isomers)	—	—	—	730
(-)-5-Methyl-1,2- dibromocyclohexano	Two products, no analyses given	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150
1-Cyano-1,2-dibromo- cyclohexano	Structure of product not determined	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	NaH	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}$	393
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	24	KOH	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	83
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5))_2$	85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	136, 107, 108, 113, 119, 121, 142, 411, 430, 433, 571, 732, 734, 735
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	12	—	—	—
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	84-87	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	733
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	56
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	76	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	736, 737
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	7	—	—	—
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{m\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	35	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	115
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{m\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	—	—
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50	—	—	—
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	—	—

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

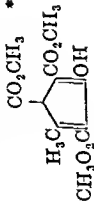
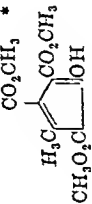
TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$o\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$o\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Good	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	406
$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$\{p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\{p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	738
$p\text{-IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$p\text{-IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	391
$o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$ $\{o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	54	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	739
$o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\{o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	54	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	112, 740, 741
$m\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$m\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	46	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	342
$m\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{m\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$ $\{m\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	117
$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{X}^{**}$	$\{p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\{p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	342
$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\{p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	118, 112, 740-742
2-Nitro-4-cyanobromobenzene	$\{p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Dimethyl (2-nitro-4-cyanophenyl)malonate*	18	Na	Ether	712
$o\text{-Bromobenzoic acid}$	Diethyl (o -carboxyphenyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	98
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	525

TABLE I—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCHBr}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ $\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{CH}_3$ (high-melting isomer)	Tetramethyl cyclo-pentane-1,2,3,4-tetracarboxylate *	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	753
$(\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCHBr})_2\text{CHCH}_3$		68	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	199, 200
or					
					
γ -Cyclopentylpropyl bromide	Diethyl (γ -cyclopentylpropyl)malonate	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	754
β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	Diethyl (β -cyclohexylethyl)malonate	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	704
β -Cyclohexylideneethyl bromide	Diethyl (β -cyclohexylideneethyl)malonate	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	663
β -(1-Cyclohexenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(1-cyclohexenyl)ethyl]malonate	58	K	C_4H_6	425
1-Bromo-1-ethylcyclohexane	Diethyl (1-ethylcyclohexyl)malonate	2	Na	Toluene	147
1-Ethyl-1,2-dibromocyclohexane	Diethyl (2-ethyl-2-cyclohexonyl)malonate	Poor	—	—	730
1,2-Dithioeyanocyclohexane	Diethyl 2-cyclohexenylmalonate	30	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	150, 322

$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2Cl$	$C_6H_5(HC_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	427
$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)Br$	$[C_6H_5CH(CH_3)]_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Toluene	508
$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	65	Na	Toluene	411
$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	755, 142, 428, 539, 756, 757
$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	89	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	136, 758
$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Br$	$[C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2]_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	758
β -Phenoxyethyl	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	335
<i>p</i> -toluenesulfonato	$o\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2H)_2$	60-70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	759, 760
$o\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2Cl$	Diethyl [2 (and 3)-bromo-5 (and 6)- methylbenzyl]malonate	88	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	114
Chloromethyl-	$o\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2H)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	761
<i>p</i> -bromotoluene (mixture)	$o\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	57	Na	Benzene	421
$o\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2Br$	$o\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	66	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	133, 110, 762
$m\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2Br$	$m\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	507
$p\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2Cl$	$p\text{-}CH_3C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	763
2-Methoxy-5-nitrobenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2-methoxy-5-nitrobenzyl)malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	764
$m\text{-}CH_3OC_6H_4CH_2Br$	$[m\text{-}CH_3OC_6H_4CH_2]_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	511
$p\text{-}CH_3OC_6H_4CH_2Cl$	$p\text{-}CH_3OC_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Good	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	198, 109
$o\text{-}NCC_6H_4CH_2Cl$	$\{o\text{-}NCC_6H_4CH_2\}_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	765, 106, 766
$C_6H_5COCH_2Br$	$C_6H_5COCH_2CH(CO_2H)_2$	—	Na	Ether	712
3-Nitro-4-bromoacetophenone	Dimethyl (2-nitro-4-acetylphenyl)malonate*	70	Na	Ether	712
3-Nitro-4-methyl- 6-bromobenzonitrile	Dimethyl (2-cyano-4-nitro-5-methyl- phenyl)malonate*	Poor	Na	Ether	712
<i>o</i> -Xylylene dibromido	Diethyl hydrindene-2,2-dicarboxylate	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	767, 302, 486
$i\text{-}C_2H_{11}OCH_2CH=CH_2$	$i\text{-}C_2H_{11}OCH_2CHCH_2CHCO_2C_2H_5$	50-60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	524

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* Dimethyl malonate was used in this experiment.

TABLE I—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	525
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	76	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	526, 11
$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2$	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	46	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	12
C_9	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80-85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	282
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	90	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	317
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	317
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	138
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	686
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	686
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	81	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	691
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHBr}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50	—	—	693
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	317
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2-$	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	717
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	176
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\cdot\text{NaI}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	725
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrCH}_2\text{CHBr}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Tetraethyl cyclobutane-1,2,2,3-tetracarboxylate	—	Na	Toluene	724
$\delta\text{-Cyclopentylbutyl bromide}$	Diethyl ($\delta\text{-cyclopentylbutyl}$)malonate	—	—	—	—
$\delta\text{-Cyclopentylbutyl bromide}$	Diethyl ($\delta\text{-cyclopentylbutyl}$)malonate	—	—	—	—

			Na	Toluono	1,2*
δ -(2-Cyclopentenyl)butyl bromide	Diethyl [δ -(2-cyclopentenyl)butyl]malonate	—	—	—	—
γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide	Diethyl (γ -cyclohexylpropyl)malonate	53	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	704
β -(2-Methyl-1-cyclohexenyl)-ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(2-methyl-1-cyclohexenyl)ethyl]malonate	71	K	C_6H_6	424
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	768, 429, 769, 770
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	—	771
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	606
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	56	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	772-774
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	84	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	775, 698, 776, 777
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}\cdot\text{KI}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	432
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	51	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	18
$m\text{-ClH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$m\text{-ClH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	517
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Good	—	—	760
$m\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$m\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	82-85	K	Toluono	412
2-Bromo-5-ethylbenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2-bromo-5-ethylbenzyl)malonate	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	407
2,4-Dimethylbenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2,4-dimethylbenzyl)malonate	49	Na	Xylene	778, 760
3,5-Dimethylbenzyl bromide	Diethyl (3,5-dimethylbenzyl)malonate	30	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	779, 738
2-Methyl-5-methoxybenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2-methyl-5-methoxybenzyl)malonate	77	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	404
2-Chloro-5-nitro-4-methylacetophenone	Diethyl (2-acetyl-4-nitro-5-methylphenyl)malonate	—	Na	Ether	712
Methyl <i>p</i> -chloromethylbenzoate	Diethyl (<i>p</i> -carbomethoxybenzyl)malonate	66	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	780
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	56
2,3-Dichloroindanone	Diethyl (2-chloro-3-indenonyl)malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	781
$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{OCH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{OCH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$


(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
3-Bromomethylindeno	Diethyl (3-indenylmethyl)malonate CHCO_2CH_3 *	79	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	799
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCHBrCO}_2\text{CH}_3$		—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	800
Dibromomethylmethyloquinone		—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	801
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2$	$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
$o\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2$	$o\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524
$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2$	$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	524

TABLE I—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
3,4-Dibromo- β -naphthoquinone	Diethyl [(?) -bromo- β -naphthoquinone]malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	781
C_{11}					
$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80-85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	282, 802
$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$, NaI	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	70
$\text{CH}_3=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Cl}$, KI	$\text{CH}_3=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	75	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	804
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\cdot$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	71	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	686
ε -Cyclohexylpentyl bromide	Diethyl (ε -cyclohexylpentyl)malonate	79	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	704
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	53	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	803
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{Cl}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	75	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	805
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	24	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	806
$p\text{-}i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$p\text{-}i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	403
γ -(2-Methyl-5-methoxyphenyl)propyl bromide	Diethyl [γ -(2-methyl-5-methoxyphenyl)propyl]malonate	49	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	404
β -(2,5-Dimethyl-4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(2,5-dimethyl-4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]malonate	54	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	807
2-Methyl-5-isopropylbenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2-methyl-5-isopropylbenzyl)malonate	60	Na	C_6H_6	808, 418, 779
2,3,5,6-Tetramethylbenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2,3,5,6-tetramethylbenzyl)malonate	66	Na	C_6H_6	809
2,3,5,6-Tetramethylbenzyl chloride	β -(2,3,5,6-Tetramethylphenyl)propionic acid	72	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	810

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$ (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)				
Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent
Diethyl 1-naphthylmethylenemalonate	Diethyl (1-naphthylmethylenemalonate)	55	Na	C_6H_6
Diethyl 1-bromomethyl-2-naphthylmethylenemalonate	Diethyl (1-bromo-1-naphthylmethylenemalonate)	—	Na	C_6H_6
Diethyl 1-bromomethyl-2-naphthylmethylenemalonate	Diethyl (2-naphthylmethylenemalonate)	—	Na	C_6H_6
Diethyl 1-bromomethyl-2-naphthylmethylenemalonate	Diethyl (1-bromo-2-naphthylmethylenemalonate)	—	Na	C_6H_6
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CH}$	$(n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25})_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	61	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
I_2/Br	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
$(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
H_3	$\text{cyclo-C}_9\text{H}_{11}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
$(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_8\text{H}_9\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	71	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol
H_3/Br	$p\text{-}t\text{-C}_8\text{H}_9\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	50	Na	C_6H_6
$\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Br}$	$p\text{-}t\text{-C}_8\text{H}_9\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	—
Diethyl 1-isopropylbenzene	CH_3  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	30	Na	C_6H_6
Diethyl 1-methyl-4-isopropylbenzyl chloride	$\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ Diethyl (2-methyl-4-methoxy-5-isopropylbenzyl)malonate	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol

Reference

153

153

153

153

684

686

814, 656

704

815, 816

321

415

404

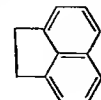
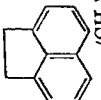
TABLE I—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_3(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
β -(2-Methyl-4-4-butyphenyl)-ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(2-methyl-4-4-butyphenyl)ethyl]-malonate	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	827, 414
β -(2-Methoxy-5-4-butyphenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(2-methoxy-5-4-butyphenyl)ethyl]malonate	52	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	827
2,4-Dimethyl-5-4-butybenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2,4-dimethyl-5-4-butybenzyl)-malonate	19	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	405
i -H, C ₉ (CH ₂) ₂ Br 	i -H, C ₉ (CH ₂) ₂ CH(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂ CH ₃ O	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	321
i -H, C ₉ (CH ₂) ₂ Br 	i -H, C ₉ (CH ₂) ₂ CH(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂ CH ₃ O	61	Na	Toluene	413
1-Benzoyl-4-bromo-methylpiperidino	Diethyl [(1-benzoyl-4-piperidyl)-methyl]malonate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	828
Benzhydryl bromide	Diethyl benzhydrylmalonate	49	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	516, 829
o -C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ Br	o -C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ CH(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	80	—	—	830
p -C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ Cl	p -C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ CH(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂ and (p -C ₆ H ₅ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂) ₂ C(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	65	—	—	738
3-Nitro-4-bromobenzophenone	Diethyl (2-nitro-4-benzoylphenyl)malonate	—	Na	Ether	712
β -(5-Methoxy-1-naphthyl)-ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(5-methoxy-1-naphthyl)ethyl]-malonate	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	520
β -(7-Methoxy-2-naphthyl)-ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(7-methoxy-2-naphthyl)ethyl]-malonate	80	Na	C ₆ H ₆	819
β -(6-Methoxy-1-naphthyl)-ethyl bromide	Diethyl [β -(6-methoxy-1-naphthyl)ethyl]-malonate	37	K	Toluene	831

		15	Na	Ether	832
1-Chloromethyl-2-ethyl-naphthalene	Diethyl (2-ethyl-1-naphthylmethyl)malonate	—	—	—	821
1-Chloromethyl-2,3-dimethylnaphthalene	Diethyl (2,3-dimethyl-1-naphthylmethyl)-malonate	—	—	—	821
1-Chloromethyl-3,4-dimethylnaphthalene	Diethyl (3,4-dimethyl-1-naphthylmethyl)-malonate	—	—	—	821
9-Bromofluorene	Fluorenyl-9-acetic acid	89	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	833, 516
$C_{11}-C_{16}$					
$n-C_{11}H_{23}I$	$n-C_{11}H_{23}CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	96	Na	None	684
$n-C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	$n-C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	31	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	686
$CH(C_2H_5)_2Br$	$CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$				
$n-C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_2Br$	$n-C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	66	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	805
$p-C_6H_4COC_6H_4CH_2Br$	$p-C_6H_4COC_6H_4CH_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	76	NaOC ₂ H ₅	C ₆ H ₆	834
		—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	492
$t-H_3C_4(CH_2)_2Br$	$t-H_3C_4(CH_2)_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	414
	$p-CH_3OC_6H_4SO_2C_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	40	Na	C ₆ H ₆	245
1-Chloromethyl-4-isopropyl-naphthalene	Diethyl (4-isopropyl-1-naphthylmethyl)malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	515

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE I—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
 $(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$ $\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n$ $(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2)_2$ 3,7,11-Trimethyl-2-dodecenyl bromide Farnesyl bromide $\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n$ $(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	 $(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2^*$ Diethyl (3,7,11-trimethyl-2-dodecenyl)-malonate Diethyl farnesylmalonate $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ and $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl (2- <i>t</i> -butyl-1-naphthylmethyl)malonate Diethyl [β -(5-isopropyl-1-naphthyl)ethyl]malonate	— — — 56 — — 56 — 59	NaOC_2H_5 Na NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 — NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 — NaOCH_3	Ethanol None Ethanol Ethanol — Ethanol Ethanol — Xylene	835 650 836 837 650 261 805 821 838

[illegible]

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

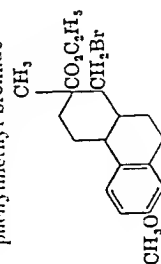
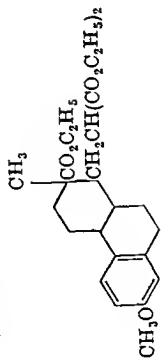
* Dimethyl malonate was used in this experiment.

TABLE I—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	72	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	805
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	Diethyl (dimesitylmethyl)malonate	84	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ether-ethanol	218
Dimesitylchloromethane	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	86	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ether	56
$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	851
$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CBr}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	42	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	805
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}$	Diethyl (diphenyl- <i>o</i> -tolylmethyl)malonate	69	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	829
Diphenyl- <i>o</i> -tolylmethyl bromide	Diethyl (diphenyl- <i>p</i> -tolylmethyl)malonate	77	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	829
Diphenyl- <i>p</i> -tolylmethyl bromide	Diethyl (diphenyl- <i>o</i> -methoxyphenylmethyl)malonate	82	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	829
Diphenyl- <i>o</i> -methoxyphenylmethyl bromide	Diethyl (diphenyl- <i>p</i> -methoxyphenylmethyl)malonate	—	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	829



$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	92	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	802, 134, 684
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_{12}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}=\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	853
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{Cl}$	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	57	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	805
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	73	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	805
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	854
$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{CH}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\cdot n)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{CH}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\cdot n)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	16	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	70
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_8\cdot$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_8\cdot$	13	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	855
$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_9\cdot$	$\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	856
Diphenyl- α -naphthylmethyl bromide	Diethyl (diphenyl- α -naphthylmethyl)-malonate	38	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	829
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\cdot$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\cdot$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	317
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_9\cdot$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_9\cdot$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	856
C_{25}	$\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	89	$\text{Mg}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Ethanol	829
Diphenyl-4-biphenylmethyl bromide	Diethyl (diphenyl-4-biphenylmethyl)malonate	—	Na	Toluene	10
3 β -Cholestanyl <i>p</i> -toluenesulfonate	Diethyl 3 α -cholestanylmalonate	—	Na	Xylene	21, 22
3 β -Cholesteryl <i>p</i> -toluenesulfonate	Diethyl 3-cholesterylmalonate and diethyl 3,5-cyclo-6-cholestanylmalonate	—	Na	Toluene	10
3 β -Cholesteryl <i>p</i> -toluenesulfonate	Diethyl 3 α - and 3 β -cholesterylmalonate††	—	Na		

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

†† The ratio of the β -isomer to the α -isomer was about 9 to 1.

HCONH	$C_6H_5CH_2Br$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(NH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	Na	Ether	859
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	NaH	$(CH_3)_2NCHO$	246
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	69	NaH	Toluene	860
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	861
	$Cl(CH_2)_3Br$	$Cl(CH_2)_3C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	436
	$cis-CH=CHCH_2Cl$	$cis-CH=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	84	NaH	Toluene	860
	$trans-ClCH=CHCH_2Cl$	$trans-ClCH=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	86	NaH	Toluene	860
	$CH_2=CClCH_2Cl$	$CH_2=CClCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	83	NaH	Toluene	246
	$CH_2=CBBrCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CBBrCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	862
	$CH_2=CBBrCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CBBrCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	81	NaH	Toluene	246
	$BrCH=CHCH_2Br$	$BrCH=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	862
	$BrCH=CHCH_2Br$	$BrCH=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	73	NaH	$(CH_3)_2NCHO$	860
	$Cl_2C=CHCH_2Br$	$Cl_2C=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	83	NaH	$(CH_3)_2NCHO$	860
	$HC\equiv CCH_2Br$	$HC\equiv CCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	82	NaH	C_6H_6	246
	$BiCH_2CH=CH_2$	$BrCH_2CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	436
		$\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$				
	$n-C_4H_9Br$	$n-C_4H_9C(NHCHO)(CO_2CH_3)^*$	37	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	863
	$n-C_4H_9Br$	$n-C_4H_9C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	62	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	863
	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_2Br$	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	56	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	864, 437
	$BrCH_2CO_2CH_3$	$CH_3O_2CCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2CH_3)^*$	47	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	863
	$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ \\ CH_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CHCH_2Br \\ \\ CH_2 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ \\ CHCH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \end{array}$	53	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	864
	3-Bromomethylthiophene	Diethyl (3-thenyl)formamidomalonate	80	NaH	C_6H_6	246
	3-Bromomethylthiophene	Diethyl (3-thenyl)formamidomalonate	80	NaH	Toluene	246
	3-Bromomethylthiophene	Diethyl (3-thenyl)formamidomalonate	93	NaH	$(CH_3)_2NCHO$	246
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2CH_3)^*$	75	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	863
	$p-CH_3OC_2H_4CH_2Cl$	$p-CH_3OC_2H_4CH_2C(NHCHO)(CO_2CH_3)^*$	73	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	863

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The dimethyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE II—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF CHLORO-, NITRO-, AMINO- AND ACYLAMINO-MALONIC ESTERS, $XCH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

X	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
HCONH (cont.)	3-Nitro-4-methoxybenzyl chloride	Diethyl (3-nitro-4-methoxybenzyl)-formamidomalonate	80	NaH	Toluene	246
	2,4-Dimethylbenzyl chloride	Diethyl (2,4-dimethylbenzyl)-formamidomalonate	89	NaH	Toluene	246
	$BrCH=CHCH_2C(NHCHO)-$ $(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(NHCHO)CH_2-$ $CH=CHC(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	862
	$(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$	$(C_6H_5)_2CHC(NHCHO)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	43	Na	Xylene	865
	1-Chloromethyl-naphthalene	Diethyl (1-naphthylmethyl)-formamidomalonate	96	NaH	Toluene	246
CH ₃ CONH	C_1-C_2	$CH_3C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	88	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	232
	CH ₃ I	$CH_3C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	232
	$(CH_3)_2SO_4$ C_2H_5Br	$C_2H_5C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	232
C_3	$n-C_3H_7Br$	$n-C_3H_7C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	71	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	235, 232
	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2Cl$	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	>56	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	866
	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2Cl$	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	>60	$NaOC_4H_9-t$	$z-C_4H_9OH$	866
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	37	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	234
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	232, 867
	CH_3COCH_2Br	$CH_3COCH_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	66	$NaOC_2H_5$	C_6H_6	49
	$ClCH=CHCH_2Cl$	$ClCH=CHCH_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	—	—	449

TABLE II—Continued

ALKYLATION OF CHLORO-, NITRO-, AMINO- AND ACYLAMINO-MALONIC ESTERS, $\text{NCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R})_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

X	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
CH_3CONH (Cont.)	C_7	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	232
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	82	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	235
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	89	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	444
	$o\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$o\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	68	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	444
	$m\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$m\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	76	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	$p\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$p\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	81	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	$o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	84	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	451
	$p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	2,4-Dichlorobenzyl chloride	$2,4\text{-Cl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	89	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	3,4-Dichlorobenzyl chloride	$3,4\text{-Cl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	88	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	454
	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	100	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	20	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	2-Hydroxy-5-nitrobenzyl chloride	Diethyl acetamido-(2-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzyl)malonate	97	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	448
	$p\text{-H}_3\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$p\text{-H}_3\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	232
C_6	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	>20	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	457
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	34	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	451
	3-Nitro-4-methylbenzyl chloride	2-Amino-3-(3-nitro-4-methylphenyl)-propionic acid	85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	445
	2-Fluoro-4-methoxybenzyl chloride	Diethyl acetamido-(2-fluoro-4-methoxybenzyl)malonate	71	NaOC_2H_5	C_6H_6	49, 456
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{C}(\text{NHCOCH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	C_6H_6	—

o -O ₂ NC ₆ H ₄ COCH ₂ Br	41	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	456
o -O ₂ NC ₆ H ₄ COCH ₂ Br	19	NaOC ₂ H ₅	(C ₂ H ₅ O) ₂ CO	49
5-Chloromethyl-1-isopropylimidazole hydrochloride	44	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	443
1-Chloromethyl-benzimidazole hydrochloride	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	455
2-Chloromethyl-benzimidazole hydrochloride	65	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	455
<i>C</i> ₆				
n -C ₆ H ₁₃ Br	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
2-Ethoxy-5-nitrobenzyl chloride	82	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	448
2-Bromo-3-bromo-methylcoumarone	73	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	440
2-Chloromethyl-4-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride	40	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	455
2-Chloromethyl-5-methylbenzimidazole hydrochloride	50	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	455
<i>C</i> ₁₀				
β -3-Indolylethyl bromide	58	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	441
5-Chloromethyl-1-cyclohexylimidazole hydrochloride	49	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	443

Note: References 577-1050 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE II—*Continued*
 ALKYLATION OF CHLORO-, NITRO-, AMINO- AND ACYLAMINO-MALONIC ESTERS, $XCH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

X	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
CH_3CONH (<i>Cont.</i>)						
	5-Chloromethyl-1-phenylimidazole hydrochloride	2-Amino-3-(1-phenyl-5-imidazolyl)-propionic acid	49	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	443
	2-Chloromethyl-5,6-dimethylbenzimidazole hydrochloride	Ethyl 2-acetamido-3-(5,6-dimethyl-2-benzimidazolyl)propionate	ca. 40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	455
C_{11}						
	$C_6H_5CH(CO_2C_2H_5)CH_2Br$	$C_6H_5CH(CO_2C_2H_5)CH_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	439
	1-Chloromethylnaphthalene	Diethyl acetamido-(1-naphthyl-methyl)malonate	92	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	440
	5-Chloromethyl-1-benzylimidazole hydrochloride	2-Amino-3-(1-benzyl-5-imidazolyl)-propionic acid	45	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	443
$C_{13}-C_{14}$						
	4-(4-Nitrophenyl-sulfonyl)benzyl bromide	Diethyl acetamido-[4-(4-nitro-phenylsulfonyl)benzyl]malonate	74	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol-dioxane	454
	3,5-Diiodo-4-(4-methoxyphenyl-sulfonyl)benzyl chloride	Diethyl acetamido-[3,5-diiodo-4-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)benzyl]-malonate	84	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol-dioxane	438

C_3-C_8						
C_6H_5CONH	$i-C_3H_7I$	$C_6H_5CONHC(C_6H_7-i)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	66	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	233
	$i-C_3H_7I$	$C_6H_5CONHC(C_6H_9-i)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	74	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	233
	$ClCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(NHCOC_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	88	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	233
	$Br(CH_2)_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2C(CH_2)_2C(NHCOC_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	459
	2-Chloromethylpyridino	2-Amino-3-(2-pyridyl)propionic acid	17	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	458
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CONHC(CH_2C_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	95	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	233
	$p-HOC_6H_4(CH_2)_2Br$	$p-HOC_6H_4(CH_2)_2CH(NH_2)CO_2H$	7	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	453
Phthalimido	C_2-C_3					
($=C_6H_4O_2N$)	CH_3OCH_2Cl	$CH_3OCH_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	73	Na	C_6H_6	871
	$ClCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	95-99	$NaOC_2H_5$	$ClCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	467
	$ClCH_2SCH_2Cl$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)CH_2S-$	81	Na	Xylene	460
	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2Cl$	$CH_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$				
	$CH_2=CHCH_2I$	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	76-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	466, 465
	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	90	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	462, 435
		$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CH_2)_3$	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	462, 236, 463
	C_4-C_{11}	$C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$				
	$C_2H_5S(CH_2)_2Cl$	$C_2H_5S(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	68	Na	None	461
	$Cl(CH_2)_3CN$	$NC(CH_2)_3C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	75-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	462
	2-Chloromethylthiophene	Diethyl phthalimido(2-phenyl)malonate	93	Na	Toluene	869
	2-Chloromethylpyridine	Diethyl phthalimido-(2-pyridylmethyl)-malonate	10	Na	Xylene	468
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_4O_2N)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	75-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	462
	γ -Bromopropylphthalimide	Diethyl (γ -phthalimidopropyl)-phthalimidomalonate	75	Na	None	236, 462

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE III
ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
C_1	C_1	$(CH_3)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	55	KOH	None	82
CH_3	CH_3I	$(CH_3)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	571
	CH_3I	$(CH_3)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	872
	CH_2I_2	$CH_3CH(C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2)CH_3$	—	Na	Ether	231
	$CHCl_3$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(CH_3)CHClC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	K	Ether	231
	$CHCl_3$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(CH_3)CHClC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	231
	$CHBr_3$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(CH_3)CHBrC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	231
	CHI_3	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(CH_3)CHI_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	231
C_2	C_2	$C_2H_5C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	577
	C_2H_5I	$CH_3SCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	51	Na	Ether	205
	CH_3SCH_2Cl	$Cl(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70	Na	Toluene	873
	CH_2ClCH_2Br	$Br(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	15	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	874, 172
	CH_2BrCH_2Br	$CH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70			620
	CH_2BrCH_2Br	$Br(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	32	Na	C_6H_6	875
C_3	$n-C_3H_7I$	$n-C_3H_7C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	87	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	582, 488
	Not stated	$n-C_3H_7C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	571
	$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	64	Na	Ether	205

$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
Not stated	$i-C_3H_7C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	571
$Br(CH_2)_2Br$	$Br(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	629, 172
$(CH_3)_2CClNO_2$	$(CH_3)_2CClNO_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	45	Na	Ether	556
$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	87-89	—	—	876, 571
$ClCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α -carbomethoxy- α -methylsuccinate	—	Na	Ether	653, 161
$ClCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α -carbomethoxy- α -methylsuccinate	—	Na	C_6H_6	653
C_6	—	—	—	—	—
Not stated	$n-C_4H_9C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	—	571
$C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)Cl$	$n-C_4H_9SCH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	43	Na	Ether	205
$CH_3COCl=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3COCl=CHCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	533
C_6	—	—	—	—	—
$n-C_6H_{11}Br$	$n-C_6H_{11}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	551
$n-C_6H_{11}CH(CH_3)Br$	$n-C_6H_{11}CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	551
$i-C_6H_{11}Br$	$i-C_6H_{11}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	551
$n-C_6H_{11}SCH_2Cl$	$n-C_6H_{11}SCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
$CH_3CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α, α' -dimethyl- α -carbomethoxysuccinate	—	Na	None	877
$CH_3CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α, α' -dimethyl- α -carbomethoxysuccinate	37	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223, 702
$ClCH(CO_2CH_3)_2$	$(CH_3O_2C)_2CHCH(CO_2CH_3)_2$ and $(CH_3O_2C)_2C=C(CO_2CH_3)_2$	—	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	752
Cyclobutylmethyl tosylate	Diethyl (cyclobutylmethyl)-methylmalonate	18	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	334
α -Chloromethylthiophene	Diethyl (α -thienyl)methylmalonate	Good	—	—	878
C_6	—	—	—	—	—
$n-C_6H_{13}Br$	$n-C_6H_{13}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	551
$i-C_6H_{13}Br$	$i-C_6H_{13}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	83	Na	C_6H_6	247
$n-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)Br$	$n-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	551
$n-C_4H_9SCH_2C_6H_5$	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	553
$C_2H_5CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α -methyl- α' -ethyl- α -carbomethoxysuccinate	26	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223, 162
$(CH_3)_2CBrCO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α, α' -trimethyl- α' -carbomethoxysuccinate	57	Na	None	872, 162, 223

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The dimethyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R' C_2H_5 (cont.)	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
	α -Cyclohexenyl bromide	Diethyl (2-cyclohexenyl)methylmalonate	73	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	319
	1,2-Dibromocyclohexane	Diethyl (2-cyclohexenyl)methylmalonate	>60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	319, 150
C_7						
	i - C_3H_7 - $CHBr$ - $CO_2C_2H_5$	Diethyl α -isopropyl- α -methyl- α' -carboethoxymalonate	8	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223
	$C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CHCH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	752
	$BrC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$[(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CHC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]$	Poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	752
	$BrC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C \equiv C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	334
	β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl methyl- β -(2-cyclopentenyl)-ethylmalonate	56	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	334
	β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl tosylate	Diethyl methyl- β -(2-cyclopentenyl)-ethylmalonate	56	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	334
	Cyclohexylmethyl iodide	Diethyl methyl-(cyclohexylmethyl)-malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	334
	Cyclohexylmethyl iodide	Diethyl methyl-(cyclohexylmethyl)-methylmalonate	65	$NaOC_4H_9$ ⁿ	n - C_4H_9OH	334
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	615
C_6						
	n - C_4H_9 , 1	n - $C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)CH_2Br$	63	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	879
	n - $C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)CH_2Br$	n - $C_4H_9CH(C_2H_5)CH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	551
	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2C(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	6	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	880
	$CH_3CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	5	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	578
	α -Chloromethylcyclohexyl sulfide	Diethyl [α -(cyclohexylthio)-ethyl]methylmalonate	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
	β -(1-Cyclohexenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl methyl- β -(1-cyclohexenyl)-ethylmalonate	53	K	C_6H_6	426
	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	K	Xylene	881
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	65	Na	Toluene	873, 758

C_9	$n-C_9H_{19}I$	$n-C_9H_{19}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	94	—	—	882
	$Br(CH_2)_3C(CH_3)(CH_2)_3CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_6H_5O_2CCH_2C(CH_3)(CH_2)_3C(CH_3)CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	814
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3Cl$	$C_6H_5O_2CCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	581
	$o-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2Br$	$o-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	Na	C_6H_6	883
	$p-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2Br$	$p-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	87	Na	C_6H_6	416
	$p-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2Br$	$p-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	35	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	423
C_{10}						
	Geranyl chloride	Diethyl methyl-(geranyl)malonate	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	31
	$C_6H_5CH_2SCH_2CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_6H_5CH_2SCH_2CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	794
	β -(2,3-Dimethylphenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl methyl- β -(2,3-dimethylphenyl)-ethylmalonate	50	Na	C_6H_6	417
	β -(2,4-Dimethylphenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl methyl- β -(2,4-dimethylphenyl)-ethylmalonate	50	Na	C_6H_6	417
	$p-C_6H_4C_6H_4COCH_2Cl$	$p-C_6H_4C_6H_4COCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	12	Na	Ether	420
	$C_6H_5CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$	$C_6H_5CH(CO_2C_2H_5)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	45	Na	None	583
	<i>m</i> -Carbethoxybenzyl chloride	Diethyl methyl-(<i>m</i> -carbethoxybenzyl)-malonate	—	—	—	230
	β -Bromoethylphthalimide	Diethyl methyl-(β -phthalimidoethyl)-malonate	40-46	Na	C_6H_6	884
C_{11}						
	Chloromethyltetralin†	Diethyl methyl-(tetrahydronaphthylmethyl)malonate	51	Na	C_6H_6	410
	α -Chloromethylnaphthalene	Diethyl methyl-(α -naphthylmethyl)-malonate	71	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	885, 886
	β -Chloromethylnaphthalene	Diethyl methyl-(β -naphthylmethyl)-malonate	—	—	—	880
$C_{12}-C_{24}$						
	$n-C_{12}H_{25}X^{\ddagger}$	$n-C_{12}H_{25}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	887
	$n-C_{13}H_{27}X^{\ddagger}$	$n-C_{13}H_{27}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	888
	$n-C_{14}H_{29}X^{\ddagger}$	$n-C_{14}H_{29}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	887

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

† This halide was probably a mixture of isomers.

‡ The halogen was not specified.

$\text{CH}_2\text{BrCH}_2\text{Br}$	—	Na	C_6H_6	555
$\text{CH}_2\text{BrCH}_2\text{Br}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	172
BrCH=CHBr	25	Na	Ether	54
C_3	31	—	—	—
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	—	—	—	374
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{Cl}$	74	Na	Ether	542
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	61	Na	Ether	205
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	125
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	Na	Ether	891
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	Na	C_6H_6	891
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Cl}$	46 (75)§	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	145
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	70-80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	558
$\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Br}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	814
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	46	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	92
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	32	Na	C_6H_6	537, 656
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CClNO}_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	814
$cis\text{-CHCl=CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	40 (65)§	Na	Ether	177
$trans\text{-CHCl=CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	8 (13)§	—	—	—
$\text{CH}_3=\text{CClCH}_2\text{Cl}$	70-80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	558
C_4	70-80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	558, 621
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	70-80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	558
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	—	—	—	—
$(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	ca. 80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	536
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}$	62	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	399, 892
$(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	42 (68)§	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	Methanol	890, 330
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}$	—	NaOCH_3	Methanol	814
$(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	45 (70)§	$\text{NaOC}_4\text{H}_9\text{-i}$	$(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	890, 330

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

• The dimethyl ester was used in this experiment.

† The halogen was not specified.

§ Here and in subsequent cases the first figure represents the conversion; the figure in parentheses represents the yield.

|| The diisobutyl ester was used in this experiment.

* The di-n-butyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE III—*Continued*
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
C_2H_5 (cont.)	$C_2H_5CH_2CH_2Br$	$C_2H_5CH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	ca. 80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	530, 168
	$(CH_3)_3CBr$	$(CH_3)_3CC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Toluene	15
	$CH_3C(CH_3)_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_3C(CH_3)_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	558
	$CH_3CH(CH_3)CH_2Cl$	$CH_3CH(CH_3)CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	11
	$n-C_3H_7OCH_2Cl$	$n-C_3H_7OCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	Na	Ether	512
	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	371
	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_5 , ether	203
	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	10-15	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	511
	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$	$n-C_3H_7SCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	73	Na	Ether	205
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$i-C_3H_7SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$i-C_3H_7SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125, 803
	$CH_3CH_2CH_2SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	558
	$CH_3CH_2CH_2SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	$NaNH_2$	Ether	277
	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2CH_2Br$	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	653, 161, 891
	$CH_3CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	C_6H_6	653, 891
	$CH_3CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	891
	$CH_3CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	C_6H_6	891
	$CH_3CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	C_6H_6	891
C_3	$n-C_3H_7Br$	$n-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	513, 895
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	75	Na	Toluene	51
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	ca. 80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	536
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44, 51, 927

$(i-C_3H_7O)_2CO$	60	KOC_2H_5	800, 330
$n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)Br$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	617
$(+)-n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	549
$(-)-n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	549
$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	617, 148
$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Poor	Na	238
$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	35	$KOCH(C_2H_5)_2$	890, 330
$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30	$NaOC_2H_5$	148
$C_2H_5CH(CH_3)CH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	5	$NaOC_2H_5$	15
$C_2H_5CH(CH_3)CH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	547
$CH_3CH=CHCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	62	$NaOC_2H_5$	557
$(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	Na	542
$n-C_4H_9OCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	56	Na	542
$i-C_4H_9OCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	62	$NaNH_2$	203
$n-C_3H_7OCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	125
$(CH_3)_2COCCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	125
$n-C_4H_9SCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	125, 893
$C_2H_5SCH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-75	$NaOC_2H_5$	554
$C_2H_5SCH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	162
$C_2H_5O_2CCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30	$NaOC_2H_5$	223
$C_2H_5O_2CCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	804
$C_2H_5O_2CCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	804
$C_2H_5O_2CCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	65	$NaOC_2H_5$	334
Diethyl ethyl(cyclobutylmethyl)malonate	—	Na	890
Diethyl ethyl(cyclopentyl)malonate	—	Na	617
Diethyl ethyl(cyclohexyl)malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	543
Diethyl ethyl(2-tetrahydropyranyl)-malonate	—	NaH	683
Diethyl ethyl(2-phenyl)malonate	—	Na	897
Diethyl ethyl(2-methyl-4-thiazolylmethyl)malonate	59	$NaOC_2H_5$	548
$n-C_6H_{13}C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	64	$NaOC_2H_5$	538
$n-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	617
$n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	547

Note: References 577-1030 are on pp. 322-331.
 ** The diisocyanl ester was used in this experiment.
 * The halogen was not specified.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R' C_2H_5 (C-act.)	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
	$n-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2Br$	$n-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	33-43	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	148, 550
	$i-C_4H_9Br$	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	34	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	718, 550
	$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH_2Br$	$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	748
	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)Br$	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	550
	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2Br$	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	14	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	550
	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	547
	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	547
	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	547
	$n-C_4H_9OCH_2CH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9OCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOH$	—	203
	$n-C_4H_9OCH_2CH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9OCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	76	$NaOH$	C_2H_5 -ether	125
	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$i-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$i-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$i-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$i-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	551
	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	120, 899
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30-40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	120
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30-40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	120, 899
	$i-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$i-C_4H_9SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30-40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	120, 899
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	None	102
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	23	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	923
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	None	102
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	22	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	923
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	530
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	334
	Cyclopentylmethyl tosylate	Diethyl ethyl(cyclopentylmethyl)malonate	—	—	—	—
C_2	$(n-C_4H_9)_2CHBr$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2CHC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	31	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	148, 550
	$C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2CH(CH_3)Br$	$C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	550
	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2Br$	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	550
	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2Br$	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)CH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	550

$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$	71	NaNH_2	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{-ether}$	203
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	125, 893
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	70-90	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	553
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	70-90	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	126
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	70-90	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	126
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	125
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	70-90	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	553
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	70-75	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	554
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	30-40	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	126
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	Poor	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	223
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	777
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	260
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	50-60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	725
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	46	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	334
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	53	NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	890, 330
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	740
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	64	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	900
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	125, 890
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	85	Na	Ether	769
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	41	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	901
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	41	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	901
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	43	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	901
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	550
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	550
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	550
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	374
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	30-40	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	126
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	902
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	65	NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	663

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 323-331.

‡ The halogen was not specified.

2-Phenyl-4-chloromethyl- thiazole	Diethyl ethyl-(2-phenyl-4- thiazolylmethyl)malonate	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	548
C_{11}					
$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{X}^{\dagger}$	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	887
1-Bromomethyl/naphthaleno	Diethyl ethyl-(1-naphthylmethyl)malonate	63	Na	C_6H_6	153
2-Bromomethyl/naphthaleno	Diethyl ethyl-(2-naphthylmethyl)malonate	—	Na	C_6H_6	153
C_{12}					
$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{X}^{\dagger}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	888
β -(<i>p</i> -t-Butylphenyl)ethyl- bromide	Diethyl ethyl-[β -(<i>p</i> -t-butylphenyl)ethyl]- malonate	60	Na	Toluene	413
1-Acenaphthenyl chloride	Diethyl ethyl-(1-acenaphthenyl)malonate	91	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	824
$\text{C}_{13}\text{--}\text{C}_{16}$					
$n\text{-C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	887
$n\text{-C}_{14}\text{H}_{29}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{14}\text{H}_{29}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	73	—	—	884, 888
$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	75	Na	Toluene	906
$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	135
$\text{C}_{10}\text{--}\text{C}_{16}$					
$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	527
$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	527
$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{27}\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{27})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	527
$n\text{-C}_{14}\text{H}_{29}\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{29})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	527
$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	527

Note: Reference 377-1080 are on pp. 823-381.

[†] The halogen was not specified.

^{††} The lactone $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ was used as the ester to be alkylated.



TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R' †† (Cont.)	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
	$n-C_{16}H_{33}Br$	$(CH_3)_2C(C_6H_{13-n})CO_2C_2H_5$ $\begin{array}{c} \\ O-CO \end{array}$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	527
C_2H_5O	C_2-C_{11} $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ $i-C_4H_9CH=CHCH_2Br$ $Br(CH_2)_3Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $i-C_4H_9CH=CHCH_2C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $Br(CH_2)_3C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ and $(C_2H_5O)_2C(COC_2H_5)(CH_2)_3C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— — —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Toluene-ethanol	907 907 908
	$Br(CH_2)_4Br$	$Br(CH_2)_4C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ and $(C_2H_5O)_2C(COC_2H_5)(CH_2)_4C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene-ethanol	908
	$C_6H_5CH=CHCH_2Br$ $Br(CH_2)_{10}Br$	$C_6H_5CH=CHCH_2C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $Br(CH_2)_{10}C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ and $(C_2H_5O)_2C(COC_2H_5)(CH_2)_{10}C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Toluene-ethanol	907 908
CH_3OCH_3	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_9Br$ CH_3I	$CH_2=CH(CH_2)_9C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(C_2H_5O)_2C(COC_2H_5)(CH_2)_9C(OC_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— 50	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	907 904
C_3 $n-C_3H_7$	C_1 CH_3I $CHCl_3$	$n-C_3H_7C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_3CH(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ and $(C_2H_5O)_2C(C_2H_5-n)CHClC(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— —	$NaOC_2H_5$ Na	Ethanol Ether	613 231
††	C_3 $Br(CH_2)_3Br$	$(CH_3)_2C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $\begin{array}{c} \\ O-CO \end{array}$	—	Na	C_4H_6	555
$n-C_3H_7$	$Br(CH_2)_3Br$	$Br(CH_2)_3C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	172

CH_3-CH_2 O	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)$ O—CO	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	282
C_3					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$ $\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— 70-90 45	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 Na	Toluene Toluene —	125 126 656
C_4					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$ $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	53 43 66 40-50 70-90 — —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaNH_2 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 Na Na	Ethanol Ethanol C_6H_5 -ether Ethanol Toluene Ether C_6H_6	909, 547 910 203 541 126 653 653
C_6					
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ Cyclopentyl halide†	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl cyclopentyl-(α -propyl)malonate	73 — — 41 70-90 25 —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 —	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ Toluene Ethanol Ethanol Toluene Ethanol —	44 125 551 718, 748 120 223 911
C_6					
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ 2,4-Dinitrochlorobenzene	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)-malonate	70-90 12 21 54	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 Na	Toluene Ethanol Ethanol Ether	136 223 223 139

Notes: References 577-1080 are on pp. 522-581.

† The halogen was not specified.

†† The lactone $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}$ was used as the ester to be alkylated.



TABLE III—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, R'CH(CO₂R)₂

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ (Cont.)						
<i>G</i> ₇	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ CHBrCO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	C ₂ H ₅ O ₂ CCH(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>i</i>)(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	Poor	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	223
	β -Cyclopentylethyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(β -cyclopentylethyl)-malonate	50-60	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	725
<i>G</i> ₈						
	β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(β -cyclohexylethyl)-malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	902
	C ₆ H ₅ O(CH ₂) ₂ Br	C ₆ H ₅ O(CH ₂) ₂ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	48	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	910
<i>G</i> ₉						
	γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(γ -cyclohexylpropyl)-malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	902
	C ₆ H ₅ O(CH ₂) ₂ Cl	C ₆ H ₅ O(CH ₂) ₂ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	27	NaOC ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>	<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	771
<i>G</i> ₁₀						
	<i>n</i> -C ₁₀ H ₂₁ X ⁺	<i>n</i> -C ₁₀ H ₂₁ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	887
	δ -Cyclohexylbutyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(δ -cyclohexylbutyl)-malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	902
<i>G</i> ₁₁ — <i>G</i> ₁₆						
	<i>n</i> -C ₁₁ H ₂₃ X ⁺	<i>n</i> -C ₁₁ H ₂₃ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	888
	<i>n</i> -C ₁₂ H ₂₅ X ⁺	<i>n</i> -C ₁₂ H ₂₅ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	887
	β -(1-Naphthyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(β -(1-naphthyl)ethyl)-malonate	29	K	C ₆ H ₆	419
	<i>n</i> -C ₁₃ H ₂₇ X ⁺	<i>n</i> -C ₁₃ H ₂₇ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	888
	<i>n</i> -C ₁₄ H ₂₉ X ⁺	<i>n</i> -C ₁₄ H ₂₉ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	887
	<i>n</i> -C ₁₆ H ₃₃ I	<i>n</i> -C ₁₆ H ₃₃ C(C ₂ H ₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	78	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	135
	None	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	88	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	622, 480, 490
	None	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	74	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	315

Cl(CH₂)₃
Br(CH₂)₃

$I(CH_2)_3$	None	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	—	$Na(C_2H_5)_2CHCN$	Ether	92
††	None	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	—	$Na[C_2H_5]^-$	Toluene	92
††	$n-C_{14}H_{29}Br$	$CH_3CHCH_2C(C_{14}H_{29})_2CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	527
††	$n-C_{16}H_{33}Br$	$CH_3CHCH_2C(C_{16}H_{33})_2CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	527
$i-C_3H_7$	C_1	$i-C_3H_7C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	509
	CH_3I					
	C_2	$i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Very low	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	145
	$C_2H_5X^+$					
	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	10	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	890
	$C_2H_5X^+$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	65	$NaOC_4H_9$	$i-C_4H_9OH$	35
	CH_3OCH_2Cl	$CH_3OCH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	204
	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$	$Br(CH_2)_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	172
	C_3					
	$n-C_3H_7Br$	$n-C_3H_7C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	ca. 80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	530
	$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	33	Na	Ether	205
	$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$i-C_3H_7I$	$(i-C_3H_7)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	40	Na	Ether	52
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	84	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	90	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	56
	C_4					
	$n-C_4H_9Br$	$n-C_4H_9C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	ca. 80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	530, 770
	$C_3H_7CH(CH_3)Br$	$C_3H_7CH(CH_3)C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	26	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44
	$i-C_4H_9Br$	$i-C_4H_9C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	67	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44
	$i-C_3H_7SCH_2Cl$	$i-C_3H_7SCH_2C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

‡ The halogen was not specified.

†† The lactone $CH_3CHCH_2CHCO_2C_2H_5$ was used as the ester to be alkylated.





TABLE III—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$n-C_3H_7$ (Cont.)	C_7 $i-C_3H_7CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$ β -Cyclopentylethyl bromide	$C_6H_5O_2CCH(C_3H_7-n)C(C_3H_7-n)CO_2C_2H_5$ Diethyl n -propyl-(β -cyclopentylethyl)-malonate	Poor 50-60	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	223 725
	C_8 β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	Diethyl n -propyl-(β -cyclohexylethyl)-malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	48	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	910
	C_9 γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide	Diethyl n -propyl-(γ -cyclohexylpropyl)-malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3Cl$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	27	$NaOC_2H_7^n$	$n-C_3H_7OH$	774
	C_{10} $n-C_{10}H_{21}X^+$ δ -Cyclohexylbutyl bromide	$n-C_{10}H_{21}C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl n -propyl-(δ -cyclohexylbutyl)-malonate	— —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	887 902
	$C_{11}-C_{16}$ $n-C_{11}H_{23}X^+$ $n-C_{11}H_{23}X^+$ β -(1-Naphthyl)ethyl bromide	$n-C_{11}H_{23}C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_{12}H_{25}C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl n -propyl-(β -(1-naphthyl)ethyl)-malonate	— — 29	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ K	Ethanol Ethanol C_4H_6	888 887 419
	$n-C_{12}H_{25}X^+$ $n-C_{14}H_{29}X^+$ $n-C_{16}H_{33}I$	$n-C_{12}H_{25}C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_{14}H_{29}C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_{16}H_{33}C(C_3H_7-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— — 78	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	888 887 135
	None	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	88	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	622, 480, 490
	None	Diethyl cyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	74	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	315

$Cl(CH_2)_3$
 $Br(CH_2)_3$

C_3	$CH_2=CHCH_2$ (= C_3H_5)	C_2H_5Br $Br(CH_2)_2Br$ $BrCH=CHBr$ $CH_2=CH_2$ 	$C_2H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $Br(CH_2)_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $BrCH=CH(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(CH_2)_2CH(C_2H_5)$ 	70-85 — 26 ca. 70	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaNH_2$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ether-ethanol Ethanol	545 172 277 292
C_3	$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$ $i-C_3H_7Br$ $CH_3SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ $(CH_3)_2CCNO_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$ $i-C_3H_7Br$ $CH_3SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ $(CH_3)_2CCNO_2$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $i-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_3SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(C_2H_5)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(CH_3)_2C(NO_2)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— 49 70-90 — 46	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ Na	Toluene Ethanol Toluene Ethanol Ether	125 531 120 015 550
C_4	$n-C_4H_9Br$ $C_2H_5OCH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_4H_7SCH_2Cl$ $C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)Cl$ Cyclobutylmethyl tosylate $CH_2Cl=CHCH_2Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH=CH_2$	$n-C_4H_9Br$ $C_2H_5OCH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_4H_7SCH_2Cl$ $C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)Cl$ Cyclobutylmethyl tosylate $CH_2Cl=CHCH_2Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH=CH_2$	$n-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_2H_5OCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_4H_7SCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_2H_5SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl allyl(cyclobutylmethyl)malonate $CH_2Cl=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_2=CHCH=CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	87 83 — 70-90 70-90 80 — 54	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaNH_2$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$ C_6H_5 -ether Toluene Toluene Toluene Ethanol — Ethanol	44, 51 203 125 553 120 334 501 11
C_5	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2Cl$ $n-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)Br$ $C_2H_5SCH_2CH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_4H_7OCH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $i-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH_2SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2Br$ $CH_3CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$ 2-Chloromethylthiophene	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2Cl$ $n-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)Br$ $C_2H_5SCH_2CH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_4H_7OCH(CH_3)Cl$ $n-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $i-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH_2SCH(CH_3)Cl$ $(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2Br$ $CH_3CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$ 2-Chloromethylthiophene	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_2H_5SCH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_4H_7OCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $i-C_3H_7SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_2=CHCH_2SCH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_2H_5SCH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl (2-thenyl)allylmalonate	— 70-90 — 70-75 82 70-90 70-90 70-90 Poor 26 03	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaNH_2$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene Toluene Ethanol Toluene C_6H_5 -ether Toluene Toluene Toluene Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	125 553 017 554 203 126 553 120 912 223 913

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The halogen was not specified.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)


R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$i-C_3H_7$ (Cont.)	C_6	$n-C_3H_7C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	70-85	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	515
	$n-C_3H_7SCH_3Cl$	$n-C_3H_7SCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$n-C_4H_9SCH_3Cl$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_4H_9)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	ca. 80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	536
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(CH_3)_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	912
	$(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2Br$	$(CH_3)_2C=CHCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	73	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	47
	$CH_3CH_2C=CHCH_2Br$	$C_2H_5CH_2C(CH_3)C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223
C_6	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CO_2C_3H_7$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	672
	$ICH_2CH_2CO_2C_3H_7$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	507
	2-Chloromethylthiophene	Diethyl (isopropyl-(2-thienyl)malonate)	—	Na	—	—
	$n-C_3H_7SCH_3Cl$	$n-C_3H_7SCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	553
	$n-C_4H_9SCH_3Cl$	$n-C_3H_7SCH_2C(C_4H_9)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	70-80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
C_7	$C_2H_5CHBrCO_2C_3H_7$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223
	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CO_2C_3H_7$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223
	$i-C_3H_7CHBrCO_2C_3H_7$	None	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_3H_7)O(CO_2C_3H_7)_2$	45	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	45
C_7-C_{13}						
$C_8H_5COCH_2Br$		$ \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ H_5C-C-CO \\ \parallel \\ H_5C \end{array} $	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	160
2,5-Dimethylbenzyl chloride		$ \begin{array}{c} H_5C-CO_2C_3H_7 \\ \\ H_5C-CO_2C_3H_7 \end{array} $	67	Na	Xylene	154
$n-C_{13}H_{27}X$		Diethyl isopropyl-(2,5-dimethylbenzyl)-malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	554

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$CH_2=CHCH_2$ (Cont.)	C_6	$n-C_4H_9SCH(CH_3)_2Cl$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	553
		$n-C_4H_9SCH(CH_3)_2Cl$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
		$i-C_4H_9SCH(CH_3)_2Cl$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
		$CH_2=C(CH_3)CH(CH_2H_3)Cl$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	530
		$BrCF_3CO_2C_2H_5$	16	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	223
C_7		$(CH_3)_2CBrCO_2C_2H_5$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	554
		$n-C_4H_9SCH_2CH(CH_3)Cl$	70-75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	223
		$i-C_4H_9CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$	6	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	506
C_8		$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	—	—	—	—
		$n-C_4H_9SCH(CH_3)_2CH_2Br$	—	Na	Xylene	914
		β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902
		α -Methylbenzyl bromide	34	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	510
C_9		$H_3C_6CH=CH_2$	25	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	11
		$n-C_9H_{19}Br$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	920
$C_{10}-C_{12}$		γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902
		$n-C_{10}H_{21}Br$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	920
C_{11}		δ -Cyclohexylbutyl bromide	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902
		p - i -C ₁₁ H ₂₃ CH ₂ Cl	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	509
		$n-C_{11}H_{23}Br$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	920
		$n-C_{11}H_{23}Br$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	920

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$n-C_4H_9$ (cont.)	C_2	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125, 893
	$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	76	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	915
	$C_2H_5CH_2Br$	$CH_3SCH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	148
	$BrCH_2CH_2Br$	$BrCH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	47	Na	None	656, 129
	$(CH_3)_3CClNO_2$	$(CH_3)_3C(NO_2)C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	39	Na	Ether	556
C_4	$n-C_4H_9Br$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	74	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	142
	$n-C_4H_9I$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	141
	$sec-C_4H_9Br$	$sec-C_4H_9C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44
	$C_4H_9OCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	68	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_5 -ether	203
	$CH_3SCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_3SCH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	40-50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	541
	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2Cl$	$C_2H_5OCH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	68	Na	Ether	277
	$C_2H_5OCH_2BrCH_2Br$	$CH_2CH_2OC(C_2H_5)_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	56	Na	Ether	277
	$CH_3CHClCH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_3CHClCH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	82	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	916, 917
	$CH_2SCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_2SCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	11
C_3	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2Cl$	$n-C_4H_9SCH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2Br$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-85	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	545
	$C_2H_5CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Br$	$C_2H_5CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-85	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	545
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	78	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44
	$CH_2SCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$	$CH_2SCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2C(C_4H_9-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	553
	Cyclopentyl halide; Blethyl cyclopentyl (<i>n</i> -butyldimalonate)		—	—	—	911

2-Chloromethylthiophene (CH ₃) ₂ C(CH ₂ Br) ₂	Diethyl <i>n</i> -butyl-(2-thenyl)malonate $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_7\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— 13	Na NaOC ₂ H ₅	None Ethanol	897 918
<i>C</i> ₆ - <i>C</i> ₇ $n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{Br}$ β -Cyclopentylethyl bromide	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl <i>n</i> -butyl-(β -cyclopentylethyl)-malonate	— — 90 50-60	NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	641, 919 641 399 725
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ $p\text{-IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ <i>C</i> ₈ - <i>C</i> ₁₀ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{OH})_2\text{Br}$ β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $p\text{-IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2)$ Diethyl <i>n</i> -butyl-(β -cyclohexylethyl)-malonate	70 67 70-85 —	NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	121, 142, 143 900 545 902
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$ $\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_2$ 	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{X}^+\text{X}^-$ γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide	44 50 — —	NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	142 11 887 902
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{X}^+\text{X}^-$ $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{X}^+\text{X}^-$ δ -Cyclohexylbutyl bromide	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl <i>n</i> -butyl-(δ -cyclohexylbutyl)-malonate	35 — —	NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	142 888 902
<i>C</i> ₁₁ - <i>C</i> ₃₀ $n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{X}^+\text{X}^-$ Undecenyl bromide	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl undecenyl-(<i>n</i> -butyl)malonate	— — 70	NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H ₅ Na	Ethanol Ethanol Toluene	887 920 906, 888
$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{I}$ $n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{I}$ $n\text{-C}_{20}\text{H}_{41}\text{I}$ <i>C</i> ₂ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_{20}\text{H}_{41}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	85 90 — 74	NaOC ₂ H ₅ NaOC ₂ H _{9-n} Na NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol <i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ OH None Ethanol	135 684 532 657

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The halogen was not specified.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R' $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9$ (Cont.)	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
	$\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{BrCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\begin{array}{c} \\ \text{O} \text{---} \text{CO} \end{array}$	— 66	NaOC_2H_5 Na	Toluene C_6H_6	125 555
	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	172
C_3 $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CClNO}_2$		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{NO}_2)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— 45	NaOC_2H_5 Na	Toluene Ether	125 556
C_4 $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$		$(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	76 76 70-90	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ Toluene	642 44 126
C_5 $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$		$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{SCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— 73 70-90	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Toluene Ethanol Toluene	125, 893 657 126, 899
	$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ 2-Chloromethylthiophene	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl <i>i</i> -butyl-(2-thenyl)malonate	21 —	NaOC_2H_5 Na	Ethanol None	223 897
C_6 $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-i)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	10 13	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol	223 223
$\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{13}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{X}^\dagger$		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7-i)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Poor —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol	223 888

$\text{ClCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$ None	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl 3-methylcyclobutane-1,1-dicarboxylate	— 83	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol	888 482, 481
$\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9$	C_2 $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	Poor 95 Poor Poor —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ Ethanol $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ Toluene	148 44, 51 227 146 330 125
C_3	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_3=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— 86 84	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaNH_2	Toluene $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ C_6H_6 -ether	125 44, 51 203
C_4	$\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $(\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	$(\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	15 25 (59)§ Poor	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ $(\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ $(\text{sec-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	44 44 330
C_5	$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$ $i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$ $\text{CH}_3=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$ $\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$ $\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$ $n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{N}^+\text{X}^-$	$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}=\text{CHCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-sec})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	84 — 75 36 (53)§ — 80 — — — — — —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 — — — NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ Toluene $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$ — — — Toluene Toluene Ethanol Ethanol	44 125 447 44 561 561 561 125 125 552 552

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The halogen was not specified.

§ Here and in subsequent cases the first figure represents the conversion; the figure in parentheses represents the yield.

§§ Di-*tert*-butyl *tert*-butylmalonate was used in this experiment.





$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{X}^{\dagger}$	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_{11-n}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	887
$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{X}^{\dagger}$	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_{11-n}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	888
$n\text{-Undecenyl bromide}$	Diethyl $n\text{-undecenylmalonate}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	929
$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{X}^{\dagger}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_{11-n}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	887
$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_{11-n}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	81	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	135
C_2					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	86	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	532
$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{X}^{\dagger}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	78	NaOC_4H_9	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OH}$	35
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	45 (60)§	NaOC_2H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CO}$	890
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	C_6H_6	316
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	85-90	Na	C_6H_6	555, 316
	$\text{O} \text{---} \text{CO}$				
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	172
$\text{BrCH}=\text{CHBr}$	$\text{BrCH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	33	NaNH_2	Ether-ethanol	277
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2$	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	ca. 70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	282
	$\text{O} \text{---} \text{CO}$				
C_3					
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	718
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	125
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CINO}_2$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{NO}_2)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	48	Na	Ether	556
$\text{HC}\equiv\text{COH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CC}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	547
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	43	Na	C_6H_6	537
C_4					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70-90	NaOC_2H_5	Toluene	553
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	63	NaNH_2	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{ether}$	203
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70-85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	545
$\text{CH}_3\text{COI}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{COI}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	916
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	72	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	11


Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

† The halogen was not specified.

§ Here and in subsequent cases the first figure represents the conversion; the figure in parentheses represents the yield.

TABLE III—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$ (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)				
R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
2-Cyclopentenyl (γ -C ₃ H ₅) (Cont.)	C ₆ -C ₄	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	39	689
	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	$\text{Br}(C_3H_7)_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	10	679
	$\text{Br}(CH_2)_6\text{Br}$	$(C_3H_7)_2C(C_3H_7)_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	22	
	1,2-Dibromocyclohexane	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} C_3H_7 \quad C_3H_7 \\ \quad \\ \text{Diethyl 2-cyclohexenyl-(2-cyclopentenyl)-} \\ \text{malonate} \end{array} \right.$	53	927
	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	35	680
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	67	927
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	34	680
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9CH(C_2H_5)CH_2\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9CH(C_2H_5)CH_2C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	56	914
	C ₉ -C ₁₆	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	42	680
	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60-69	928
	Geranyl chloride	Diethyl geranyl-(2-cyclopentenyl)malonate	30	31
	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	00-09	928
	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	06-09	928
	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	04	679
	Hydnocarpyl bromide-KI	Diethyl hydnocarpyl-(2-cyclopentenyl)-malonate	30	297
	 $CH_2\text{Br}$	$\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \\ \text{Cyclopentane ring} \end{array} \right)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	36	682
	$CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	 $CH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	40	350

C_2-C_6 C_4H_9Br		$C_3H_5SC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	72	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	358
2-Cyclopentenyl chloride		Diethyl 2-cyclopentenyl-(2-thenyl)-malonate	54	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	924
2-Chloromethylthiophene		$(C_2H_5S)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	50
2-Cyclohexenyl bromide		Diethyl 2-cyclohexenyl-(2-thenyl)malonate	79	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	924
β -2-(Thienyl)ethyl chloride		Diethyl $[\beta$ -(2-thienyl)ethyl-2-thenyl-malonnate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	50
$C_4H_9CH_2Cl$		$C_4H_9CH_2C(C_2H_5S)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	50
β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide		Diethyl $[\beta$ -cyclohexylethyl-2-thenyl-malonnate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	50
C_2-C_6 CH_3-CH_2 		$(CH_3)_2C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	ca. 70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	282
$C_2H_5SCH_2Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$		$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
$C_2H_5SCH_2CH_2Cl$		$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	743
2-Chloromethylthiophene		$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70-90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	126
$n-C_6H_{13}Br$		$C_4H_9SCH_2C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	None	807
C_7-C_8		$(C_4H_9)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	641
$n-C_7H_{15}X^*$		$n-C_7H_{15}C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	887
β -Cyclopentylethyl bromide		Diethyl n -hexyl-(β -cyclopentylethyl)-malonnate	50-60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	725
β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl bromide		Diethyl n -hexyl- $[\beta$ -(2-cyclopentenyl)ethyl]-malonnate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	928
$n-C_4H_9Br$		$n-C_4H_9C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	888
β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide		Diethyl n -hexyl-(β -cyclohexylethyl)-malonnate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902
$n-C_9H_{19}X^*$		$n-C_9H_{19}C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	887
γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide		Diethyl n -hexyl-(γ -cyclohexylpropyl)-malonnate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	902


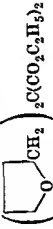

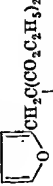




Note: References 577-1040 are on pp. 322-331.


* The halogen was not specified.

TABLE III—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
2-Cyclopentenyl (=C ₅ H ₇) (Cont.)	C ₆ -C ₉	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \\ (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \end{array} \right.$	39 10 22	NaOC ₂ H ₅ Na Na	Ethanol Xylene	680 679
	1,2-Dibromoethylhexane	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{C}_5\text{H}_7, \text{C}_6\text{H}_7 \\ \text{Diethyl 2-cyclohexenyl-(2-cyclopentenyl)-} \\ \text{malonate} \end{array} \right.$	53	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Toluene	927
	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	35	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	680
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	67	Na	Toluene	927
	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	34	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	680
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	56	Na	Xylene	914
	C ₉ -C ₁₆	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	42	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	680
	$n\text{-C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	66-69	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	928
	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{Br}$	Diethyl geranyl-(2-cyclopentenyl)malonate	30	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	31
	Geranyl chloride	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	66-69	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	928
	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	66-69	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	928
	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	64	Na	Xylene	679
	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_7)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	36	K	Toluene	287
	Hydnocarpyl bromide-KI	Diethyl hydnocarpyl-(2-cyclopentenyl)-malonate				
			30	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	682
			40	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	356
						
						
						
						

$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ $\text{HC}\equiv\text{CCH}_2\text{Br}$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CBrCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}\equiv\text{CH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CBr}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— — — —	687 687 687 687
$\text{C}_4\text{-C}_8$ $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ 1,2-Dibromocyclohexane	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $[(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ Diethyl 2-cyclohexenyl-(2-ethylbutyl)-malonate	— — — —	687 687 687 687
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{cis-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	77 Na	693
$\text{C}_1\text{-C}_7$ CH_3I $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— Na — Na — Na	162 162 162
$\text{C}_1\text{-C}_7$ CH_3I $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ 	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{SC}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	— Na — Na — Na — NaOC ₂ H ₅	162 162 162 50, 708
$\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^{\dagger}$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$ 2-Chloromethylthiophene $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ Cyclohexyl bromide Cyclohexyl bromide $\text{C}_7\text{-C}_{12}$ $n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CC}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{Cl}$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{SCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ None $n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}))\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	58 NaOC ₂ H ₅ -l — Poor 68 NaOC ₂ H ₅ — NaOC ₂ H ₅ — Na — NaOC ₂ H ₅ — — 15 NaOC ₂ H ₅ — NaOC ₂ H ₅	35 743 926 32 50, 709 32 147 149 32 719 32

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.
[†] The halogen was not specified.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)





R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$n-C_6H_{13}$ (Cont.)	$C_{10}-C_{18}$ $n-C_{10}H_{21}I$ δ -Cyclohexylbutyl bromide	$n-C_{10}H_{21}C(C_6H_{13})_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl n -hexyl-(δ -cyclohexylbutyl)-malonate	70 —	Na $NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene Ethanol	906, 888 902
$CH_3CHBr(CH_2)_4$	n -Undecenyl bromide $n-C_9H_{19}I$ $n-C_{11}H_{23}I$ None	Diethyl n -hexyl-(n -undecenyl)malonate $n-C_{10}H_{19}C(C_6H_{13})_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_{12}H_{25}C(C_6H_{13})_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl 2-methylcyclohexane-1,1-dicarboxylate	— 84 — 45	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	920 135 684 210
$C_2H_5O(CH_2)_4$ $n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)$ $Br(CH_2)_6CH(CH_3)$	$C_2H_5O(CH_2)_4Br$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ None	$[C_2H_5O(CH_2)_4]_2OCO_2C_2H_5$ $n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)C(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl 2-methylcyclohexane-1,1-dicarboxylate	78 — 72	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	646 551 210
3-Hexyl $n-C_3H_7CH(CH_3)CH_3$	CH_3X^+ $C_2H_5X^+$ $Br(CH_2)_2Br$	Diethyl methyl-(3-hexyl)malonate Diethyl ethyl-(3-hexyl)malonate $CH_2CH_2C(CH_2CH(CH_3)C_3H_7)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ 	62 76 85	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ Na	$t-C_4H_9OH$ $t-C_4H_9OH$ C_6H_6	35 35 555
$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)$	2-Chloromethylthiophene	$i-C_4H_9CH(CH_3)C(CH_2C_4H_9S)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	None	897
$(C_2H_5)_2CCH_2$	C_1-C_3 CH_3Br C_2H_5Br $Br(CH_2)_2Br$	$(C_2H_5)_2CHCH_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(C_2H_5)_2CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_2CH_2C(CH_2CH(C_2H_5)_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$  $CH_2CH_2C(CH_2CH(C_2H_5)_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$  $(C_2H_5)_2CHCH_2C(C_3H_7)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— 77 91	— $NaOC_2H_5$ Na	— Ethanol C_6H_6	687 688, 687 555
	CH_2-CH_2  $n-C_3H_7Br$	ea. 70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	282	
		—	—	—	—	687

TABLE III—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$

(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
Cyclohexyl($=C_6H_{11}$) (Cont.)	β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	Diethyl cyclohexyl-(β -cyclohexylethyl)-malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	929
	$n-C_9H_{19}Br$	$n-C_9H_{19}C(C_6H_{11})CO_2C_2H_5$	45	Na	Xylene	31
	$n-C_9H_{19}Br$	$n-C_9H_{19}C(C_6H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	32
	$n-C_{10}H_{21}Br$	$n-C_{10}H_{21}C(C_6H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	32
	Geranyl chloride	Diethyl cyclohexyl(geranyl)malonate	—	Na	Toluene	930
	$n-C_{11}H_{23}Br$	$n-C_{11}H_{23}C(C_6H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	32
	$n-C_{12}H_{25}Br$	$n-C_{12}H_{25}C(C_6H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	32
	$n-C_{12}H_{25}Br$	$C_2H_5SCH_2C(C_6H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	125
1-Cyclohexenyl ($=C_6H_9$)	$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_6H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	215
	2-Chloromethylthiophene	$C_4H_7SCH_2C(C_6H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	None	897
	Hydnocarpyl bromide-KI	Diethyl hydnoecarpyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)-malonate	58	K	Toluene	287
2-Cyclohexenyl						
Phenyl	C_1	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	90	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	169
	CH_2I	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	182
	CH_2I					
C_3						
	C_2H_5Cl	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	81	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	51
	C_2H_5Br	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	97	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	42, 755
	C_3H_7Br	$C_6H_5C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	84	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	51, 44, 227
	C_2H_5I	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2CH_3)_2$	76	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	375
	C_2H_5I	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	61	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	331, 571
	C_2H_5I	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	90	$Hg(OC_2H_5)_2$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	51, 44
	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	30	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	330, 800
	$BrCH_2CH_2Br$	$Br(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	59	NaI	Toluene	931
	$BrCH_2CH_2Br$	None	0	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	92
	$HC(CH_3)_2I$	$(C_2H_5O)_2C(C_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	26	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	92
	CH_3-CH_2-O	$CH_3CH_2C(C_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	ca. 70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	282

<i>n</i> -Undecenyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -heptyl-(<i>n</i> -undecenyl)malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	920
<i>n</i> -C ₁₆ H ₃₃ I	<i>n</i> -C ₁₆ H ₃₃ OC(C ₇ H ₁₅ - <i>n</i>)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	83	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	135
Ilydnocarpyl chloride	Diethyl <i>n</i> -heptyl-(ilydnocarpyl)malonate	60	K	Toluene	201
CH ₃ I	<i>i</i> -C ₇ H ₁₅ OC(CH ₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	72	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	718, 748
CH ₃ I	<i>i</i> -C ₇ H ₁₁ CH(CH ₃)C(CH ₃)C(CH ₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	50	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	718
2-Chloromethylthiophene	<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ CH(CH ₂ CH ₂)C(CH ₃)C ₁ H ₃ S(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	Na	None	897
<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ Br	C ₂ H ₅ O ₂ C(CH ₂) ₂ CH(CH ₃)C(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	20	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	720
C ₈ H ₉ O(CH ₂) ₂ Br	[C ₈ H ₉ O(CH ₂) ₂] ₂ C(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	206
Not stated	Diethyl ethyl-[β-(cyclopentylidene)ethyl]-malonate	70	NaOC ₂ H ₅	(C ₂ H ₅ O) ₂ CO	663
C ₃ -C ₈	C ₂ H ₅ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
C ₂ H ₅ Br	<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ Br	<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ Br	<i>n</i> -C ₂ H ₅ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ Br	Diethyl (cyclohexylmethyl)-2-thenylmalonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	50, 709
2-Chloromethylthiophene	<i>n</i> -C ₈ H ₁₇ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
<i>n</i> -C ₂ H ₅ Br	<i>n</i> -C ₇ H ₁₅ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ Br	<i>n</i> -C ₈ H ₁₇ C(C ₇ H ₁₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	32
<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ Br	Diethyl (cyclohexylethyl)-malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	929
β-Cyclohexylethyl bromide	Diethyl di-(2-methylcyclohexyl)malonate	10	Na	Toluene	147
2-Methylcyclohexyl bromide	Diethyl geranyl-(2-methylcyclohexyl)-malonate	—	Na	Toluene	147
Geranyl chloride	C ₂ H ₅ O ₂ C(CH ₃)=C(CH ₃)C(CH ₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	60	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	937
CH ₃ I	C ₈ H ₅ CH ₂ C(CH ₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	80	NaOC ₂ H ₅	C ₆ H ₆	938
C ₁	C ₈ H ₅ CH ₂ C(CH ₃)(CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅) ₂	63	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	144, 615
CH ₃ I					939

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

† The halogen was not specified.


THE ALKYLATION OF ESTERS AND NITRILES

$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	47	K	Xylene	759
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_3$	$\text{CH}_2 = \text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	749
$\beta\text{-Cyclohexylethyl}$	2-Chloromethylthiophene	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Na	None	597
$\beta\text{-Cyclohexylethyl}$	2-Chloromethylthiophene	Diethyl ($\beta\text{-cyclohexylethyl}$)-2-thienylmalonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	(C ₂ H ₅ O) ₂ CO	59
$\beta\text{-Cyclohexylideneethyl}$	$\beta\text{-Cyclohexylethyl}$ bromide	Diethyl di-($\beta\text{-cyclohexylethyl}$)malonate	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	529
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^\ddagger$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^\ddagger$	Diethyl methyl($\beta\text{-cyclohexylideneethyl}$)-malonate	60	NaOC ₂ H ₅	(C ₂ H ₅ O) ₂ CO	663
$\beta\text{-Cyclohexylideneethyl}$ halide ‡	$\beta\text{-Cyclohexylideneethyl}$ halide ‡	Diethyl ethyl($\beta\text{-cyclohexylideneethyl}$)-malonate	75	NaOC ₂ H ₅	(C ₂ H ₅ O) ₂ CO	663
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	Diethyl di-($\beta\text{-cyclohexylideneethyl}$)-malonate	65	NaOC ₂ H ₅	(C ₂ H ₅ O) ₂ CO	663
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	85	Na	Toluene	411
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	89	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	539, 118
$\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	755
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	—	374
$\text{CH}_2 = \text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2 = \text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	755
$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	88	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	755
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	755, 568
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^\ddagger$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^\ddagger$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	53	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	142
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	—	—	374
$\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	755
$\text{Cyclopentyl bromide}$	$\text{Cyclopentyl bromide}$	$\text{Cyclopentyl cyclopentyl}(\beta\text{-phenylethyl})\text{-malonate}$	70	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	755
			66	K	Toluene	919

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.
 ‡ The halogen was not specified.
 § Here and in subsequent cases the first figure represents the conversion; the figure in parentheses represents the yield.

TABLE III—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
(The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2$ (Cont.)	Cyclopentyl bromide	Diethyl cyclopentyl-(β -phenylethyl)-malonate	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	949
	2-Cyclopentenyl chloride	Diethyl (β -phenylethyl)-2-cyclopentenyl-malonate	61	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	949
	C_6-C_9	$n-C_9H_{19}O(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	374
	$n-C_4H_9O(CH_2)_2Cl$	Diethyl (β -phenylethyl)-(2-methyl-cyclopentyl)malonate	54	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	949
	2-Methylcyclopentyl bromide	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	64	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	757
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	756
	$C_6H_5CH_2Br$	Diethyl (β -phenylethyl)-(β -cyclohexylethyl)malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	755
	β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	$[C_6H_5(CH_2)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]$	62	Na	Toluene	757
	$C_6H_5(CH_2)_2Br$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	374
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Cl$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	Ethanol	757
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Cl$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	421
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$[C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]$	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	945
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2X^+$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CH_3O)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	92	$NaOC_2H_5$	—	507
	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2X^+$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CH_3O)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	763
	$BrCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$m-CH_3C_6H_4CH_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	78	—	—	763
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$p-CH_3C_6H_4CH_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	763
	CH_3I	Diethyl methyl-(2-methoxy-5-nitrobenzyl)malonate	—	—	—	511
	C_2H_5I	Diethyl ethyl-(2-methoxy-5-nitrobenzyl)malonate	100	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	511
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$p-CH_3OC_6H_4CH_2C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5$ $CH_2CH=CH_2$	—	—	—	950
	$BrCH_2CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_2C_6H_4OCH_3$	—	—	—	950

Piperonyl	C_6H_5Br $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	Diethyl ethyl(piperonyl)malonate Diethyl allyl(piperonyl)malonate	— —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	560 560
C_9 $n-C_9H_{19}$	C_2-C_{16} $CH_2=CH_2$ 	$CH_2CH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CO_2C_2H_5$ $CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CO_2C_2H_5$ Diethyl (cyclobutylmethyl)- <i>n</i> -nonylmalonate Diethyl <i>n</i> -nonyl- β -(2-cyclopentenyl)ethylmalonate	ca. 70 — — —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	282 920 947 928
γ -Cyclohexylpropyl $C_6H_5(CH_2)_3$	$n-C_{10}H_{21}I$ γ -Cyclohexylpropyl bromide $n-C_4H_9Br$ $C_6H_5(CH_2)_2Br$ $C_6H_5(CH_2)_3Br$ C_1-C_9	$n-C_{10}H_{21}I$ Diethyl di-(γ -cyclohexylpropyl)malonate $C_6H_5(CH_2)_3C(C_2H_5)_2CO_2C_2H_5$ $C_6H_5(CH_2)_3C(CH_2)_2C_6H_5(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $[C_6H_5(CH_2)_3C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]$	84 — 63 45 62	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ Na	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Toluene	135 929 142 769 768
$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3$	CH_3I C_2H_5I $n-C_3H_7I$ $C_6H_5O(CH_2)_2Br$ C_2H_5I C_2H_5Br $CH_3CCl=CHCH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3C(C_2H_5-n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $[C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]$ $C_6H_5CH_2O(CH_2)_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_6H_5CH=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $m-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	73 69 67 66 — — 93	$NaOCH_3$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ — — $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	CH_3OH Ethanol $n-C_3H_7OH$ Ethanol — Ethanol Ethanol	581 772 774 775, 374 374 755 517
$m-CH_3OC_6H_4(CH_2)_2$	Cyclopentyl bromide	Diethyl cyclopentyl- β -(<i>m</i> -methoxyphenyl)ethylmalonate	75	K	Toluene	412
$p-CH_3C_6H_4(CH_2)_2$	2-Cyclopentenyl chloride $CH_3CCl=CHCH_2Cl$	Diethyl 2-cyclopentenyl- β -(<i>m</i> -methoxyphenyl)ethylmalonate $CH_3CCl=CHCH_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(CH_2)_2C_6H_4CH_3-p$	68-70 86	K $NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene Ethanol	412 510

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The halogen was not specified.

C_{11} $n-C_{11}H_{23}$	C_2-C_7 CH_2-CH_2 $\diagup \quad \diagdown$ O	$CH_3CH_2C(C_{11}H_{23}n)CO_2C_2H_5$ $O \quad CO$	ca. 70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	282
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ Cyclobutylmethyl bromide	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_{11}H_{23}n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl (cyclobutylmethyl)- <i>n</i> -undecylmalonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	920 947
	β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl bromide	Diethyl <i>n</i> -undecyl- β -(2-cyclopentenyl)-ethylmalonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	928
	$n-C_{16}H_{33}I$ $n-C_{12}H_{25}Br$ - NaI C_6H_5Br CH_3I	$n-C_{16}H_{33}C(C_{11}H_{23}n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $n-C_{12}H_{25}CH(CH_2C_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_6H_5(CH_2)_5C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl methyl-(2-methyl-5-iso-propylbenzyl)malonate	82 50 — 76	$NaOC_2H_5$ Na $NaOC_2H_5$ Na	Ethanol Xylene Ethanol C_6H_6	135 70 755 808
	CH_3I	Diethyl methyl-(2-methyl-5-iso-propylbenzyl)malonate	76	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	418
1-Naphthylmethyl (= $C_{11}H_{13}$)	$CH_2=CHCH_2X^\ddagger$	Diethyl allyl-(1-naphthylmethyl)malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	512
2-Naphthylmethyl (= $C_{11}H_{13}$)	β -Bromomethylnaphthalene $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	Diethyl (1-naphthylmethyl)-(2-naphthylmethyl)malonate $CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_{11}H_{13})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	—	—	945
C_{12} $n-C_{12}H_{25}^{ \ddagger}$	$C_2H_5X^{ \ddagger}$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ Cyclobutylmethyl bromide β -(2-Cyclopentenyl)ethyl bromide $n-C_{16}H_{33}I$ C_2H_5Br	$n-C_{12}H_{25}C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_{12}H_{25}n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ Diethyl (cyclobutylmethyl)- <i>n</i> -dodecylmalonate Diethyl <i>n</i> -dodecyl- β -(2-cyclopentenyl)-ethylmalonate $n-C_{16}H_{33}C(C_{12}H_{25}n)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $C_6H_5(CH_2)_6C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— — — — 88 —	— $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	— Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	783 920 947 928 135 755

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The dimethyl ester was used in this experiment.

† The halogen was not specified.

‡ The order of introduction of the alkyl groups was not stated.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
β -2-Naphthylethyl ($C_{12}H_{11}$)	CH_3Br	$C_{12}H_{11}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	839
	CH_3I	$C_{12}H_{11}C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	66	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	953
	C_2H_5Br	$C_{12}H_{11}C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	67	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	510
	$CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	$C_{12}H_{11}C(CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	47	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	510
	$n-C_4H_9Br$	$C_{12}H_{11}C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	81	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	517
	$n-C_6H_{13}Br$	$C_{12}H_{11}C(C_6H_{13})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	88	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	817
	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2C(C_{12}H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	82	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	821
	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2C(C_{12}H_{11})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Xylene	514
β -2-Naphthylethyl ($\sim C_{12}H_{11}$)	CH_3I	Diethyl methyl-(2-methyl-1-naphthylmethyl)malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Toluene	
2-Methyl-1-naphthyl- methyl	$CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	Diethyl allyl-(4-methyl-1-naphthylmethyl)malonate	—	Na		
C_{13}	$CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3 = CHCH_2C(C_{13}H_{27})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	920
$n-C_{13}H_{27}$ ($C_{13}H_{27}$) CH	CH_3I	$(C_{13}H_{27})_2CHC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	>45	Na	Ether	938
	$CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	$(C_{13}H_{27})_2CHC(CH_3)CH = CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	39	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	510
	$(C_4H_9)_2CHBr$	$(C_4H_9)_2CHC(CH_3)C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	77	Na	C_6H_6	156
	$(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$	$(C_6H_5)_2CHC(CH_3)C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	22	Na	Toluene	924
	$(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$	$(C_6H_5)_2CHC(CH_3)C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	80	$BrMg$ salt*** of enolate	Ether	156, 954
	$(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$	$(C_6H_5)_2CHC(CH_3)C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	25	Na	C_6H_6	224
	$(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CHCl$	$(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CHC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	63	Na	C_6H_6	156
	$CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	Diethyl allyl-(4-fluorophenyl)malonate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	510
	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2C(C_{13}H_{27})(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	520
9-Fluorenyl β -(5-Methoxy-1-naphthyl) ($\sim C_{14}H_{13}O$)	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3COCl = CHCH_2C(C_{14}H_{13}O)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	

C_{14}	$CH_2 = CHCH_2Br$ $CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2 = CHCH_2C(C_4H_9)_2$ Diethyl allyl-(4-isopropyl-1-naphthylmethyl)malonate $C_{14}H_{22}(C_2H_5)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	— —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Toluene	920 515
	$n-C_3H_7I$		61	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	955
	$CH_3 = CHCH_2Br$	$C_{14}H_{22}(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	82	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	955
C_{15}	CH_3I	Tetraethyl α -methyl- δ -phenyl-butane- $\alpha,\alpha,\beta,\gamma$ -tetracarboxylate	75	Na	C_6H_6	207
	CH_3I	Tetraethyl α -methyl- δ -phenyl-butane- $\alpha,\alpha,\beta,\gamma$ -tetracarboxylate	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	207
$\dagger\dagger$	CH_3I	$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CH_3)CONH_2$	—	Na	C_6H_6	207
$\dagger\dagger$	CH_3I	$(C_6H_5CH_2CH(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2)$ $C_6H_5CH_2CH(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	68	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	207
	$(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$ $(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$	$(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CHCH(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CHCH(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	40 4	Na BrMg salt $\dagger\dagger\dagger$ of enolate	C_6H_6 Ether	156 156
	$(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CHCl$ $(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CHCl$	$[(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CH]_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $[(p-CH_3C_6H_4)_2CH]_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	80 88	Na BrMg salt $\dagger\dagger\dagger$ of enolate	C_6H_6 Ether	156 156
	$C_6H_5COCH_2CH(C_6H_5)CH_3I$ $C_6H_5COCHBrCH(C_6H_5)$ None low and high melting isomers	$C_6H_5COCH_2CH(C_6H_5)(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $H_5C_6CH(CH_3)CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ $\swarrow \searrow$ $CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ (both isomers)	— —	$NaOC_2H_5$ Mg(OCH $_3$) $_2$	Ethanol CH $_3$ OH	154 86, 956

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The dimethyl ester was used in this experiment.

$\dagger\dagger$ The ester alkylated in this experiment was $C_6H_5CH_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2CH(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$.

*** The bromomagnesium salt of the enolate was derived from the addition of phenylmagnesium bromide to diethyl benzylidenemalonate.

$\dagger\dagger\dagger$ Benzylidene ethyl benzylidenemalonate was used in this experiment.

+++ The bromomagnesium salt of the enolate was derived from addition of *p*-tolylmagnesium bromide to *p*-methylbenzylidenemalonate.

TABLE III—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLMALONIC ESTERS, $R'CH(CO_2R)_2$
 (The diethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
n p - $C_6H_5COCHBrCH(C_6H_5)COCHBr$ (both isomers)	None	$H_3C_6H_4CH(CH(CO_2CH_3)_2)CH(CO_2CH_3)_2$ (both isomers)	—	$KOOCCH_3$	CH_3OH	85
	None	$H_3C_6H_4CH(CH(CO_2CH_3)_2)CH(CO_2CH_3)_2$ (both isomers)	—	$Mg(OCH_3)_2$	CH_3OH	85
$C_6H_5COCHBrCH(C_6H_5NO_2-m)COCHBr$ (both isomers)	None	m - $O_2NH_4C_6H_4CH(CH(CO_2CH_3)_2)CH(CO_2CH_3)_2$ (both isomers)	100	$KOOCCH_3$	CH_3OH	85
	None	m - $O_2NH_4C_6H_4CH(CH(CO_2CH_3)_2)CH(CO_2CH_3)_2$ (both isomers)	100	$Mg(OCH_3)_2$	CH_3OH	85

$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH-CH(C_2H_5)CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Br_3 or I_3	Tetraethyl 3-ethylcyclopropane-1,1,2,2-tetracarboxylate	—	Na	Ether	87
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	C_2H_5I	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)CH(C_2H_5)-C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	87
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	Br_3	None	—	Na	Ether	87
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	None	Tetraethyl 3,3-dimethylcyclopropane-1,1,2,2-tetracarboxylate	—	NI_3	CH_3OH	87
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH-CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	CH_3I	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	221
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH-CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	72-84	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	221, 231
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CBr-CH(C_4H_9)CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	None	Tetraethyl 3-phenylcyclopropane-1,1,2,2-tetracarboxylate	—	NI_3	CH_3OH	87
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	CH_3I	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_2-C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	85	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	602
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	CH_2I_2	Tetraethyl cyclopentane-1,1,3,3-tetracarboxylate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	301, 302
C_2H_5I	C_2H_5I	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_2-CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	65	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	600
$Br(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2Br$	$Br(CH_2)_2O(CH_2)_2Br$	Tetraethyl octamethylene-oxide-4,4,7,7-tetracarboxylate	17	$Mg(OC_2H_5)_2$	Ethanol	219
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CBr(CH_2)_2CBr(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CBr(CH_2)_2CBr(CH_2)_2CBr(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Cyclobutane- <i>cis</i> -1,2-dicarboxylic acid	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	261
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	CH_3I	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	303
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	CH_2I_2	Tetraethyl cyclohexane-1,1,3,3-tetracarboxylate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	299
$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH(C_2H_5)_2$	C_2H_5I	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-C(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	303
$n-C_3H_7I$	$n-C_3H_7I$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	303
$i-C_3H_7I$	$i-C_3H_7I$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-C(C_3H_7)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	303
$i-C_4H_9I$	$i-C_4H_9I$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-C(C_4H_9)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	303
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3-C(CH_2C_6H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	303

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The structure of the product is uncertain.

TABLE V
ALKYLATION OF ALKYLIDENEMALONIC ESTERS, $R=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$

R=	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$C_2H_5CH=$	$n-C_3H_7I$	$CH_3CH=CHC(C_2H_5)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	51	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$i-C_3H_7I$	$CH_3CH=CHC(C_2H_5)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	35	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=CHC(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	76	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	215
	$n-C_4H_9I$	$CH_3CH=CHC(C_4H_9)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$(CH_3)_2SO_4$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	88	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_2H_5)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	81	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$n-C_3H_7Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_3H_7)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$i-C_3H_7I$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_3H_7)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	10	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	82	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63, 213
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Poor	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	64
$(CH_3)_2C=$	$CH_2=CClCH_2Cl$	Structure not determined	Poor	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	64
	$CH_2=CBRCH_2Br$	Structure not determined	Poor	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$n-C_4H_9I$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_4H_9)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	59	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$i-C_4H_9Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_4H_9)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	40	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	64
	$CH_3CH=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	61	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$n-C_5H_{11}Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_5H_{11})_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	50	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	63
	$i-C_5H_{11}Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_5H_{11})_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	36	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	64
	$C_6H_5CH=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=C(CH_3)C(C_6H_5)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	Poor	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	961
	CH_3I	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(CH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	C_2H_5I	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(C_2H_5)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	212
$n-C_3H_7CH=$	$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(C_2H_5)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	Na	Ether	28
	$n-C_3H_7Br$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(C_3H_7)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	55	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$i-C_3H_7Br$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(C_3H_7)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	67	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	79	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	59	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$n-C_4H_9Br$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(C_4H_9)_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	21	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	28
	$sec-C_4H_9Br$	$C_2H_5CH=CHC(C_4H_9-sec)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$				

$\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)=$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	20	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	203
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	$\text{NaOC}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}t$	<i>t</i> -C ₄ H ₉ OH	203
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	72	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	203
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	59	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	203
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	85	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	203
	$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	79	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	203
	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	76	NaNH_2	Toluene	237
	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaNH_2	Toluene	237
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	65	NaNH_2	Toluene	237
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	NaNH_2	Toluene	237
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	67	NaNH_2	Toluene	237
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}n)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	39	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	203
	CH_3I	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	93	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	88	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}n)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	86	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	86	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	92	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	215
	CH_3I	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	82	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	58	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	28
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	24	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	203
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^*$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{OC}_3\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	55	$\text{NaOC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	208

Notes: References 377-4080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The halogen was not specified.

TABLE VI
ALKYLATION OF CYANOACETIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{R}$
(The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refor- mance
I_2	Triethyl 1,2,3-tricyanocyclopropane- 1,2,3-tricarboxylate	—	Na	Ether	270
I_2	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	Na	Ether	271, 272
Cl	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	Na	Ether	962
CH_3I	$\{\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	72	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	568, 963
CH_3I	$\}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	12			
CH_3I	$\}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	185
CH_3I	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	964
CH_3I	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	964, 586
CHCl_3	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	70			965, 966,
CHCl_3					967
					964
CHI_3	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	589, 590,
CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{Na})\text{CNCH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	41	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	591
CBr_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	590, 591
CCl_3NO_2	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	590, 591
Cl_2	$\{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	28	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	39
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$	23			988
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ and $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	

C_2H_5Br	$(C_2H_5)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	93†	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	169
C_2H_5I	$C_2H_5CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	Na	Ether	962
C_2H_5I	$C_2H_5CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	89	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ether	185
C_2H_5I	$C_2H_5CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	74	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	95.963
C_2H_5I	$(C_2H_5)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	30	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	95
$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	$C_2H_5CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	249
$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	$C_2H_5CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	249
CH_3OCH_2Cl	$(C_2H_5)_2CH(CN)$	—	Na	Ether	969
CH_2ClCH_2Cl	$CH_3OCH_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	—	—	970
CH_2BrCH_2Br	$C_2H_5O_2CCH(CN)(CH_2)_3CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	>50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	309, 479
CH_2BrCH_2Br	{ Ethyl 1-cyanoecyclopropane-1-carboxylate Ethyl 2-imino-3-cyanoecyclopentane-1-carboxylate 1-carboxylate†	—	—	—	—
C_3	Ethyl 1-cyanoecyclopropane-1-carboxylate, diethyl α,α' -dicyanoadipate, and ethyl 2-imino-3-cyanoecyclopentane-1-carboxylate	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	310
$n-C_3H_7Br$	{ $n-C_3H_7CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $(n-C_3H_7)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $n-C_3H_7CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $(n-C_3H_7)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $(n-C_3H_7)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $CH_3S(CH_2)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $i-C_3H_7CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $i-C_3H_7CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $(i-C_3H_7)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $CH_2=CHCH_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	ca. 63 ca. 27 49 20 70 54 65 63 5 —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ Na	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ether	971, 972, 973 38, 963 562 288 240 568, 225, 963 962, 963

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

† The reactants were added in inverse order.

‡ When originally isolated this product was formulated as ethyl α,δ -dicyanovaleate (ref. 697). It was later identified as the cyclo-

pentane derivative indicated (ref. 712).

TABLE VI—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF CYANOACETIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{R}$
 (The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	123
$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	123
$\text{NC}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{OSO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_3\cdot p$	$[\text{NC}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]$	86	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	102
$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$ and $(\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	971
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	127
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	18	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	185
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CN})(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ and ethyl 1-cyanoocyclobutane-1-carboxylate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	309
$\text{H}_3\text{CCH}=\text{CH}_2$	$\text{H}_3\text{CCHCH}_2\text{CHCN}$ $\begin{array}{c} \\ \text{O} \\ \\ \text{CO} \end{array}$	61	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	528
C_4	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	76	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	288, 40
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	34	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	973, 975
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ and $(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	472
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_3\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	47	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	38, 963
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	$(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_3\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OH}$	40
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	$(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ and $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	288

$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{O} \diagup \end{array} \text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ Ethyl 4-cynotetrahydropyran-4-carboxylate $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CHCN}$ $\begin{array}{c} \\ \text{O}-\text{CO} \end{array}$	— 39 33 82	NaOC_2H_5 Na NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol $\text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ Ethanol Ethanol	976 130 498, 497 528
$\text{BrCH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	Ethyl 1-cyano-2-vinylcyclopropano-1-carboxylate, ethyl 2-imino-3-cyano-4-vinylcyclopentane-1-carboxylate and ethyl 2-imino-3-cyano-5-vinylcyclopentane-1-carboxylate $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_3\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCN}(\text{CN})\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	40 — —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	201 731, 974, 977 964
$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{Cl}_3\text{CCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ C_5 $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$ $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHBr}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$ $\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{I}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\{i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\}_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\{i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\}$ $\{i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\}_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{COCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $[\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]$	82 63 62 76 — 28 — 45 70 100	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol $i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OH}$ Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	185 127 127, 238 973, 978 568 39 470 167, 974 979

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

§ The isobutyl ester was used in this experiment.

|| The product also contained some of the ethyl ester.

TABLE VI—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF CYANOACETIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{R}$
 (The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
$\text{BrCH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{N}^+)\text{C} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \end{array} \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	67	Na	Ether	273
C_4					
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	127
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	69	Na	$\text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_6$	130
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	67	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	980
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	58	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	167, 981
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	62	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	185, 982
Cyclohexyl bromide	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	23	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
Cyclohexyl iodide	Ethyl cyclohexylethylcyanoacetate	62	K_2CO_3	None	89
	Ethyl cyclohexylmethylcyanoacetate	40	—	—	150, 322
	(Ethyl 2-cyclohexenyl)cyanoacetate	—	—	—	—
1,2-Dibromocyclohexano	(Ethyl di-(2-cyclohexenyl)cyanoacetate	—	—	—	—
Cyclohexene oxide	3-Cyanohexahydro-2-benzofuranono	17	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	528
$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl}$	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	325
2,4-Dinitrochlorobenzene	Ethyl (2,4-dinitrophenyl)cyanoacetate	90	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	325
Picryl chloride	Ethyl (2,4,6-trinitrophenyl)cyanoacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	325
C_7					
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	84	K_2CO_3	None	89
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	71	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128


$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7, n)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	44-50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	984
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBr}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	—	—	283
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	30	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	982
$\text{I}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	185
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Diethyl 1-cyanoocyclopentane-1,2-dicarboxylate	89	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	629
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7, i)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	44-50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	984
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OCH}_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_2\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	28	Na	None	721
Cyclohexylmethyl iodide	Ethyl (cyclohexylmethyl)cyanoacetate	51	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
2-Methylcyclohexyl bromide	Ethyl (2-methylcyclohexyl)cyanoacetate	18	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
3-Methylcyclohexyl bromide	Ethyl (3-methylcyclohexyl)cyanoacetate	32	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
4-Methylcyclohexyl bromide	Ethyl (4-methylcyclohexyl)cyanoacetate	32	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ and $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	Na	None	95
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	40	KOH	$(n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{O})_2\text{CHCH}_3$	83
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$	30 14 Poor	KOH NaOCH_3	$(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{O})_2\text{CHCH}_3$ CH_3OH	83 38
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Poor			116, 95
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	562
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Good	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128
$o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	42	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	112
$o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ and $(o\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	982
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	44	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	
C_8					
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	75	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	95	K_2CO_3	None	89
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE VI—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF CYANOACETIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{R}$
 (The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$i\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	81	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	750
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	985
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CBr}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Diethyl 2-cyano-1-methylcyclopentane-1,2-dicarboxylate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	629
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Triethyl α -cyanotricarballylate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	974
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCHBr}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{CH}_3$	Trimethyl 2-cyano-cyclopentane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate*	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	753
(low-melting form)					
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{CCHBr}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{CH}_3$	Trimethyl 2-cyano-cyclopentane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate*	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	753
(high-melting form)					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrCHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Triethyl 1-cyano-cyclopropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	175
(<i>meso</i> form)					
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrCHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Triethyl 1-cyano-cyclopropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate	85	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	175
(+, - form)					
β -Cyclohexylethyl bromide	Ethyl (β -cyclohexylethyl)cyanonacetate	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	127
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	105
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]$	62	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	185
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$[\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]$	32			
$p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	52	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128

$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	48	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	48	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	982
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	—	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	123
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	123, 124
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	106
$o\text{-NCC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	—	—	—	123
$o\text{-NCC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	Good	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	198
$o\text{-NCC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	80	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	198, 111
	95	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol-ether	185
C_9				
$n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{Br}$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	127
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrCH}_2\text{-CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	176
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	68	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	982
$o\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	45	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	471
$2,4\text{-Cl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	38	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	471
$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	49	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	288
$p\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	50	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	470
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	62	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128
1-Bromindane	20	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	127

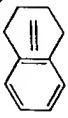
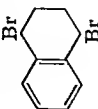
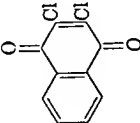
Ethyl 1-indanyloxyacetate

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

† The *n*-propyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE VI—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF CYANOACETIC ESTERS, $\text{CH}_2(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{R}$
 (The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise specified.)

Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
2,3-Dichloroindene 2,3-Dibromoindene	Ethyl chloroindenonylcyanacetate** Ethyl bromoindenonylcyanacetate** and diethyl indenone-2,3-diacyanoacetate	— —	— —	— —	986 986
C_{10} $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{Br}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBr}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$ $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$ $p\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ [$m\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $p\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ $\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ †† 	65 55 57 74 60 —	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5 —	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol —	469 787 471 128 128 150
		—	—	—	986

C_{11}					
$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	81	K_2CO_3	None	89
$m\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$[m\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]$	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	471
$p\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	$p\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128
1-Chloromethylnaphthalene	Ethyl (1-naphthylmethyl)cyanoacetate	45	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	469
C_{12}					
$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	75	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	128
$C_{16}\text{-C}_{19}$					
$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2$	90	K_2CO_3	None	89
$n\text{-C}_{18}\text{H}_{39}\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_{18}\text{H}_{39}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	75	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	127
$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CBr}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Poor	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	987

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

** The structure of the product was not determined.

†† The position of the double bond was not stated.

TABLE VII
 ALKYLATION OF BROMO-, ACETAMIDO-, AND PHENYLACETAMIDO-CYANOACETIC ESTERS, $XCH(CN)CO_2R$
 (The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

X	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
Br	None	Triethyl 1,2,3-tricyanocyclopropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate	25	Aniline	Ether	273
	None	Triethyl 1,2,3-tricyanocyclopropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate	60	Na	Ether	273
CH ₃ CONH	CH ₃ I	CH ₃ CONHC(CH ₃)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	71	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	C ₂ H ₅ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₂ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	85	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₄ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	70	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	CH ₃ S(CH ₂) ₂ Cl	CH ₃ S(CH ₂) ₂ C(NHCOCH ₃)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	60	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	241
	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₃ H ₇)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	66	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	241
	CH ₂ =CHOCH ₂ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(CH ₂ CH=CH ₂)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	82	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ I	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₄ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	78	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	<i>i</i> -C ₄ H ₉ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₄ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	65	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	241, 232
	CH ₂ =C(CH ₃)CH ₂ Cl	CH ₃ CONHC(CH ₂ C(CH ₃)=CH ₂)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	82	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	4-Chloro-methylimidazole	Ethyl α -acetamido- α -cyano- β -(4-imidazolyl)propionate	66	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	241
	hydrochloride					
	<i>n</i> -C ₃ H ₇ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₃ H ₇)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	57	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	<i>n</i> -C ₆ H ₁₃ I	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₆ H ₁₃)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	81	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	<i>n</i> -C ₄ H ₉ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₄ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	65	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ Cl	CH ₃ CONHC(CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	83	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	241
	<i>n</i> -C ₈ H ₁₇ I	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₈ H ₁₇)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	81	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232
	<i>p</i> -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ Br	<i>p</i> -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ C(NHCOCH ₃)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅ *	96	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	242
	<i>n</i> -C ₈ H ₁₇ Br	CH ₃ CONHC(C ₈ H ₁₇)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	32	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	232

γ -Phthalimidopropyl bromide	$C_8H_4O_2N(CH_2)_3C(NHCOCH_3)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5^*$	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	242
δ -Phthalimidobutyl iodide	$C_8H_4O_2N(CH_2)_4C(NHCOCH_3)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5^*$	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	242
$C_6H_5CH_2CONH$ ($=C_6H_5ON$)	$CH_3S(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3^\dagger$	ca. 76	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	243
i -C ₃ H ₇ I	i -C ₃ H ₇ C(C ₆ H ₅ ON)(CN)CO ₂ CH ₃ †	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	243
i -C ₄ H ₉ I	i -C ₄ H ₉ C(C ₆ H ₅ ON)(CN)CO ₂ CH ₃ †	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	243
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3^\dagger$	—	$NaOCH_3$	CH ₃ OH	244
$C_4H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3^\dagger$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	243
p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ Cl	p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅ ON)(CN)CO ₂ CH ₃ †	—	$NaOCH_3$	CH ₃ OH	244
p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ Cl	p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅ ON)(CN)CO ₂ CH ₃ †	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	243
p -CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ ·	p -CH ₃ C ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ ·	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	245
$C_6H_5CH_2Br$ - p	$C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3^\dagger$	poor	Na	C ₆ H ₆	245
p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ ·	p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ ·	80	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	245
$C_6H_5CH_2Br$ - p	$C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3^\dagger$	50	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	245
p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ ·	p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ C ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ ·	78	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	245
p -BrCH ₂ C ₆ H ₄ SO ₂ ·	$O_2S[C_6H_4CH_2C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3]_2^\dagger$				
$C_6H_5CH_2Br$ - p	p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ COC ₆ H ₄ CH ₂ ·				
p -CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₄ COC ₆ H ₄ ·	$C(C_6H_5ON)(CN)CO_2CH_3^\dagger$				

* The ethyl acetamidocyanacetate used contained radioactive carbon.

† The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE VIII
ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLOXANOACETIC ESTERS, $RCH(CN)CO_2R'$
(The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
C_1 CH_3	CH_3I_2	$C_2H_5O_2CC(CH_3)(CN)CH_2\cdot$ $C(CH_3)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	988
	$(CH_3)_2CBrCO_2C_2H_5$	$C_2H_5O_2CC(CH_3)_2C(CH_3)(CN)\cdot$ $CO_2C_2H_5$	ca. 100	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	989, 164
C_2 C_2H_5	$i\text{-}C_3H_7I$	$i\text{-}C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	20	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	145
C_3 $n\text{-}C_3H_7$	C_2H_5I $CH_2=CHCH_2I$	$n\text{-}C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_3H_7\cdot n)(CN)\cdot$ $CO_2C_2H_5$	— 83	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	562 971, 972
$i\text{-}C_3H_7$	C_2H_5I $n\text{-}C_3H_7Br$ $i\text{-}C_3H_7I$	$i\text{-}C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $i\text{-}C_3H_7C(C_3H_7\cdot n)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $(i\text{-}C_3H_7)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	86 76 95	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	239 240 225
C_4 $n\text{-}C_4H_9$ $i\text{-}C_4H_9$	$i\text{-}C_3H_7Br$ C_2H_5Br	$n\text{-}C_4H_9C(C_3H_7\cdot i)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $i\text{-}C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_3H_7\cdot n^*$	87 78	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_3H_7\cdot n$	Ethanol $(n\text{-}C_3H_7O)_2CO$	575 44, 51, 227
$sec\text{-}C_4H_9$	$i\text{-}C_3H_7I$ $n\text{-}C_3H_7Br$ $sec\text{-}C_4H_9Br$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$(i\text{-}C_3H_7)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $sec\text{-}C_4H_9C(C_3H_7\cdot n)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $(sec\text{-}C_4H_9)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $CH_2CH=CHCH_2\cdot$ $C(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	— 73 50 —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_3H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	975 214 575 976
$CH_3CH=CHCH_2$	CH_3I C_2H_5I $n\text{-}C_3H_7I$	$CH_3O_2CCH_2C(CH_3)(CN)CO_2CH_3$ [†] $C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $C_2H_5O_2CCH_2C(C_3H_7\cdot n)(CN)\cdot$ $CO_2C_2H_5$	— 79 —	$NaOCH_3$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	CH_3OH Ethanol Ethanol	974 980, 974 974

TABLE VIII—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONOALKYLCYANOACETIC ESTERS, $RCH(CN)CO_2R'$
 (The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refor- enco
2-Cyclohexenyl (=C ₆ H ₉) (Cont.)	C ₂ H ₅ Br-KI	C ₆ H ₉ C(C ₂ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	83-87	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	290, 991
	C ₂ H ₅ Br	C ₆ H ₉ C(C ₂ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	90§	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	169
	n-C ₃ H ₇ Br-KI	C ₆ H ₉ C(C ₂ H ₇ -n)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	62	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	290
	n-C ₄ H ₉ Br-KI	C ₆ H ₉ C(C ₄ H ₉ -n)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	73	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	290, 226
	n-C ₆ H ₁₃ Br-KI	C ₆ H ₉ C(C ₆ H ₁₃ -n)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	49	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	290
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ Cl	C ₆ H ₉ C(CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	54	KOH	CH ₃ CH(OC ₂ H ₅ -n) ₂	81, 83
	CH ₃ I	C ₆ H ₉ C(CH ₃)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	77	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	992
	ClCH ₂ CN	NCCH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	88	KOH	1-Butoxy- 2-ethoxyethane	81
	ClCH ₂ CN	NCCH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	88	KOH	CH ₃ CH(OC ₂ H ₅ -n) ₂	83
	ClCH ₂ CN	NCCH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₉)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	61	N ₂ NH ₂	Toluene	188
C ₆ H ₅	CH ₂ BrCH ₂ Br	Br(CH ₂) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	—	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	188
	Cl(CH ₂) ₂ CN	NC(CH ₂) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	63	N ₂ NH ₂	Toluene	188
	Cl(CH ₂) ₂ Br	Cl(CH ₂) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	78	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	502, 188
	ClCH ₂ CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	C ₆ H ₅ O ₂ CCCH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	81	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	993
	CH ₃ CHBrCO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	C ₆ H ₅ O ₂ CCCH(CH ₃) C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	60	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	993
	Cl(CH ₂) ₂ CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	C ₆ H ₅ O ₂ C(CH ₂) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	82	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	993
	(CH ₃) ₂ CBBrCO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	C ₆ H ₅ O ₂ CC(CH ₃) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	53	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	993
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ Cl	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	88	NaOC ₂ H ₅	Ethanol	333
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) (CH ₃) ₂ Cl	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(CH ₃)(CH ₃) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	87	Na	Ether-toluene	188
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) (CH ₃) ₂ Cl	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(CH ₃)(CH ₃) ₂ C(C ₆ H ₅)(CN)CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	76	NaNH ₂	Toluene	188

C_7	$C_2H_5O_2C(CH_2)_2CH(CH_3)CH_3I$	CH_3I	$C_2H_5O_2C(CH_2)_2CH(CH_3)C(CH_3)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	283
	$n-C_3H_7CH(CO_2C_2H_5)$	$n-C_3H_7I$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH(C_2H_5)n$	78	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	984
	$i-C_3H_7CH(CO_2C_2H_5)$	$n-C_3H_7I$	$C(C_2H_5)_2(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	82	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	984
		$i-C_3H_7I$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH(C_2H_5)i$	70	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	984
	$C_6H_5CH_2$	$C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)(CH_2)_3Cl$	$C(C_2H_5)_2(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	188
	$o-CH_3C_6H_4$	$C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)(CH_2)_3Cl$	$C(CH_3)_2(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	65	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	188
	$p-CH_3C_6H_4$	C_2H_5Br	$p-CH_3C_6H_4C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	60	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_2H_5O)_2CO$	44, 227
C_8	$i-C_6H_{13}CH(CH_3)$	$C_2H_5O(CH_2)_2I$	$C_2H_5O(CH_2)_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	80	K	Xylene	750
	$i-C_4H_9CH(CO_2C_2H_5)$	$i-C_4H_9Br$	$C_2H_5O_2CCH(C_2H_5)i$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	985
	$C_6H_5COCH_2$	CH_3I	$C_6H_5COCH_2C(CH_3)(CN)CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	123
		C_2H_5I	$C_6H_5COCH_2C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	123
		$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5COCH_2C(CH_2C_6H_5)(CN)CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	123
C_9	1-Indanyl	$n-C_3H_7I$	Ethyl 1-indanyl-(<i>n</i> -propyl)cyanacetate	41	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	217
C_{12}	$(C_6H_5)_2CH$	$(C_6H_5)_2CHCl$	$[(C_6H_5)_2CH]_2C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	—	$BrMg$ enolate	Ether	994


Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

|| The bromomagnesium enolate was obtained by the addition of phenylmagnesium bromide to ethyl benzyldienecyanoacetate.

§ The reactants were added in inverse order.

TABLE IX
ALKYLATION OF ALKYLIDENEMALONONITRILES AND ALKYLIDENECYANOACETIC ESTERS

Compound Alkylated	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$(C_2H_5)_2C=C(CN)_2$	CH_3I C_2H_5I $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ C_2H_5Br C_2H_5I $(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	$CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_3)(CN)_2$ $CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_2H_5)(CN)_2$ $CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_2CH=CH_2)(CN)_2$ $C_2H_5CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_2H_5)(CN)_2$ $C_2H_5CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_2H_5)(CN)_2$ $C_2H_5CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_2H_5)(CN)_2$	93 67 81 — — —	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	$i-C_3H_7OH$ $i-C_3H_7OH$ Ethanol $i-C_3H_7OH$ $i-C_3H_7OH$ $i-C_3H_7OH$	41 211 215 211 211 211
$n-C_3H_7C(OH)_2=C(CN)_2$	C_2H_5I	(1-Cyclohexenyl)ethylmalononitrile	63	$NaOC_2H_5$	$i-C_3H_7OH$	211
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ CH_3I	(1-Cyclohexenyl)allylmalononitrile $CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_3)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	93 65	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	215 41
$C_2H_5C(OH)_2=C(CN)_2$ $CO_2C_2H_5$	C_2H_5I $n-C_3H_7I$	$CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$ $CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_2H_5)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	55 42	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol	37 37
$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_3)CH=CH_2(CN)$ $CO_2C_2H_5$	34	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	214
$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$ $CH_2=CHCH_2Br$ $n-C_4H_9I$	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	Structure not determined* Structure not determined* $CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(C_4H_9)(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	Poor Poor 40	$NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$ $NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol Ethanol Ethanol	64 64 37
$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_3)CH=CH_2(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	30	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	64
$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_3)CH=CH_2(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	20-35	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	64
$C_4H_9CH=CHCH_2Br$	$C_4H_9CH=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3CH=C(C_2H_5)C(CH_3)CH=CH_2(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	Poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	64

$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	CH_3I	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	68	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	41	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	17	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	41
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	45	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	73	NaOC_2H_5	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{OH}$	41
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	43	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	42	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	40	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	CH_3I	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	87	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	57	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	63	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$	12	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	995

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The poor yield obtained precluded purification of product.

† The product isomerized partially on distillation.

TABLE IX—Continued
ALKYLATION OF ALKYLIDENEMALONITRILES AND ALKYLIDENECYANOACETIC ESTERS

Compound Alkylated	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refor- enco
$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CHC}=\text{C}(\text{CN}) \cdot \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \end{array}$	60	NaOC_2H_5	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	995
$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN}) \cdot \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$	CH ₃ I	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN}) \cdot$	78	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \\ n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN}) \cdot \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$	C ₃ H ₇ I	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN}) \cdot$	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	37
$\begin{array}{c} i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN}) \cdot \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$	CH ₃ I	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN}) \cdot$	79	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	41
$\begin{array}{c} i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN}) \cdot \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$	CH ₃ I	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	46	NaOCH_3	CH ₃ OH	37
$\begin{array}{c} (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CHC}(\text{CH}_3)= \\ \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{I} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) \cdot \\ \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \end{array}$	32 47	NaOC_2H_5 NaOC_2H_5	CH ₃ OH <i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	37 575
$\begin{array}{c} \text{Ethyl cyclohexyl-} \\ \text{idene} \end{array}$	CH ₃ I	Ethyl methyl-(1-cyclohexonyl)- cyanoacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	996, 997
	C ₂ H ₅ I	Ethyl ethyl-(1-cyclohexonyl)- cyanoacetate	45	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	259
	CH ₂ =CHCH ₂ Br	Ethyl allyl-(1-cyclohexonyl)- cyanoacetate	79	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	215
	n-C ₄ H ₉ I	Ethyl n-butyl-(1-cyclohexonyl)- cyanoacetate	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	259
2-Methyl-2-cyclo- pentenyl bromide		Ethyl (2-methyl-2-cyclo- pentenyl)-(1-cyclohexonyl)- cyanoacetate	52	NaOC_2H_5	<i>i</i> -C ₃ H ₇ OH	247

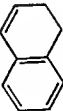
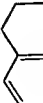
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{CHC}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	10	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	259
$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	CH_3I	$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	23	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	37
$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	CH_3I	$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	62	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	41
$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	18	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	37
	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_4$	$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	13	NaNH_2	Toluene	37
$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}[\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{CH}_2](\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5^\dagger$	20-35	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	64
$(n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	CH_3I	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	81	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	41
$(n\text{-C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	78	NaOCH_3	CH_3OH	37
	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SO}_4$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_n\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{CH}_3$	58	Na	Ether	37
Ethyl 2-methylcyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	CH_3I	Ethyl methyl-(2-methyl-1-cyclohexenyl)cyanoacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	353
Ethyl 3-methylcyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	CH_3I	Ethyl methyl-(3-methyl-1-cyclohexenyl)cyanoacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	353
Ethyl 4-methylcyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	CH_3I	Ethyl methyl-(4-methyl-1-cyclohexenyl)cyanoacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	353
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	Ethyl phenacyl-(4-methyl-1-cyclohexenyl)cyanoacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	997
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^\ddagger$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	Na	C_6H_6	74
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{X}^\ddagger$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{CN})\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	Na	C_6H_6	74

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

† The product isomerized partially on distillation.

‡ The halogen was not specified.

TABLE IX—Continued
ALKYLATION OF ALKYLIDENEMALONONITRILES AND ALKYLIDENECYANOACETIC ESTERS

Compound Alkylated	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refor- mone
Ethyl 1-indanylidono- cyanacetate	CH_3I	Ethyl methyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	Ethyl ethyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	Ethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	Ethyl isopropyl-(3-indenyl)cyan- acetate	60	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	Ethyl allyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	36	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	217
	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{I}$	Ethyl allyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	65	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	Ethyl <i>i</i> -butyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{I}$	Ethyl <i>i</i> -amyl-(3-indenyl)cyanacetate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
	CH_3I	Ethyl methyl-(2-indenyl)cyanacetate	70	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	181
Ethyl 2-indanyl- idenecyanacetate§		$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ NCCOC_2H_5 	55	NaOCH_3	C_6H_6	998
	$\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$					

§ This ester may be ethyl 2-indenylcyanacetate as designated in ref. 181.

TABLE X

ALKYLATION OF MALONONITRILE AND MONOALKYLMALONONITRILES, $RCH(CN)_2$



R	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
H	C_1					
	CH_3I	$(CH_3)_2C(CN)_2$	Poor	Dry silver salt	None	104
	CH_3I	$\{(CH_3)_2C(CN)_2\}$	ca. 14	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	104
	CH_3I	$(CH_3)_2C(CN)C(=NH)OCH_3$	55			
	$CHCl_3$	$(CH_3)_2C(CN)_2$	36	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	104, 999
C_2		$(NC)_2CHCH=C(CN)C(=NH)OC_2H_5$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	231
	C_2H_5I	$(C_2H_5)_2C(CN)_2$	32	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	104, 999
	C_2H_5I	$\{(C_2H_5)_2C(CN)C(=NH)OC_2H_5\}$	Good	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	104
		$\{(C_2H_5)_2C(CN)_2\}$	—			
	C_3-C_9					
C_2H_5 C_4H_9	$n-C_3H_7Cl$	$(n-C_3H_7)_2C(CN)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	999
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$(C_6H_5CH_2)_2C(CN)_2$	—	Na	Ether	95
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$(C_6H_5CH_2)_2C(CN)_2$	32	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	95, 999
	2,3-Dibromoisobutene	Bromoisobutylmalononitrile*	100	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	781
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CN)C(=NH)OC_2H_5$	71	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	95
C_2H_5 C_4H_9	CH_3I	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)(CN)C(=NH)OC_2H_5$	ca. 100	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	333
	$Cl(CH_2)_3Br$	$Cl(CH_2)_3C(C_6H_5)(CN)_2$	40	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	1000
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5)(CN)_2$	100	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	333
	CH_3I	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)(CN)_2$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	95
	CH_3I	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)(CN)_2$	92	Dry sodium salt	None	95
C_2H_5 C_4H_9	CH_3I	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)(CN)C(=NH)OC_2H_5$	85	Dry silver salt	Ether	95
	C_2H_5I	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CN)C(=NH)OC_2H_5$	75	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	95

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The structure of this product was not determined.

TABLE XI
ALKYLATION OF MONOCARBOXYLIC ESTERS, $\text{RCH(R')CO}_2\text{R''}$
(The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
II	II	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	5	K	Ether	100
II	II	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Poor	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	68
II	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	22	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	68
II	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	33	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	60
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	35	K	Ether	100
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	Na	Ether	240
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	504
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	17	KOH	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	81
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	38	KOH	1-Butoxy-2-ethoxyethane	81
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	30 (50)	KOH	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	83, 81
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	1001
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	1	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	178
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	20			
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	26	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	69
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	68
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	58	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	69
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	55	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	30	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	69
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	23	KOH	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	81
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	24	KOH	1-Butoxy-2-ethoxyethane	81
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	42	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	68
II	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	61	NaOC_2H_5	Ether	68

 C_6H_7	 C_6H_7		Ethyl α,α -di-(2-thienyl)- γ - (4-morpholinyl)butyrate	57	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1002
β -(1-Morpholinyl)- ethyl chloride	I_3	$CH_3O_2CC(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaC(C_6H_5)_3$	Ether	67
	CH_3I	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	—	KNH_2	Liquid NH_3	1003
	$CH_3X^†$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	Good	$NaNH_2$	Ether	62
	C_2H_5I	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	81	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	180
	C_2H_5I	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	100	KOC_2H_5	C_6H_5 -ether	1003
	$i-C_3H_7X^†$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	30	$NaNH_2$	Ether	62
	$CH_3 = CHCH_2N^†$	$CH_3 = CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$CH_3 = CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	77	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_5	1004
	$CH_3 = CHCH_2N^†$	$CH_3 = CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$CH_3 = CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	100	$NaNH_2$	Ether	62
β -(1-Morpholinyl)- ethyl chloride	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ - (4-morpholinyl)butyrate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ - (4-morpholinyl)butyrate	—	$[(C_2H_5)_2CCN]Na$	$C_6H_5-C_6H_5Cl$	93
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	None*	None*	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	564
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaC(C_6H_5)_3$	C_6H_5	67
	$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	61, 1005
β -(2-Methyl-1- pyrrolidyl)ethyl chloride		Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(2-methyl- 1-pyrrolidyl)butyrate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(2-methyl- 1-pyrrolidyl)butyrate	—	$[(C_2H_5)_2CCN]Na$	$C_6H_5-C_6H_5Cl$	93
β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride		Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)butyrate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)butyrate	80	$[(C_2H_5)_2CCN]Na$	C_6H_5	61, 93
β -(4-Morpholinyl)- propyl chloride		Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(4- morpholinyl)valerate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(4- morpholinyl)valerate	—	$[(C_2H_5)_2CCN]Na$	C_6H_5	61
γ -(1-Piperidyl)- propyl chloride		Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)valerate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)valerate	—	$[(C_2H_5)_2CCN]Na$	C_6H_5	91
β -(1-Piperidyl)- propyl chloride		Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)valerate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)valerate	—	$[(C_2H_5)_2CCN]Na$	C_6H_5	91
$C_6H_5CH_2NCO_2CH_3$		$CH_3O_2CC(C_6H_5)_2CH(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$CH_3O_2CC(C_6H_5)_2CH(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	Poor	$(C_6H_5)_3CNa$	Ether	67
β -(2-Methyl-5-ethyl- 1-piperidyl)propyl chloride		Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(2-methyl- 5-ethyl-1-piperidyl)valerate	Ethyl α,α -diphenyl- γ -(2-methyl- 5-ethyl-1-piperidyl)valerate	—	$[(C_6H_5)_2CCN]Na$	C_6H_5	91
$(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$		$(C_6H_5)_2CHC(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_2CHC(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaC(C_6H_5)_3$	Toluene	67
$(C_6H_5)_3CCl$		$(C_6H_5)_3CC(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	$(C_6H_5)_3CC(C_6H_5)_2CO_2CH_3^*$	—	$NaC(C_6H_5)_3$	Ether	67

Note: References 577-1020 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

† The halogen ester was not specified.

‡ The benzyl ester was used in this experiment.

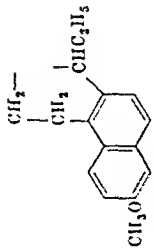
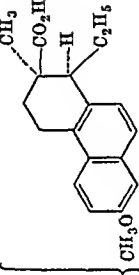
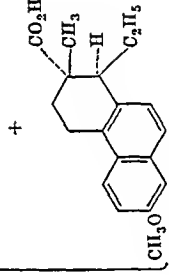
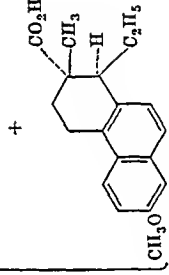
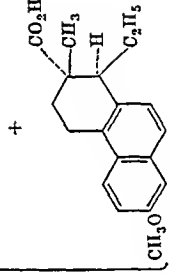
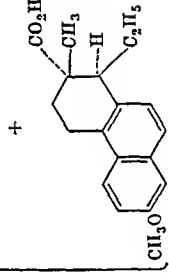
§ The allyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE XI—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MONOCARBOXYLIC ESTERS, $\text{RCH(R')CO}_2\text{R''}$

(The ethyl ester was used unless otherwise indicated.)

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
o,o' -Diphenylene		I_2	Diethyl 2,3-bis-(o,o' -diphenylene)- succinate	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol-ether	248
		I_2	Diethyl 2,3-bis-(o,o' -diphenylene)- succinate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ethanol-ether	248
		CH_3I	Ethyl 9-methylfluorene-9-carboxylate	Good	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{I}$	Ethyl 9-ethylfluorene-9-carboxylate	Good	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		$\text{Br(CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	Diethyl α,α' -bis-(o,o' -diphenylene)- adipate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ethanol	248
		$\text{CH}_3 = \text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	Ethyl 9-allylfluorene-9-carboxylate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Diethyl α -(o,o' -diphenylene)succinate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		$\text{I(CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Diethyl α -(o,o' -diphenylene)glutarate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{I}$	None	—	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		2,4-Dinitro- bromobenzene	Ethyl 9-(2',4'-dinitrophenyl)fluorene- 9-carboxylate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		β -(4-Morpholinyl)- ethyl chloride	Ethyl 9-[β -(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]- fluorene-9-carboxylate	40	$[(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CCN}]\text{Na}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	91, 93
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	Ethyl 9-benzylfluorene-9-carboxylate	85	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		β -(1-Piperidyl)- ethyl chloride	Ethyl 9-[β -(1-piperidyl)ethyl]fluorene- 9-carboxylate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ethanol-ether	93
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_2\text{Br}$	Ethyl 9-phenacylfluorene-9-carboxylate	—	KOC_2H_5	Ether	248
		CH_3I	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaNH_2	Ether	60
		$\text{CH}_2 = \text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_2 = \text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	65	NaNH_2	Ether	60
C_6H_5	p -Tolyl	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaNH_2	Ether	60
		CH_3I	$\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	NaNH_2	Ether	70
		β -(4-Morpholinyl)- ethyl chloride	$\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	77	$\text{NaOC(C}_6\text{H}_5)_3$	Ether	93
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}$	CH_3I	($n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}$) $_2\text{C(CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$) $_2$	48	$[(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CCN}]\text{Na}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	
C_6H_5	Vcratyl	CH_3I	Ethyl α -phenyl- α -veratyl- γ - (4-morpholinyl)butyrate	—	$[(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CCN}]\text{Na}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	

	CH ₃ I				
	64	NaC(C ₆ H ₅) ₃	Ether	1006	
	7				
	—	NaC(C ₆ H ₅) ₃	Ether	70	
	73	NaC(C ₆ H ₅) ₃	Ether	70	
	40	NaC(C ₆ H ₅) ₃	Ether	70	

$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$
 $n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21})_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$
 $n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21})_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3^*$

$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}$ $n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}$ CH_3I
 $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}$ $n\text{-C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}$ $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$

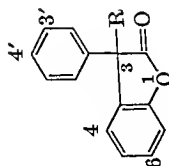
Note: References 577-1030 are on pp. 322-331.

* The methyl ester was used in this experiment.

‡ The benzyl ester was used in this experiment.

TABLE XII

ALKYLATION OF 3-ARYL-2-BENZOFURANONES TO







Substituents	Alkylating Agent	R in Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
None	I_2		—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ether	262
	CH_3I	$-CH_3$	ca. 100	KOC_2H_5	Ethanol	262
	C_2H_5I	$-C_2H_5$	85	—	—	262
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$-CH_2CH=CH_2$	80	KOC_2H_5	Ether	262
	$Br(CH_2)_3Cl$	$-(CH_2)_3Cl$	42	NaH	C_6H_6	574
	$Br(CH_2)_3CN$	$-(CH_2)_3CN$	68	NaH	C_6H_6	574, 1007, 1008
	$(CH_3)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$	$-(CH_2)_2N(CH_3)_2$	24	Na	Toluene	574
	$n-C_4H_9NH(CH_2)_2Cl$	$-(CH_2)_2NHC_4H_9$	—	Na	Toluene	574
	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$	$-(CH_2)_2N(C_2H_5)_2$	87	Na	Toluene	574, 1007, 1008
	β -(4-Morpholinyl)ethyl chloride	β -(4-Morpholinyl)ethyl	66	NaH	C_6H_6	574, 1007, 1008
	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Br$	$-(CH_2)_2N(C_2H_5)_2$	16	Na	Toluene	574

ORGANIC REACTIONS

TABLE XIV
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
		C_2	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCN}$	—	NaNH_2	Paraffin oil	122, 1013
		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	58	NaNH_2	Liquid NH_3	323
	H	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\}_2\text{CHCN}$	20	NaNH_2	Ether	53
		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCN}$	ca. 70	NaNH_2	Ether	1014
		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_2\text{H}_5\}_2\text{CN}$	23	NaNH_2		
		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\}_3\text{CHCN}$	24			
		$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$	$\{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\}_3\text{CCN}$	15			
		C_3-C_5	$(\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2)_3\text{CCN}$	87	NaNH_2	Ether	122, 1013
		$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2)_2\text{CCN}$	80-90	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	53, 122
		$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	CH_3CN	1013
		$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	CH_3CN	1013
		$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_2\text{CHCN}$	56	NaNH_2	Liquid NH_3	323
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_3\text{CHCN}$	27	NaNH_2	Ether	53, 122, 1013
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_2\text{CHCN}$	60	NaNH_2		
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_3\text{CCN}$	0	NaNH_2	Toluene	1015
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$(\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{CCN}$	80	NaNH_2	Liquid NH_3	323
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_2\text{CHCN}$	63	NaNH_2		
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_3\text{CHCN}$	20	NaNH_2	Toluene	1015
		$\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OSO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_3$	$\{\text{n-C}_4\text{H}_9\}_2\text{CHCN}$	57	NaNH_2	Toluene	1016
		$\text{n-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	$(\text{n-C}_3\text{H}_7)_3\text{CCN}$	25	NaNH_2		
		2-Bromopyridine	Di-(2-pyridyl)acetonitrile				
		C_6-C_7	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\}_2\text{CHCN}$	31	KNH_2	Liquid NH_3	323
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\}_2\text{CHCN}$	28	Na	C_6H_6	1017
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	None	—	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	1017
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	None	—	NaNH_2	Liquid NH_3	323
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\}_2\text{CHCN}$	16-38			
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\}_3\text{CHCN}$	16-49			
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	2			
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	49	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	63

TABLE XIV—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
H	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9$ (Cont.)	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ $n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n\text{CN}$ $(n\text{-C}_8\text{H}_{17})_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n\text{CN}$	— 70	NaNH_2 NaNH_2	Ether C_6H_6	59 53, 1013
H	 ($=\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{S}$)	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{S})\text{CN}$	42	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	254
H		2-Cyclopentenyl chloride	2-Thienyl-(2-cyclo- pentenyl)acetonitrile	60	NaNH_2	Toluene	187
		Cyclohexyl bromide	Cyclohexyl-(2-thienyl)- acetonitrile	48	NaNH_2	Toluene	1023
		2-Cyclohexenyl bromide	2-Thienyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)- acetonitrile	54	KOH	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OC}_4\text{H}_9)_n$	187
		2-Cyclohexenyl bromide	2-Thienyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)- acetonitrile	42	NaOCH_3	Dioxane	187
		2-Cyclohexenyl bromide	2-Thienyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)- acetonitrile	—	LiNH_2	Toluene	187
		2-Cyclohexenyl bromide	2-Thienyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)- acetonitrile	56	NaNH_2	Toluene	187
		$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	None	38	NaNH_2	Ether	171
H	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)$	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n\text{CN}$ $\left\{ (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n\text{CN} \right.$ $\left. (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_n\text{CN} \right.$	16 72	NaNH_2	Toluene	1015
H	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}_2$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	31	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
H		$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	48	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
H		$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_n\text{CN}$	40	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	254
H		$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_n\text{CN}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})\text{CN}$	— 59	NaNH_2 NaNH_2	Ether C_6H_6	59 254
H							
H							
H							
H	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}$ cyclo- C_6H_{11}						

H	1-Cyclohexenyl (=C ₆ H ₉)	CH ₂ =CHCH ₂ Br	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_9)\text{CN} \\ (\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_9)\text{CN} \end{array} \right.$	19 NaNH ₂ 40	Liquid NH ₃ -ether	171
H	C ₆ H ₅	C ₁ CH ₃ I CH ₃ I CH ₃ I CH ₃ I CH ₃ I	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CN} \end{array} \right.$	— NaOC ₂ H ₅ — Na 68-72 NaNH ₂ 66 NaNH ₂ 62 NaNH ₂	Ethanol Liquid NH ₃ None Ether Ether	256, 1024 1025 1026, 806 583 1027, 1028 105
		CH ₃ I (CH ₃) ₂ SO ₄ CH ₃ I ₂ CHCl ₃	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)- \\ \quad \alpha(=\text{NH})\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \right.$	50 NaNH ₂ 19 67 NaNH ₂ 31 NaOH — NaOC ₂ H ₅	Liquid NH ₃ -ether Ether None Ethanol	359, 992 76 231
		C ₂ C ₂ H ₅ Cl C ₂ H ₅ Br C ₂ H ₅ Br C ₂ H ₅ Br C ₂ H ₅ Br C ₂ H ₅ Br	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \end{array} \right.$	Good Poor — Na — NaNH ₂ 87 NaNH ₂	[C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(C ₂ H ₅) ₃]OH [C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(C ₂ H ₅) ₃]OH H ₂ O Liquid NH ₃ Liquid NH ₃ Ether	84 84 1025 1029 1030, 1031 1032
		C ₂ H ₅ Br C ₂ H ₅ I C ₂ H ₅ I C ₂ H ₅ I C ₂ H ₅ I C ₂ H ₅ I C ₂ H ₅ I (C ₂ H ₅) ₂ SO ₄ Cl(CH ₂) ₂ Br	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CN} \\ \text{None} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN} \\ \text{1-Phenylcyclopropane-} \\ \quad \text{1-carbonitrile} \end{array} \right.$	86 NaNH ₂ — [C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ N(C ₂ H ₅) ₃]OH Poor NaOC ₂ H ₅ — NaNH ₂ 70-80 NaNH ₂ — NaNH ₂ 65 NaNH ₂ 89 NaNH ₂ 44 NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆ H ₂ O Ethanol None Ether Ether Toluene Ether Ether	84 564 1033 1034 1035 1036 249, 359 305
		Br(CH ₂) ₂ Br Br(CH ₂) ₂ Br HO(CH ₂) ₂ Cl	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{1-Phenylcyclopropane-} \\ \quad \text{1-carbonitrile} \\ \text{1-Phenylcyclopropane-} \\ \quad \text{1-carbonitrile} \\ \text{1-Phenylcyclopropane-} \\ \quad \text{1-carbonitrile} \\ \text{HO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN} \end{array} \right.$	38 NaNH ₂ 51 NaNH ₂ 39 NaNH ₂	Ether C ₆ H ₆ Ether	306, 305 307 305

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE XIV—Continued

ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, $RCH(R')CN$

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
	C_4H_9 (Cont.)						
		$HO(CH_2)_3Cl$	None	—	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1037
		$HO(CH_2)_3Br$	None	—	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1037
		$CH_3-\underset{\text{O}}{\text{C}}-\text{CH}_3$	$HO(CH_2)_3CH(C_6H_5)CN$	20	$NaNH_2$	Liquid NH_3	1037
		C_3					
		$n-C_3H_7Br$	None	—	$NaOH$	None	270
		$n-C_3H_7Br$	$n-C_3H_7CH(C_6H_5)CN$	70-80	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1031, 359, 1034, 1035
		$n-C_3H_7Br$	$(n-C_3H_7)_2CC(C_6H_5)CN$	60	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1036
		$n-C_3H_7N^+$	$n-C_3H_7CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	Na	Liquid NH_3	1025
		$n-C_3H_7I$	$n-C_3H_7CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaOH$	None	270, 70, 1031, 566
		$i-C_3H_7Br$	$i-C_3H_7CH(C_6H_5)CN$	70-80	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1034
		$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_2=CHCH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	30	$NaNH_2$	Ether	60
		$Cl(CH_2)_3I$	1-Phenylcyclobutane-1-carbonitrile	18	Na	Ether	92
		$CH_3CHBrCH_2Br$	1-Phenyl-2-methylcyclopropane-1-carbonitrile	18	$NaNH_2$	Ether	305
		$Br(CH_2)_3Br$	1-Phenylcyclobutane-1-carbonitrile	15	$NaNH_2$	Ether	306
		$I(CH_2)_3I$	1-Phenylcyclobutane-1-carbonitrile	39	—	Ether	92
		C_4					
		$CH_3OCH_2O(CH_2)_2Cl$	$[CH_3OCH_2O(CH_2)_2]_2C(C_6H_5)CN$	61	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1038, 1039
		$n-C_4H_9Br$	$n-C_4H_9CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	None	142

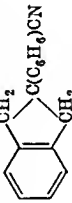
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	Ether	350
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	26	NaNH_2	Ether	560
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$(n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	66	NaNH_2	Toluene	1015
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	33	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1022
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	$[\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_2]_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	54	NaNH_2	Toluene	500
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	70-80	NaNH_2	Ether	1031, 1034,
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	$(i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	05	NaNH_2	Toluene	1030
$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$[\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2]_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	70	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1038,
					1040
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	80-90	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	178, 254,
					1041,
					1042
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CHClCH}_2\text{Cl}$	1-Phenyl-2-ethylvelopropene- 1-carbonitrile	40	NaNH_2	Ether	258
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CClCH}_2\text{Cl}$	α -Phenyl- β -isopropylacrylo- nitrile	38	NaNH_2	Ether	258
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	1-Phenylvelopentane- 1-carbonitrile	40	NaNH_2	Ether	300
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Cl}$	4-Phenyltetrahydropyran- 4-carbonitrile	49	NaNH_2	Toluene	77, 499
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	4-Phenyltetrahydrothiopyran- 4-carbonitrile	47	NaNH_2	Toluene	77, 409
$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	4-Phenylpiperidine- 4-carbonitrile	Poor	NaNH_2	Toluene	505
C_6					
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{I}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	—	NaOH	None	279
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{X}^*$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	—	Na	Liquid NH_3	1025
$\text{CH}_3(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl})_2$	$\text{CH}_3(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$	65	NaNH_2	Toluene	1037
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{Br}$	1-Phenylvelohexane- 1-carbonitrile	58	NaNH_2	Ether	307, 300
$\text{CH}_3\text{N}[(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}]_2$	1-Methyl-4-phenylpiperidine- 4-carbonitrile	00	NaNH_2	Toluene	77, 503,
					505

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The halogen was not specified.

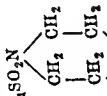
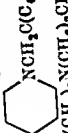
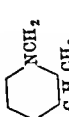
TABLE XIV—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
	C_6H_5 (Cont.)	Cyclopentyl bromide	(α -Cyclopentyl)phenyl- acetonitrile	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1043
		2-Chloropyridine	Phenyl-(2-pyridyl)acetonitrile	70	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1044
		4-Chloropyridine	Phenyl-(4-pyridyl)acetonitrile	—	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1044
C_6							77
	$n-C_6H_{13}Br$		$n-C_6H_{13}CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	KOH	Nm	279
	$n-C_6H_{13}I$		$n-C_6H_{13}CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	NaOH	None	279
	$(C_2H_5O)_2CHCH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$		$(C_2H_5O)_2CHCH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	38	$NaNH_2$	Ether	188
	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Br$		$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	74	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1007
	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$		$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	80-90	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	178, 77
	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$		$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1041
	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$		$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1045
	Cyclohexyl bromide		(α -Cyclohexyl)phenyl- acetonitrile	—	$NaNH_2$		171, 1046
			(α -Cyclohexyl)phenyl- acetonitrile	72	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	576
	Cyclohexyl bromide		(α -Cyclohexyl)phenyl- acetonitrile	65-77	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	192
	Cyclohexyl bromide		Phenyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)- acetonitrile	53	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	254
	2-Cyclohexenyl bromide		Phenyl-(3-methyl-2-pyridyl)- acetonitrile	68	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	
	2-Bromo-3-methyl- pyridine						
C_7							279
	$n-C_7H_{15}I$		$n-C_7H_{15}CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	NaOH	None	1047
	$i-C_3H_7CHBrCO_2C_2H_5$		$C_2H_5O_2CCH(C_3H_7-i)-$ $CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	505
	$CH_3N(CH_2CHClCH_3)_2$		1,3,5-Trimethyl- 4-phenylpiperidine- 4-carbonitrile	39	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	
	$CH_3N(CH_2CHClCH_3)_2$		1,3,5-Trimethyl- 4-phenylpiperidine- 4-carbonitrile	41	KNH_2	Toluene	503

$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	55	NaOH	None	34
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	50	NaOH	$(C_6H_5)_2N \cdot H_2O$	84
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	—	NaOH	$(i-C_3H_7)_2NC_2H_5 \cdot H_2O$	84
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	13	$NaOCH_3$	CH_3OH	34
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	33	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	34, 1001, 1048
$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	28	$NaOC_2H_5$	$n-C_3H_7OH$	34
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	Poor	$NaOC_2H_5$	$n-C_3H_7OH$	34
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	34	$NaNH_2$	Ether	566
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	33	$NaNH_2$	Liquid NH_3 -ether	195
$(C_6H_5CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)CN$	30	—	Ethanol	34
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	34
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(C_6H_5)CN$	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	None	564
$C_6H_5CH=C(C_6H_5)CN$	—	NaOH	None	279
$n-C_8H_{17}CH(C_6H_5)CN$	99	KNH_2	Liquid NH_3 -ether	195
$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)CH(C_6H_5)CN$	8	$NaNH_2$	Ether	306
				
$C_6H_5O(CH_2)_3Br$	63	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1049
$CH_3O(CH_2)_4CH(C_6H_5)CN$	23	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1037
Phenyl-(4-quinolyl)acetonitrile	70	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	178
Phenyl-(5-chloro-4-quinolyl)-acetonitrile	100	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	178
Phenyl-(7-chloro-4-quinolyl)-acetonitrile	90	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	178
$C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$	68	$NaNH_2$	Ether	188
$Cyclo-C_6H_{11}N(CH_2CH_2Cl)_2$	61	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	503, 505
$C_6H_5N(CH_2CH_2Cl)_2$	60	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	503, 505



Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE XIV—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
H	C_6H_5 (Cont.)	$\text{C}_{11}-\text{C}_{13}$ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl})_2$	1-Benzyl-4-phenylpiperidine-4-carbonitrile	65	NaNH_2	Toluene	505, 77, 503 1037
		3-Phthalimidopropyl bromide $p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl})_2$	None 	—	—	—	77
H	$o\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCl}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ 2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl-o})\text{CN}$ o-Chlorophenyl-(2-pyridyl)-acetonitrile	99 58 42	KNH_2 NaNH_2 NaNH_2	Liquid NH_3 -ether C_6H_6 Toluene	195 254 254
H	$p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ 2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl-p})\text{CN}$ $p\text{-Chlorophenyl-(2-pyridyl)-acetonitrile}$	66 73	NaNH_2 NaNH_2	C_6H_6 Toluene	254 254
		$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-}$ $\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl-p})\text{CN}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-}$ $\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{Cl-p})\text{CN}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{-}$ $\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Cl-3-o})\text{CN}$	64 58 43	NaNH_2 NaNH_2 NaNH_2	Toluene C_6H_6 C_6H_6	1042, 1041 1042, 1041
H	3,4-Dichlorophenyl	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	 $\text{NCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	93	NaNH_2	Toluene	1015
H		$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CN}$ $[\text{CH}_2=\text{CHO}(\text{CH}_2)_2]\text{-}$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_3\text{-o})\text{CN}$ 1-Methyl-4-(2-methoxyphenyl)-piperidine-4-carbonitrile	54 — —	NaNH_2 NaNH_2 NaNH_2	Toluene Toluene Toluene	254 1038 190
H	$o\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4$	$\text{CH}_3\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl})_2$		—	—		

ORGANIC REACTIONS

TABLE XIV—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
C_2H_5	C_2H_5 (Cont.)	$(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$	$(C_2H_5)_3CCN$	—		Ether	255
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	81		Ether	255
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	00	$LiNH_2 \cdot C_6H_{11}$	Ether	53
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	91	NaC_4H_9	C_6H_6	53, 122, 1013
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	ca. 100	$NaNH_2$		53
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	88	$NaN(C_2H_5)_2$	Ether	1050
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	—	Na	Xylene	1050
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	—	K	Ether	1050
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	—	K	C_6H_6	1031
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	—	Cu	Toluene	53
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	78	$BrNaN(C_4H_9)_2$	Ether	1013
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	80	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	53, 122
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$CH_3=CHCH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	78	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	53, 122
		$CH_3=CHCH_2I$	$n-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1050
		$(C_2H_5)_2N(C_2H_5)_2Cl$	$(C_2H_5)_2N(C_2H_5)_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	—	K	Ether	59
		$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	122
		$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_2H_5)_3CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	53, 122, 1013
		$C_6H_5CH_2Cl$	$(i-C_2H_5)_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	45	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1050
	$i-C_2H_7$	$i-C_2H_7Br$	α -Allyl- α -isopropylbutyronitrile	44	K	C_6H_6	90
C_2H_5		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	73	NaC_4H_9	C_6H_6	90
C_2H_5	$CH_3=CHCH_2$	$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	α -Allyl- α -ethylacrylonitrile	90	NaC_4H_9	Inert solvent	255
C_2H_5	$n-C_4H_9$	$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_2C(C_2H_5)_2CN$	90	$BrNaN(C_4H_9)_2$	C_6H_6 -ligroin	90
C_2H_5	$CH_3=CHCH_2$	C_2H_5I	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_3CN$	83	NaC_4H_9	Inert solvent	255
$CH_3=CHCH_2$		$CH_3=CHCH_2Cl$	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_2CN$	—	$BrNaN(C_4H_9)_2$	Ether	1050
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_3CN$	—	K	Inert solvent	255
		$CH_3=CHCH_2Br$	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_2CC(C_2H_5)_2CN$	79	$BrNaN(C_4H_9)_2$	C_6H_6	90
		$i-C_3H_7Cl$	$(CH_3=CHCH_2)_2CC(C_2H_5)_2CN$	—	NaC_4H_9		

CH_3	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	122
	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	359
	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Toluene	1023, 501
	$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrCO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ether	583
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ethanol	34
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ether	1052
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ether	1035
	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	1032, 359
	Cyclopentyl bromide	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ether	1043
	2-Chloropyridine	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Toluene	1044
	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Toluene	190
	None	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Liquid NH_3	305
	CH_3I	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ether	1018
	2-Bromopyridine	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Toluene	254
	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	359
	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Ether	1035
	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	1053
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	None	279
	2-Bromopyridine	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	Toluene	254
	$\text{Cl}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	C_6H_5	359

Note: References 577-1050 are on pp. 322-331.





† The nitrile alkylated was

TABLE XIV—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9$	C_6H_5	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}\cdot\text{HCl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CN}$	68	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	191
		$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}\cdot\text{HCl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	81	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	191
		β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -(<i>i</i> -Butyl)- α -phenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)butyronitrile	79	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	191
		β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -(<i>i</i> -Butenyl)- α -phenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)butyronitrile	75	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	191
	C_6H_5	β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -(2-Methylallyl)- α -phenyl- γ -(1- piperidyl)butyronitrile	72	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	254
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{CH}$	C_6H_5	β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	50	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2$	C_6H_5	2-Bromopyridine	$\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	78	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	C_6H_5	2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	76	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	C_6H_5	4-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	82	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
		<i>Cyclo</i> - $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	74	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
		2-Bromo-6-methyl- pyridine	α -Phenyl- α -(6-methyl-2- pyridyl)- γ -(dimethylamino)- butyronitrile	88	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	178
		4-Chloroquinoline	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	86	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	178
		4,5-Dichloroquinoline	α -Phenyl- α -(5-chloro-4- quinolyl)- γ -(dimethylamino)- butyronitrile	95	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	178
		4,7-Dichloroquinoline	α -Phenyl- α -(7-chloro-4- quinolyl)- γ -(dimethylamino)- butyronitrile	67	NaNH_2	Toluene	254
		2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	90	NaNH_2	Toluene	1023
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	$p\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$				
	<i>Cyclo</i> - C_6H_{11}		$\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$				





		CH_3 $n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$ $n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{Br}$ $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)_2\text{CN}$ $(n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21})_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CN}$ α -(2-Diethylaminoethyl)- α -(2-methoxy- 5-methylphenyl)valeronitrile	78 NaNH_2 — NaNH_2 79 NaNH_2	Toluene Toluene C_6H_6	254 289 1007, 1008
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_3$	2-Bromopyridine	2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$	41 NaNH_2	Toluene	254
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$	2-Bromopyridine	2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$	44 NaNH_2	Toluene	254
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4$	2-Bromopyridine	2-Bromopyridine	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$	80 NaNH_2	Toluene	254
$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}$ $\text{cyclo-C}_5\text{H}_9$	C_6H_5 C_6H_5	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl-HCl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CN}$ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	— NaOH 73 NaNH_2	None C_6H_6	None C_6H_6	279 191
2-Pyridyl	C_6H_5	Cyclopentyl bromide $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$ $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$ $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	— NaNH_2 85 NaNH_2 74 NaNH_2	Ether Toluene Toluene	Ether Toluene Toluene	1043 1044 254
		$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	82 NaNH_2	Toluene	Toluene	254
		$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$	92 NaNH_2	Toluene	Toluene	254
		β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride	$\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$ α -Phenyl- α -(2-pyridyl)- γ - (1-piperidyl)butyronitrile	89 NaNH_2	Toluene	Toluene	254
2-Pyridyl	$o\text{-Cl}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	33 NaNH_2	Toluene	Toluene	254
2-Pyridyl	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NCH}_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$	46 NaNH_2	Toluene	Toluene	254
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9$	C_6H_5	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2^-$ $\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CN}$	75 NaNH_2	Toluene	Toluene	77, 191
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2$	C_6H_5	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-2)\text{CN}$	— NaOH — NaNH_2	None Ether	None Ether	279 1007
	C_6H_5	Cyclohexene oxide	None γ -Diethylamino- α -(2- hydroxycyclohexyl)- α - phenylbutyronitrile	— NaOH — NaNH_2	None Ether	None Ether	279 1007
	C_6H_5	4-Chloroquinoline	$\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)(\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{N}-4)\text{CN}$	97 NaNH_2	C_6H_6	C_6H_6	178

Note: References 577-1030 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE XIV—Continued
ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield %	Base	Solvent	Reference
$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2$	C_6H_5	4,5-Dichloroquinoline	α -Phenyl- α -(5-chloro-4-quinolyl)- γ -(diethylamino)butyronitrile	98	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	178
		4,7-Dichloroquinoline	α -Phenyl- α -(7-chloro-4-quinolyl)- γ -(diethylamino)butyronitrile	91	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	178
			$C_6H_5C(CH_3)(C_6H_{11})CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	1054
		CH_3X^+	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)(C_6H_{11})CN$	94	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1004
		C_2H_5Br	$n-C_3H_7C(CH_3)(C_6H_{11})CN$	70	$NaNH_2$	Liquid NH_3	171
		$n-C_3H_7I$	$(CH_3)_2N(CH_2)_2$	72	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	101, 1055
		$(CH_3)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl \cdot HCl$	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)(C_6H_{11})CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		$(CH_3)_2NCH_2CH(CH_3)Br$	$(CH_3)_2NCH_2CH(CH_3)CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		$(CH_3)_2NCH(CH_3)CH_2Br$	$(CH_3)_2NCH(CH_3)CH_2CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1043
		Cyclopentyl bromide	Cyclopentyl-(cyclohexyl)phenyl-acetonitrile	—	$NaNH_2$	Ether	101, 1055
		$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl \cdot HCl$	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2CN$	82	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	191
		β -(1-Pyrridyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -Cyclohexyl- α -phenyl- γ -(1-pyrridyl)butyronitrile	90	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		$(C_2H_5)_2NCH(C_2H_5)Cl$	$(C_2H_5)_2NCH(C_2H_5)CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	191
		β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -Cyclohexyl- α -phenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)butyronitrile	82	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		$(C_2H_5)_2NCH(C_2H_5)CH_2Cl$	$(C_2H_5)_2NCH(C_2H_5)CH_2CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		$NCH_2CH(CH_3)Cl$	$NCH_2CH(CH_3)C(C_6H_5)(C_6H_{11})CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		δ -(4-Morpholinyl)butyl chloride	Cyclohexyl- δ -(4-morpholinyl)-butylphenylacetoneitrile	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
		$(C_2H_5)_2NCH_2C(CH_3)_2CH_2Cl$	$(C_2H_5)_2NCH_2C(CH_3)_2CH_2CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055

1-Cyclohexenyl	C_6H_5	$(n-C_4H_9)_2N(CH_2)_5Cl$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2N(CH_2)_5-$ $C(C_6H_5)(C_6H_{11})CN$ β -(Diethylaminomethyl)- (1-cyclohexenyl)phenyl- acetonitrile	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1055
	C_6H_5	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$		81	$NaNH_2$	Toluene	1056
C_6H_5	C_6H_5	I_2		100	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	204
	C_2	C_2H_5I	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_2H_5)CN$	88	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1004
	$CH(CH_2)_2Cl$		$[CH(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN]$ $[NCC(C_6H_5)_2(C_6H_5)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN]$	70	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1057
	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$		$Br(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	74-80	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1057, 91
	$CH_2=CH_2$		None	—	$NaOC_2H_5$	Ethanol	25
	$CH_2=CH_2$		$CH_2CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2$	52	$NaOC_2H_5$	C_6H_6	25
	$CH_2=CH_2$		$CH_2CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2$	57	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	25
C_3	$n-C_3H_7I$		$n-C_3H_7C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	88	KOC_4H_9-t	Xylene- <i>t</i> - C_4H_9OH	27
	$i-C_3H_7I$		$i-C_3H_7C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	72	KOC_4H_9-t	Xylene	27
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$		$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	94	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	25, 329
	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$		$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	72	KOC_4H_9-t	Xylene- <i>t</i> - C_4H_9OH	27
	$CH_3CHClCH_2Br$		$CH_3CHClCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	47	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	25
	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$		$Br(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1057
	$H_3CCH=CH_2$		$CH_2=C(C_6H_5)_2$	57	KOC_4H_9-t	<i>t</i> - C_4H_9OH	27
			H_3CCH 				
			$CH_2=C(C_6H_5)_2$				
			H_3CCH 				
			$H_3CCH=CH_2$	80	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	329

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

† The methylating agent was not specified.

TABLE XIV—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield %	Base	Solvent	Reference
(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ N(CH ₂) ₄	C ₆ H ₅ (Cont.)	4,5-Dichloroquinoline	α -Phenyl- α -(5-chloro-4-quinolyl)- γ -(diethylamino)butyronitrile	98	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	178
		4,7-Dichloroquinoline	α -Phenyl- α -(7-chloro-4-quinolyl)- γ -(diethylamino)butyronitrile	91	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1054
		CH ₃ X†	C ₆ H ₅ C(CH ₃)(C ₆ H ₁₁)CN	—	NaNH ₂	Ether	1004
		C ₂ H ₅ Br	C ₆ H ₅ C(C ₂ H ₅)(C ₆ H ₁₁)CN	94	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	171
		n-C ₃ H ₇ I	n-C ₃ H ₇ C(C ₆ H ₅)(C ₆ H ₁₁)CN	70	NaNH ₂	Liquid NH ₃	191, 1055
		(CH ₃) ₂ N(CH ₂) ₄ Cl·HCl	(CH ₃) ₂ N(CH ₂) ₄ C ₆ H ₅	72	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		(CH ₃) ₂ NCH ₂ CH(CH ₃)Br	C(CH ₃) ₂ (C ₆ H ₅)(C ₆ H ₁₁)CN	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		(CH ₃) ₂ NCH(CH ₃)CH ₂ Br	C(CH ₃) ₂ NCH ₂ CH(CH ₃)CN	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1043
		Cyclopentyl bromide	Cyclopentyl(cyclohexyl)phenylacetoneitrile	—	NaNH ₂	Ether	191, 1055
		(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ N(CH ₂) ₂ Cl·HCl	(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ N(CH ₂) ₂ C ₆ H ₅	82	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	191
		β -(1-Pyrroldyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -Cyclohexyl- α -phenyl- γ -(1-pyrroldyl)butyronitrile	90	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ NCH(C ₂ H ₅)Cl	(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ NCH(C ₂ H ₅)C ₆ H ₅	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	191
		β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α -Cyclohexyl- α -phenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)butyronitrile	82	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ Cl	(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ NCH ₂ CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		N(CH ₂) ₄ CH(CH ₃)Cl	N(CH ₂) ₄ CH(CH ₃)C ₆ H ₅	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		δ -(4-Morpholinyl)butyl chloride	Cyclohexyl- δ -(4-morpholinyl)-butylphenylacetoneitrile	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055
		(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ NCH ₂ CH(CH ₃) \cdot CH ₂ Cl	(C ₂ H ₅) ₂ NCH ₂ CH(CH ₃) \cdot CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅	—	NaNH ₂	C ₆ H ₆	1055

1055	C_6H_6	—	$NaNH_2$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2N(CH_2)_2-$ $C(C_6H_5)(C_6H_{11})CN$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$	C_6H_5	1055
1056	Toluene	31	$NaNH_2$	β -[Diethylaminomethyl]- (1-cyclohexenyl)phenyl- acetonitrile	$(C_2H_5)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$	C_6H_5	1056
264	Ethanol	100	$NaOC_2H_5$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(CN)C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	I_2	C_6H_5	264
1004	C_6H_6	88	$NaNH_2$	$(C_6H_5)_2C(C_2H_5)CN$	C_2		1004
1057	C_6H_6	70	$NaNH_2$	$[CH(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN]$ $[NCC(C_6H_5)_2(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN]$	C_2H_5I		1057
1057, 91	C_6H_6	—	$NaNH_2$	$Br(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	$Cl(CH_2)_2Cl$		1057, 91
25	Ethanol	74-80	$NaNH_2$	None	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$		25
		—	$NaOC_2H_5$		$CH_2=CH_2$		
25	C_6H_6	52	$NaOC_2H_5$	$CH_2CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2$	$CH_2=CH_2$		25
25	C_6H_6	57	$NaNH_2$	$CH_2CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2$	$CH_2=CH_2$		25
27	Xylene- <i>t</i> - C_4H_9OH	88	KOC_4H_9-t	$n-C_3H_7C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	C_3		27
27	Xylene	72	KOC_4H_9-t	$i-C_3H_7C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	$i-C_3H_7I$		27
25, 329	C_6H_6	94	$NaNH_2$	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	$CH_2=CHCH_2Cl$		25, 329
27	Xylene- <i>t</i> - C_4H_9OH	72	KOC_4H_9-t	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	$CH_2=CHCH_2Br$		27
25	C_6H_6	47	$NaNH_2$	$CH_3CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	$CH_3CHClCH_2Br$		25
1057	C_6H_6	—	$NaNH_2$	$Br(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$		1057
27	<i>t</i> - C_4H_9OH	57	KOC_4H_9-t	$CH_2=CHCH_2C(C_6H_5)_2$	CH_3CH_2Br		27
329	C_6H_6	80	$NaNH_2$	$H_3CCH=O$ $CH_2=C(NH_2)$	$H_3CCH=O$		329

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

† The methylating agent was not specified.

$\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	$\text{NCCCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{-}$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1059
$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	ca. 75	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1053
C_6					
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O})_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1060
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	70-87	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1057
β -(1-Pyrrolidyl)ethyl chloride hydrochloride	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(1-pyrrolidyl)- butyronitrile	84	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1057, 191
β -(4-Morpholinyl)ethyl chloride	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(4-morpholinyl)- butyronitrile	56	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1057
β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)- butyronitrile	73	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	91, 93, 1057
C_7					
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	75	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	1057
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Cl}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{-}$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$ and $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NCH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{-}$ $\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6 C_6H_6	1061
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	83	NaOC_2H_5	Ethanol	564
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	—	NaNH_2	Ether	61
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CN}$	99	KNH_2	Liquid NH_3 , ether	195
β -(2-Methyl-1- pyrrolidyl)ethyl chloride	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(2-methyl- 1-pyrrolidyl)butyronitrile	73	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	191
β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)- butyronitrile	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	26
1-(4-Morpholinyl)- 2-chloropropane	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(4-morpholinyl)- valeronitrile	48	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	25, 91
2-(4-Morpholinyl)propyl chloride	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(4-morpholinyl)- valeronitrile	32	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	25
	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(4-morpholinyl)- valeronitrile	30	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	
	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(4-morpholinyl)- i-valeronitrile	20	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	

Note: References 577-1050 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE XIV—Continued
 ALKYLATION OF MONONITRILES, RCH(R')CN

R	R'	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Refer- ence
C_6H_5	C_6H_5 (Cont.)	$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)Cl$	$C_6H_5CH(CH_3)C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	89	KNH_2	Liquid NH_3 -ether	195
		γ -(1-Piperidyl)propyl chloride	α,α -Diphenyl- δ -(1-piperidyl)- valeronitrile	64	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1061
		1-(1'-Piperidyl)- 2-chloropropane	α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)- valeronitrile and α,α -Diphenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)- i-valeronitrile	—	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	91, 1061, 1062
		$C_6H_5N(CH_3)(CH_2)_2Cl$	$C_6H_5N(CH_3)(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	77	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1063
		$(n-C_4H_9)_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$	$(n-C_4H_9)_2N(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	66	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1057
		$C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_2)_2Cl$ CH_3	$C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)(CH_2)_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN$	81	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1093
		$C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)-CH_2CH(CH_3)Cl$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)CH_2- \\ CH(CH_3)C(C_6H_5)_2CN \\ C_6H_5CH_2N(CH_3)CH(CH_3)- \\ CH_2C(C_6H_5)_2CN \end{array} \right.$	16 23	$NaNH_2$	C_6H_6	1063

TABLE XV
ALKYLATION OF ALKYLIDENEACETONITRILES

Compound Alkylated	Alkylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Base	Solvent	Reference
Cyclopentylidene-(2-thienyl)-acetonitrile	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	α -(1-Cyclopentenyl)- α -(2-thienyl)- γ -(dimethylamino)butyronitrile	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	193
Cyclopentylidene(phenyl)-acetonitrile	β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	α -(1-Cyclopentenyl)- α -(2-thienyl)- γ -(1-piperidyl)butyronitrile	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	193
Cyclopentylidene(phenyl)-acetonitrile	β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	α -(1-Cyclopentenyl)- α -phenyl- γ -(dimethylamino)butyronitrile	65	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	193
Cyclopentylidene-(<i>p</i> -methoxyphenyl)acetonitrile	β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Cl}$	α -(1-Cyclopentenyl)- α -phenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)butyronitrile	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	193
Cyclopentylidene-(<i>p</i> -methoxyphenyl)acetonitrile	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{I}$	α -(1-Cyclopentenyl)- α -(<i>p</i> -methoxyphenyl)- γ -(dimethylamino)-butyronitrile	—	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	171
Cyclohexylidene(phenyl)-acetonitrile	$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	<i>n</i> -Propyl-(1-cyclohexenyl)phenyl-acetonitrile	82	NaNH_2	C_6H_6	171
Cyclohexylidene(phenyl)-acetonitrile	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{I}$	Allyl-(1-cyclohexenyl)phenyl-acetonitrile	77	NaNH_2	Ethor	259
	β -(1-Piperidyl)ethyl chloride	α -(1-Cyclohexenyl)- α -phenyl- γ -(1-piperidyl)butyronitrile	92	NaOC_2H_5 NaNH_2	Ethanol Toluene	192

TABLE XVI
REDUCTIONS LEADING TO ALKYLMALEONIC ESTERS OR ACIDS

Compound Reduced	Reducing Agent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_2=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$\text{H}_2\text{—Ni}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	95	1065
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	AlH_3	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	1066
	$\text{H}_2\text{—Pd/C}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	90	340
	$\text{H}_2\text{—PdCl}_2$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	346
	$\text{H}_2\text{—Ni}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	93	1065

$C_3H_5CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Pd/C	$n-C_2H_5CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	90	340
$(CH_3)_2C=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Ni	$i-C_3H_7CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	96	340, 1068
$n-C_3H_7CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Pd/C	$n-C_4H_9CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	93-96	340
	H_2-Ni	$n-C_4H_9CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	95	1065
$C_3H_5C(CH_3)=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2^*	$C_2H_5CH(CH_3)CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	95-100	1067
$CH_2=C(CH_3)CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Pd/C	$n-C_3H_7CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	79	277
$i-C_4H_9CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Pd/C	$i-C_3H_7CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	96-97	340
Diethyl cyclopentylidenemalonate	H_2^*	Diethyl cyclopentylmalonate	95-100	1067
Diethyl 2-cyclopentenylmalonate	H_2-PtO_2	Diethyl cyclopentylmalonate	99	927
Furfurylidenemalonate	$NaHg_2$	Furfurylmalonic acid	—	355
Diethyl furfurylidenemalonate	H_2-Ni	Diethyl furfurylmalonate	96	1069, 1065
2-Thienylidenemalonate	$NaHg_2$	2-Thienylmalonic acid	85	358
Diethyl (2-pyrrolylidenemalonate)	H_2-PtO_2	Diethyl (2-pyrrolylidenemalonate)	95	1070
$CH_2=CHCH_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Ni	$n-C_3H_7C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	232
$CH_3CH=CHCH_2C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Ni	$n-C_4H_9C(NHCOCH_3)(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	442
$n-C_4H_9CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Ni	$n-C_3H_7CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	97	1065
$C_4H_9CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$NaHg_2$	$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	—	354
$C_4H_9CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	$AlHg_2$	$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	60	350, 343
$p-CH_3OC_6H_4CH=C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	H_2-Ni	$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	97	1065
Diethyl (2,5-dimethoxybenzylidene)-malonate	H_2^*	$p-CH_3OC_6H_4CH_2CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$	100	950, 360, 1071
		Diethyl (2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)malonate	—	1072
(2,3,4-Trimethylbenzylidene)malonic acid	H_2-Pd	(2,3,4-Trimethylbenzyl)malonic acid	—	361
Diethyl di-(2-cyclopentenyl)malonate	H_2-Ni	Diethyl di(cyclopentenyl)malonate	—	925
Dimethyl phenyl-(2-cyclohexenyl)malonate	H_2-PtO_2	Dimethyl phenyl(cyclohexenyl)malonate	90	534
Diethyl allyl-(β -naphthyl)malonate	H_2-Pd/C	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(β -naphthyl)malonate	82	952
Diethyl allyl-(β -phenanthryl)malonate	H_2-Pd/C	Diethyl <i>n</i> -propyl-(β -phenanthryl)malonate	98	955

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

* The catalyst employed was not stated.

TABLE XVII
REDUCTION OF THE ALKYLIDENE AND ARYLIDENE DERIVATIVES OF
CYANOACETIC ACID, CYANOACETIC ESTERS, AND MALONONITRILE

Compound Reduced	Reducing Agent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	80-85	363
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	94	363
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} = \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	AlH_3	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	63	351
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	90-93	363
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	94-96	1073, 363
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CN}) = \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	90	340
$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	98	363
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	66	364
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{C}(\text{CN})_2$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	67	277
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	90-97	340, 363
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	95	363
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	79	351
Ethyl cyclopentylidenecyanoacetate	AlH_3	Ethyl cyclopentylcyanoacetate	41-63	363
$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{COCH}_2 + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl (1,3-dimethylbutyl)cyanoacetate	84	575
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C} = \text{CHC}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	$i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	92	340
Ethyl cyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl cyclohexylcyanoacetate	84	351
Ethyl cyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	AlH_3	Ethyl cyclohexylcyanoacetate	91-98	363
Cyclohexanone + $\text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl cyclohexylcyanoacetate	71	363
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl <i>n</i> -heptylcyanoacetate	71	363
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{COCH}_2 + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl (1-methylheptyl)cyanoacetate	317	363
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{C}(\text{CH}_3) = \text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/SrCO}_3$	Ethyl (1-methylheptyl)cyanoacetate	39	363
$(n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13})_2\text{CO} + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl [1-(<i>n</i> -propyl)butyl]cyanoacetate	73-81	363
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{COCH}_2 + \text{CH}_3(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{H}_2 - \text{Pd/C}$	Ethyl (1-methylheptyl)cyanoacetate		

Ethyl 2-methylcyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	AlHg ₂	—	353
Ethyl 3-methylcyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	AlHg ₂	83	352
Ethyl 4-methylcyclohexylidenecyanoacetate	AlHg ₂	87	352
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CN)CO_2H$	NaHg ₂	ca. 85	357
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	NaHg ₂	86	993
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	63	363, 364
$o-HOC_6H_4CH_2CH(CN)CO_2H$	NaHg ₂	ca. 85	357
$m-HOC_6H_4CH_2CH(CN)CO_2H$	NaHg ₂	ca. 85	357
2,4-Dihydroxybenzylcyanooacetic acid	NaHg ₂	ca. 85	357
Ethyl cycloheptylcyanooacetate	AlHg ₂	72	351
<i>p</i> -Methoxybenzylcyanooacetic acid	NaHg ₂	ca. 85	357
(3,4-Methylenedioxybenzyl)cyanooacetic acid	NaHg ₂	ca. 85	357
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	94	340
Ethyl 1-indanylcyanooacetate	H ₂ —Pd/C	51	217
$(C_2H_5O_2C)CH(CH_2)_3CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	39	362
$(C_2H_5O_2C)C(C_2H_5)(CH_2)_3CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	85	362
$(C_2H_5O_2C)C(OCOC_2H_5)(CH_2)_3CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	35	362
$CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	27	362
$(C_2H_5O_2C)C(NHCOCH_3)(CH_2)_3CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	60	340
$o-C_6H_4CH_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C	32	362
$(C_2H_5O_2C)C(C_{10}H_{21-n})(CH_2)_3CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	H ₂ —Pd/C		

Note: References 577–1080 are on pp. 322–331.

TABLE XVIII
ADDITION OF GRIGNARD REAGENTS TO ALKYLIDENEMALONIC ESTERS

Alkylidene Ester	Grignard Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgI}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	37	157
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	31	157
		$[n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]$	40	367
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CCHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	20	
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	40	367
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	60	367
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{MgCl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	954	954, 156
	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{MgI}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CCHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	82	1074
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$	$n\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	—	
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	23	829
	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{MgBr}$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	
	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{MgBr}$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	74	829
	$\alpha\text{-Naphthylmagnesium bromide}$	$\alpha\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	1074
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$	$n\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	156
	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{MgBr}$	$(p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	90	
	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{MgBr}$	$(p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	32	829

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.


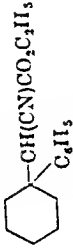
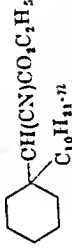

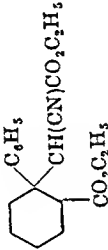
TABLE XIX
ADDITION OF GRIGNARD REAGENTS TO ALKYLIDENEGYANOACETIC ACIDS
AND ESTERS AND TO ALKYLIDENEMALONONITRILES

Alkylidene Derivative	Grignard Reagent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})(\text{CO}_2\text{H})$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	41	367
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	60	367
	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{MgCl}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	68	367
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	17	367
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{CN})(\text{CO}_2\text{K})$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgBr}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$	30	367

$(CH_3)_2C=C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	$C_6H_5CH_2MgCl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)_3CH_3CN$	33	367
	CH_3MgI	$(CH_3)_3CCH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	75	159
	$n-C_4H_9MgBr$	$n-C_4H_9C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	42	159
	$n-C_4H_9MgBr$	$n-C_4H_9C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	40	367
	C_6H_5MgBr	$(CH_3)_2CHCH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	15	367, 159
	C_6H_5MgBr	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	63	367
	$C_6H_5CH_2MgCl$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	85	159
	$C_6H_5CH_2MgBr$	$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	49	159
	CH_3MgI	$C_6H_5C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	41	159
$C_2H_5C(CH_3)=C(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	$n-C_3H_7MgBr$	$n-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	27-44	368, 1075
	$i-C_4H_9MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	31-44	1075
	$i-C_4H_9MgBr$	$i-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	39	1075
	$n-C_4H_9MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	20	368, 1075
	$n-C_4H_9MgBr$	$n-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	42-73	368, 1075
	$i-C_4H_9MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	10-32	368, 1075
	$sec-C_4H_9MgBr$	$i-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	34	368, 1075
	$i-C_4H_9MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	54	1075
	$sec-C_4H_9MgBr$	$sec-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	8	1075
	$i-C_4H_9MgCl$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	40	1075
	$n-C_3H_7MgBr$	$i-C_4H_9C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	3	1075
	$n-C_3H_7MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	63	1075
	$n-C_3H_7MgBr$	$n-C_3H_7C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	49	1075
	$n-C_6H_{11}MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	22	1075
	C_4H_9MgBr	$n-C_6H_{11}C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	45	1075
	$p-ClC_6H_4MgBr$	$(C_2H_5)CH(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	24	367
	$C_6H_5CH_2MgCl$	$C_6H_5C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	79	367
	$n-C_4H_9MgBr$	$p-ClC_6H_4C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	73	367
		$C_6H_5CH_2C(C_2H_5)(CH_3)CH(CN)CO_2C_2H_5$	88	367
		$n-C_4H_9C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)_2$	35	367
		$(CH_3)_2CHCH(CN)_2$	19	367
		$C_6H_5C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)_2$	6	367
		$C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)_2CH(CN)_2$	76	367

Note: References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE XIX—Continued
ADDITION OF GRIGNARD REAGENTS TO ALKYLIDENECYANOACETIC ACIDS
AND ESTERS AND TO ALKYLIDENEMALONONITRILES

1,3-bis(cyclohexylidene)- cyanoacetate	CH_3MgI		45	1076
	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$		44	1077
	$n\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{MgBr}$		14	1076
$\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	CH_3MgI	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	994
	$i\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{MgBr}$	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	994
	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$	$(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)_2\text{CHCH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	994
	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CMgBr}$	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CCH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	994
	$\alpha\text{-Naphthylmagnesium bromide}$	$\alpha\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9)\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	—	994
	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{MgBr}$		14	1077

Note. References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

TABLE XX

ARYLATION OF DERIVATIVES OF MESOXALIC AND TARTRONIC ACIDS

Compound Arylated	Arylating Agent	Product	Yield, %	Catalyst	Solvent	Reference
$\text{OC}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	C_6H_6	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	33	H_2SO_4	C_6H_6	278, 180, 1078
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{OH}$		$(p\text{-HOC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	HCl	None	278

$\text{CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$	$(p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	H_2SO_4	Toluene	1079, 278, 1078
$\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$	$(p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	H_2SO_4	Anisole	1080
$\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$	$(p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	SnCl_4	Anisole	371
$\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$	$(p\text{-CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4)_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	H_2SO_4	Anisole	1080
$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OH}$	Diethyl di-(4-hydroxy-3-methylphenyl)malonate	HCl	None	278
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_3$	Diethyl (2,5-dimethylphenyl)-tartarate	51-57	p -Xylene	370
$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_3$	Diethyl di-(3,4-dimethylphenyl)-malonate	H_2SO_4	o -Xylene	1079
$o\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_3$	Dimethyl di-(3,4-dimethylphenyl)-malonate	H_2SO_4	o -Xylene	1079
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$	Dimethyl di-(p -ethoxyphenyl)-malonate	H_2SO_4	Phenetole	1080
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$	Diethyl di-(p -ethoxyphenyl)-malonate	H_2SO_4	Phenetole	1080
α -Naphthylmagnesium bromide	$\alpha\text{-C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{C}(\text{OCOC}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	Ether-toluene	372
9-Phenanthryl-magnesium bromide	$9\text{-C}_{14}\text{H}_9\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	46	Ether-toluene	372
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	H_2SO_4	Toluene	1079
$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$p\text{-CH}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	H_2SO_4	C_6H_6	1079
$p\text{-(CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$[p\text{-(CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	80	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	373
$p\text{-(CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	$p\text{-(C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{-}p)(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	373
$p\text{-(CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	$[p\text{-(CH}_3)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	—	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	373
$p\text{-(C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$p\text{-(C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{-}p)(\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$	—	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	373
$p\text{-(C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{-C}(\text{OH})(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	$[p\text{-(C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4]_2\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	—	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2$	373

Note : References 577-1080 are on pp. 322-331.

REFERENCES TO TABLES I-XX

- 577 Conrad and Bischoff, *Ann.*, **204**, 143 (1880).
 578 Bischoff and Rach, *Ann.*, **234**, 54 (1886).
 579 Meyer and Bock, *Ann.*, **347**, 93 (1906).
 580 Züblin, *Ber.*, **12**, 1112 (1879).
 581 Funk, *Ber.*, **26**, 2568 (1893).
 582 Olivier, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **55**, 1027 (1936).
 583 Crawford, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **56**, 139 (1934).
 584 Conrad and Guthzeit, *Ber.*, **15**, 2841 (1882).
 585 Guthzeit and Dressel, *Ber.*, **22**, 1413 (1880).
 586 Urushibara, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Japan*, **2**, 26 (1927).
 587 Coutelle, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **73**, 49 (1906).
 588 Zelinsky and Doroschewsky, *Ber.*, **27**, 3374 (1894).
 589 Dimroth, *Ber.*, **35**, 2881 (1902).
 590 Ingold and Powell, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **119**, 1222 (1921).
 591 Hunter, *Chem. News*, **131**, 131 (1925).
 592 Conrad, *Ann.*, **204**, 127 (1880).
 593 Gault and Salomon, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [10] **2**, 133 (1924).
 594 Conrad, *Ber.*, **12**, 749 (1879).
 595 Schey, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **16**, 356 (1897).
 596 Meunier, *Compt. rend.*, **137**, 714 (1903).
 597 Daimler, *Ann.*, **249**, 173 (1888).
 598 Michael, *Am. Chem. J.*, **25**, 419 (1901).
 599 Joukowsky, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **39**, 446 (1889).
 600 Lean and Lees, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 1062 (1897).
 601 Röder, *Ann.*, **227**, 13 (1885).
 602 Noyes and Kyriakides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **32**, 1057 (1910).
 603 Perkin, *Ber.*, **19**, 2038 (1886).
 604 Perkin, *Ber.*, **17**, 54 (1884).
 605 Infesta, Martin, Guzmán, and Alberola, *Anales real soc. españ. fís. y quim. Madrid*,
47B, 453 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 3953 (1952)].
 606 Bennett, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **127**, 1277 (1925).
 607 Leuchs and Gieseler, *Ber.*, **45**, 2114 (1912).
 608 Ruhemann, *Ber.*, **29**, 1016 (1896).
 609 Kleber, *Ann.*, **246**, 97 (1888).
 610 Reñicha and Protiva, *Chem. Listy*, **44**, 232 (1950) [*C. A.*, **45**, 8017 (1951)].
 611 Backer and Toxopéus, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **45**, 895 (1926).
 612 Mishin and Poloehanskaya, *Colloid J. (U.S.S.R.)*, **2**, 317 (1936) [*C. A.*, **30**, 6261 (1936)].
 613 Stiassny, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **12**, 589 (1891).
 614 Fürth, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **9**, 308 (1888).
 615 Conrad and Bischoff, *Ber.*, **13**, 595 (1880).
 616 Linstead and Rydon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1933**, 580.
 617 Shonle, U.S. pat. 1,842,293 [*C. A.*, **26**, 1617 (1932)].
 618 Böeseken and Mass Geesteranus, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **51**, 551 (1932).
 619 Conrad and Bischoff, *Ann.*, **204**, 166 (1880).
 620 Matweeff, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **39**, 451 (1889).
 621 Hill and Fischer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **44**, 2582 (1922).
 622 Favorskaya and Yakovlev, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **22**, 122 (1952) [*C. A.*, **46**, 11119 (1952)].
 623 Fischer and Bergmann, *Ann.*, **398**, 96 (1913).
 624 Venus-Danilova, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **8**, 477 (1938) [*C. A.*, **32**, 7897 (1938)].
 625 Mariella and Raube, *Bol. col. quim. Puerto Rico*, **8**, 24 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 4491 (1952)].
 626 Marburg, *Ber.*, **28**, 8 (1895).

- ⁶²⁷ Willstätter and Ettlinger, *Ann.*, **326**, 91 (1903).
- ⁶²⁸ Willstätter, *Ber.*, **33**, 1160 (1900).
- ⁶²⁹ Dutta, *Science and Culture India*, **5**, 560 (1940) [*C. A.*, **34**, 6933 (1940)].
- ⁶³⁰ Baeyer, *Ann.*, **278**, 88 (1893).
- ⁶³¹ Perkin, *Ber.*, **18**, 3246 (1885).
- ⁶³² Curtius and Grandel, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **94**, 339 (1917).
- ⁶³³ Perkin, *Ber.*, **16**, 1787 (1883).
- ⁶³⁴ Gault and Salomon, *Compt. rend.*, **174**, 754 (1922).
- ⁶³⁵ Bischoff, *Ber.*, **29**, 966 (1896).
- ⁶³⁶ Hudlický, *Chem. Listy*, **40**, 125 (1946) [*C. A.*, **45**, 560 (1951)].
- ⁶³⁷ Bua and Tibaldi, *Farm. sci. e tec. Pavia*, **6**, 448 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 8004 (1952)].
- ⁶³⁸ Perkin and Simonsen, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **91**, 840 (1907).
- ⁶³⁹ Perkin and Simonsen, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **91**, 816 (1907).
- ⁶⁴⁰ Adams and Marvel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **42**, 310 (1920).
- ⁶⁴¹ Armendt and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 1289 (1930).
- ⁶⁴² Bentley and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 45 (1898).
- ⁶⁴³ Stållberg-Stenhagen, *Arkiv Kemi, Mineral. Geol.*, **A19**, No. 28, 9 (1945) [*C. A.*, **41**, 1604 (1947)].
- ⁶⁴⁴ Chichibabin and Katznolson, *Bull. acad. sci., U.R.S.S., Classe sci. math. nat.*, **1933**, 267 [*C. A.*, **27**, 3698 (1933)].
- ⁶⁴⁵ Katznolson and Kondakova, *Compt. rend. acad. sci. U.R.S.S. [N.S.]*, **2**, 21 (1934) [*C. A.*, **28**, 5042 (1934)].
- ⁶⁴⁶ Prelog and Božičević, *Ber.*, **72**, 1103 (1939).
- ⁶⁴⁷ Linstead and Rydon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1934**, 1095.
- ⁶⁴⁸ Eccott and Linstead, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1929**, 2153.
- ⁶⁴⁹ Arvin and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 1983 (1928).
- ⁶⁵⁰ Stauss, *Ber.*, **27**, 1228 (1894).
- ⁶⁵¹ Holferich and Speidel, *Ber.*, **54**, 2634 (1921).
- ⁶⁵² Tatevosyan and Tuteryan, *Bull. Acad. Sci. Armenian U.S.S.R.*, **1944**, No. 5, 29 [*C. A.*, **40**, 3404 (1946)].
- ⁶⁵³ Michael, *Ber.*, **38**, 3217 (1905).
- ⁶⁵⁴ Paal, *Ber.*, **39**, 1436 (1906).
- ⁶⁵⁵ Bischoff, *Ann.*, **214**, 38 (1882).
- ⁶⁵⁶ Franke, Kroupa, Schweitzer, Winischofer, Klein-Lohr, Just, Hackl, Reyhor, and Bader, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **69**, 167 (1936).
- ⁶⁵⁷ Curtius, Sieber, Nadenheim, Hambsch, and Ritter, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **125**, 152 (1930).
- ⁶⁵⁸ Paal and Hoffmann, *Ber.*, **23**, 1495 (1890).
- ⁶⁵⁹ Dewael and Weckering, *Bull. soc. chim. Belg.*, **33**, 495 (1924) [*C. A.*, **19**, 463 (1925)].
- ⁶⁶⁰ Bergmann and Sprinzak, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **20**, 590 (1937).
- ⁶⁶¹ Gaubert, Linstead, and Rydon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 1971.
- ⁶⁶² Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **27**, 127 (1944).
- ⁶⁶³ Allais and Mathiou, *Ann. pharm. franç.*, **9**, 275 (1951) [*C. A.*, **45**, 10499 (1951)].
- ⁶⁶⁴ Bohrens, Corse, Huff, Jones, Soper, and Whitehead, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **175**, 771 (1948).
- ⁶⁶⁵ Colman and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **53**, 185 (1888).
- ⁶⁶⁶ Staudinger, Kreis, and Schilt, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **5**, 743 (1922).
- ⁶⁶⁷ Ssolonina, *J. Russ. Phys. Chem. Soc.*, **33**, 734 (1902) (*Chem. Zentr.*, **1902**, I, 629).
- ⁶⁶⁸ Karrer, Keller, and Usteri, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **27**, 237 (1944).
- ⁶⁶⁹ Bischoff, *Ann.*, **214**, 53 (1882).
- ⁶⁷⁰ Emery, *Ber.*, **24**, 282 (1891).
- ⁶⁷¹ Alekseeva and Mezhev, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **22**, 1813 (1952) [*C. A.*, **47**, 5357 (1953)].
- ⁶⁷² Heinko and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 1506 (1896).
- ⁶⁷³ Conrad and Guthzeit, *Ber.*, **17**, 1185 (1884).
- ⁶⁷⁴ Goldshmiodt and Knöpfer, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **17**, 506 (1896).
- ⁶⁷⁵ Bischoff, *Ber.*, **29**, 1276 (1896).
- ⁶⁷⁶ Verwoy, *Ber.*, **29**, 1996 (1896).

- 677 Ipatieff, Germain, and Pines, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1951**, 259.
 678 von Braun, Münch, and Deusser, *Ann.*, **465**, 52 (1928).
 679 Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **10**, 477 (1943).
 680 Arvin and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **49**, 2040 (1927).
 681 Moffett, *Org. Syntheses*, **32**, 52 (1952).
 682 Barger, Robinson, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 718.
 683 Schudel and Rice, U.S. pat. 2,522,906 [*C. A.*, **45**, 6223 (1951)].
 684 Chargaff, *Ber.*, **65**, 745 (1932).
 685 Asano and Yamakawa, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **70**, 474 (1950) [*C. A.*, **45**, 5617 (1951)].
 686 Fieser, Berliner, Bondhus, Chang, Dauben, Ettlinger, Fawaz, Fields, Hoidolberger, Heymann, Vaughan, Wilson, Wilson, Wu, Löffler, Hamlin, Matson, Moore, Moore, and Zaugg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 3174 (1948).
 687 Motti, *Anesthésie et analgésie*, **2**, 52 (1936) [*C. A.*, **31**, 3010 (1937)].
 688 Fourneau and Matti, *J. pharm. chim.*, [8] **14**, 513 (1931) [*C. A.*, **26**, 3073 (1932).
 689 Strukov, *Zhur. Obshecl Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **22**, 521 (1952) [*C. A.*, **47**, 2755 (1953)].
 690 Whitmore, Jones, and Noll, U.S. pat. 2,161,213 [*C. A.*, **33**, 7313 (1930)].
 691 Letsinger and Schnizer, *J. Org. Chem.*, **16**, 704 (1951).
 692 Howton and Davis, *J. Org. Chem.*, **16**, 1405 (1951).
 693 Stoll and Bolle, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **21**, 1547 (1938).
 694 Pudovik and Arbuzov, *Bull. acad. sci. U.R.S.S., Classe sci. chim.*, **1947**, 501 [*C. A.*, **42**, 1887 (1948)].
 695 Newman and Wotiz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 1292 (1949).
 696 Freer and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **53**, 202 (1888).
 697 Ipatiew, *J. Russ. Phys. Chem. Soc.*, **31**, 349 (1899) (*Chem. Zentr.*, **1899** II, 25).
 698 Cheney and Pioning, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 2213 (1945).
 699 Mannich and Margotte, *Ber.*, **68**, 273 (1935).
 700 Cason, Wallcave, and Whitside, *J. Org. Chem.*, **14**, 37 (1949).
 701 Barnstein, *Ann.*, **242**, 126 (1887).
 702 Leukart, *Ber.*, **18**, 2344 (1885).
 703 Buchner and Witter, *Ann.*, **284**, 225 (1895).
 704 Hiers and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **48**, 2385 (1926).
 705 Ishivata and Nozaki, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **71**, 1261 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 5590 (1952)].
 706 Coffey, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **42**, 387 (1923).
 707 Kötze and Hoffman, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **110**, 101 (1925).
 708 Blicke, U.S. pat. 2,533,084 [*C. A.*, **45**, 3423 (1951)].
 709 Blicke, U.S. pat. 2,541,024 [*C. A.*, **46**, 537 (1952)].
 710 Koelsch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1611 (1944).
 711 Jackson and Soch, *Am. Chem. J.*, **18**, 133 (1896).
 712 Borsche, Stackmann, and Makaroff-Somljanski, *Ber.*, **49**, 2222 (1916).
 713 Sen and Bhargava, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **25**, 538 (1948).
 714 Borsche and Trautner, *Ann.*, **447**, 1 (1926).
 715 Sen and Bhargava, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **24**, 371 (1947).
 716 Prelog and Schönbaum, *Ann.*, **545**, 256 (1940).
 717 Ames, Bowman, and Mason, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 174.
 718 Kondo and Suzuki, *Ber.*, **69**, 2459 (1936).
 719 Bondar and Zelinskii, *Doklady Akad. Nauk S.S.S.R.*, **72**, 881 (1950) [*C. A.*, **44**, 9365 (1950)].
 720 Staudinger and Ruzicka, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **7**, 245 (1924).
 721 Huber, Clinton, Buck, Lawson, and Beal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 1148 (1945).
 722 Conrad and Bischoff, *Ann.*, **214**, 68 (1882).
 723 Conrad and Guthzeit, *Ber.*, **17**, 2285 (1884).
 724 Burschkies and Scholl, *Arch. Pharm.*, **281**, 328 (1943).
 725 Yohe and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 1503 (1928).
 726 Burschkies and Scholl, *Chem. Ber.*, **82**, 224 (1949).
 727 Adams, Noller, and Arvin, U.S. pat. 1,678,175 [*C. A.*, **22**, 3491 (1928)].

- ⁷²⁸ Szarvasi, Dupont, and Dulou, *Chimie & industrie*, **62**, 143 (1949) [*C.A.*, **44**, 5345 (1950)].
⁷²⁹ Zelinsky and Alexandrow, *Ber.*, **34**, 3885 (1902).
⁷³⁰ Mousseron, Granger, and Winternitz, *Compt. rend.*, **217**, 246 (1943).
⁷³¹ Haller and Barthe, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [6] **18**, 28 (1889).
⁷³² Conrad, *Ann.*, **204**, 174 (1880).
⁷³³ Doebner and Kersten, *Ber.*, **38**, 2737 (1905).
⁷³⁴ Leuchs and Radulescu, *Ber.*, **45**, 189 (1912).
⁷³⁵ Gardner and Rydon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1938**, 42.
⁷³⁶ Barnes and Gordon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 2644 (1949).
⁷³⁷ Dankova, Bokova, Preobrazhenskii, Petrushchenko, Il'shtein, and Stivetsov, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **21**, 787 (1951) [*C.A.*, **45**, 9517 (1951)].
⁷³⁸ von Braun and Nelles, *Ber.*, **66**, 1464 (1933).
⁷³⁹ Leuchs and von Katinsky, *Ber.*, **55**, 710 (1922).
⁷⁴⁰ Lellmann and Schleich, *Ber.*, **20**, 434 (1887).
⁷⁴¹ Reissert, *Ber.*, **27**, 2244 (1894).
⁷⁴² Radulescu, *Bul. Soc. Stiinte Cluj*, **1**, 306 (1922) [*C.A.*, **18**, 1285 (1924)].
⁷⁴³ von Braun, Anton, and May, *Ber.*, **70**, 1250 (1937).
⁷⁴⁴ Clutterbuck, Raistrick, and Rintoul, *Trans. Roy. Soc.*, **B220**, 301 (1931).
⁷⁴⁵ Conrad and Bischoff, *Ann.*, **204**, 162 (1880).
⁷⁴⁶ Dickman, *Rev. fac. sci. univ. Istanbul*, **15A**, 108 (1950) [*C.A.*, **45**, 6154 (1951)].
⁷⁴⁷ Levene and Kuna, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **140**, 255 (1941).
⁷⁴⁸ Suzuki, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **56**, 860 (1936) [*C.A.*, **33**, 130 (1939)].
⁷⁴⁹ Weizmann, Bergmann, and Haskelberg, *Chemistry & Industry*, **15**, 587 (1937) [*C.A.*, **31**, 7407 (1937)].
⁷⁵⁰ Dutta, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **19**, 79 (1942).
⁷⁵¹ Matsui and Hirase, *J. Chem. Soc. Japan, Pure Chem. Sect.*, **71**, 426 (1950) [*C.A.*, **45**, 8984 (1951)].
⁷⁵² Bischoff, *Ber.*, **29**, 1504 (1896).
⁷⁵³ Bernton, Ing, and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **125**, 1492 (1924).
⁷⁵⁴ Coleman, Callen, and Dornfeld, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **68**, 1101 (1946).
⁷⁵⁵ Blicke and Centollella, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 2923 (1938).
⁷⁵⁶ Rupé and Wolfsleben, *Ann.*, **395**, 111 (1913).
⁷⁵⁷ Leuchs and Reinhart, *Ber.*, **57**, 1208 (1924).
⁷⁵⁸ Bentley, Haworth, and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 161 (1896).
⁷⁵⁹ Wessely and Wang, *Ber.*, **73**, 19 (1940).
⁷⁶⁰ Hoch, *Compt. rend.*, **192**, 1464 (1931).
⁷⁶¹ Clemo and Swan, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 487.
⁷⁶² Curtius and Marangolo, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **94**, 331 (1917).
⁷⁶³ Asano and Kawasaki, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **70**, 480 (1950) [*C.A.*, **45**, 5661 (1951)].
⁷⁶⁴ Chakravarti and Rao, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1938**, 172.
⁷⁶⁵ Kues and Paal, *Ber.*, **18**, 3323 (1885).
⁷⁶⁶ Bischoff, *Ber.*, **16**, 1044 (1883).
⁷⁶⁷ von Baeyer and Perkin, *Ber.*, **17**, 122 (1884).
⁷⁶⁸ Leuchs and Sander, *Ber.*, **58**, 2200 (1925).
⁷⁶⁹ von Braun, Teuffert, and Manz, *Ber.*, **62**, 235 (1929).
⁷⁷⁰ Jones and Pyman, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **127**, 2588 (1925).
⁷⁷¹ Przewalski, *J. Russ. Phys. Chem. Soc.*, **49**, 567 (1917) (*Chem. Zentr.*, **1923**, III, 664).
⁷⁷² Günther, *Ber.*, **31**, 2134 (1898).
⁷⁷³ Gabriel, *Ber.*, **25**, 415 (1892).
⁷⁷⁴ Granger, *Ber.*, **28**, 1197 (1895).
⁷⁷⁵ Prelog, Heimbech, and Seiwert, *Ber.*, **72**, 1319 (1939).
⁷⁷⁶ Merchand, Wickert, and Marvel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **49**, 1828 (1927).
⁷⁷⁷ Carter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 1967 (1928).
⁷⁷⁸ Wagner-Jauregg, Arnold, and Hüter, *Ber.*, **75**, 1293 (1942).
⁷⁷⁹ Kadesch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1207 (1944).
⁷⁸⁰ Emerson and Heimsch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 5152 (1950).

- ⁷⁸¹ Liebermann, *Ber.*, **32**, 260 (1899).
- ⁷⁸² Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1949**, 382.
- ⁷⁸³ Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Ber.*, **76**, 689 (1943).
- ⁷⁸⁴ Prout, Cason, and Ingersoll, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 1233 (1947).
- ⁷⁸⁵ Forster and Cardwell, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **103**, 1338 (1913).
- ⁷⁸⁶ Mukherjee, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **24**, 425 (1947).
- ⁷⁸⁷ Treibs and Mayer, *Chem. Ber.*, **85**, 612 (1952).
- ⁷⁸⁸ Ziegler and Weber, *Ann.*, **512**, 164 (1934).
- ⁷⁸⁹ Perkin and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **119**, 1392 (1921).
- ⁷⁹⁰ Quadrat-i-Khuda and Mukherjee, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **16**, 532 (1939).
- ⁷⁹¹ Nenitzescu and Gavăt, *Ann.*, **519**, 260 (1935).
- ⁷⁹² Marvel, MacCorquodale, Kendall, and Lazier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **46**, 2838 (1924).
- ⁷⁹³ Prelog, Šostarič, and Guštak, *Ann.*, **545**, 247 (1940).
- ⁷⁹⁴ Kögl, Verbeek, Erxleben, and Borg, *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. physiol. Chem.*, **279**, 121 (1943).
- ⁷⁹⁵ Colonge and Pichat, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1949**, 177.
- ⁷⁹⁶ van der Zanden, de Vries, and Westerhof, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **62**, 383 (1943).
- ⁷⁹⁷ Smith and Agre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 652 (1938).
- ⁷⁹⁸ Guha and Bhattacharyya, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.*, **21**, 271 (1944).
- ⁷⁹⁹ Clemo, Groves, Munday, and Swan, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1951**, 863.
- ⁸⁰⁰ Buchnor and Dessauer, *Ber.*, **25**, 1153 (1892).
- ⁸⁰¹ Hoffmann, *Ber.*, **34**, 1558 (1901).
- ⁸⁰² Lovene, West, Allen, and Van der Scheer, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **23**, 71 (1915).
- ⁸⁰³ Gaubert, Linstead, and Rydon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 1974.
- ⁸⁰⁴ Genslor, Behrmann, and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1071 (1951).
- ⁸⁰⁵ Harmon and Marvel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **54**, 2515 (1932).
- ⁸⁰⁶ Tsatsas, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [12] **1**, 342 (1946).
- ⁸⁰⁷ Clomo, Haworth, and Walton, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1929**, 2368.
- ⁸⁰⁸ Whittleston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 825 (1937).
- ⁸⁰⁹ Aitken, Badger, and Cook, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 331.
- ⁸¹⁰ Fuson, House, and Molby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 5952 (1953).
- ⁸¹¹ Gabriel, *Ber.*, **23**, 1767 (1890).
- ⁸¹² Kipping and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **57**, 304 (1890).
- ⁸¹³ Haerdi and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **127**, 1237 (1925).
- ⁸¹⁴ Crossley and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 987 (1894).
- ⁸¹⁵ Lehman, Thompson, and Marvel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 1977 (1933).
- ⁸¹⁶ Buckle, Pattison, and Saunders, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1471.
- ⁸¹⁷ Tatevosyan and Babayan, *Zhur. Obshech Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **22**, 1421 (1952) [*C. A.*, **47**, 4869 (1953)].
- ⁸¹⁸ Fischer and Neber, *Ann.*, **496**, 1 (1932).
- ⁸¹⁹ Bachmann, Gregg, and Pratt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 2314 (1943).
- ⁸²⁰ Ansell and Hoy, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 1683.
- ⁸²¹ Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Rev. sci.*, **80**, 271 (1942) [*C. A.*, **39**, 3275 (1945)].
- ⁸²² Billeter and Miescher, *Helv. Chim. Acta.*, **29**, 859 (1946).
- ⁸²³ Lecocq and Buu-Hoi, *Compt. rend.*, **224**, 658 (1947).
- ⁸²⁴ Campbell, Corrigan, and Campbell, *J. Org. Chem.*, **16**, 1712 (1951).
- ⁸²⁵ Bachmann and Sheehan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 204 (1941).
- ⁸²⁶ Kalopissis and Gault, *Compt. rend.*, **231**, 1310 (1950).
- ⁸²⁷ Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **11**, 349 (1944).
- ⁸²⁸ Koelsch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 2460 (1943).
- ⁸²⁹ Holmberg, *Acta Acad. Aboensis Math. et Phys.*, **16**, 138 (1948) [*C. A.*, **45**, 558 (1951)].
- ⁸³⁰ von Braun and Manz, *Ann.*, **468**, 258 (1929).
- ⁸³¹ Cohen, Cook, and Hewett, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1936**, 52.
- ⁸³² Smith and Lo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 2215 (1948).
- ⁸³³ Bachmann and Sheehan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 2687 (1940).
- ⁸³⁴ Wittig and Leo, *Ber.*, **62**, 1405 (1929).
- ⁸³⁵ Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Compt. rend.*, **214**, 493 (1942).

- ⁸³⁶ Karrer, Favarger, Merz, and Milhaud, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **31**, 1505 (1948).
- ⁸³⁷ Dietrich and Lederer, *Compt. rend.*, **234**, 637 (1952).
- ⁸³⁸ Short and Wang, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 901.
- ⁸³⁹ Wilds and Beck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1688 (1944).
- ⁸⁴⁰ Phillips and Mumford, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1931**, 1732.
- ⁸⁴¹ Staudinger, Bier, and Lorentz, *Makromol. Chem.*, **3**, 251 (1949) [*C. A.*, **44**, 2443 (1950)].
- ⁸⁴² Guthzeit, *Ann.*, **206**, 351 (1881).
- ⁸⁴³ van Loon and van der Linden, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **71**, 292 (1952).
- ⁸⁴⁴ Toyama and Yamamoto, *J. Chem. Soc. Japan, Pure Chem. Sect.*, **72**, 619 (1951) [*C. A.*, **47**, 1591 (1953)].
- ⁸⁴⁵ Raphael and Sondheimer, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 2100.
- ⁸⁴⁶ Raphael and Sondheimer, *Nature*, **165**, 235 (1950).
- ⁸⁴⁷ Stanley and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **51**, 1515 (1929).
- ⁸⁴⁸ Bachmann and Carmack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 2494 (1941).
- ⁸⁴⁹ Fieser and Chamberlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 71 (1948).
- ⁸⁵⁰ Van Dyke and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **48**, 2393 (1926).
- ⁸⁵¹ Henderson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **51**, 224 (1887).
- ⁸⁵² Breitner, *Med. u. Chem. Abhandl. med. chem. Forschungsstätten I.G. Farbenind.*, **4**, 317 (1942) [*C. A.*, **38**, 4953 (1944)].
- ⁸⁵³ Hale, Lyeon, and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 4536 (1930).
- ⁸⁵⁴ Levene and Taylor, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **52**, 227 (1922).
- ⁸⁵⁵ Polgar, Robinson, and Seijo, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1545.
- ⁸⁵⁶ David, Polgar, and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1541.
- ⁸⁵⁷ Conrad and Guthzeit, *Ann.*, **214**, 76 (1882).
- ⁸⁵⁸ Locquin and Cerechez, *Compt. rend.*, **186**, 1360 (1928).
- ⁸⁵⁹ Cerechez, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [4] **47**, 1381 (1930).
- ⁸⁶⁰ J. Shapira and K. Dittmer, to be published.
- ⁸⁶¹ Košťál and Král, *Chem. Listy*, **43**, 37 (1949) [*C. A.*, **45**, 562 (1951)].
- ⁸⁶² Capková-Jirků, Košťál, and Vondráček, *Chem. Listy*, **44**, 114 (1950) [*C. A.*, **45**, 7962 (1951)].
- ⁸⁶³ J. S. Meek and S. Minkowitz, to be published.
- ⁸⁶⁴ J. S. Meek and J. W. Rowe, to be published.
- ⁸⁶⁵ Vejdělek and Protiva, *Chem. Listy*, **45**, 44 (1951) [*C. A.*, **45**, 9011 (1951)].
- ⁸⁶⁶ Goldsmith and Tishler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **68**, 144 (1946).
- ⁸⁶⁷ Warner and Moe, Brit. pat. 658,413 [*C. A.*, **46**, 9588 (1952)].
- ⁸⁶⁸ Rinderknecht and Niemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4259 (1951).
- ⁸⁶⁹ Dittmer, Herz, and Chambers, *J. Biol. Chem.*, **166**, 541 (1946).
- ⁸⁷⁰ Dittmer, Martin, Herz, and Cristol, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 1201 (1949).
- ⁸⁷¹ Elks, Elliott, and Hems, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1944**, 626.
- ⁸⁷² Auwers and Thorpe, *Ann.*, **285**, 310 (1895).
- ⁸⁷³ Adams and Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **63**, 228 (1941).
- ⁸⁷⁴ Kitzing, *Ber.*, **27**, 1578 (1894).
- ⁸⁷⁵ Kobayasi, *Ann.*, **536**, 143 (1938).
- ⁸⁷⁶ Stållberg-Stenhagen, *Arkiv Kemi, Mineral. Geol.*, **A23**, No. 15, 14 (1946) [*C. A.*, **41**, 5443 (1947)].
- ⁸⁷⁷ Bischoff and Voit, *Ber.*, **23**, 639 (1890).
- ⁸⁷⁸ Cagniant, *Compt. rend.*, **232**, 734 (1951).
- ⁸⁷⁹ Cavanna and Stållberg-Stenhagen, *Atti accad. nazl. Lincei, Mem. Classe sci. fis. mat. e nat.*, [8] **3**, 31 (1950) [*C. A.*, **45**, 9470 (1951)].
- ⁸⁸⁰ Noyes, *Ber.*, **33**, 54 (1900).
- ⁸⁸¹ Adkins and Davis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 2955 (1949).
- ⁸⁸² Stållberg-Stenhagen, *Arkiv Kemi, Mineral. Geol.*, **26A**, No. 12, 28 (1948) [*C. A.*, **43**, 6160 (1949)].
- ⁸⁸³ Ruzicka and Hosking, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **13**, 1402 (1930).
- ⁸⁸⁴ Robinson and Sugimoto, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1932**, 304.
- ⁸⁸⁵ Fieser and Novello, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 1855 (1940).

- 886 Vargha and Gyorffy, *Magyar Chem. Folyóirat*, **50**, 6 (1944) [*C. A.*, **42**, 1219 (1948)].
- 887 Greer and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 2540 (1930).
- 888 Stanley, Jay, and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **51**, 1261 (1929).
- 889 Fernholz and Finkelstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **60**, 2402 (1938).
- 890 Jones, U.S. pat. 2,363,003 [*C. A.*, **39**, 3791 (1945)].
- 891 Paal and Kühn, *Ber.*, **41**, 51 (1908).
- 892 Raper, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **91**, 1837 (1907).
- 893 Walter, U.S. pat. 2,354,231 [*C. A.*, **39**, 1416 (1945)].
- 894 Paal and Kühn, *Ber.*, **41**, 58 (1908).
- 895 Shonko, U.S. pat. 1,813,867 [*C. A.*, **25**, 5249 (1931)].
- 896 Huang-Minlon, *Contribs. Biol. Lab. Sci. Soc. China, Zool. Ser.*, **15**, 17 (1940) [*C. A.*, **36**, 80 (1942)].
- 897 Morren, Dony, and Levis, *J. pharm. Belg.*, **7**, 65 (1952) [*C. A.*, **47**, 5895 (1953)].
- 898 Bywater, U.S. pat. 2,200,538 [*C. A.*, **34**, 6019 (1940)].
- 899 Walter and Goodson, U.S. pat. 2,354,234 [*C. A.*, **39**, 1417 (1945)].
- 900 Plati, Strain, and Warren, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 1273 (1943).
- 901 Hsuoh and Marvel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 855 (1928).
- 902 Adams, Stanley, Ford, and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **49**, 2934 (1927).
- 903 Lévy, *Compt. rend.*, **202**, 1679 (1936).
- 904 Dittrich and Paal, *Ber.*, **21**, 3451 (1888).
- 905 Cocker, Cross, Fateen, Lipman, Stuart, Thompson, and Whyte, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1950, 1781.
- 906 Brunner and Wiedemann, *Monatsh. Chem.*, **66**, 438 (1935).
- 907 Meyer, *Compt. rend.*, **203**, 1074 (1936).
- 908 Meyer, *Compt. rend.*, **203**, 1370 (1936).
- 909 Kondakova and Katsnel'son, *Compt. rend. acad. sci. (U.R.S.S.)*, **18**, 271 (1938) [*C. A.*, **32**, 4523 (1938)].
- 910 Work, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1946, 197.
- 911 Kolloff, Hunter, Woodruff, and Moffett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 3862 (1948).
- 912 Staudinger, Muntwyler, Ruzicka, and Seibt, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **7**, 390 (1924).
- 913 Pratt and Archer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 4065 (1948).
- 914 Buu-Hoi and Cagniant, *Hoppe-Seyler's Z. physiol. Chem.*, **279**, 76 (1943).
- 915 Hildebrandt and Leube, Ger. pat. 494,320 [*C. A.*, **24**, 2756 (1930)].
- 916 Tatevosyan and Melikyan, *Zhur. Obshchei Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **17**, 975 (1947) [*C. A.*, **42**, 1566 (1948)].
- 917 Tatevosyan and Nikogosyan, *Proc. Acad. Sci. Armenian S.S.R.*, 1945, III, 15 [*C. A.*, **40**, 3397 (1946)].
- 918 Hall, Mahboob, and Turner, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 1956.
- 919 von Braun and Kröper, *Ber.*, **62**, 2880 (1929).
- 920 Browning, Woodrow, and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 1281 (1930).
- 921 Waltz, *Ann.*, **214**, 58 (1882).
- 922 Bischoff, *Ann.*, **214**, 61 (1882).
- 923 Bischoff and Mintz, *Ber.*, **23**, 653 (1890).
- 924 Leonard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 2915 (1952).
- 925 von Braun and Fischer, *Ber.*, **66**, 101 (1933).
- 926 von Braun and Kurtz, *Ber.*, **70**, 1224 (1937).
- 927 Moffett, Hart, and Hoehn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **69**, 1849 (1947).
- 928 Arvin and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 1790 (1928).
- 929 Davies and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **50**, 2297 (1928).
- 930 Leder-Pakkendorf, *Compt. rend. acad. sci. (U.R.S.S.)*, **31**, 757 (1941) [*C. A.*, **37**, 871 (1943)].
- 931 McElvain and Laughton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 448 (1951).
- 932 Roberts and Selby, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1951, 2335.
- 933 Miescher and Hoffmann, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **24**, 458 (1941).
- 934 Jackman, Bergman, and Archer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 497 (1948).
- 935 Buu-Hoi, Cagniant, and Mentzer, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **11**, 127 (1944).

- ⁹³⁶ Charpentier, U.S. pat. 2,570,024 [*C. A.*, **46**, 3562 (1952)].
- ⁹³⁷ Adams, Van Duuren, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 5608 (1952).
- ⁹³⁸ Geissman and Tulagin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 719 (1944).
- ⁹³⁹ Conrad and Bischoff, *Ann.*, **264**, 177 (1880).
- ⁹⁴⁰ Simonsen, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **117**, 504 (1920).
- ⁹⁴¹ Ingold and Rogers, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1935**, 717.
- ⁹⁴² Naik, Shah, and Nargund, *J. Univ. Bombay*, **19**, *Seet. A*, Pt. 3, *Sci. No.* 28, 19 (1950) [*C. A.*, **46**, 11124 (1952)].
- ⁹⁴³ von Braun and Hamann, *Ber.*, **65**, 1580 (1932).
- ⁹⁴⁴ Duff and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1934**, 87.
- ⁹⁴⁵ von Braun, Munz, and Reinsch, *Ann.*, **468**, 277 (1920).
- ⁹⁴⁶ Bergmann, *J. Org. Chem.*, **4**, 1 (1939).
- ⁹⁴⁷ Ford and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 1259 (1930).
- ⁹⁴⁸ Tatevosyan and Vardunyan, *Proc. Acad. Sci. Armenian S.S.R.*, **4**, No. 3, 71 (1946) [*C. A.*, **41**, 432 (1947)].
- ⁹⁴⁹ Buchta and Dauner, *Chem. Ber.*, **81**, 247 (1948).
- ⁹⁵⁰ Jacques and Horeau, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1956**, 512.
- ⁹⁵¹ von Braun and Schattner, *Ber.*, **74**, 22 (1941).
- ⁹⁵² Cope, Meili and MacDowell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **78**, 2551 (1956).
- ⁹⁵³ Bachmann and Anderson, *J. Org. Chem.*, **13**, 297 (1948).
- ⁹⁵⁴ Kohler, *Am. Chem. J.*, **34**, 132 (1905).
- ⁹⁵⁵ Cope, Field, MacDowell, and Wright, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **78**, 2547 (1956).
- ⁹⁵⁶ Kohler, *Am. Chem. J.*, **46**, 485 (1911).
- ⁹⁵⁷ Staudinger and Kern, *Ber.*, **66**, 373 (1933).
- ⁹⁵⁸ Kohler and Conant, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **39**, 1699 (1917).
- ⁹⁵⁹ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 358 (1905).
- ⁹⁶⁰ Gregory and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **83**, 780 (1903).
- ⁹⁶¹ Kon, Linstend, and MacLennan, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1932**, 2452.
- ⁹⁶² Henry, *Compt. rend.*, **104**, 1618 (1887).
- ⁹⁶³ Henry, *Jahresber.*, **1889**, 637.
- ⁹⁶⁴ Urushibara, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Japan*, **2**, 236 (1927).
- ⁹⁶⁵ Errera, *Gazz. chim. ital.*, **27**, II, 393 (1897).
- ⁹⁶⁶ Ruhemann and Browning, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 280 (1898).
- ⁹⁶⁷ Errera, *Ber.*, **31**, 1241 (1898).
- ⁹⁶⁸ Hadley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **34**, 923 (1912).
- ⁹⁶⁹ Földi, Fodor, Demjén, Szekeres, and Halmos, *Ber.*, **75**, 755 (1942).
- ⁹⁷⁰ Dai Nippon Celluloid Co., Jap. pat. 157,332 [*C. A.*, **43**, 9475 (1949)].
- ⁹⁷¹ Fischer and Brieger, *Ber.*, **48**, 1517 (1915).
- ⁹⁷² Fischer and Brieger, *Chem. Zentr.*, **86**, II, 222 (1915).
- ⁹⁷³ Darapsky, *J. prakt. Chem.* [2], **146**, 250 (1936).
- ⁹⁷⁴ Barthe, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [6] **27**, 239 (1892).
- ⁹⁷⁵ Freylon, *Ann. chim. Paris*, [8] **19**, 562 (1910).
- ⁹⁷⁶ I.G. Farbenindustrie, A.-G., Swiss pat. 116,292 [*Chem. Zentr.*, **97**, II, 2850 (1926)].
- ⁹⁷⁷ Haller and Barthe, *Compt. rend.*, **106**, 1413 (1888).
- ⁹⁷⁸ Curtius and Wirbatz, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] **125**, 267 (1930).
- ⁹⁷⁹ Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **85**, 416 (1904).
- ⁹⁸⁰ Wren and Haller, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 230.
- ⁹⁸¹ Verkade and Hartman, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **52**, 945 (1933).
- ⁹⁸² Gagnon, Gaudry, and King, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1944**, 13.
- ⁹⁸³ Volwiler and Tabern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **58**, 1352 (1936).
- ⁹⁸⁴ Bone and Sprankling, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 654 (1900).
- ⁹⁸⁵ Bone and Sprankling, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 1298 (1900).
- ⁹⁸⁶ Liebermann, *Ber.*, **32**, 916 (1899).
- ⁹⁸⁷ Hellerman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **49**, 1735 (1927).
- ⁹⁸⁸ Zelinsky, *Ber.*, **22**, 2823 (1889).
- ⁹⁸⁹ Bone and Perkin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **67**, 416 (1895).

- ¹⁰⁴³ Vasiliu, Dumitrascu, and Vulcan, *Soc. Chim. România Sect. Română Științe, Bul. Chim. Pura Apl.*, [2] **3A**, 54 (1941–1942) [*C. A.*, **38**, 5493 (1944)].
- ¹⁰⁴⁴ Panizzon, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **27**, 1748 (1944) [*C. A.*, **40**, 3117 (1946)].
- ¹⁰⁴⁵ Vasiliu, *Bul. Soc. Chim. România*, **19A**, 75 (1937) [*C. A.*, **33**, 4207 (1939)].
- ¹⁰⁴⁶ Venus-Danilova and Bol'shukin, *Zhur. Obshchei. Khim. (J. Gen. Chem. U.S.S.R.)*, **7**, 2823 (1937) [*C. A.*, **32**, 2925 (1938)].
- ¹⁰⁴⁷ Upson and Thompson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **44**, 181 (1922).
- ¹⁰⁴⁸ Meyer, *Ber.*, **21**, 1306 (1888).
- ¹⁰⁴⁹ Walters and McElvain, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **55**, 4625 (1933).
- ¹⁰⁵⁰ Bockmühl and Ehrhardt, Ger. pat. 473,329. [*Chem. Zentr.*, **100** (II), 218 (1929)].
- ¹⁰⁵¹ Bockmühl and Schwarz, U.S. pat. 1,482,343. [*Chem. Zentr.*, **95** (II), 1631 (1924)].
- ¹⁰⁵² Rising and Lowe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **52**, 2524 (1930).
- ¹⁰⁵³ Salmon-Legagneur and Neveu, *Compt. rend.*, **234**, 1060 (1952).
- ¹⁰⁵⁴ Vasiliu and Radvan, *Bul. Soc. Chim. România*, **20A**, 243 (1938) [*C. A.*, **34**, 4058 (1940)].
- ¹⁰⁵⁵ Blicke, U.S. pat. 2,542,466 [*C. A.*, **45**, 7141 (1951)].
- ¹⁰⁵⁶ Iwaya and Yoshida, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **71**, 1454 (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 7065 (1952)].
- ¹⁰⁵⁷ Dupré, Elks, Hems, Speyer, and Evans, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 500.
- ¹⁰⁵⁸ Salmon-Legagneur, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, **1952**, 580.
- ¹⁰⁵⁹ Easton, Reiff, Svarnas, and Fish, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 260 (1952).
- ¹⁰⁶⁰ Morrison and Rinderknecht, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 1478.
- ¹⁰⁶¹ Ofner and Walton, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 2158.
- ¹⁰⁶² Ofner, Thorp, and Walton, *Nature*, **163**, 479 (1949).
- ¹⁰⁶³ Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 3524.
- ¹⁰⁶⁴ Löwenbein and Gagarin, *Ber.*, **58**, 2643 (1925).
- ¹⁰⁶⁵ Wojeik and Adkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **56**, 2424 (1934).
- ¹⁰⁶⁶ Vogel, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1927**, 1985.
- ¹⁰⁶⁷ Cope and Hardy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 3319 (1940).
- ¹⁰⁶⁸ Adkins and Billica, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 695 (1948).
- ¹⁰⁶⁹ Hinz, Meyer, and Schücking, *Ber.*, **76**, 676 (1943).
- ¹⁰⁷⁰ Clemo, Fletcher, Fulton, and Raper, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 1140.
- ¹⁰⁷¹ Horeau and Jacques, *Compt. rend.*, **228**, 1873 (1949).
- ¹⁰⁷² Baltzly and Buck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 161 (1940).
- ¹⁰⁷³ Alexander and Cope, *Org. Syntheses*, **26**, 31 (1946).
- ¹⁰⁷⁴ Holmberg, *Acta Chem. Scand.*, **6**, 421 (1952) [*C. A.*, **47**, 2141 (1953)].
- ¹⁰⁷⁵ Prout, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 5915 (1952).
- ¹⁰⁷⁶ Birch and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1943**, 501.
- ¹⁰⁷⁷ Barltrop and Nicholson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1951**, 2524.
- ¹⁰⁷⁸ Ando, *J. Chem. Soc. Japan*, **57**, 1351 (1936) [*C. A.*, **31**, 2596 (1937)].
- ¹⁰⁷⁹ Guyot and Esteva, *Compt. rend.*, **148**, 564 (1909).
- ¹⁰⁸⁰ Guyot and Esteva, *Compt. rend.*, **148**, 719 (1909).

CHAPTER 5

THE REACTION OF HALOGENS WITH SILVER SALTS OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

C. V. WILSON

Eastman Kodak Company

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	333
NATURE OF THE REACTIONS	335
SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS OF THE REACTIONS	341
Thermal Cleavage of Acyl Hypohalites (Hunsdiecker Reaction)	347
Effect of the Halogen Employed	347
Effect of Temperature	347
Effect of Solvent	348
Salts of Other Metals	348
Thermal Cleavage of the Simonini Complex (Simonini Reaction)	350
Thermal Cleavage of Iodine Triacyls	350
Addition Reactions of Acyl Hypohalites (Prévost Reaction)	352
Substitution Reactions of Acyl Hypohalites	355
EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES	355
Preparation of Silver Salts	355
Silver Laurate	355
Silver Methyloctadecanodioate	355
Substituted Silver Benzoates	356
Silver Bicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one-1-carboxylate	356
Silver Undecafluorocyclohexanecarboxylate	356
Products Formed by the Hunsdiecker Reaction	356
Methyl 5-Bromovalerate	356
<i>n</i> -Propyl Bromide	356
<i>n</i> -Heptyl Bromide	357
<i>n</i> -Undecyl Bromide	357
1,4-Dibromobutane	357
1,10-Dibromodecane	357
Methyl 17-Bromoheptadecanoate	358
Trifluoromethyl Iodide	358
Cyclobutyl Bromide	359
<p><i>p</i>-Nitrobromobenzene</p>	359
Ethyl α -Bromo- β -phenylpropionate	360
Products Formed by the Simonini Reaction	360
Benzyl Phenylacetate	360

Products Formed by the Prévost Reaction	360
2-Iodocyclohexyl Acetate	360
3-Phenyl-1,2-propyleneglycol Dibenzate	360
1,2-Hexadecanediol	361
2-Bromocyclohexyl Benzoate	361
Products Formed by Substitution Reactions of the Acyl Hypohalites . . .	361
β -(2-Iodo-5-methoxyphenyl)propionic Acid	361
<i>p</i> -Diiodobenzene	362
4-Iodo- <i>o</i> -cresol	362
TABULAR SURVEY OF THE SILVER SALT-HALOGEN REACTIONS	362
Table I. Formation of Alkyl Halides from Aliphatic Monocarboxylic Acids	363
Table II. Formation of Alkyl Halides from Phenyl-Substituted Carboxylic Acids	365
Table III. Formation of Halides and/or Lactones from Dicarboxylic Acids	366
Table IV. Formation of Halo Esters from Acid Esters	367
Table V. Formation of Alkyl Halides from Polyhalo and Perfluoro Acids .	368
Table VI. Formation of Alicyclic Bromides from Alicyclic Carboxylic Acids	370
Table VII. Formation of Aryl Halides from Aromatic Carboxylic Acids . .	372
Table VIII. Formation of Substituted Alkyl Halides or Their Decomposition Products from Substituted Monocarboxylic Acids	373
Table IX. Formation of Halogen Compounds by the Action of Halogen on Various Metallic Salts of Carboxylic Acids	375
Table X. Formation of Esters by the Action of Iodine on the Silver Salts of Monocarboxylic Acids	376
Table XI. Formation of Aldehydes and Ketones by the Action of Iodine on the Silver Salts of Hydroxy Acids	377
Table XII. Formation of Lactones or Anhydrides by the Action of Iodine on Silver Salts of Dicarboxylic Acids	378
Table XIII. Addition of Acyl Hypohalites to Olefins	380
Table XIV. Nuclear Halogenation without Decarboxylation by the Action of Halogen on Silver Salts of Acids	384
Table XV. Nuclear Halogenation of Aromatic Substances by the Action of Silver Acetate and Halogen	385
Table XVI. Nuclear Halogenation of Aromatic Substances by the Action of Silver Trifluoroacetate and Halogen	386
Table XVII. Formation of Haloacetylenes by the Action of Silver Benzoate and Halogen on Acetylenes	387

INTRODUCTION

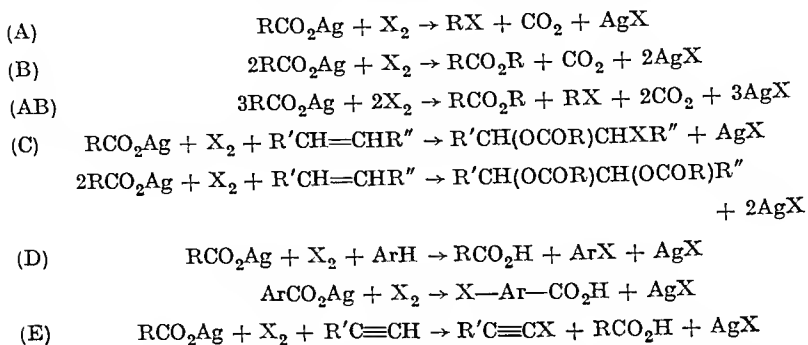
The action of halogens with *dry* metallic salts, particularly silver salts of carboxylic acids has merited earlier reviews.^{1-2a} It has been pointed out that the halogen used, the ratio of silver salt to halogen, and the presence or absence of other active materials, such as olefins, acetylenes, or readily substituted aromatic rings play a large part in determining the

¹ Kleinberg, *Chem. Revs.*, **40**, 381 (1947).

² Staněk, *Chem. Listy*, **47**, 1244 (1953).

^{2a} Johnson and Ingham, *Chem. Revs.*, **56**, 219 (1956).

course of the reactions. Thus, it is possible to produce (A) organic halides containing one less carbon atom than the original acid, RCO_2H ; (B) esters, RCO_2R , derived from two molecules of the acid by loss of one molecule of carbon dioxide; (C) esters of 1,2-diols or of halohydrins; (D) halogenated aromatic compounds; and (E) halogenated acetylenes. These reactions may be represented by the following general equations.



The reaction represented by A in which the molar silver salt-halogen ratio is 1 : 1, is due chiefly to Hunsdiecker;³⁻⁵ it makes available a variety of compounds that are prepared only with difficulty by other procedures. Reaction B is generally known as the Simonini reaction;^{6,7} it is carried out with a 2 : 1 molar ratio of silver salt to halogen (iodine only). Reaction AB, discovered by Oldham and Ubbelohde,⁸ makes use of a 3 : 2 molar ratio of reactants. Reactions C and E are usually attributed to Prévost.⁹⁻¹⁴ Reaction D proceeds only in the presence of a phenyl group (Ar) which undergoes electrophilic substitution readily,¹⁵⁻¹⁸ or when R is of such a nature that the RCO_2^- ion is a very weak base, such as CF_3CO_2^- .¹⁹

³ Hunsdiecker, Hunsdiecker, and Vogt, U.S. pat. 2,176,181 (1939) [*C. A.*, **34**, 1685 (1940)].

⁴ Hunsdiecker and Hunsdiecker, *Ber.*, **75**, 291 (1942).

⁵ Hunsdiecker, Hunsdiecker, and Vogt, Ger. pat. 730,410 (1942) [*C. A.*, **38**, 374 (1944)].

⁶ Simonini, *Monatsh.*, **13**, 320 (1892).

⁷ Simonini, *Monatsh.*, **14**, 81 (1893).

⁸ Oldham and Ubbelohde, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1941**, 368.

⁹ Prévost, *Compt. rend.*, **196**, 1129 (1933).

¹⁰ Prévost, *Compt. rend.*, **197**, 1661 (1933).

¹¹ Prévost and Lutz, *Compt. rend.*, **198**, 2264 (1934).

¹² Prévost, *Compt. rend.*, **200**, 942 (1935).

¹³ Prévost and Wiemann, *Compt. rend.*, **204**, 700 (1937).

¹⁴ Prévost and Wiemann, *Compt. rend.*, **204**, 989 (1937).

¹⁵ Birnbaum and Reinherz, *Ber.*, **15**, 456 (1882).

¹⁶ Barnes and Prochaska, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 3188 (1950).

¹⁷ Dauben and Tilles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 3185 (1950).

¹⁸ Papa, Schwenk, and Klingsberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 2623 (1950).

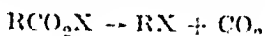
¹⁹ Haszeldine and Sharp, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 993.

NATURE OF THE REACTIONS

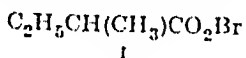
It is well established ²⁰⁻²² that the primary product of the reaction between a dry silver salt of a carboxylic acid and halogen is an acyl hypohalite.



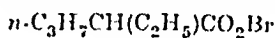
Thermal cleavage of this intermediate results in the formation of an alkyl halide with loss of carbon dioxide, and this is the basis of reaction A.



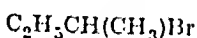
Extensive evidence favors a mechanism with the free radical $\text{R}\cdot$ as an intermediate in the conversion of RCO_2Br to RBr . First the reaction of optically active silver salts with bromine or of the intermediate acyl hypobromites I and II under a variety of conditions leads to totally racemized bromides III and IV.²³ Although the alkyl bromide, if it had



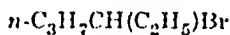
I



II



III



IV

been obtained optically active in these reactions, would have been racemized slowly by the silver bromide present, it was shown by control experiments that such racemization is too slow to account for most of the loss of optical activity observed during the reaction of the silver salt with bromine. The reactions of optically active silver salts with bromine had previously been reported to yield optically inactive bromides,²⁴⁻²⁶ but the significance of the results remained in doubt since it was not shown at that time that the loss in activity was not entirely due to racemization of the bromide by silver bromide.

It should be mentioned that silver (+)- α -phenylpropionate was reported to react with bromine in carbon tetrachloride to yield phenethyl bromide with 43% of the optical activity retained.²⁷ It has been shown, however, that (+)-phenethyl bromide, when boiled with silver bromide in carbon tetrachloride under conditions of the reaction of the silver salt with bromine, is essentially completely racemized.^{28,29} This would

²⁰ Boekemüller and Hoffmann, *Ann.*, **519**, 165 (1935).

²¹ Birekenbach, Goubeau, and Berninger, *Ber.*, **65**, 1339 (1932).

²² Uschakov and Chistov, *Ber.*, **68**, 824 (1935).

²³ Winstein and Berr, Unpublished work; C. E. Berr, Ph.D. Thesis, University of California, Los Angeles, 1952; Winstein, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] **18**, 70a (1951).

²⁴ Arnold and Morgan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 4248 (1948).

²⁵ Heintzler, *Ann.*, **569**, 102 (1950).

²⁶ Bell and Smyth, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 2372.

²⁷ Arcus, Campbell and Kenyon, *Nature*, **163**, 287 (1949); *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1510.

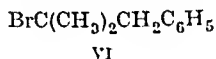
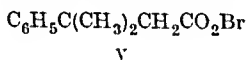
²⁸ Abbott and Arcus, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 3195.

²⁹ Arcus and Boyd, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1951**, 1580.

indicate that the substance responsible for the optical activity observed in the product of the silver salt reaction was not phenethyl bromide. This conclusion has been strengthened by the failure of several investigators^{23,28,30} to isolate any phenethyl bromide from the reaction of silver α -phenylpropionate with bromine in carbon tetrachloride. A report²⁸ that silver (+)-2-ethylhexanoate with bromine gives (+)-3-bromoheptane requires further investigation.

That it is the intermediate $R\cdot$, rather than R^+ or R^- ,³¹ which is responsible for the observed loss of activity during reaction has been supported by evidence from several sources. Thus, reactions that might have been expected to lead to the neopentyl carbonium ion invariably lead to products derived from its rearrangement product, the *t*-amyl carbonium ion.³² Silver *t*-butylacetate, however, reacts with bromine to yield neopentyl bromide with no detectible amount of *t*-amyl bromide.^{23,33} Similarly, reactions that might be expected to proceed by way of the cyclobutyl carbonium ion lead to mixtures of cyclobutyl, cyclopropylcarbinyl, and allylcarbinyl products.³⁴ The reaction of silver cyclobutanecarboxylate with bromine, however, yields cyclobutyl bromide accompanied by only a very small amount of rearranged products.³⁵

While the neopentyl radical, $(CH_3)_3CCH_2\cdot$, does not rearrange under conditions used to prepare it, the neophyl radical, $C_6H_5C(CH_3)_2CH_2\cdot$, has been shown to rearrange in part to the more stable tertiary radical, $(CH_3)_2\dot{C}CH_2C_6H_5$.³⁶ Examination of the reaction of the acyl hypobromite V has indicated that some of the tertiary bromide VI was formed by



rearrangement in addition to the unrearranged product.²³ A control experiment showed that the unrearranged product, neophyl bromide, was stable toward the reaction conditions.

Additional evidence for the radical intermediate is provided by a study of the reaction of the silver salt of apocamphane-1-carboxylic acid.³⁷ Reactions proceeding by way of the apocamphyl carbonium ion have been

³⁰ Cason, Kalm, and Mills, *J. Org. Chem.*, **18**, 1670 (1953).

³¹ Compare Rottenberg, *Experientia*, **7**, 432, (1951) [*C. A.*, **46**, 4336 (1952)].

³² Ingold, *Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry*, pp. 485-486, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, New York, 1953.

³³ Smith and Hull, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 3309 (1950).

³⁴ Roberts and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 2509 (1951).

³⁵ Cason and Way, *J. Org. Chem.*, **14**, 32 (1949); Roberts and Chambers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 5039 (1951); Buchman and Conly, *ibid.*, **75**, 1990 (1953).

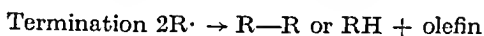
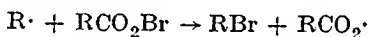
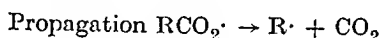
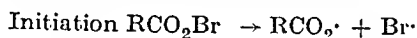
³⁶ Urry and Kharasch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1438 (1944); Winstein and Seubold, *ibid.*, **69**, 2916 (1947); Urry and Nicolaides, *ibid.*, **74**, 5162 (1952).

³⁷ Wilder and Winston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 5370 (1953).

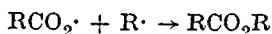
shown to be very much slower than their counterparts in acyclic systems.³⁸ On the other hand, there is no such retardation when the apocamphyl radical is involved.³⁹ It was found, in fact, that silver apocamphane-1-carboxylate reacts readily with bromine in boiling petroleum ether to yield 1-bromoapocamphane in 50% yield, with no evidence of any retardation in rate by the bicyclic system. The reaction in carbon tetrachloride was accompanied by the formation of a chlorine-containing by-product.³⁷

Other observations which are suggestive of a free-radical chain mechanism are side-chain bromination of toluene,¹⁹ the indication that there is an induction period when the reaction is carried out at low temperatures,⁴⁰ and an acceleration of the reaction by light.²⁰

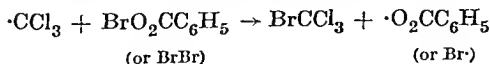
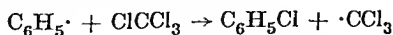
The most probable mechanism would appear to be the following.⁴¹



and/or



Another piece of evidence consistent with this picture is the following. The reaction of silver benzoate with bromine in carbon tetrachloride gives 53% of bromobenzene, 5% of chlorobenzene, and 6.7% of bromotrichloromethane. These products are readily explained if, superimposed on the sequence of reactions above, there is reaction of the phenyl radical with carbon tetrachloride as shown below.^{16,17,*}



(or BrBr)

(or Br)

³⁸ Bartlett and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **61**, 3184 (1939).

³⁹ Kharasch, Engelmann, and Urry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 2428 (1943).

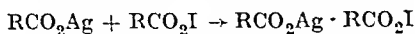
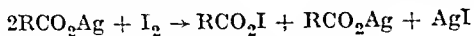
⁴⁰ Conly, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 1148 (1953).

⁴¹ Compare Price, *Mechanisms of Reactions at Carbon-Carbon Double Bonds*, p. 55, Interscience Publishers, New York, 1946.

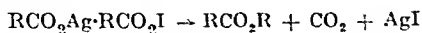
* Wiberg and Shryne,^{41a} on the basis of the report that silver (+)-2-ethylhexanoate with bromine gives (+)-3-bromoheptane,²⁸ suggested that the mechanism is a 1,3-intramolecular shift involving an electron-deficient group in the transition state—a mechanism first proposed by Rottenberg.³¹ Since the reported retention of optical activity in this reaction is in contradiction with the reports of racemization described on p. 335, caution must be exercised until confirmation is available.

^{41a} Wiberg and Shryne, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 2774 (1955).

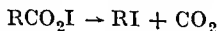
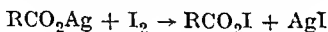
When the silver salt of a carboxylic acid reacts with iodine in a 2 : 1 molar ratio, the primarily formed acyl hypoiodite coordinates with the excess silver salt to form a complex.^{6,7,12-17a} Many such complexes can be



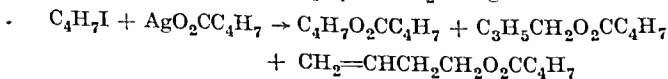
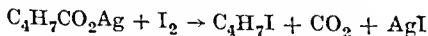
isolated. With others, however, the difference between the temperatures of formation and decomposition is too small to permit isolation. The thermal cleavage of the complex to give an ester is the basis of reaction B (Simonini reaction).



It is not clear what role, if any, the complex formation plays in the reaction, which appears to be composed of two parts. Available evidence suggests that the first stage, a reaction of the silver salt with iodine to give carbon dioxide and alkyl iodide, is closely related to the Hunsdiecker reaction discussed above. The second stage is an ionic reaction of the alkyl iodide thus formed with a second molecule of silver salt.¹⁹ This



view is consistent with the fact that in the reaction of such substances as silver cyclobutanecarboxylate^{44,48} a typical carbonium ion rearrangement occurs in the alcohol portion of the ester formed. The products are cyclobutyl, cyclopropylcarbinyl, and allylcarbinyl cyclobutanecarboxylates in yields of 32, 65, and 3%, respectively.



Failure to observe the formation of triphenylmethyl peroxide when silver triphenylacetate is treated with iodine in the presence of air has been interpreted as evidence that the triphenylmethyl radical is not an intermediate.⁴⁹ Such an argument is valid, however, only if it can be

⁴² Heiduschka and Ripper, *Ber.*, **56**, 1736 (1923).

⁴³ Birnbaum and Gaier, *Ber.*, **13**, 1270 (1880).

⁴⁴ Demjanov and Dojarenko, *Ber.*, **40**, 2594 (1907).

⁴⁵ Gascard, *Compt. rend.*, **153**, 1484 (1911).

⁴⁶ Gascard, *Ann. chim.* (Paris), [9] **15**, 332 (1921).

⁴⁷ Panics, *Monatsh.*, **15**, 10 (1894).

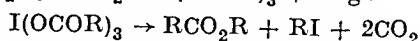
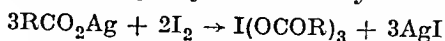
^{47a} Birnbaum, *Ann.*, **152**, 111 (1869).

⁴⁸ Roberts and Simons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 5487 (1951).

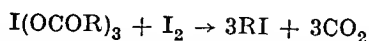
⁴⁹ Wieland and Fischer, *Ann.*, **446**, 49 (1925-26).

shown that the reaction of the triphenylmethyl radical with oxygen under the conditions employed is faster than its reaction with iodine.

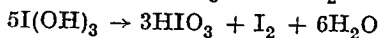
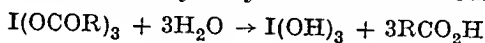
While the Hunsdiecker and Simonini reactions produce halides and esters respectively, the reaction represented by AB gives rise to both of these products. The iodine triacyl postulated as an intermediate can be isolated when R is a long-chain alkyl group. Formed by the action of 2 moles of iodine on 3 moles of the silver salt as indicated below, such compounds decompose thermally to yield both alkyl halide and ester.⁸ In the



presence of excess iodine, the iodine triacyl decomposes to give a high yield of alkyl iodide.

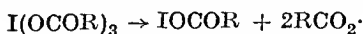


Water decomposes the triacyl to yield iodine and iodic acid.



This, and the fact that triacyls such as iodine tris(trichloromethylacetate) conduct electricity with the iodine migrating toward the cathode, indicates the positive nature of the iodine in such materials.⁵⁰

Nothing is known of the mechanism of these reactions. It seems likely, however, that they are radical chain reactions initiated by the dissociation of the iodine triacyl to acyl hypoiodite and acyloxy radicals.⁸ It is entirely reasonable that those acyloxy radicals that lose carbon dioxide

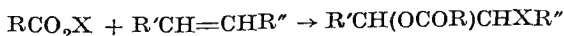


give alkyl radicals that react with iodine triacyl as shown below. A fuller

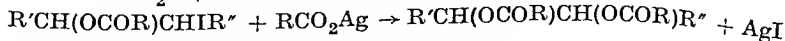
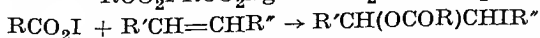
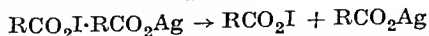


understanding of the mechanism must await further investigation.

In the presence of ethylenic compounds the primarily formed acyl hypohalite adds to the double bond to form a haloester.

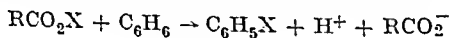


This is the basis of reaction C. The Simonini complex undergoes a similar reaction to yield first the ester of an iodohydrin and, finally, a diester. Presumably the complex dissociates, the acyl hypoiodite adds to the double bond, and the iodine is replaced by the molecule of silver salt formed by dissociation of the complex.¹⁰

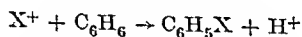
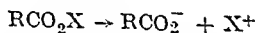


The products of the reaction suggest an ionic mechanism. Evidence that might be considered support for such a mechanism arises from the following fact: Silver (+) or (—)-2-ethylhexanoate when treated with bromine in carbon tetrachloride yields acyl hypohalites which add to styrene to give (+) or (—)-2-bromo-1-phenethyl-2-ethylhexanoate, which on hydrolysis with alkali yields (+) or (—)-2-ethylhexanoic acid in which a substantial percentage of the optical activity of the original acid is retained.⁵¹ However, this reaction does not involve the asymmetric carbon atom and is not, therefore diagnostic as to mechanism. The partial racemization presumably occurs during hydrolysis, for it has been shown that racemization of such esters can accompany hydrolysis.

Substitution of halogen in the benzene nucleus, as represented by reaction D, occurs most readily when R is the trifluoromethyl group.^{19,52,53} However, if the aryl group is activated sufficiently to electrophilic attack, substitution may occur when R is methyl. The substituted products obtained are those expected through halogenation by an entity which carries a positive charge. Thus *ortho* and *para* substitution occur in compounds containing groups known to activate the aromatic nucleus to electrophilic attack, whereas substitution fails or occurs in the *meta* position when the substituent deactivates the nucleus. On this basis, the fission of the acyl hypohalite would be expected to proceed by an ionic mechanism. Thus, either the acyl hypohalite itself or X^+ formed by its dissociation can serve as the halogenating agent.



or



Fission by a free-radical mechanism would necessitate halogenation by halogen atoms. When an alkyl side chain is present, substitution of the side chain is the preferred reaction. However, the products of such a process have not been found in any of the reactions studied.

When the acyl hypohalite is derived from an ordinary alkyl or aryl carboxylic acid, it is a sufficiently poor halogenating agent in the absence of readily substituted aromatic rings to allow the free-radical dissociation followed by decarboxylation (Hunsdiecker reaction) to predominate. However, nuclear halogenation can be increased at the expense of the Hunsdiecker reaction either by adding a readily substituted aromatic compound such as veratrole^{53a} or by using a more active acyl hypohalite

⁵¹ Abbott and Arcus, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 1515.

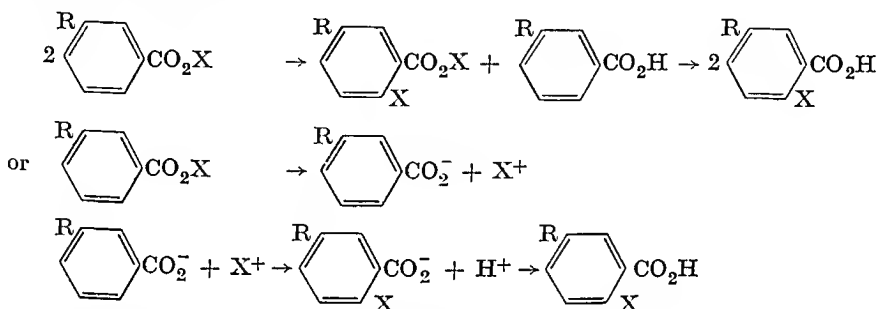
⁵² Henne and Zimmer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1362 (1951).

⁵³ Schwartz, *Anales soc. espñ. fis. quim.*, **27**, 683 (1929) [*C. A.*, **24**, 589 (1930)].

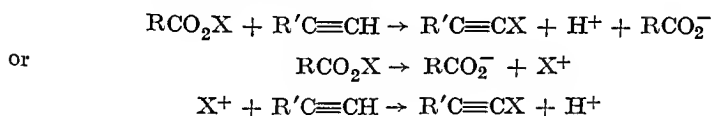
^{53a} Janssen, VanAllan, and Wilson, *J. Org. Chem.*, **20**, 1326 (1955).

as the halogenating agent. Trifluoroacetyl hypobromite shows little tendency to undergo the Hunsdiecker decarboxylation at temperatures ordinarily employed with other acyl hypohalites. It is, therefore, particularly useful as a brominating agent.^{19,52}

The other phase of reaction D involves the presence of readily substituted aromatic rings in the silver salt and thus in the acyl hypohalite. Again, either the hypohalite itself or X^+ formed by its dissociation acts as the halogenating agent.¹⁷



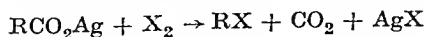
Substitution of halogen in acetylenes, as indicated by reaction E, probably occurs by a similar mechanism.



SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS OF THE REACTIONS

Thermal Cleavage of Acyl Hypohalites (Hunsdiecker Reaction)

The thermal decomposition of acyl hypohalites formed as intermediates in the halogen silver-salt reaction to produce compounds containing one carbon atom less than the original acid is perhaps the most important of the various silver salt-halogen reactions. The reaction is of general application in the aliphatic series, leading, with simple fatty acids of 2 to 18 carbon atoms, to excellent yields of alkyl halides.^{3,20,25,30,54-58}



A substituent in the aliphatic chain in any position other than the

⁵⁴ Lüttringhaus and Schade, *Ber.*, **74**, 1565 (1941).

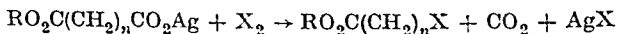
⁵⁵ Mehta, Mehta, and Thosar, *J. Indian Chem. Soc., Ind. Ed.*, **3**, 137 (1940).

⁵⁶ Borodine, *Ann.*, **119**, 121 (1861).

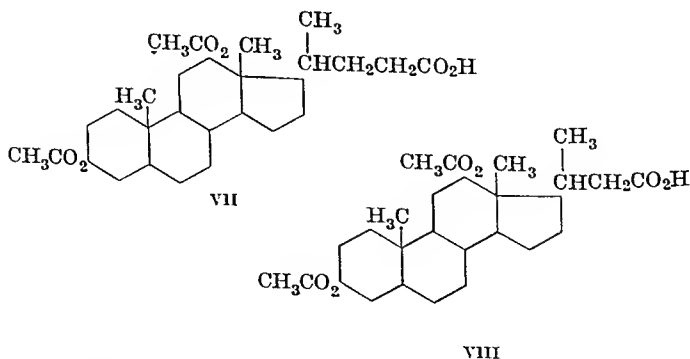
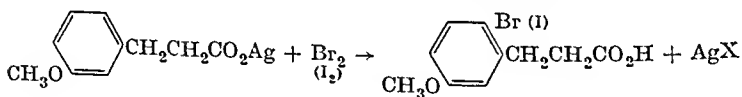
⁵⁷ Birnbaum, *Ann.*, **152**, 111 (1869).

⁵⁸ Cason and Winans, *J. Org. Chem.*, **15**, 142 (1950).

α -position does not interfere with the reaction unless it is itself capable of reaction with the aryl hypohalite. Thus, silver salts of alkyl-substituted fatty acids yield primary halides as do acids carrying a cycloalkyl substituent such as cyclopentylacetic acid.⁵ Simple halogen derivatives, such as silver β -bromopropionate, yield dibromides.⁴⁰ Polyhalogen compounds have been obtained from silver salts of polyhalogen acids; thus, silver 9,10-dichlorooctadecanoate yields 1-bromo-8,9-dichloroheptadecane;³ and 1,8,9,11,12-pentabromoheptadecane is obtained from silver 9,10,12,13-tetrabromooctadecanoate.⁵⁹ When applied to acid esters, the reaction leads to ω -halo esters.^{4,5,60-62} This is a useful reaction because ω -halo



esters are not easily prepared by other procedures. Silver salts of acids in which there is an aryl substituent such as phenyl^{25,63} or deactivated phenyl¹⁶ also give primary halides. If, however, the substituent is a phenyl group readily substituted by electrophilic agents, there is halogenation of the ring and formation of a free acid without loss of carbon dioxide. For example, silver β -3-methoxyphenylpropionate when treated with bromine or iodine gives an excellent yield of β -2-bromo-(or iodo)-5-methoxyphenylpropionic acid.¹⁸ Such complex substances as 3(α),12(β)-diacetoxynordesoxyeholanic acid (VII) and 3(α),12(β)-diacetoxyeholanic



⁵⁹ Howton, Davis and Nevenzel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 1109 (1952).

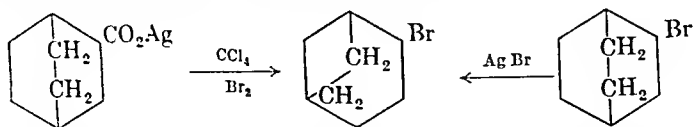
⁶⁰ Allen and Wilson, *Org. Syntheses*, **26**, 52 (1946).

⁶¹ Duschinsky and Rubin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **70**, 2546 (1948).

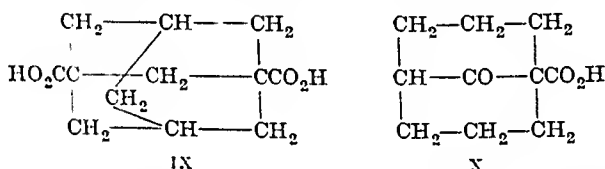
⁶² Stoll and Rouvé, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **34**, 98 (1951).

⁶³ Oldham, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1950, 100.

silver bromide, for 2-bromobicyclo[2.2.2]octane and silver bromide give the same product. By operating at -10° , it has been possible to isolate the expected bromide as well as the rearranged product.⁶⁹

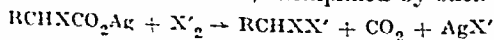


Silver salts of simple carboxylic acids having a tertiary α -carbon atom, such as silver trimethyl- and triphenyl-acetate, yield a variety of products when treated with bromine.²⁵ However, the silver salts of the complex alicyclic acids, adamantanedicarboxylic acid (IX)⁷⁰ and bicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one-1-carboxylic acid (X)⁷¹ give the corresponding bromides in yields of 28 and 74%, respectively. These acids cannot be decarboxylated directly; the silver salt-halogen reaction, therefore, serves as an intermediate step in the preparation of the parent hydrocarbons.

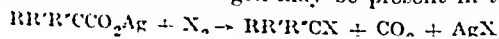


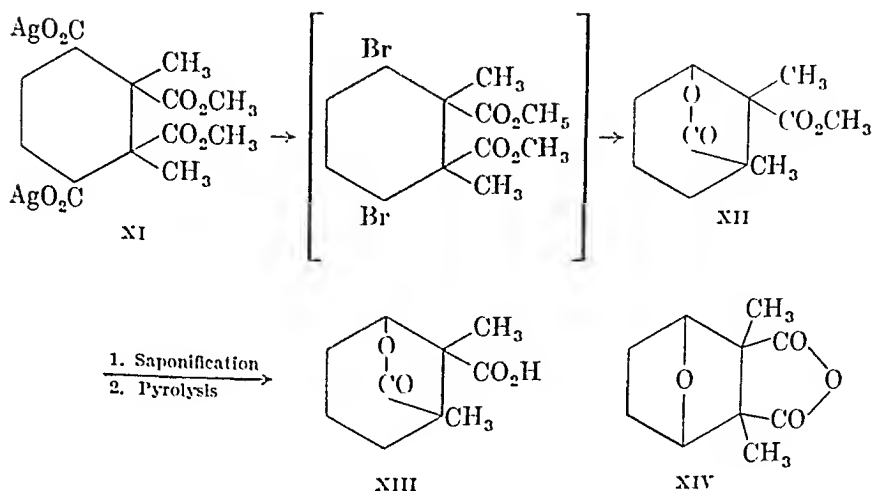
The reaction has been used successfully as a preliminary step in the synthesis of cantharadin from the silver salt (XI) of the 2,3-dimethyl ester of 2,3-dimethyleyclohexane-1,2,3,4-tetracarboxylic acid.⁷² Treatment of this silver salt with bromine in carbon tetrachloride results in a lactone XII, formed by loss of methyl bromide from the primarily formed dibromide. Saponification and pyrolysis of the lactone gives a mixture of cantharic acid (XIII) and cantharadin (XIV). (Formulas on p. 345.)

When substituents other than alkyl or aryl are present in the α -position, the decarboxylation leads to a variety of products. The silver salts of α -halogen acids yield 1,1-dihalogenated hydrocarbons.^{3,40} Many di-, tri-, and tetra-halogenated methanes, exemplified by such substances as

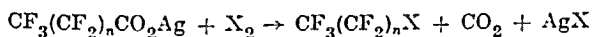


CH_2ClF , CHBrClF , CBr_2F_2 have been prepared by this reaction.⁷³ Any combination of hydrogen and halogen may be present in the silver salt,



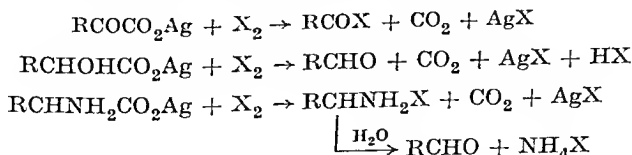


and X may be chlorine, bromine, or iodine. The yields vary widely (see Table V). Perfluoro acids give perfluoroalkyl halides.⁷³⁻⁸⁰ A high



temperature is required because of the stability, mentioned earlier, of the trifluoroacetoxy radical toward decarboxylation. This is probably true to a smaller extent with the silver salts of various halogenated derivatives of acetic acid.

Other α -substituted acids that undergo the reaction include α -keto, α -hydroxy, and α -amino acids; α -keto acids give acyl halides whereas the hydroxy and amino acids lead to aldehydes. If the remaining hydrogen atom on the α -carbon atom of the hydroxy and amino acids is replaced by



an alkyl group, ketones result. For the most part, these reactions are considered only in the original patent,³ and little work has been done on their development. Heyns and Stange, however, have shown that the

⁷⁴ Hauptschein and Grosse, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 2461 (1951).

⁷⁵ Hauptschein, Kinsman, and Grosse, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 849 (1952).

⁷⁶ Brice and Simons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4016 (1951).

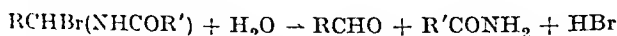
⁷⁷ Henne and Finnegan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 3806 (1950).

⁷⁸ Haszeldine, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1951, 584.

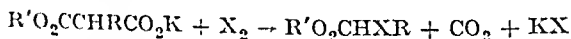
⁷⁹ Hauptschein, Nodiff, and Grosse, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 1347 (1952).

⁸⁰ Henne and Francis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 993 (1953).

silver salts of acylated α -amino acids give halogen derivatives that can be isolated.⁸¹ On hydrolysis these products form the carbonyl derivative, amide, and hydrogen halide.



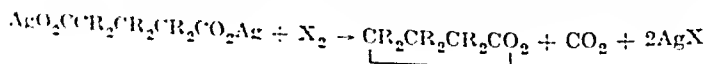
The silver salt of ethylmalonic acid, which may be considered an α -carboxy acid, gives a small yield of 1,1-dibromopropane together with some 1,1,1-tribromopropane; the tribromo derivative is presumably the result of some bromination before decarboxylation.⁴⁰ The potassium salts of the closely related alkyl α -carbethoxyacetic acids yield α -bromo⁸² and α -chloro⁸³ fatty acid esters. Again there is some halogenation before



decarboxylation. The best yields result from compounds of intermediate chain length (6-8 carbon atoms).

The silver salts of unsaturated acids have not been useful in this reaction. Silver methacrylate added to bromine in carbon tetrachloride at 0° gives a polymeric product. Silver allylacetate yields a bromolactone.⁴⁰ Because of the ease with which acyl hypohalites add to the olefinic bond (see p. 350), a clear-cut reaction would not be expected. However, silver phenylpropiolate and iodine produce phenyliodoacetylene in excellent yield.⁴²

Treatment of silver salts of α,ω -dicarboxylic acids with halogen leads to α,ω -dihalides.^{3,20,40,54,63,84} Although this reaction is general, the yields of dihalide are poor with the lower members of the series. The formation of a bromo compound from silver succinate and bromine was observed by Bunge as early as 1870.⁸⁵ However, the yield is small even when the silver salt is added to a solution of bromine in carbon tetrachloride.⁴⁹ Silver glutarate and various alkyl-substituted derivatives give mainly γ -lactones though a small amount of dihalide is formed.⁶³



are obtained.⁸⁶ With silver adipate there is some lactone formation, but a substantial yield of dibromide is obtained by the reverse addition procedure.⁸⁴ The higher members of the series give moderately good yields of dihalides. In the one instance in which a tricarboxy acid was used, the yield of trihalide was very small.⁴⁰

Effect of the Halogen Employed. Bromine is most generally used in the Hunsdiecker reaction. In the few instances in which chlorine has been employed the yields have been satisfactory.^{3,52,73,75,83,87} Iodine was normally used in a 1:2 molar ratio with the silver salts in the early work, and, consequently, the so-called Simonini ester was the main product. More recent work⁸⁷ has shown that an iodine-to-silver ratio of 1:1 affords substantial yields of the iodide, though some ester is produced. In fact, the yield of iodide rises, and that of the ester falls as the ratio of iodine to silver is gradually increased from 1:2 to 1:1. In the presence of excess iodine, the silver salts of the long-chain acids give good yields of the iodides.⁸ Excellent yields of iodides have also been obtained from the silver salts of fluoro and perfluoro acids,⁷³ but the use of iodine in the preparation of iodides by this reaction has not been investigated thoroughly. It may well serve as a method for producing alkyl iodides as well as bromides.

Effect of Temperature. The effect of temperature has not been studied systematically. From available reports, it appears that the optimum temperature depends upon the silver salt used. Bromobenzene, for example, is obtained in 80% yield when bromine is added to a suspension of silver benzoate in boiling carbon tetrachloride,²⁰ but the yield is insignificant when the reaction is carried out in the cold.^{20,54} Mehta and co-workers point out that carbon tetrachloride is a better solvent than chloroform for the reaction and indicate that its higher boiling point is responsible for the advantage.⁸⁷ They show that better yields of long-chain alkyl halides are obtained in boiling than in cold carbon tetrachloride. On the other hand, cyclobutyl bromide is obtained only when the reaction is run in carbon tetrachloride below -20° .³⁵ In some instances, operation at a low temperature is necessary because of the instability of the silver salts. The silver salts of α -bromovaleric acid, β -bromopropionic acid, α -bromobutyric acid, and δ -bromovaleric acid, for example, are stable at 0° but not at room temperature. Silver β -bromopropionate changes into β -propiolactone on drying in a desiccator at room temperature.⁴⁰ Nevertheless, these silver salts undergo the Hunsdiecker reaction at 0° to give fairly good yields of the corresponding bromides.

Effect of Solvent. Carbon tetrachloride is probably the best general

⁸⁶ Hauptschein, Stokes, and Grosso, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **74**, 848 (1952).

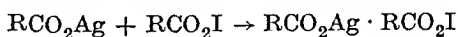
⁸⁷ Mehta, Mehta, and Thosar, *J. Indian Chem. Soc., Ind. Ed.*, **3**, 166 (1940).

solvent for the reaction, although there are isolated instances in which other solvents produce better results. The production of *n*-propyl bromide from silver butyrate, for example, is carried out in nitrobenzene; if carbon tetrachloride is used, separation of the *n*-propyl bromide from the solvent is difficult because the two materials have approximately the same boiling point.²⁰ Experiments carried out by Oldham and Ubbelohde have shown that good yields of undecyl iodide can be obtained in benzene (72–80%), carbon tetrachloride (70–78%), or petroleum ether (51–65%).⁸ In the few instances recorded in which the silver salt was used in carbon disulfide, the yields were low.²⁵ Though Cason and Way prepared cyclobutyl bromide by operating in carbon tetrachloride at a low temperature,³⁵ the same halide has also been made by treatment of the mercuric salt of the acid with bromine in carbon disulfide.⁵ Dichlorodifluoromethane has been used successfully as a solvent in the preparation of cyclopropyl bromide⁶⁷ and ethyl 4-bromobicyclo[2.2.2]octane-1-carboxylate.⁸⁸ Tetrachloroethane was also used as a solvent in the former reaction, but the yield was poor. Chloroform,^{3,8} ether,^{3,89} ethyl bromide,^{65,65a} and trichloroethylene⁶² have also been used. In trichloroethylene a surprisingly good yield of methyl ω -bromopentadecanoate was obtained from the requisite acid ester. Treatment of the silver salts of perfluoro acids with halogens is usually carried out without a solvent,^{52,73–75,77,78} but in one instance perfluorotributylamine has been used successfully.⁷⁶

Salts of Other Metals. Though silver salts have been generally used in this reaction, other salts have also been employed with varying success. Of these, the mercurous and mercuric salts have given the best results.^{3–5} Thallium salts have also been satisfactory.³ With some substituted malonic acid half-esters, the potassium salts have been used with yields varying from 23 to 80%.^{82,83} The yields are highest when the substituent is *n*-butyl, *n*-hexyl, benzyl, or cyclohexyl and drop off rapidly when the number of carbons in the substituent is increased or decreased. Trifluoroacetic acid gives poorer yields of trifluoromethyl iodide when the sodium, potassium, barium, mercury, or lead salt is employed in place of the silver salt. The reaction is carried out in a steel autoclave at a high temperature.⁷²

Since esters are usually secured more easily by other procedures, the reaction has little value as a synthetic method. It has been of primary interest in connection with the mechanism of formation and decomposition of the complex, and because of a useful synthesis in which the complex is used, viz., the Prévost reaction (see p. 350).

Those silver salts that undergo the Hunsdiecker reaction readily also, in general, undergo the Simonini reaction. Only in the case of silver salts of saturated monocarboxylic acids is any difference discernible. The difference appears to be due to an ability of the primarily formed hypoiodites to give complexes or coordination compounds with the silver salt, an ability that apparently is not shared to any great degree by the acyl



hypobromites though a small quantity of ester is formed occasionally. Acyl hypoiodites also form stable coordination complexes with tertiary bases such as pyridine and α -picoline.⁹⁰

In the dibasic acid series, the products obtained by the Simonini procedure are comparable to those obtained with bromine. Silver oxalate yields only carbon dioxide and silver halide.^{43,49} Silver malonate produces carbon dioxide, but no other product has been identified.⁴⁹ Silver succinate regenerates succinic acid and forms a little maleic anhydride, while silver glutarate and various substituted derivatives give γ -lactones in fair yields (40%). The method has been suggested as a preparative procedure for γ -lactones.⁹¹⁻⁹³ Similar products are obtained with bromine.⁶³ Silver adipate yields a small amount of polymerized δ -valerolactone.⁴⁹ The reaction with homologs higher than adipic acid has not been investigated.

Unsaturated acids do not give clear-cut results. Although the intermediate complex is formed in many cases and carbon dioxide is lost in the decomposition, the only other products identified are the unchanged acid or its anhydride.^{43,49} Hydroxy acids yield aldehydes or ketones. This reaction, first reported by Herzog and Leiser,⁸⁹ proceeds as well with bromine as with iodine.³ Thus, formaldehyde is formed from glycolic acid, while mandelic acid yields benzaldehyde.

In the aromatic series, the reaction has no value. Silver benzoate gives a variety of products including ester, halide, and halogenated benzoic acid.⁴⁹ Silver phthalate leads to phthalic anhydride, whereas silver hexahydrophthalate gives no identifiable products.⁴⁹

⁹⁰ Zingaro, Goodrich, Kleinberg, and VanderWerf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **71**, 575 (1949).

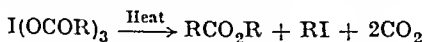
⁹¹ Windaus and Klähnardt, *Ber.*, **54**, 581 (1921).

⁹² Windaus, Klähnardt, and Revere, *Ber.*, **55**, 3981 (1922).

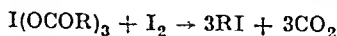
⁹³ Goldschmidt and Gräfinger, *Ber.*, **63**, 279 (1935).

Thermal Cleavage of Iodine Triacyls

A reaction somewhat similar to the Simonini reaction takes place when a silver salt and iodine react in a 3 : 2 molar ratio.⁸ The product contains positive, trivalent iodine but no silver. It is presumably an iodine triacyl, which decomposes thermally to produce both ester and alkyl

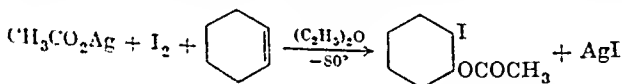


halide. Heating in the presence of excess iodine gives the alkyl iodide only.



Addition Reactions of Acyl Hypohalites (Prévost Reaction)

The intermediates formed in the Simonini and Hunsdiecker reactions, $\text{RCO}_2\text{Ag} \cdot \text{RCO}_2\text{I}$ and RCO_2X , respectively, will react with olefins, acetylenes, and sufficiently reactive phenyl groups. The addition to olefins was first reported by Birekenbaeh, Goubeau, and Berninger,²¹ who treated silver acetate with iodine in ether solution, removed the silver iodide formed, and treated the filtrate with cyclohexene. The acetate of 2-iodocyclohexanol resulted. The same substance had been obtained by Brunel some years earlier in a similar reaction with mercuric acetate,

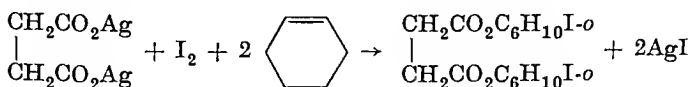


iodine and cyclohexene.²¹ However, the method has been developed mainly by Prévost,^{9-11,13,14} and the reaction is generally known by his name. Its chief use lies in the preparation of 1,2-glycols.

When the Simonini complex obtained from silver benzoate and iodine is treated in benzene solution with an olefin, silver iodide precipitates and the dibenzoate of a 1,2-glycol is formed. Although the complex from $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{Ag} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{I} + \text{RCH}=\text{CH}_2 \rightarrow \text{RCH(OCOC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2\text{OCOC}_6\text{H}_5$

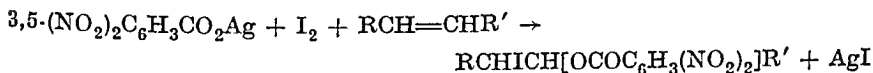
Although benzoates are recommended, silver salts of acetic,^{10,22} propionic,²² and butyric acids^{20,22} have also been used, especially in the preparation of the halo esters. Indeed, the second phase of the reaction of an olefin with silver acetate and an equimolar amount of iodine in benzene solution is slow, and the diester is accompanied by iodo acetates which are difficult to remove.¹⁰

The reaction also proceeds with silver salts of dicarboxylic acids. Thus, silver succinate, iodine, and cyclohexene in ether solution give di-2-iodocyclohexyl succinate. A small quantity of polymeric diester



(C₁₀H₁₄O₄)_n is formed simultaneously. Silver salts of oxalic and phthalic acids and even silver carbonate undergo similar reactions.⁹⁵

Silver 3,5-dinitrobenzoate has been suggested as a reagent for identification of olefins. Simple olefins like ethylene and propylene give the 3,5-dinitrobenzoate of the iodohydrin when treated with equimolar amounts of iodine and silver 3,5-dinitrobenzoate.⁹⁶ When unsymmetrical



olefins are used, the halogen appears exclusively on the less highly substituted carbon atom. This mode of addition, however, is not general, for preformed hypohalites from acetic, butyric, and benzoic acids add to allyl halides to give good yields of 2,3-dihalogenated propyl esters.^{20,97}

Bromine or chlorine can be used in place of iodine.^{14,22,51} With these halogens, however, it is advantageous to carry out the reaction in carbon tetrachloride rather than benzene, to avoid the undesirable side reaction with the latter solvent which leads to the formation of phenyl benzoate.¹⁴ In the absence of detail in Prévost's papers, one is inclined to favor carbon tetrachloride as a solvent for all of the halogens. However, benzene has been used successfully by other experimenters.^{98,99}

Studies on the addition of the complex from silver benzoate and iodine to butadiene have shown that the primary addition is mainly 1:2. Fractionation of the glycols obtained from the action of a limited quantity of the complex with butadiene gave 80% 1,2-glycol and 4% 1,4-glycol.¹¹

The reaction has been applied to the mixture of monohydric phenols

⁹⁵ Birenbaach, Goubeau, and Kolb, *Ber.*, **67**, 1729 (1934).

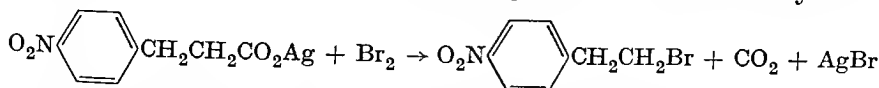
⁹⁶ Halperin, Donahoe, Kleinberg, and VanderWerf, *J. Org. Chem.*, **17**, 623 (1952).

⁹⁷ Edwards and Hodges, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1954**, 761.

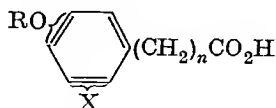
⁹⁸ Hershberg, *Helv. Chim. Acta.*, **17**, 351 (1934).

⁹⁹ Niemann and Wagner, *J. Org. Chem.*, **7**, 227 (1942).

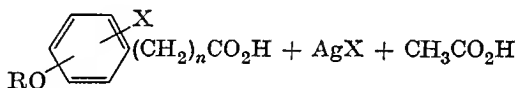
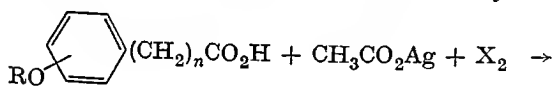
on the silver salts of the unhalogenated acids.¹⁵ Silver β -(*p*-nitrophenyl)-propionate, however, gives *p*-nitrophenethyl bromide in excellent yield.¹⁶



Although the method has little practical value for reasons that will appear below, it has been used to prepare a series of halogenated alkoxyphenyl fatty acids of the general formula.¹⁸



The preparation of the silver salt of the acid to be halogenated is unnecessary. It is sufficient to use dry silver acetate in combination with the halogen; the acyl hypohalite first formed is the active halogenating agent.^{17,18} The reaction is carried out in acetic acid or carbon tetrachloride. It proceeds as indicated only when a phenyl group active



toward electrophilic substitution is present. It is, therefore, quite limited in application. The method is preferred to the mercuric acetate-iodine procedure because of the difficulty of removing mercuric iodide from organic solvents in which it is soluble; silver iodide can be removed quantitatively by filtration.

The silver salts of a variety of carboxylic acids react with iodine in the presence of benzene to yield, among other products, iodobenzene and/or the phenyl ester of the carboxylic acid.¹⁰³ The yield of iodobenzene is highest from silver *o*-nitrobenzoate. In the absence of benzene, however, this silver salt on treatment with bromine gives a 95% yield of *o*-nitro-bromobenzene—the Hunsdiecker product. Benzene, therefore, is not a good solvent for reactions involving acyl hypohalites because it enters into competition for the halogen. When the acyl hypohalite undergoes the Hunsdiecker reaction sufficiently rapidly, benzene can be used as a solvent. This is the case when R is a long chain such as $n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}$ or $n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}$.

The reaction between silver trifluoroacetate and iodine to yield carbon dioxide, silver iodide, and trifluoromethyl iodide does not occur appreciably

¹⁰³ Birckenbach and Meisenheimer, *Ber.*, 69, 723 (1936).

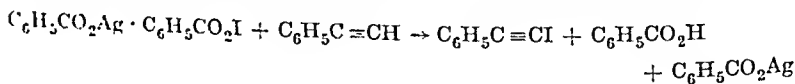
below 100°, ⁷⁷ and silver trifluoroacetate-halogen is, therefore, a useful halogenating agent. Excellent yields of bromo- and iodo-benzenes containing methyl, halogen, methoxyl, amino, dimethylamino, and carboxyl groups as substituents are obtained by this procedure.^{19,52} Benzene is so deactivated, however, by the introduction of a nitro group that the normal Hunsdiecker product, CF_3I , is produced in 75% yield when nitrobenzene is treated with silver trifluoroacetate and iodine.

Normally no solvent is used in these reactions though carbon tetrachloride has been used successfully.⁵² Nitrobenzene is often a suitable solvent.

The halogen enters in the *para* position to the group already present in the benzene derivative if the latter normally directs to that position. Infrared analyses indicate that a small amount of the *ortho* isomer is usually present. Benzoic acid is halogenated in the *meta* position, and there is no indication of *ortho* or *para* halogenation.

Although silver trifluoroacetate-halogen is not so powerful a halogenating agent as silver perchlorate-halogen, it possesses certain specific advantages.¹⁹ Trifluoroacetic acid, formed in the reaction, is volatile and is easily removed by distillation. The danger attending the use of silver perchlorate is avoided. Silver trifluoroacetate is more soluble in organic solvents than silver trichloroacetate, acetate, perchlorate, or sulfate.¹⁹

It has been demonstrated that the Simonini complex from silver benzoate reacts with acetylenes to give excellent yields of iodoacetylenes. With phenylacetylene, the formation of phenyliodoacetylene is quantitative and benzoic acid and silver benzoate have been isolated in quantities corresponding to the following equation.¹² Acetylene itself reacts with

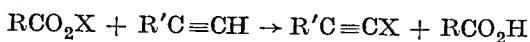


either one or two molecules of the complex to give iodo- and diiodoacetylene, respectively.¹²

It is not necessary to isolate the complex; addition of the acetylene derivative to the complex formed in benzene is satisfactory. However, the use of benzene as a diluent is not practical with chlorine or bromine because it takes part in the reaction. Carbon tetrachloride is satisfactory. Thus, the treatment of silver benzoate in carbon tetrachloride with bromine, chlorine, or iodine followed by addition of 1-heptyne gives good yields of the respective haloacetylenes.¹⁴

Prévost assumes that the Simonini complex is formed with chlorine and bromine in the same manner as with iodine.¹⁴ Such a complex has not been isolated with these halogens, nor is it necessary to assume that it

forms. The reaction could proceed equally well with the intermediate acyl hypohalite.



EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Preparation of Silver Salts

Two general methods are available for preparing the silver salts. The simplest and most direct method is the reaction between the potassium or sodium salt of the acid and silver nitrate. For acids of low molecular weight and for most dibasic acids, this is the most satisfactory method. For the higher acids (above C_9) especially when fairly large quantities are employed, it has been suggested that freshly prepared silver oxide be used.⁴ Reaction of the potassium or sodium salts of the higher acids with silver nitrate leads to voluminous precipitates which are difficult to filter. For acids that are sparingly soluble in water the use of ethanol-water mixtures is recommended. For perfluoro acids unstable in water (undecafluorocyclohexanecarboxylic acid, for example), the use of silver oxide is a necessity. With these acids the reaction is run in perfluorobutyl ether as a solvent. A representative preparation by each of these methods follows. It is essential to the success of the subsequent reactions with the halogens to have the silver salts perfectly dry.

Silver Laurate.⁵⁴ Hot solutions of 50 g. of silver nitrate in 100 ml. of water and 59 g. of lauric acid in 200 ml. of 1.45 *N* potassium hydroxide are added simultaneously to 100 ml. of hot water with stirring. The addition is controlled so that approximately equivalent quantities of the reactants are present at all times. The precipitated silver salt is collected on a filter, washed with water and acetone, and air-dried. This material is powdered and then dried in a vacuum at 60° over phosphorus pentoxide. The yield is 85 g. (94%).

Silver Methyl Octadecanedioate.⁴ The silver oxide precipitated by the admixture of water solutions of 270 g. of silver nitrate and 150 g. of potassium hydroxide is washed free from alkali. The moist oxide is added to 520 g. of molten methyl hydrogen octadecanedioate and stirred vigorously while boiling water is added. The silver salt formed is collected on a filter, washed with hot ethanol, dried, finely powdered, and redried. The yield is 637 g. (99%).

Substituted Silver Benzoates.^{17,90} The organic acid is dissolved in hot ethanol, and a hot aqueous solution of sodium carbonate is added until the solution is basic to litmus. Nitric acid is then added dropwise until the solution is just acid to litmus. Any solid present is filtered, and a hot aqueous solution of an equivalent amount of silver nitrate is added

to the filtrate. The silver salt is removed by filtration, washed with distilled water and ethanol, and dried at 70°.

Silver Bicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one-1-carboxylate.⁷¹ A solution of 20 g. of bicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one-1-carboxylic acid in 50 ml. of methyl alcohol is titrated to the end point of phenolphthalein with a solution of potassium hydroxide in methyl alcohol. A solution of 18.6 g. of silver nitrate in 20 ml. of water and 50 ml. of methyl alcohol is added dropwise with stirring; the silver salt is collected on a filter, washed with methyl alcohol, and dried at 70° under vacuum for eighteen hours. The product contains potassium nitrate but gives results in subsequent reaction that are as satisfactory as those obtained with the silver salt prepared in aqueous solution.

Silver Undecafluorocyclohexanecarboxylate.⁷⁶ To a solution of 9.05 g. of undecafluorocyclohexanecarboxylic acid in 66 ml. of perfluorobutyl ether is added 3.22 g. of alkali-free silver oxide. The mixture is shaken intermittently in the dark over a three-day period. Only a trace of unreacted silver oxide remains. The silver salt, 11.35 g. (94.3%), is collected on a Pyrex filter cone, washed with perfluorobutyl ether, and dried at 50° for ten hours. The salt is a white, light-sensitive, crystalline, non-hygroscopic material, soluble in water. All operations in its preparation are carried out in the dark.

Products Formed by the Hunsdiecker Reaction

Methyl 5-Bromovalerate. The preparation of this material in 52–54% yield from methyl hydrogen adipate is described in *Organic Syntheses*.⁶⁰

***n*-Propyl Bromide.**²⁰ A solution of 40 g. of bromine in 250 ml. of freshly distilled nitrobenzene is added with vigorous shaking and cooling to 53.5 g. of silver butyrate. In about one minute, the bromine has reacted and the solution is yellow in color. This is followed by sudden, turbulent evolution of carbon dioxide, and the solution becomes quite warm. When gas evolution ceases, the silver bromide is removed by filtration and the filtrate is distilled through a Widmer column. There is obtained 17.2 g. (61%) of *n*-propyl bromide, 2.7 g. of butyric acid, and a trace (0.5 g.) of *n*-propyl butyrate.

***n*-Heptyl Bromide.**⁴ To a suspension of 102.5 g. of mercuric octanoate in 100 ml. of carbon disulfide (dried over phosphorus pentoxide) is added dropwise 22 ml. of dry bromine. There is a smooth evolution of carbon dioxide. When the initial reaction has subsided, the mixture is warmed for a short time on the steam bath. The mercuric bromide is removed by filtration and washed well with carbon disulfide. The solvent is removed from the filtrate and washings, and the residue is fractionated

under reduced pressure to yield 55.7 g. (75%) of *n*-heptyl bromide, b.p. 74°/18 mm. A higher boiling fraction (133-137°/18 mm.) is octanoic acid (6.1 g., 10%).

***n*-Undecyl Bromide.**⁵⁴ To a suspension of 46 g. of silver laurate in 200 ml. of carbon tetrachloride (dried over phosphorus pentoxide) is added slowly, with stirring and cooling, 7.5 g. of dry bromine in 20 ml. of dry carbon tetrachloride. The mixture is heated gradually until the evolution of carbon dioxide ceases and is then held for a short time at its boiling point. The silver bromide is removed by filtration, placed in an extraction thimble, and extracted for one to two hours, the filtrate being used as an extracting solvent. After the carbon tetrachloride solution is washed with dilute aqueous sodium hydroxide and water, the solvent is removed and the residue distilled to give 24 g. (67%) of undecyl bromide, b.p. 131-134°/15 mm.; 5.5 g. (18%) of lauric acid can be recovered from the alkaline wash liquid.

1,4-Dibromobutane.⁸⁴ To a well-stirred solution of 48 ml. of dry bromine in 250 ml. of dry carbon tetrachloride is added (with the exclusion of water) 163 g. of silver adipate. The addition is made in small portions over a seven-hour period. After the addition of each portion of silver salt, the reaction is started by warming to 50° and is allowed to continue until the evolution of carbon dioxide ceases. Heating is continued for one-half hour to complete the reaction. The silver bromide is removed by filtration and washed thoroughly with ether. The carbon tetrachloride and ether solutions are combined and decolorized by shaking with a saturated solution of sodium bisulfite; the decolorized solution is shaken with 10% aqueous potassium hydroxide solution, any emulsion that forms being broken with sodium chloride. The solution is finally washed with sodium chloride solution and dried. The solvents are removed through a fractionating column at ordinary pressure, and the residue is distilled. The 1,4-dibromobutane distils at 78-81°/11 mm.; the yield is 58 g. (58%).

1,10-Dibromodecane.³ A mixture of 40 g. of the silver salt of dodecanedicarboxylic acid and 100 ml. of carbon tetrachloride is treated gradually with 9 ml. of bromine. The silver bromide that separates during the reaction is removed by filtration and washed with hot carbon tetrachloride. The filtrate and washings are combined and shaken with sodium bicarbonate solution to remove any free acid. The solvent is removed and the residue distilled to give 16.8 g. (about 60%) of 1,10-dibromodecane, b.p. 190-195°, m.p. 35-36°.

Methyl 17-Bromoheptadecanoate.⁴ To a suspension of 673 g. of the silver salt of methyl 17-carboxyheptadecanoate in 750 ml. of carbon tetrachloride is added, with cooling and stirring, 81 ml. of bromine.

The mixture is finally warmed on a water bath for a short time, and the silver bromide formed is removed by filtration. When the filtrate is cooled to 0° , 58 g. of the monoester acid separates. The remainder can be removed by shaking the solution with dry potassium carbonate; aqueous alkalis form emulsions that are difficult to deal with. Removal of solvent and distillation gives 432 g. (75%) of methyl 17-bromoheptadecanoate, b.p. $212-214^{\circ}/2.5$ mm.

Trifluoromethyl Iodide.⁷⁷ A mixture of 66 g. (0.3 mole) of finely ground silver trifluoroacetate and 81 g. (0.32 mole) of powdered iodine was placed in a horizontally held tube, 25 mm. in diameter and 25 cm. long; this tube was sealed at one end while the other end was connected to a wide trap cooled in ice water and backed by two traps cooled in solid carbon dioxide (Dry Ice) and a small water bubbler which served to show the rate of evolution of the carbon dioxide. The ice trap collected a fine sublimate of iodine and prevented clogging of the solid carbon dioxide (Dry Ice) traps, the first of which collected practically all of the trifluoromethyl iodide.

The mixture of silver salt and iodine was heated cautiously with a gas burner, starting at the closed end. The decomposition is smooth at about 100° , but tends to propagate spontaneously and escape control when the heating is not done patiently. The bubbling of carbon dioxide is used as an indicator for the speed at which the burner can be moved along the tube. With the small equipment used, it took ninety minutes to complete the reaction. The crude trifluoromethyl iodide amounted to 47 g. (85%). A series of larger runs gave an average yield of 87%. Fractional distillation gave a product boiling at 21.8° .

Trifluoromethyl iodide is conveniently stored in glass ampules. Exposed to light, it slowly becomes pink, then purple.

A comparable procedure is described by Haszeldine.⁷⁸

Cyclobutyl Bromide.³⁵ To a flask equipped with a mercury-seal stirrer is added 560 ml. of carbon tetrachloride (dried over phosphorus pentoxide), and 50 ml. of carbon tetrachloride is distilled in order to dry the flask thoroughly. The system is protected with a drying tube and, after addition of 85.2 g. (0.534 mole) of bromine (dried over phosphorus pentoxide), the mixture is cooled to -25° with stirring. To this is added 111 g. (0.534 mole) of the silver salt of cyclobutanecarboxylic acid. The salt is added over a period of about fifty minutes through a wide rubber connection from the flask in which it had been dried. After an induction period of five to twenty minutes, a vigorous evolution of carbon dioxide sets in and continues as the remainder of the silver salt is added. Evolution of carbon dioxide is accompanied by the evolution of heat, but the temperature is easily maintained at -25 to -20° with a solid carbon

dioxide-acetone bath. After addition is complete, the mixture is stirred briefly until gas evolution becomes slow and then is allowed to warm to room temperature with stirring. When gas evolution has ceased, the silver bromide is removed and washed with carbon tetrachloride. The filtrate is washed with 2 *N* sodium hydroxide and water and then dried over calcium chloride. The combined alkaline extracts from a total of 2.6 moles of silver salt yield only 2.2 g. of acidic material.

The carbon tetrachloride solution is flash-distilled through a 1-meter column packed with glass helices and equipped with heated jacket and partial reflux head. During flash distillation, the volume of solution in the distilling flask is kept sufficiently large so that the mole fraction of cyclobutyl bromide is kept below 0.2. This avoids loss of bromide, and the carbon tetrachloride is collected at 76.9°. After all the carbon tetrachloride solution has been added, removal of solvent is continued and an intermediate fraction (7.9 g.), b.p. 76.9–108.2°, is collected. Cyclobutyl bromide (36 g., 50%) is collected at 108.2–108.3°; n_D^{20} 1.4801, d_4^{20} 1.434, MR_D 26.75 (calculated 26.72). There is 15 g. of distillation residue. By redistilling the intermediate fractions from several runs and stripping the residues in a vacuum, the total yield is raised to 53%. The same yield is obtained in larger (1.9 mole) runs.

***p*-Nitrobromobenzene.**¹⁶ To a suspension of 34 g. of silver *p*-nitrobenzoate in 500 ml. of carbon tetrachloride 20 g. of bromine is added dropwise at room temperature. The deep-red solution obtained at the end of the addition is heated slowly to boiling; there is no evolution of carbon dioxide below the reflux temperature. The solution is boiled for three hours, during which time the color gradually fades. The hot solution is filtered, and the filtrate is washed with sodium bisulfite and sodium bicarbonate solutions. Acidification of the sodium bicarbonate extract produces 2 g. (10%) of *p*-nitrobenzoic acid. Evaporation of the carbon tetrachloride leaves 20 g. (74%) of crystalline *p*-nitrobromobenzene, m.p. 126–127°.

Ethyl α -Bromo- β -phenylpropionate.⁸² To a solution of 37.5 g. (0.15 mole) of diethyl benzylmalonate in 100 ml. of absolute ethanol is added, with stirring, a solution of 8.7 g. (0.15 mole) of potassium hydroxide in 100 ml. of absolute ethanol. The solution is allowed to stand at room temperature for four to twelve hours; the *pH* of the final mixture has a value between 7 and 8. Any solids that have formed (assumed to be the dipotassium salt) are removed by filtration. The ethanol is distilled until a thick syrup remains. The last traces of ethanol are removed in vacuum, and the resulting crystals of the potassium salt of the half ester of benzylmalonic acid are placed in a vacuum desiccator for twelve hours.

The dried, finely powdered potassium salt is mixed with 100 ml. of

carbon tetrachloride. The ice-cold mixture is stirred vigorously while a solution of 25 g. (0.15 mole) of bromine in 50 ml. of carbon tetrachloride is added dropwise over a period of two to four hours. The bromine is decolorized rapidly at the start of the reaction, but persists after all of the bromine solution has been added. The mixture is filtered, and the solvent is removed in a current of air. The residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give colorless, strongly lachrymatory ethyl α -bromo- β -phenylpropionate 38 g. (80%), b.p. 155–159°/15 mm.

Products Formed by the Simonini Reaction

Because the esters produced by the Simonini reaction are usually procured more easily by other procedures, the reaction has not been developed as a synthetic method. Consequently, no detailed procedure is available. The following example is typical of the experimental work on this reaction.

Benzyl Phenylacetate.⁴⁹ When 24.3 g. of silver phenylacetate and 12.7 g. of iodine are mixed in ether, an exothermic reaction sets in and the ether boils. The solvent is removed by distillation and the residue heated for one hour at 80°. The residue is extracted with ether from which 1.35 g. (10%) of phenylacetic acid and 9.35 g. (68%) of benzyl phenylacetate are obtained.

Products Formed by the Prévost Reaction

2-Iodocyclohexyl Acetate.²¹ To 8.2 g. (0.1 mole) of cyclohexene in ether is added 25.4 g. (0.1 mole) of iodine and 16.6 g. (0.1 mole) of silver acetate. An exothermic reaction ensues, and the ether begins to boil. The silver iodide formed in the reaction is removed by filtration, the solvent removed, and the residue fractionated. The product, 2-iodocyclohexyl acetate, obtained in 80% yield, boils at 120°/12 mm.

3-Phenyl-1,2-propyleneglycol Dibenzoate.⁹⁸ To 11.8 g. of allylbenzene in 300 ml. of dry benzene is added 45.8 g. of silver benzoate and 25.4 g. of iodine (or the corresponding amount of the silver benzoate-iodine complex). This mixture is heated under reflux for fifteen hours with the careful exclusion of moisture. The reaction mixture is cooled, the precipitated silver iodide removed by filtration, and the filtrate washed several times with aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution and finally with water. The solution is dried, the benzene removed, and the reddish-brown residue crystallized in an ice-salt bath. Trituration with petroleum ether is necessary to induce crystallization. The product is collected on a filter, washed with petroleum ether, and dried. The yield of crude product melting at 70–71° is 28.5 g. (85%). The pure product

melts at 74–75°. Hydrolysis to the glycol in a yield of about 85% effected with sodium hydroxide.

1,2-Hexadecanediol.⁹⁹ Iodine (10.6 g.) in 100 ml. of dry benzene is added, with shaking, to a suspension of 26.5 g. of silver benzoate in 150 ml. of benzene. To this solution is added, slowly and with shaking, 10.5 g. of 1-hexadecene in 50 ml. of benzene. The mixture is heated under reflux for one hour, cooled, and filtered, and the filtrate freed of solvent. The residual glycol dibenzoate is saponified by heating under reflux for three hours with 12 g. of potassium hydroxide in 75 ml. of ethanol and 25 ml. of water. The glycol is recovered by pouring the hydrolysate into 500 ml. of hot water. After cooling, the crude glycol is collected, recrystallized twice from methanol, then from ligroin (b.p. 60–70°), and finally from methanol to give 4 g. (33%) of 1,2-hexadecanediol, m.p. 73–73.6°.

By a similar procedure, 288 g. of 1-octadecene, 620 g. of silver benzoate, and 290 g. of iodine give 239 g. (73%) of 1,2-octadecanediol, m.p. 79–79.5°.

2-Bromocyclohexyl Benzoate.²² To a suspension of 11 g. of silver benzoate in 75 ml. of carbon tetrachloride cooled to –10° is added one-half of a solution of 7.3 g. of bromine in 18 ml. of carbon tetrachloride and one-half of a solution of 3.8 g. of cyclohexene in 15 ml. of the same solvent. After ten or fifteen minutes, the remainder of the bromine and cyclohexene solutions is added. The precipitate is removed by filtration and washed with carbon tetrachloride. The combined filtrates are washed first with dilute aqueous sodium hydroxide to remove any benzoic acid and then with water. The solution is dried over calcium chloride, the solvent removed, and the residue is recrystallized from petroleum ether. The product (42%) melts at 64–64.5°.

Products Formed by Substitution Reactions of Acyl Hypohalites

β -(2-Iodo-5-methoxyphenyl)propionic Acid. *Method 1.*¹⁸ To a stirred solution of 0.1 mole of β -(3-methoxyphenyl)propionic acid in 100 ml. of acetic acid there is added alternately, in small portions, 25.4 g. (0.1 mole) of powdered iodine and 16.6 g. (0.1 mole) of silver acetate. Iodination proceeds rapidly at room temperature. The iodinated mixture is stirred for one hour at room temperature after the addition is complete, filtered, and the filtrate is diluted with water. The oily product that separates is extracted with ether, the ether extracts are washed free of acetic acid, and the iodinated acid is purified by recrystallization from a mixture of chloroform and petroleum ether. The product obtained in 30% yield melts at 109–110°.

*Method II.*¹⁸ To a suspension of 14.3 g. (0.05 mole) of silver β -(3-methoxyphenyl)propionate in 100 ml. of anhydrous carbon tetrachloride in a 500-ml. three-necked flask equipped with an efficient stirrer, there is added dropwise at room temperature 25.4 g. (0.1 mole) of iodine dissolved in carbon tetrachloride. The iodine reacts immediately and silver iodide precipitates. After the addition is complete, the mixture is stirred for one hour, the silver iodide is separated, and the solvent is removed under reduced pressure. The iodinated acid is purified by crystallization from chloroform-petroleum ether. The yield is 90%, m.p. 109–110°.

p-Diiodobenzene.¹⁹ A mixture of 12 ml. (0.11 mole) of iodobenzene and 4.4 g. (0.02 mole) of silver trifluoroacetate is heated to 100° in a small flask fitted with a condenser which is connected by rubber tubing to liquid air traps. The mixture is cooled to room temperature and 5.1 g. (0.02 mole) of powdered iodine is added. There is an immediate precipitation of silver iodide. The mixture is heated rapidly to 160°, cooled to room temperature, and filtered. The liquid air traps contain only a small amount of trifluoroacetic acid. Distillation of the solution gives 1.85 g. (80%) of trifluoroacetic acid, b.p. 71–72°, iodobenzene, b.p. 80°/12 mm., and 5.1 g. (77%) of *p*-diiodobenzene, which may be crystallized from ethanol as plates, m.p. 128°.

4-Iodoveratrole.^{53a} A mixture of 110 g. (0.5 mole) of silver trifluoroacetate and 69 g. (0.5 mole) of dry veratrole was placed in a dry, 1-l. flask equipped with stirrer and dropping funnel. A chloroform solution of iodine was prepared from 127 g. (0.5 mole) of iodine and about 750 ml. of chloroform. The chloroform solution was added during one-half hour, after which any undissolved iodine was added as the solid. (Alternatively, sufficient chloroform to dissolve the iodine, about 15 : 1, may be used.) After stirring for two hours, the mixture was filtered and the precipitate washed with 100 ml. of chloroform. The solvent was removed and the residue distilled. The yield of product boiling at 152–155°/15 mm. was 112 g. (85%). Redistillation gave a pale-yellow product, n_D^{25} 1.6117, which after crystallization from ethanol melted at 34–35°.

TABULAR SURVEY OF SILVER SALT-HALOGEN REACTIONS

In Tables I–XVII are listed all the examples of silver salt-halogen reactions that have been noted in a survey of the literature through 1954.* In general, the substances are arranged in increasing order of molecular weight. Most of the tables provide the following information: silver salt employed, solvent, main product of the reaction, yield, and reference. A separate column for the halogen used is not included since the formula of the product will make this clear.

* The bibliography in reference 2a covers the literature through June 1955.

TABLE I
 FORMATION OF ALKYL HALIDES FROM ALIPHATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Acid	Solvent	Main Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	None	CH_3Br	—	56
	None	CH_3Br	80	3
	CCl_4	CH_3Br	69	20
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{Br}$	61	20
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CS_2	$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{Br}$	31	25
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{H}^*$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	74 erude	25
	CS_2	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{Br}$	14	25
	CS_2	No definite products		25
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCO}_2\text{H}$	CS_2	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{Br}$	15	25
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$	92†	63
$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{Br}$	55-65	66
$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_7\text{CHBrCH}_3$	76	66
$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHBr}$	42	25
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CS_2	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	62	33
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCH}_2\text{Br}$	83†	63
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	79	30
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	30-50	24, 26, 28
$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}^\ddagger$		$n\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CHBrC}_2\text{H}_5^\S$		

* The (+) acid gives an optically inactive chloride.

† The yield is not based on pure isolated material, but on a quantitative determination of bromine present in the neutral fraction of the reaction product.

‡ The silver salt was added to bromine in carbon tetrachloride, the reverse of the normal addition.

§ Both optically active forms of the silver salt gave the optically inactive bromide. However, in reference 28 it is reported that the bromide from silver (+)-2-ethylhexanoate had some optical activity.

TABLE I—Continued
FORMATION OF ALKYL HALIDES FROM ALIPHATIC MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Acid	Solvent	Main Product	Yield, %	Reference
$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{Br}$	59-80	3, 54, 55
	CHCl_3	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{Br}$	75-80	3
	Pet. ether	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{I}$	51-65	8
	C_6H_6	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{I}$	72-87	8
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{I}$	70-78	8
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}\text{I}$	66†	63
$(i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11})_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$(i\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11})_2\text{CHBr}$	65-77; 70	55, 58
$n\text{-C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{Br}$	51	87
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}\text{I}$	18	87
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{Cl}$	30	87
$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2$	$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{Cl}$	70-80	3, 55, 87
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{Br}$	15-47	87
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{I}$	Variable	3
	None	$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{Cl}$	73-86; 89†	55, 63
$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{Br}$	38 crude	20
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{Br}$	60	87
	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{I}$	65	8
	C_6H_6	$n\text{-C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{I}$		

† The yield is not based on pure isolated material, but on a quantitative determination of bromine present in the neutral fraction of the reaction mixture.

TABLE II

FORMATION OF ALKYL HALIDES FROM PHENYL-SUBSTITUTED CARBOXYLIC ACIDS
 Unless otherwise indicated, the solvent was carbon tetrachloride.

Acid	Main Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	54*	63
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	20-37†	25
$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	85	16
$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{CHBr}$	8	25
$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{CCO}_2\text{H}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3\text{COH}$	8	25
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CHBrC}_6\text{H}_5$	—‡	27
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	5-15	16, 25
$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$	80	16
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCHBrC}_6\text{H}_5$	52	16
$(+)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$(+, -)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CHBrC}_2\text{H}_5$	17	26
$(-)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$(+, -)\text{-C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CHBrC}_2\text{H}_5$	—	26
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CCO}_2\text{H}\S$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CI}$	94	49

* This yield is based on a quantitative determination of bromine present in the neutral fraction of the reaction mixture and not on pure isolated material.

† The silver salt was added to bromine in carbon tetrachloride, the reverse of the normal procedure.

‡ It was originally reported²⁷ that 1-bromo-1-phenylethane was obtained in 55% yield. Other chemists^{83,85} could not obtain this product, and, in attempts to repeat their own work, the original workers have also reported failure;²⁸ no alkyl bromide was obtained.

§ Although no identifiable substances were isolated from the products resulting from the action of iodine on silver cinnamate or silver crotonate, silver phenylpropionate gave an excellent yield of the iodide. A small amount of triiodostyrene was formed simultaneously.

|| The solvent used in this experiment was benzene.

TABLE III

FORMATION OF HALIDES AND/OR LACTONES FROM
DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS

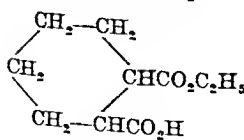
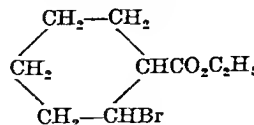
Unless otherwise indicated, the solvent was carbon tetrachloride.

Acid	Main Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}^*$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{Br}$	32-37†	40, 85
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{OCCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ └──────────┘	69‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}^*$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{CHBr}_2\text{§}$	28	40
$\text{HO}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{BrCH}_2\text{CHBrCH}_3$	12	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	Small	20
	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	21	54
	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}^*$	58	84
	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br} $	28	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{OCCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{O} $ └──────────┘	87‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Br}$	44 ‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{OCCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{O} $ └──────────┘	50‡	63
$2\cdot\text{HO}_2\text{CC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$2\cdot\text{BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}$	10	63
$3\cdot\text{HO}_2\text{CC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$3\cdot\text{BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{Br}^{**}$	4	63
$4\cdot\text{HO}_2\text{CC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$		—**	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{Br}$	82‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{BrCH}_2\text{CHBrC}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i$	25‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{Br}$	62-81	3, 54, 63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{OCCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i)\text{O} $ └──────────┘	60‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{CC}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CH}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CHBrC}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{-}i $	33‡	63
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\text{Br}$	60	3
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{14}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_{14}\text{Br}$	44	54
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHBrCHBrC}_6\text{H}_5, \dagger\dagger$	High	26
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}^*$	$\text{Br}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHBrCH}_2\text{Br}$	4-6	40

TABLE IV

FORMATION OF HALO ESTERS FROM ACID ESTERS

Unless otherwise indicated, the solvent was carbon tetrachloride.

Silver Salt of Acid	Main Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{Br}$	65-68	4, 60, 61
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{Br}$	70	4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{Br}$	70	4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{Br}$	75	3, 4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{Br}$	71	3, 4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{11}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{11}\text{Br}$	78	4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{12}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{12}\text{Br}$	71	4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{13}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{13}\text{Br}$	73	4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{14}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{14}\text{Br}$	70 (65-70)	4, 62
	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{14}\text{Br}$	78-85*	62
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{15}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{15}\text{Br}$	70	4
$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{16}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_{16}\text{Br}$	75	4
		68-72	5

* The solvent in this experiment was trichloroethylene.

TABLE V

FORMATION OF ALKYL HALIDES FROM POLYHALO
AND PERFLUORO ACIDS*

Acid	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_2\text{FCO}_2\text{H}$	CH_2FCl	52	73
	CH_2FBr	62	73
	CH_2FI	55	73
$\text{CHFClCO}_2\text{H}$	CHFCl_2	73	73
	CHFClBr	67	73
	CHFClI	35	73
$\text{CHFBrcO}_2\text{H}$	CHFBrcI	67	73
	CHFBrc_2	64	73
	CHFBrcI	19	73
CHFICO_2H	CHFIl_2	18	73
$\text{CHF}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CHF_2Cl	91	73
	CHF_2Br	88-93	73
	CHF_2I	93	73
$\text{CFCIbrcO}_2\text{H}$	CFCI_2Br	63	73
	CFCIbrc_2	71	73
	CFCI_3	63	73
$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{CFCI}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CHFClCO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \right\} \text{mixture}$	CHFCl_2	78	73
	CFCI_2Br	58	73
	CHFClBr	61	73
	CFCI_2I	10	73
	CHFClI	29	73
	CF_2Br_2	81	73
$\text{CF}_2\text{BrCO}_2\text{H}$	CF_2Cl_2	88	73
$\text{CF}_2\text{ClCO}_2\text{H}$	CF_2ClBr	91	73
	CF_2ClI	78	73
$\text{CCl}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	—	—	49

* Unless otherwise specified, the reactions with chlorine and bromine were carried out in sealed tubes or in a steel autoclave without a solvent; with iodine an intimate mixture of the halogen and silver salt was heated in an open flask.

TABLE V—Continued

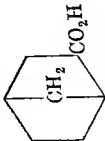
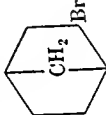


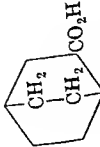
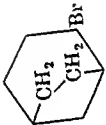
 FORMATION OF ALKYL HALIDES FROM POLYHALO
AND PERFLUORO ACIDS

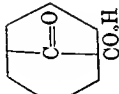
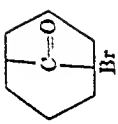
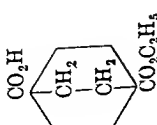
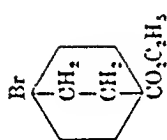
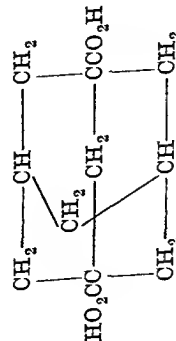
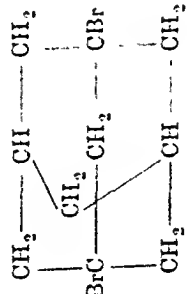
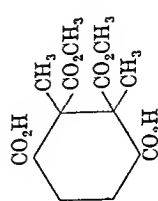
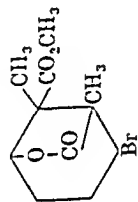
Acid	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	CF_3Cl	90; 88	78, 79
	CF_3Br	88; 98	78, 79
	CF_3I	87–95	74, 77, 78
$\text{C}_2\text{F}_5\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_2\text{F}_5\text{Cl}$	94; 83	73, 79
	$\text{C}_2\text{F}_5\text{Br}$	98; 98	73, 79
	$\text{C}_2\text{F}_5\text{I}$	94; 86	73, 74
$n\text{-C}_3\text{F}_7\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$n\text{-C}_3\text{F}_7\text{Cl}$	91; 71	73, 79
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{F}_7\text{Br}$	97; 95	73, 79
	$n\text{-C}_3\text{F}_7\text{I}$	90; 86–93	73, 74, 80
$n\text{-C}_4\text{F}_9\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$n\text{-C}_4\text{F}_9\text{Cl}$	89	73
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{F}_9\text{Br}$	95	73
	$n\text{-C}_4\text{F}_9\text{I}$	89	73
$n\text{-C}_5\text{F}_{11}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$n\text{-C}_5\text{F}_{11}\text{Cl}$	85; 71	73, 75
	$n\text{-C}_5\text{F}_{11}\text{Br}$	91; 83	73, 75
	$n\text{-C}_5\text{F}_{11}\text{I}$	89; 74	73, 75
$n\text{-C}_6\text{F}_{13}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$n\text{-C}_6\text{F}_{13}\text{Cl}$	83	73
	$n\text{-C}_6\text{F}_{13}\text{Br}$	90	73
	$n\text{-C}_6\text{F}_{13}\text{I}$	90	73
$n\text{-C}_7\text{F}_{15}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$n\text{-C}_7\text{F}_{15}\text{Cl}$	80	73
	$n\text{-C}_7\text{F}_{15}\text{Br}$	86	73
	$n\text{-C}_7\text{F}_{15}\text{I}$	85	73
$\text{HO}_2\text{C}(\text{CF}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{Cl}(\text{CF}_2)_3\text{Cl}$	64	86
	$\text{Br}(\text{CF}_2)_3\text{Br}$	80	86
	$\text{I}(\text{CF}_2)_3\text{I}$	18†	74, 86
$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CF}_2-\text{CF}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CF}_2 \quad \text{CF}_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CF}_2-\text{CF}_2 \end{array} \text{CFCO}_2\text{H} $	$\text{C}_6\text{F}_{11}\text{Br}^\ddagger$	54	76
	$\text{C}_6\text{F}_{11}\text{I}^\ddagger$	63	76

† The main product of the reaction is perfluorobutyrolactone.

‡ Perfluorotriethylamine was used as a solvent.

TABLE VI
FORMATION OF ALICYCLIC BROMIDES FROM ALICYCLIC CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Acid	Solvent	Main Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Cl}_2$	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHBr}^*$	15-20	67
	CCl_2F_2	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHBr}$	53	67
$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CCl}_4, \text{CF}_2\text{Cl}_2$	$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHBr}^{*\dagger}$	50, 57	35, 48
$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CHBr}$	73-80	5
$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4	$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CHCl}$	70	5
	CCl_4	$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CHBr}$	73-80; 57	5, 63
	CCl_4	$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CHBr}$	80	5
$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	CCl_4			69
	CCl_4		55	
CO_2H	Pet. ether	Br	50 \dagger	37
	CCl_4 (high temp.)		58 \dagger	37
	CCl_4 (low temp.)		60 \dagger	37
	—		—	68, 69

	CCl_4		74	71
	CCl_2F_2		55	88
	CCl_4		28	70
	—		—	72

* The silver salt was added to the bromine in the solvent at -25 to -35° , the reverse of the normal addition.
 † This reaction has also been run with the mercuric salt. See Table IX.
 ‡ The products are mixtures of chloro- and bromo-apocamphane. Attempts at separation failed.

TABLE VII

FORMATION OF ARYL HALIDES FROM AROMATIC CARBOXYLIC ACIDS*

Substituents in Aromatic Acid (Benzoic)	Substituents in Aryl Bromide (Bromobenzene)	Yield, %	Reference
None	None	14-18	16, 20
None	None	46-80	17, 20, 63
2-Chloro	2-Chloro	38	16
		46	17
3-Chloro	3-Chloro	44	16
4-Chloro	4-Chloro	55	16
2-Nitro	2-Nitro	95, 71	16, 63
3-Nitro	3-Nitro	89	16
		68	17
4-Nitro	4-Nitro	79	16
3-Methyl	3-Methyl†	27	17
4-Methyl	4-Methyl‡	17	16
3-Methoxy	2-Carboxy-4-methoxy	50	17
4-Methoxy	3-Bromo-4-methoxy§	19-23	16
3-Bromo-4-methoxy	3-Bromo-4-methoxy	92	16

* In all the reactions recorded in this table carbon tetrachloride was used as the solvent.

† 3,4-Dibromotoluene was also obtained in 13% yield.

‡ The principal product was 3-bromo-*p*-toluic acid, obtained in 66% yield.

§ The principal product was 3-bromo-4-methoxybenzoic acid, obtained in 73% yield.

TABLE VIII
FORMATION OF SUBSTITUTED ALKYL HALIDES OR THEIR DECOMPOSITION PRODUCTS
FROM SUBSTITUTED MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Acid	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
<i>A. Hydroxy Acids</i>				
$C_6H_5CHOHCO_2H$	$(C_2H_5)_2O$	C_6H_5CHO	Variable	3
$n-C_{14}H_{29}CHOHCO_2H$	None	$n-C_{14}H_{29}CHO$	—	3
<i>B. Halogen Acids</i>				
$BrCH_2CH_2CO_2H^*$	CCl_4	$Br(CH_2)_2Br$	69	40
$CH_3(CH_2)_2CHBrCO_2H^*$	CCl_4	$CH_3(CH_2)_2CHBr_2$	52	40
$n-C_{16}H_{33}CHBrCO_2H$	CCl_4	$n-C_{16}H_{33}CHBr_2$	70-75 crude	3
$n-C_8H_{17}(CHCl)_2(CH_2)_7CO_2H$	CCl_4	$n-C_8H_{17}(CHCl)_2(CH_2)_7Br$	76 crude	3
$n-C_7H_{11}(CHBr)_2CH_2(CHBr)_2(CH_2)_7CO_2H^*$	CCl_4	$n-C_5H_{11}(CHBr)_2CH_2(CHBr)_2(CH_2)_7Br$	—	59
<i>C. Keto Acids</i>				
CH_3COCO_2H	CCl_4	CH_3COBr	—	3
$CH_3CO(CH_2)_7CO_2H$	CCl_4	$CH_3CO(CH_2)_7Br$	39†	63
<i>D. Amino Acids†</i>				
$CH_3CH(NHCOC_6H_5)CO_2H$	CH_3CO_2H	$CH_3CH(NHCOC_6H_5)Br$	Variable	81
$n-C_4H_9CH(NHCOC_6H_5)CO_2H$	$(C_2H_5)_2O$	$n-C_4H_9CH(NHCOC_6H_5)Br$	Variable	81
$n-C_4H_9CH(NHCOC_6H_5)CO_2H$	CCl_4	$n-C_4H_9CH(NHCOC_6H_5)Br$	Variable	81
$C_6H_5CH_2CH(NHCOC_6H_5)CO_2H$	CH_3CO_2H	$C_6H_5CH_2CH(NHCOC_6H_5)Br$	Variable	81

* The dry silver salt was added to the halogen in carbon tetrachloride at a low temperature.

† The yield is not based on isolated material, but on a quantitative determination of the halogen present in the neutral fraction of the reaction mixture.

‡ The substituted alkyl halides formed from acylated amino acids are highly hygroscopic materials which decompose in water with the formation of aldehyde, amide, and hydrogen bromide. The yields of aldehyde isolated through the dinitro-phenylhydrazones are variable (20-45%).

TABLE IX
FORMATION OF HALOGEN COMPOUNDS BY THE ACTION OF HALOGEN ON VARIOUS METALLIC SALTS
OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Acid	Salt	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{HOCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	Hg^{++}	CS_2	CH_2O	60-80	3
$\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	Na^*	None	CF_3I	58-61	78
	K^*	None	CF_3I	40	73, 78
	Ba^*	None	CF_3I	32	78
	Hg^{++*}	None	CF_3I	35	78
	Pb^*	None	CF_3I	26	73, 78
$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHCO}_2\text{H}$	Hg^{++}	CS_2	$\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHBr}$	45	5
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{Br}$	23	82
$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	Ti^+	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Cl}$	High	3
	Ti^+	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{Br}$	100	3
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHClC}_2\text{H}_5$	41	83
	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrC}_2\text{H}_5$	36	82
$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	45	4
	Hg^+	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	60	3
	Hg^+	CS_2	$n\text{-C}_7\text{H}_{15}\text{Br}$	75	3, 4
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrC}_3\text{H}_7\text{-}i$	30	82
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHClC}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n$	52	83
			$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrC}_4\text{H}_9\text{-}n$	67	82
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{-}n)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHClC}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{-}n$	54	83
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrC}_6\text{H}_{11}$	45	82
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHBrCH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$	80	82
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{-}n)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHClC}_8\text{H}_{17}\text{-}n$	20	83
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCH}(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{-}n)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	K	CCl_4	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{CCHClC}_{10}\text{H}_{21}\text{-}n$	16	83
$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	Hg^{++}	CCl_4	$n\text{-C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}\text{Br}$	60-70	3

* The reaction was carried out in a steel autoclave at 270°.

TABLE XI

 FORMATION OF ALDEHYDES AND KETONES BY THE ACTION OF
 IODINE ON THE SILVER SALTS OF HYDROXY ACIDS

Acid	Diluent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{HOCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$	CH_2O^*	—	49, 89
$\text{CH}_2\text{OHCHOHCO}_2\text{H}$	Quartz	CH_2O^*	—	89
$\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$	CH_3CHO^*	—	49, 89
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHOHCO}_2\text{H}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CHO}$	60†	49, 89
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CO}^*$	—	89
$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	C_6H_6	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5^*$	—	49

* This material was identified as one product of the reaction mixture; no yields were recorded.

† The product was contaminated with benzene which was the solvent used in one case.⁴⁹

$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CHCO}_2\text{H} \text{ (cis)*} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CHCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} $	Sand	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}-\text{CO} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \quad \text{O} \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2 \end{array} $	49, 92
$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \end{array} $	None	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2\text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{C} \quad \text{CH}_2\text{O} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2\text{O} \end{array} $	92
$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CHCO}_2\text{H} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{H}_3\text{CCCH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CHCO}_2\text{H} \end{array} $	Sand	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}-\text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{H}_3\text{CCCH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{C}-\text{O} \\ \quad \quad \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_3 \end{array} $	92
$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{C}(\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \end{array} $	None	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2\text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{C} \quad \text{CH}_2\text{O} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2\text{O} \end{array} $	93

* The *trans*-isomer also gave the *cis*-lactone, but in a smaller yield.

TABLE XIII

ADDITION OF ACYL HYPOHALITES TO OLEFINS

The acyl hypohalite was prepared from the silver salt of the acid and halogen and was used without isolation. Exceptions to this statement are indicated by footnotes.

Olefin	Acyl Hypohalite	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reformation
Ethylene	$C_6H_5CO_2I$ 3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2I$ *	C_6H_6 (C_2H_5) $_2O$	Ethanediol dibenzoate 2-Iodoethyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	Good	10
Propylene	$C_6H_5CO_2I$ 3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	C_6H_6 (C_2H_5) $_2O$	1,2-Propanediol dibenzoate 1-Iodo-2-propyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	Good	96 10
Allyl chloride	CH_3CO_2Cl	CCl_4	2,3-Dichloropropyl acetate	48	96
Allyl bromide	CH_3CO_2Br $C_4H_9CO_2Br$ $C_6H_5CO_2Br$ 3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2Cl$	CCl_4 CCl_4 CCl_4 $CHCl_3$	2,3-Dibromopropyl acetate 2,3-Dibromopropyl butyrate 2,3-Dibromopropyl benzoate 1-Chloro-2-butyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	85	97 97 97
1-Butene	3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2Br$	$CHCl_3$	1-Bromo-2-butyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	—	96
<i>cis</i> -2-Butene	3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2I$ 3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	(C_2H_5) $_2O$ (C_2H_5) $_2O$	benzoate 1-Iodo-2-butyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate <i>threo</i> -3-Iodo-2-butyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	—	96 96
<i>trans</i> -2-Butene	3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	(C_2H_5) $_2O$	benzoate <i>erythro</i> -3-Iodo-2-butyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	—	96
Isobutene	3,5-(NO_2) $_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	(C_2H_5) $_2O$	1-Iodo-2-methyl-2-propyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	—	96

Butadiene	$C_6H_5CO_2I^+$ $C_6H_5CO_2I^+$	C_6H_6 C_6H_6	1,2,3,4-Butanetetrol tetrabenzoate 1-Butene-3,4-diol 2-Butene-1,4-diol	60 80 4	11 11
1-Pentene	CH_3CO_2I $C_6H_5CO_2I$ $3,5-(NO_2)_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	C_6H_6 C_6H_6 $(C_2H_5)_2O$	1,2-Pentanediol diacetate 1,2-Pentanediol dibenzoate 1-Iodo-2-pentyl 3,5-dinitro- benzoate	Good Good —	10 10 96
Cyclopentene	$3,5-(NO_2)_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	$(C_2H_5)_2O$	2-Iodocyclopentyl 3,5-dinitro- benzoate	—	96
1-Hexene	$3,5-(NO_2)_2C_6H_3CO_2I$	$(C_2H_5)_2O$	1-Iodo-2-hexyl 3,5-dinitro- benzoate	—	96
Cyclohexene	CH_3CO_2Br CH_3CO_2I $C_2H_5CO_2Br$ $n-C_3H_7CO_2Br$	CCl_4 $(C_2H_5)_2O$ $CHCl_3$; C_6H_5N $CHCl_3 + C_6H_5N$	2-Bromocyclohexyl acetate 2-Iodocyclohexyl acetate 2-Bromocyclohexyl propionate 2-Bromocyclohexyl <i>n</i> -butyrate 2-Bromocyclohexyl <i>n</i> -butyrate 2-Chlorocyclohexyl benzoate 2-Bromocyclohexyl benzoate 2-Bromocyclohexyl benzoate 2-Iodocyclohexyl benzoate (+, -)- <i>trans</i> -1,2-Cyclohexanediol dibenzoate	— 32 80 48 47 50 Good 40-42 Good 60	96 22 21, 94 22 22 20 14, 22 20, 22 14 14, 21
	$C_6H_5CO_2Cl$ $C_2H_5CO_2Br$ $C_6H_5CO_2I$	CCl_4 CCl_4 CCl_4 $(C_2H_5)_2O$; CCl_4 C_6H_6		44	101

* This reagent was used to identify olefins;⁹⁶ no yields were recorded though they are presumably high.
 † A large excess of the complex and additional silver benzoate were employed.
 ‡ A limited quantity of the complex was employed.
 § Mercury rather than silver acetate was used.
 || Some dibromocyclohexane was formed simultaneously.

TABLE XIII—Continued

Olefin	Acyl Hypohalite	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
Cyclohexene (<i>Contd.</i>)					
	$m\text{-NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{Br}$	CCl_4	2-Bromocyclohexyl <i>m</i> -nitrobenzoate	44	22
	$3,5\text{-(NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{Br}$	C_6H_6	(+, -)- <i>trans</i> -2-Bromocyclohexyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	27	101
		C_6H_6	(+, -)- <i>trans</i> -1,2-Cyclohexanediol bis-3,5-dinitrobenzoate	10	101
	$3,5\text{-(NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	2-Iodocyclohexyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	—	96
	CO_2I_2	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	Di-2-iodocyclohexyl carbonate	80	95
	$\text{IO}_2\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	Di-2-iodocyclohexyl oxalate	—	95
	$\text{IO}_2\text{C(CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	Di-2-iodocyclohexyl succinate	50	95
	$o\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CO}_2\text{I})_2$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	Di-2-iodocyclohexyl phthalate	60	95
1,5-Hexadiene	$\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{Br}$	C_6H_6	1,2,5,6-Hexanetetrol tetrabenzoate	—	10
2,4-Hexadiene	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	C_6H_6	Syrup; mixture of diacetates	—	10, 11
1,4-Cyclohexadiene	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{Br}$	C_6H_6	(+, -)- <i>trans</i> -4,5-Cyclohexenediol dibenzoate	37	101
		C_6H_6	(1,4)R-1,2,4,5-Cyclohexanetetrol tetrabenzoate	11	101
1-Heptene	$3,5\text{-(NO}_2)_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{O}$	1-Iodo-2-heptyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoate	—	96
Styrene	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{Br}$	CCl_4	2-Bromo-1-phenylethyl acetate	60	51
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	C_6H_6	Phenylethandiol dibenzoate	Good	10
	$(+)\text{-C}_4\text{H}_9\text{CH(C}_2\text{H}_5\text{)CO}_2\text{Br}$	CCl_4	(+)-2-Bromo-1-phenylethyl 2-ethylhexanoate	60	51

NUCLEAR HALOGENATION WITHOUT DECARBOXYLATION BY THE ACTION OF HALOGEN ON SILVER SALTS OF ACIDS			TABLE XIV	
Acid	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$C_6H_5CO_2H$	—	$3-BrC_6H_4CO_2H$	—	102
	—	$3-IC_6H_4CO_2H$	—	15
	—	$?I_2-2-HOC_6H_4CO_2H$	—	15
$2-HOC_6H_4CO_2H$	—	$2-Br-5-CH_3OC_6H_3CO_2H$	50	17
$3-CH_3OC_6H_4CO_2H$	CCl_4	$3-Br-4-CH_3OC_6H_3CO_2H$	73-78	16
$4-CH_3OC_6H_4CO_2H$	CCl_4	$3-Br-4-CH_3C_6H_3CO_2H$	66	16
$4-CH_3C_6H_4CO_2H$	CCl_4	$2-Br-5-CH_3OC_6H_3(CH_2)_2CO_2H$	88	18
$3-CH_3OC_6H_4(CH_2)_2CO_2H$	CCl_4	$2-I-5-CH_3OC_6H_3(CH_2)_2CO_2H$	90	18
$4-CH_3OC_6H_4(CH_2)_4CO_2H$	CCl_4	$3-I-4-CH_3OC_6H_3(CH_2)_4CO_2H$	84	18

TABLE XV

NUCLEAR HALOGENATION OF AROMATIC SUBSTANCES BY THE ACTION OF SILVER ACETATE AND HALOGEN

Aromatic Substance	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
$\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5$	CCl_4	4-Br $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{OCH}_3$	20	17
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	82	18
3- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	2-Br-5- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	82	18
	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	2-1-5- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	84	18
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	86	18
4- $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	80	18
3,4-(CH_3O) $_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$?-1-3,4(CH_3O) $_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	81	18
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	80	18
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	84	18
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	76	18
3- CH_3 -4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-5 CH_3 -4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	74	18
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	88	18
2,5-(CH_3) $_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	4-1-2,5-(CH_3) $_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_2(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	56	18
4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	76	18
4- $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_9\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	78	18
4- $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_4(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	3-1-4- $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OC}_6\text{H}_3(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	60	18

TABLE XVI
NUCLEAR HALOGENATION OF AROMATIC SUBSTANCES BY THE ACTION OF SILVER TRIFLUOROACETATE AND HALOGEN

Aromatic Substance	Solvent	Product	Yield, %	Reference
C_6H_6	None	C_6H_5Br	89	19
	None	$C_6H_5I^*$	85	19
	CCl_4	$4-BrC_6H_4CH_3$	73	52
$C_6H_5CH_3$	None	$4-BrC_6H_4CH_3$	90	19
	CCl_4	$4-IC_6H_4CH_3$	84	52
	None	$4-IC_6H_4CH_3$	88	19
	None	$4-BrC_6H_4Cl^\dagger$	58	19
C_6H_5Cl	None	$4-IC_6H_4Cl^\dagger$	62	19
	None	$4-BrC_6H_4Br^\ddagger$	65	19
C_6H_5Br	None	$4-IC_6H_4Br$	71	19
	None	$4-BrC_6H_4I$	85	19
C_6H_5I	None	$4-IC_6H_4I$	77	19
	None	$4-BrC_6H_4OCH_3$	76	19
$C_6H_5OCH_3$	None	$4-IC_6H_4OCH_3$	75	19
$C_6H_4(OCH_3)_2$	$CHCl_3$	$4-Iodoveratrole$	85	53 [†]
$C_6H_5NH_2$	None	$4-BrC_6H_4NH_2$	62	19
	None	$4-IC_6H_4NH_2$	51	19
$C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$	None	$4-IC_6H_4N(CH_3)_2$	41	19
$C_6H_5NO_2$	None	$3-BrC_6H_4NO_2^\ddagger$	19	19
	None	$CF_3I§$	75	19
	$C_6H_5NO_2$	$3-BrC_6H_4CO_2H$	61	19
$C_6H_5CO_2H$	$C_6H_5NO_2$	$3-IC_6H_4CO_2H $	84	19
2-Methylnaphthaleno	$(C_2H_5)_2O$	1-Bromo-2-methylnaphthaleno	60	52
Thiophene	None	2,5-Diiodothiophene	—	19

* Six per cent of diiodobenzene was also formed.

† The infrared absorption indicates the presence of *ortho* derivative.

‡ Twenty-one per cent of CF_3Br was also formed.

§ No 3-iodonitrobenzene was formed.

|| The infrared absorption shows no *ortho* or *para* derivative.

TABLE XVII

 FORMATION OF HALOACETYLENES BY THE ACTION OF SILVER
 BENZOATE AND HALOGEN ON ACETYLENES

Acetylene	Acylhypohalite (or Simonini Complex)	Solvent	Product	Yield	Refer- ence
$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CH}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2)_2\text{AgI}$	C_6H_6	$\text{HC}\equiv\text{CI}$	—	12
	$2(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2)_2\text{AgI}$	C_6H_6	$\text{IC}\equiv\text{CI}$	—	12
$n\text{-C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}\equiv\text{CH}$	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{Cl}$	CCl_4	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}\equiv\text{CCl}$	Good	14
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{Br}$	CCl_4	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}\equiv\text{CBr}$	Good	14
	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{I}$	CCl_4	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}\text{C}\equiv\text{CI}$	Good	14
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CH}$	$(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2)_2\text{AgI}$	C_6H_6	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}\equiv\text{CI}$	Quant.	12

CHAPTER 6

THE SYNTHESIS OF β -LACTAMS

JOHN C. SHEEHAN

Massachusetts Institute of Technology

AND

ELIAS J. COREY

University of Illinois

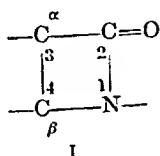
CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	389
CYCLIZATION OF β -AMINO ACID DERIVATIVES	391
Experimental Procedures	393
3,3-Dimethyl-1-ethyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone (Cyclization of a β -Acylamino Acid)	393
1,4-Diphenyl-2-azetidinone (Cyclization of a β -Amino Acid)	394
1-Benzyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone (Cyclization of a β -Amino Acid Ester)	394
REACTION OF IMINES WITH α -BROMOESTERS AND ZINC	394
Experimental Procedure	395
1,4-Diphenyl-2-azetidinone	395
DIRECT COMBINATION OF KETENES WITH IMINES	395
Experimental Procedure	399
2, α , α -Triphenyl-2-thiazolidineacetic Acid β -Lactam	399
REACTION OF KETENES AND NITROSO COMPOUNDS	399
REACTION OF AN IMINE, AN ACID CHLORIDE, AND A TERTIARY AMINE	399
Experimental Procedures	402
1,4-Diphenyl-3-phthalimido-2-azetidinone	402
2-Phenyl- α -succinimido-2-thiazolidineacetic Acid β -Lactam	403
DEHYDROHALOGENATION OF N- α -HALOACYLAMINOMALONIC ESTERS	403
Experimental Procedure	404
1-Phenyl-3-ethyl-4,4-dicarbethoxy-2-azetidinone	404

MISCELLANEOUS SYNTHESSES	404
TABULAR SURVEY OF THE SYNTHESIS OF β -LACTAMS	405
Table I. Monocyclic β -Lactams	406
Table II. Fused β -Lactam-thiazolidines	408

INTRODUCTION

The four-membered ring appears to be the smallest cyclic system that is capable of accommodating the amide function as a constituent. Such four-membered, cyclic amides (I), commonly referred to as β -lactams,¹ possess physical and chemical properties that diverge sharply, partially



as a result of ring strain, from those of acyclic amides and lactams of greater ring size. Thus, in common with β -lactones and cyclobutanone derivatives, the simple β -lactams are unusually susceptible to reactions involving the carbonyl group and generally undergo facile ring cleavage. In addition, each of these small-ring systems presents considerable difficulty in synthesis. The reluctance with which β -lactams are formed, using the conventional methods of lactam synthesis, has necessitated the development of special and unique approaches to these compounds.

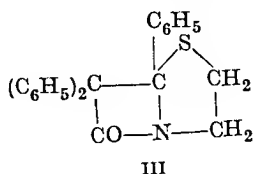
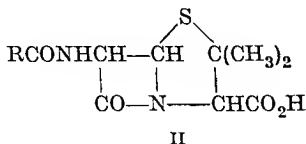
No authentic β -lactams were known until the beginning of the present century, probably because their synthesis by the method commonly used for γ -lactam formation, i.e. thermal dehydration of the appropriate amino acids, had not been realized. The first β -lactams were prepared by Staudinger and his co-workers,² using two highly novel methods which were discovered in connection with their studies on the chemistry of ketenes. During the twenty-odd years between the completion of Staudinger's work and 1943, two additional syntheses of β -lactams were discovered, and thereafter several more.

After 1943 interest in the synthesis and chemistry of β -lactams was stimulated by the importance of the natural penicillins and the problem of their structure and synthesis. When it became apparent that the natural penicillins might possess the β -lactam ring as a key feature, intensive studies were made of β -lactams, especially those possibly related

¹ β -Lactams may also be named as keto derivatives of the parent saturated heterocycle azetidine, i.e. as 2-azetidinones. This system of nomenclature has been used widely, cf. C.A., 38, 7061 (1944), and will be followed here in the naming of monocyclic β -lactams.

² Staudinger, *Die Ketene*, F. Enke, Stuttgart, 1912.

to the penicillins. Early evidence in favor of the now accepted β -lactam-thiazolidine structure for the penicillins came from the investigation of the infrared absorption of the penicillins (II) and model β -lactams such as III.



After the β -lactam-thiazolidine formulation for the penicillins became generally accepted, it was realized that the known routes to β -lactams probably were inadequate for a practical synthesis of penicillin (II, $\text{R} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2$). This fact, coupled with the curious differences in the chemical properties (rate of formation, and reactivity toward certain reagents) of various β -lactams, has provoked continued research and interest in the field of the β -lactams.

Although there are at present several useful approaches to the β -lactam ring system, the synthesis of β -lactams by a single general method is not possible. Therefore, it is always necessary in problems of β -lactam synthesis to determine which of the available methods is best suited for the case at hand. In general, the preparation of β -lactams is more readily accomplished if the lactam being formed is highly substituted. These highly substituted β -lactams are usually more stable to ring-cleavage reactions than are the simpler β -lactams. The method of synthesis of these stable, easily formed β -lactams is commonly determined by the availability of the starting materials.

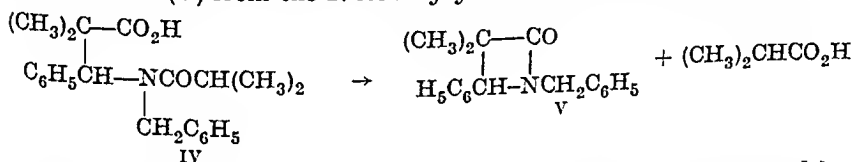
The problem of the synthesis of the less stable, highly reactive β -lactams, e.g. a penicillin, is much more difficult. Usually a number of the standard synthetic approaches to β -lactams are excluded at the outset because the necessary starting materials are unstable or cannot be prepared readily. Of the remaining methods, only those that involve mild reaction conditions, and hence highly reactive starting materials, present much likelihood of success. Thus, the outstanding problem in β -lactam synthesis is the development of new and efficient routes to the less stable β -lactams.

In principle, the synthesis of the β -lactam ring system might be accomplished by the formation of one, two, three, or all four bonds of the ring during the cyclization step. Of these four possibilities all but the last have been realized. All presently known routes to β -lactams in which only one bond is formed during cyclization involve formation of the amide linkage or the C_α to C_β bond. The known syntheses of β -lactams that create two bonds all entail simultaneous formation of the same two bonds

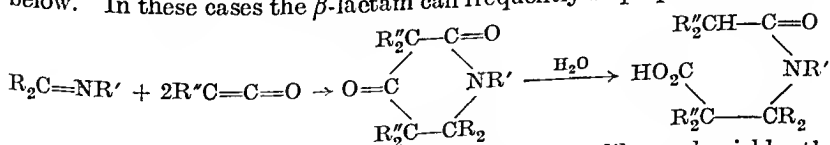
i.e. carbonyl to nitrogen and C_α to C_β . The only reported synthesis in which three bonds are established simultaneously involves formation of all but the amide bond, and it is this route, as might be expected, that is the least general.

CYCLIZATION OF β -AMINO ACID DERIVATIVES

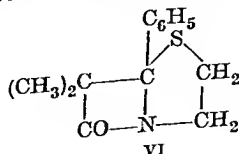
As mentioned earlier, the thermal dehydration of β -amino acids to β -lactams has not as yet been achieved, partly because of the ease with which β -amino acids undergo β -elimination. However, a number of β -lactams have been formed from derivatives of β -amino acids. In particular, it is noteworthy that acyl derivatives of many β -amino acids are transformed into β -lactams in good yield by heating.³ The reaction may be illustrated by the formation of 1-benzyl-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone (V) from the N-isobutyryl derivative IV in 50-60% yield.³



This synthesis of β -lactams from β -acylamino acids was discovered by Staudinger³ in connection with his studies of the reaction of ketenes with imines (which also leads to β -lactams). The ketene-imine reaction often affords piperidinediones, instead of, or in addition to, β -lactams, by the combination of one molecule of imine with two of the ketene, as shown below. In these cases the β -lactam can frequently be prepared indirectly.



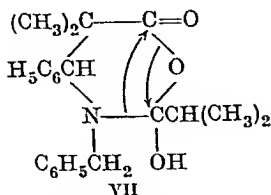
Hydrolysis of the piperidinediones proceeds readily and yields the β -acylamino acids, which can subsequently be cyclized to β -lactams. This three-step method is applicable not only to the preparation of monocyclic β -lactams but also to certain fused β -lactam-thiazolidines such as VI.⁴



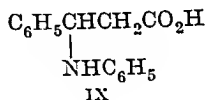
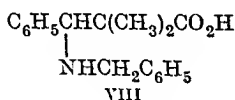
³ Staudinger, Klever, and Kober, *Ann.*, **374**, 1 (1910).

⁴ Clarke, Johnson, and Robinson, *The Chemistry of Penicillin*, Princeton University Press, 1949.

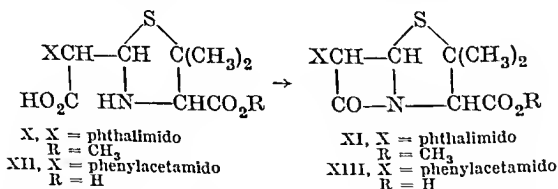
The relatively facile formation of β -lactams by this route may be due to the possibility of closing the β -lactam ring by O to N acyl rearrangement of an intermediate hydroxylactone, such as VII, in the formation of IV. Such a reaction path would explain the function of the acyl group in promoting cyclization.



The cyclization of β -amino acids through the use of reagents such as acetyl chloride, phosphorus trichloride, and thionyl chloride has been accomplished in a limited number of cases. Thus β -benzylamino- β -phenyl- α,α -dimethylpropionic acid (VIII)³ and β -phenyl- β -anilino-propionic acid (IX)⁵ have been transformed into the corresponding β -lactams by treatment with acetyl chloride and phosphorus trichloride, respectively.



An example of a cyclization of the above type is the synthesis of a phthaloylpenicillin (XI) from the corresponding phthaloylpenicilloic acid (X) in 12% yield by means of thionyl chloride.⁶ It is interesting also to note



that benzylpenicilloic acid (XII) has been converted in trace yield to benzylpenicillin (XIII)⁷ using phosphorus trichloride.

Another variant of the route to β -lactams via β -amino acid derivatives is due to Breckpot.⁸ This synthesis, which involves the base-catalyzed cyclization of a β -amino acid ester using a Grignard reagent as the base, is illustrated by the synthesis of 1-ethyl-4-methyl-2-azetidinone (XIV).

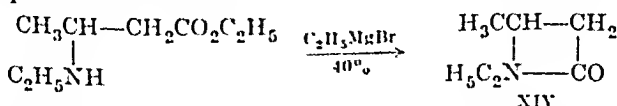
³ Ref. 4, p. 975.

⁴ Sheehan, Henery-Logan, and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 3292 (1953).

⁷ Süss, *Ann.*, **571**, 201 (1951).

⁸ Breckpot, *Bull. soc. chim. Belg.*, **32**, 412 (1923).

The method is especially advantageous if there are only one or two substituents on the β -lactam ring being formed, or if the substituents are alkyl groups.



A large number of monocyclic β -lactams,⁸⁻¹¹ including 2-azetidinone itself,¹¹ have been synthesized by this method. The yields of β -lactam decrease markedly as the number of substituents on the β -lactam ring being formed decreases, but the method is frequently operable in instances where others fail. The yields obtained for a series of β -lactams possessing two, one, or no substituents are indicated below.

Compound:	$\text{H}_5\text{C}_6\text{CH}-\text{CO}$ $\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$	CH_2-CO $\text{H}_3\text{CCH}-\text{N}-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	CH_2-CO $\text{CH}_2-\text{N}-\text{CH}_3$	CH_2-CO CH_2-NH
Yield, %:	94	40	11	0.76

Experimental Procedures

3,3-Dimethyl-1-ethyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone (Cyclization of a β -Acylamino Acid).⁴ (a) *1-Ethyl-6-phenyl-3,3,5,5-tetramethyl-2,4-piperidinedione*. To 5.6 g. of *N*-benzylideneethylamine (prepared from benzaldehyde and ethylamine) in an atmosphere of nitrogen is added a solution of 5.9 g. of dimethylketene¹² in 60 ml. of ethyl acetate. The solution becomes colorless after about six hours and is stored at room temperature for an additional fourteen hours. The ethyl acetate is removed under reduced pressure, leaving a crystalline residue weighing 8.08 g. Recrystallization from benzene-petroleum ether gives a 43% yield of colorless crystals of the piperidinedione, m.p. 89-90°.

hour (until bubbling stops). During this time 1.9 g. of isobutyric acid is collected. The pressure is reduced, and the product is distilled at 92–100°/2 mm., yielding 3.8 g. (87%) of the azetidinone.

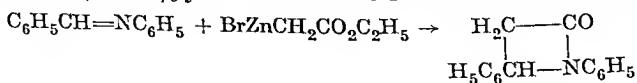
1,4-Diphenyl-2-azetidinone (Cyclization of a β -Amino Acid).⁴ A mixture of 1.2 g. of β -anilino- β -phenylpropionic acid and 2.4 ml. of phosphorus trichloride is refluxed for one-half hour. The reagent is then removed as completely as possible under reduced pressure, and the gummy residue is triturated with two 15-ml. portions of water and crystallized from cold methanol. The yield of β -lactam, m.p. 154–155°, is 0.6 g. (53%).

1-Benzyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone (Cyclization of a β -Amino Acid Ester).¹⁰ To a solution of 8.01 g. of ethyl β -benzylaminohydrocinnamate¹⁰ in 70 ml. of dry ether is added 14 ml. of a 2*N* solution of ethylmagnesium bromide in ether as rapidly as the evolution of gases permits. The mixture that results is allowed to stand at room temperature for ninety minutes and is then decomposed by cautious addition of an excess of 10% aqueous ammonium chloride. The mixture is agitated until all the solid dissolves, and the ethereal solution is separated and washed with two small portions of water. The aqueous washes are extracted with ether, and the ethereal solutions are combined, dried, and evaporated to constant weight.

The neutralization equivalent of the residual oil is determined by titration with standard hydrochloric acid. From the neutralization equivalent, the amount of standard (ca. 4*N*) ethanolic hydrogen chloride required to neutralize the free amino groups is added to the oil. Most of the ethanol is removed by evaporation under reduced pressure. The residue is triturated with 25 ml. of ether, and the ethereal solution is separated from the hydrochloride by filtration. The filtrate is evaporated, and the residue is extracted with boiling ligroin. The ligroin is evaporated from the extracts, and the liquid remaining is distilled. The yield of slightly yellow 1-benzyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone, b.p. 145–150°/2 mm., is 3.0 g. (45%).

REACTION OF IMINES WITH α -BROMOESTERS AND ZINC

In 1943 it was discovered that the reaction of benzylideneaniline with ethyl bromoacetate and zinc produces a β -lactam, 1,4-diphenyl-2-azetidinone (XV), in 56% yield.¹³ Little work has been done to determine



XV

¹³ Gilman and Speeter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 65, 2255 (1943).

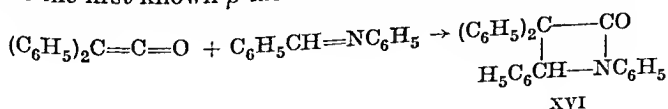
the scope of this synthesis although a number of β -lactams have been prepared by this method in yields as high as 85%.^{4,13} There is a strong resemblance between this reaction and that discovered by Breckpot in that both probably proceed by nucleophilic attack of an intermediate amide ion on the carbalkoxyl function with displacement of alkoxide ion and simultaneous closure of the β -lactam ring.

Experimental Procedure

1,4-Diphenyl-2-azetidinone.¹³ A solution of 36.2 g. of benzylideneaniline in 200 ml. of dry toluene is heated to boiling with 13.5 g. of sandpapered zinc foil and a crystal of iodine. Three milliliters of ethyl bromoacetate is added, and on stirring an exothermic reaction sets in. An additional 20 ml. of the bromoester is added at a rate such as to maintain gentle refluxing. When the addition is complete, the mixture is heated to reflux for one-half hour. The reaction mixture is hydrolyzed with 200 ml. of concentrated ammonium hydroxide, and the toluene layer is separated, washed successively with water, dilute hydrochloric acid, sodium bisulfite solution, and water, and finally evaporated to dryness. Two recrystallizations of the residue from methanol afford the β -lactam, m.p. 153–154°, in 56% yield.

DIRECT COMBINATION OF KETENES WITH IMINES

The reaction of ketenes, in particular disubstituted or "ketoketenes," with imines provides a good route to some types of substituted mono- and bi-cyclic β -lactams. Diphenylketene, for example, reacts readily with benzylideneaniline at room temperature to yield the crystalline β -lactam, 1,3,3,4-tetraphenyl-2-azetidinone (XVI) in 72% yield.¹⁴ This was the first known β -lactam.¹⁵ Most of the β -lactams prepared by



this method have been made from dimethyl-,^{2,16,17} or diphenyl-ketene,^{2,14,18} which seem in general to react smoothly with Schiff bases derived from

¹⁴ Staudinger, *Ann.*, **356**, 51 (1907).

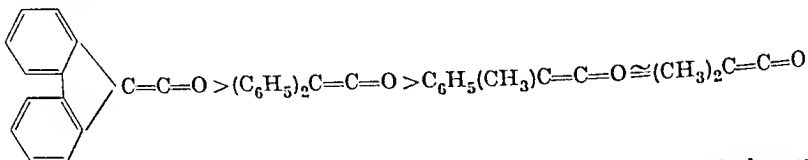
¹⁵ None of the substances that had been previously reported as β -lactams in the literature really appears to possess the β -lactam structure. These cases are discussed in ref. 4, pp. 982–984.

¹⁶ Staudinger and Klever, *Ber.*, **40**, 1149 (1907).

¹⁷ Holley and Holley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 3172 (1951).

¹⁸ Staudinger and Jelagin, *Ber.*, **44**, 365 (1911).

aromatic aldehydes or ketones and aromatic amines. Other ketenes which have been used in this synthesis include diethylketene,¹⁹ ethylcarbomethoxyketene,^{2,20} phenylcarbomethoxyketene,²⁰ methylphenylketene,² 2,2-biphenyleneketene,² and ketene itself.²⁰ The order of reactivity for several of these ketenes toward benzophenoneanil has been determined by Staudinger to be as shown below. This order of reactivity parallels

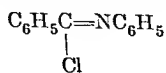


that observed by Staudinger in the reaction of ketenes with benzyl alcohol.² Ketene itself is much less reactive than the substituted ketenes which have been studied, for the coupling of ketene with benzylideneaniline takes place only at temperatures near 200°.²⁰

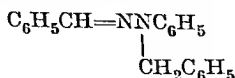
The successful use of monosubstituted ketenes, "aldoketenes," in the synthesis of β -lactams has yet to be reported. This is not surprising because monosubstituted ketenes react with imines extremely slowly and even under mild conditions show a great tendency to polymerize.²

The scope of the ketene-imine method for making β -lactams is limited drastically by the types and number of imines that can react to form the desired products. All but one of the β -lactams which have been prepared by this method have been obtained from imines in which both the carbon and the nitrogen atom of the imino linkage are substituted by aromatic groups. No systematic study has been made of the effect of varying the substituents on the aromatic groups, although Staudinger has found that the reactivity of benzylidene-*p*-nitroaniline with diphenylketene is slight compared to that of benzylideneaniline. A *p*-dimethylamino substituent, on the other hand, appears to increase the reactivity of aromatic Schiff bases. Perhaps it is also significant that acetophenoneanil is much less reactive to diphenylketene than is benzylideneaniline, although benzophenoneanil is much more reactive.²

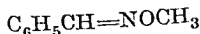
Several other types of compounds containing the imino group, as for example the imido chloride XVII, the phenylhydrazone XVIII, and the oxime-ether XIX were found to be unreactive.^{2,14}



XVII



XVIII

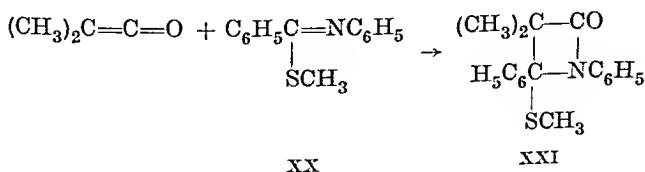


XIX

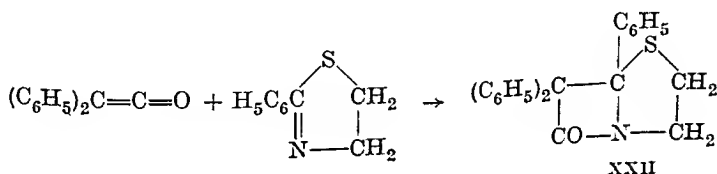
¹⁹ Staudinger and Maier, *Ann.*, **401**, 292 (1913).

²⁰ Staudinger, *Ber.*, **50**, 1035 (1917).

The presence of a sulfur substituent on the carbon of the imino grouping does not prevent β -lactam formation. The imido thioester XX reacts readily with dimethylketene to give the β -lactam XXI in 60% yield.¹⁷

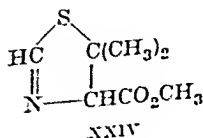
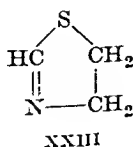


In a single instance a fused β -lactam-thiazolidine (XXII) has been prepared from 2-phenyl-2-thiazoline and diphenylketene.²¹ This β -lactam served as a key model compound in the infrared studies on the structure of



penicillin.²² Substitution of dimethylketene for diphenylketene in the reaction with 2-phenyl-2-thiazoline does not result in formation of a β -lactam but, as mentioned previously, a piperidinedione.

Although considerable study⁴ has been made of the preparation of fused β -lactam-thiazolidines closely related to penicillin by the combination of ketenes with suitable thiazolines [e.g., 2-thiazoline (XXIII) and methyl 5,5-dimethyl-2-thiazoline-4-carboxylate (XXIV)], no successful results have been reported.



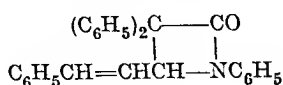
There are two cases in which the reaction of ketenes with imines is of special interest. The first is the combination of diphenylketene with cinnamylideneaniline which has been shown to lead to the β -lactam XXV instead of the δ -lactam XXVI to be expected from 1,4 addition.^{14,23}

²¹ Ref. 4, p. 996.

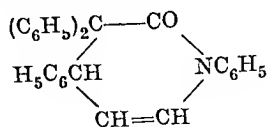
²² Ref. 4, p. 405.

²² Penicillin Program Report, *Staff* 14, 215.

The occurrence of 1,2 instead of 1,4-addition strikingly demonstrates the increased ease of formation of highly substituted β -lactams.

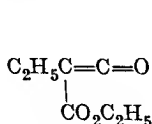


XXV

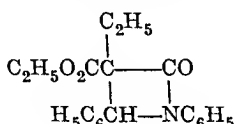


XXVI

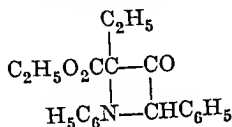
The reaction of ethylcarbethoxyketene (XXVII) with benzylideneaniline occurs readily at -10° to give a crystalline 1 : 1 adduct which is not the β -lactam XXVIII and which was formulated by Staudinger as XXIX. The adduct is unstable and decomposes slowly at room temperature into the original imine and ketene. Upon heating this compound



XXVII

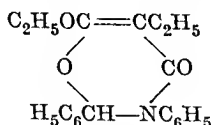


XXVIII



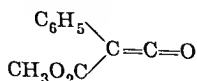
XXIX

at 170° the isomeric β -lactam XXVIII is formed. The β -lactam can also be obtained directly from the ketene and the imine at 180° . At present there is no cogent evidence in favor of structure XXIX for the unstable adduct, and structure XXX must be regarded as being at least equally possible.

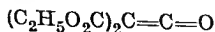


XXX

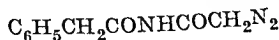
Phenylcarbomethoxyketene (XXXI) which might be expected to be more reactive to 1,2-addition than ethylcarbethoxyketene yields a β -lactam directly with benzylideneaniline. No intermediate product has been isolated. Dicarbethoxyketene (XXXII), on the other hand, does not appear to afford a β -lactam with benzylideneaniline under any conditions.



XXXI



XXXII



XXXIII

Several unsuccessful attempts have been made to form β -lactams by the combination of imines with the rearrangement products, presumably

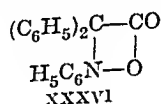
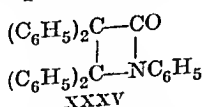
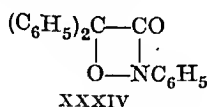
ketenes, of diazo ketones. The reaction of phenylacetylcarbamyldiazomethane (XXXIII) with methyl 5,5-dimethyl-2-thiazoline-4-carboxylate in the presence of silver oxide, which might have afforded methyl benzylpenicillinate, produced a complex mixture which had little or no bioactivity.²⁴

Experimental Procedure

2, α , α -Triphenyl-2-thiazolidineacetic Acid β -Lactam.⁴ Three and nine-tenths grams of diphenylketene²⁵ is added to 3.3 g. of 2-phenyl-2-thiazoline.²⁶ After five minutes the spontaneous heating ceases, and the mixture is warmed to 60–70° for five minutes. The product is taken up in warm toluene, diluted with low-boiling petroleum ether and cooled to give 4.5 g. of the β -lactam (63% yield) as a colorless solid, m.p. 140–143°.

REACTION OF KETENES WITH NITROSO COMPOUNDS

During the course of an investigation of the reaction of ketenes with nitroso compounds, Staudinger and Jelagin¹⁸ found that equimolar amounts of diphenylketene and nitrosobenzene gave a 63–65% yield of a product assigned structure XXXIV, and that a 2:1 molar ratio of the ketene and nitroso compound gave a mixture of products consisting mainly of XXXIV together with a small amount of the β -lactam XXXV.¹⁸ It was suggested that the β -lactam is formed by addition of diphenylketene to benzophenoneanil which is produced by the decarboxylation of the



intermediate XXXVI. *p*-Dimethylaminonitrosobenzene, which was found to be more reactive than nitrosobenzene, afforded a 65% yield of the β -lactam when treated with two moles of diphenylketene and yielded no product corresponding to XXXIV. Nitroso derivatives of secondary amines such as diphenylamine and diethylamine do not react with diphenylketene to give β -lactams.¹⁸

REACTION OF AN IMINE, AN ACID CHLORIDE, AND A TERTIARY AMINE

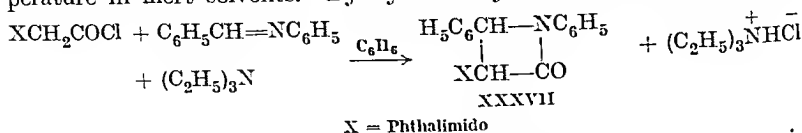
One of the most recent syntheses of β -lactams, developed in connection with the problem of penicillin synthesis, involves the combination of an imine or thiazoline and an acid chloride, with loss of hydrogen chloride,

²⁴ Ref. 4, p. 990.

²⁵ *Org. Syntheses*, 20, 47 (1940).

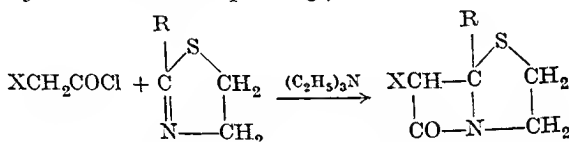
²⁶ Wenker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 57, 1079 (1935).

in the presence of a tertiary amine.^{27,28} An example of this synthesis is the reaction of benzylideneaniline with phthaloylglycyl chloride in the presence of triethylamine to give 1,4-diphenyl-3-phthalimido-2-azetidinone (XXXVII) in 50% yield.²⁷ The reaction proceeds rapidly at room temperature in inert solvents. By hydrazinolysis of the phthaloyl group

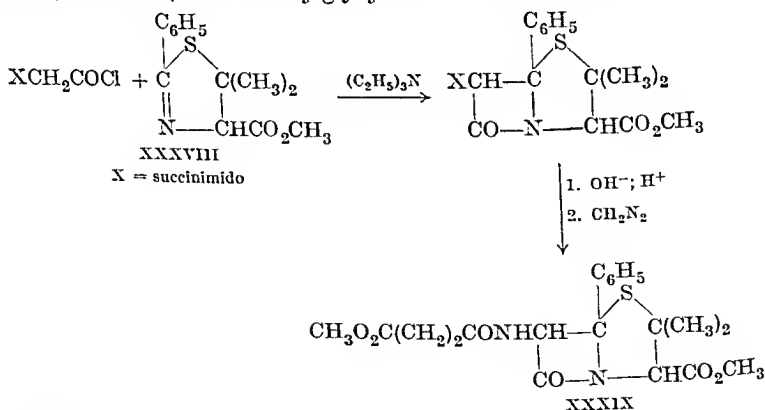


the phthalimido β -lactam XXXVII can be converted to an amino β -lactam and thence to other acylamino derivatives.²⁷

Thiazolines bearing a 2-aryl or 2-carbalkoxy substituent also yield β -lactams in this reaction. Thus, 2-phenyl,²⁸ 2-*p*-nitrophenyl,²⁹ and 2-furyl-thiazolines³⁰ react with phthaloylglycyl chloride and triethylamine to give good yields of the corresponding β -lactams.



The synthesis of a 5-phenylpenicillin (XXXIX) has been carried out by this approach, using methyl 2-phenyl-5,5-dimethyl-2-thiazoline-4-carboxylate (XXXVIII) and succinylglycyl chloride as indicated below.^{31,32}



²⁷ Sheehan and Ryan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 1204 (1951).

²⁸ Sheehan and Ryan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4367 (1951).

²⁹ J. C. Sheehan and K. Henery-Logan, unpublished results.

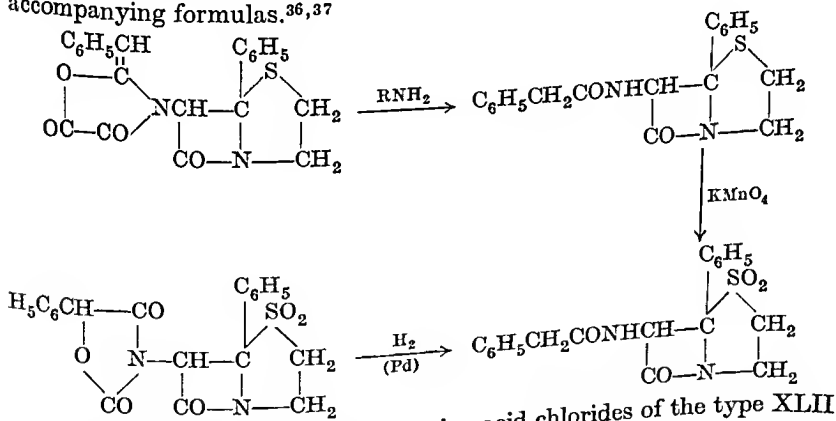
³⁰ E. J. Corey, Ph.D. Thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1951; J. A. Erickson, Ph.D. Thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1953.

³¹ Sheehan, Buhle, Corey, Laubach, and Ryan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 3828 (1950).

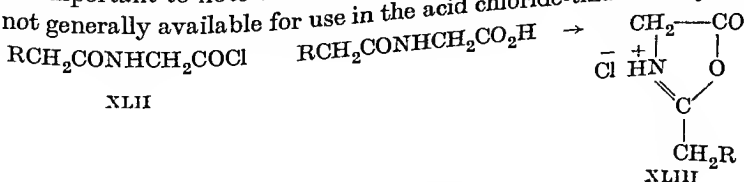
³² Sheehan and Laubach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4376 (1951).

The acid chloride-thiazoline reaction is apparently very sensitive to the nature of the ring substituents. No lactam was isolated with thiazolines possessing a hydrogen, sulfhydryl, or chlorine substituent in the 2-position.³³ In addition, the reaction proceeds better with 2-phenyl-2-thiazoline than with methyl 2-phenyl-5,5-dimethyl-2-thiazoline-4-carboxylate, while ethyl 2-phenyl-2-thiazoline-4-carboxylate is intermediate in behavior. Thus, the yields of β -lactam obtained with these three thiazolines are 50%,²⁸ 20%,³⁴ and 34%³⁵ respectively.

To date the acid chloride-imine synthesis has been applied only to the synthesis of acylamino β -lactams. The acid chlorides that have been used successfully in the reaction include phthaloyl- and succinyl-glycyl chloride, 5-phenyl-2,4-diketo-3-oxazolidineacetyl chloride³⁶ (XL), and 2-benzylidene-4,5-diketo-3-oxazolidineacetyl chloride³⁷ (XLI). The last two substances were employed because the heterocyclic systems which they contain can be degraded, once the β -lactam ring has been formed, to the phenylacetyl-amido substituent which is characteristic of benzylpenicillin (II, $R = C_6H_5CH_2$). These degradations are indicated by the accompanying formulas.^{36,37}



It is important to note that acylamino acid chlorides of the type XLII are not generally available for use in the acid chloride-thiazoline synthesis



³³ J. C. Sheehan and co-workers, unpublished observations.

³⁴ Sheehan, Hill, Jr., and Buhle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4373 (1951).

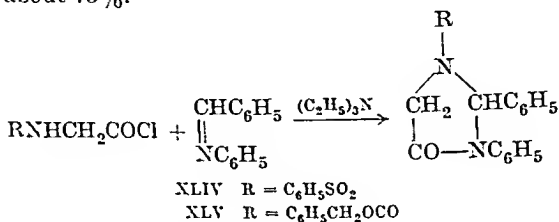
³⁵ D. A. Johnson, Ph.D. Thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1952.

³⁶ Sheehan and Laubach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4752 (1951).

³⁷ Sheehan and Corey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 4756 (1951).

since attempts to obtain them from the corresponding acids usually lead to formation of salts of azlactones (XLIII). Thus, it is necessary to employ systems in which the nitrogen atom is protected from azlactonization by the presence of a suitable blocking group.

Benzenesulfonylglycyl chloride (XLIV) and carbobenzoxyglycyl chloride (XLV), which cannot azlactonize but which possess an unprotected nitrogen atom, react with benzylideneaniline to form 4-imidazolones in yields of about 75%.³⁸



Although it is clear at present that the acid chloride-imine (or thiazoline) reaction is by no means general for acid chlorides or imines, the exact scope of the reaction is still unknown. In addition, nothing is known about the mechanism of the reaction. Under some conditions there have been isolated crystalline by-products which have been tentatively formulated as acyl derivatives of enolized piperidinediones on the basis of elemental and infrared analysis.^{28,31} The formation of such by-products can usually be minimized by working at very high dilution and operating with refluxing chloroform rather than methylene chloride as the solvent.^{28,30,31}

hydroxide all have been used successfully in the ring-closure.⁴¹ The β -lactams obtained by this process can be converted to β -lactams bearing a single carbethoxyl substituent, e.g. XLVII, by selective hydrolysis of one ester function and decarboxylation of the resulting acid.

This method of synthesis, although efficient, is obviously restricted to the preparation of β -lactams which possess one or two carboxyl (or similar) functions at the 4-position. A further limitation results from the fact that N-unsubstituted N-haloacylaminomalonic esters containing a hydrogen atom attached to the nitrogen atom, such as XLVIII, apparently do not undergo cyclization upon treatment with tertiary amines or other bases.⁴¹



Experimental Procedure

1-Phenyl-3-ethyl-4,4-dicarbethoxy-2-azetidinone.⁴¹ A solution of 2 g. of α -bromo-*n*-butyric acid, 1 ml. of phosphorus trichloride, and 2 g. of diethyl anilinomalonate⁴² in 50 ml. of benzene is heated under reflux for two hours. After removal of the solvent, the residue is taken up in ether and washed with 5% aqueous sodium carbonate. Evaporation of the ether affords 2.84 g. of crude diethyl N-(α -bromo-*n*-butyryl)-anilinomalonate as a viscous oil. A benzene solution of this crude material containing 2 g. of triethylamine is heated to 50–60° overnight. After removal of the insoluble triethylammonium chloride and solvent and evaporative distillation of the residue at 130–145°/0.4 mm., 2.29 g. (78% yield based on the malonic ester) of β -lactam is obtained as a colorless, viscous liquid, n_D^{25} 1.5108.

MISCELLANEOUS SYNTHESSES

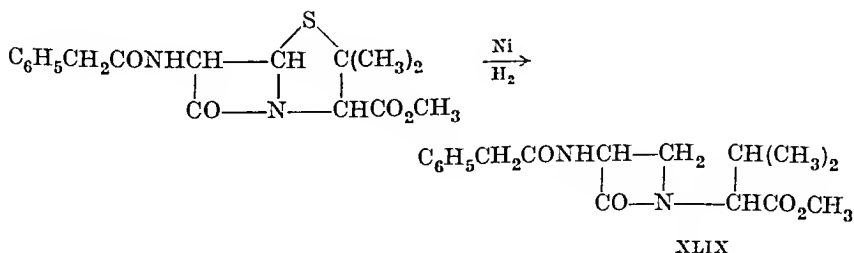
An unusual approach to the β -lactam ring system is provided by the reaction of diazomethane with isocyanates. Diazomethane and phenyl isocyanate combine, in a manner reminiscent of the formation of cyclobutanone from ketene and diazomethane, to form 1-phenyl-2-azetidinone.⁴³ *p*-Bromophenylisocyanate is also converted to a β -lactam under these conditions. The reaction does not appear to be general, however, since no β -lactam could be isolated from the reaction of diazomethane with either α -naphthyl-, *p*-nitrophenyl-, benzyl-, or benzoyl-isocyanate.

Several β -lactams have been prepared by modification of the substituents present in preformed β -lactam systems. Examples were mentioned in

⁴² Blank, *Ber.*, 31, 1812 (1898).

⁴³ Sheehan and Izzo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 70, 1985 (1948); 71, 4059 (1949).

the preceding sections. Perhaps the best-known example of such a conversion, however, is the synthesis of methyl desthiobenzylpenicillinate (XLIX) by desulfurization of methyl benzylpenicillinate with Raney nickel.⁴



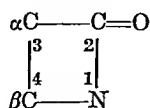
Oxidation of fused β -lactam-thiazolidines produces, in general, the corresponding β -lactam-thiazolidine-1,1-dioxides in good yield.⁴

Finally, a number of β -lactams substituted by cyclohexyl groups have been prepared by catalytic reduction of the corresponding phenyl-substituted β -lactams.⁴

TABULAR SURVEY OF SYNTHESSES OF β -LACTAMS

An attempt has been made to collect in the following tables all examples of β -lactam syntheses that have been published before 1953. A few syntheses published subsequently are also included. Table I includes monocyclic β -lactams, and Table II the fused β -lactam thiazolidines. The sections of each table are arranged in a sequence determined by the number of substituents on the β -lactam ring. The following abbreviations are used for preparative methods: *A*, cyclization of β -amino acid esters with organometallic compounds; *B*, cyclization of β -acylamino acids; *C*, from β -amino acids; *D*, from imines, α -bromoesters, and zinc; *E*, from ketenes and imines; *F*, from ketenes and nitroso compounds; *G*, from acid chlorides, imines, and tertiary amines; *H*, dehydrohalogenation of *N*- α -haloacylaminomalonic esters; *I*, from isocyanates and diazomethane; *J*, from a preformed β -lactam.

TABLE I—Continued

MONOCYCLIC β -LACTAMS—AZETIDINONES

β -Lactam (Substituents on Azetidinone Ring)	Yield, %	Method of Preparation	Reference
<i>Trisubstituted—Continued</i>			
1,4-Diphenyl-3-amino (hydrochloride)	54	<i>J</i>	27
1,4-Diphenyl-3-phenylacetamido	56	<i>J</i>	27
1,4-Diphenyl-3-(2'-benzylidene-4',5'-diketo-3'-oxazolidyl)	17	<i>J</i>	37
	16	<i>G</i>	37
1,4-Diphenyl-3-(3'-nitrophthalimido)	54	<i>G</i>	27
1,4-Diphenyl-3-dimethanesulfonamido	39	<i>G</i>	38
1,4-Diphenyl-3-methanesulfonamido	—	<i>J</i>	38
<i>Tetrasubstituted</i>			
1,3,3-Trimethyl-4-phenyl	65	<i>B</i>	3, 4
1-Benzyl-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenyl	10	<i>E</i>	3
	70	<i>C</i>	4
	50-60	<i>B</i>	3
1,4-Diphenyl-3,3-dimethyl	—	<i>E</i>	16
1,4-Diphenyl-3,3-diethyl	82	<i>E</i>	19
1,4-Diphenyl-3-ethyl-3-carbethoxy	1	<i>E</i>	20
1,3,4-Triphenyl-3-carbomethoxy	—	<i>E</i>	20
1,3,3,4-Tetraphenyl	72	<i>E</i>	16
1,3,3-Triphenyl-4-styryl	70	<i>E</i>	14
1-Phenyl-3,3-dimethyl-4- <i>p</i> -dimethylaminophenyl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1-Benzhydryl-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenyl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1-Phenyl-3,3-dimethyl-4-styryl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1- <i>p</i> -Nitrophenyl-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenyl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1-Ethyl-3,3-dimethyl-4-phenyl	87	<i>B</i>	4
1,3,4-Triphenyl-3-methyl	—	<i>B</i>	44
1-Phenyl-3-methyl-4,4-dicarbobenzoxy	ca. 90	<i>H</i>	41
1-Phenyl-3-ethyl-4,4-dicarbethoxy	ca. 90	<i>H</i>	41
<i>Pentasubstituted</i>			
Pentaphenyl	84	<i>E</i>	18
	—	<i>F</i>	18
1- <i>p</i> -Dimethylaminophenyl-3,3,4,4-tetraphenyl	100	<i>E</i>	18
	65	<i>F</i>	18
1,4,4-Triphenyl-3,3-dimethyl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1,4-Diphenyl-3,3,4-trimethyl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1,3,4,4-Tetraphenyl-3-methyl	—	<i>E</i>	2
1,4,4-Triphenyl-3,3- <i>o</i> -biphenylene	—	<i>E</i>	2
1,4-Diphenyl-3,3-dimethyl-4-methylmercapto	60	<i>E</i>	17

* Staudinger and Ruzicka, *Ann.*, **380**, 301 (1911).

CHAPTER 7

THE PSCHORR SYNTHESIS AND RELATED DIAZONIUM RING CLOSURE REACTIONS

DeLos F. DeTar

University of South Carolina

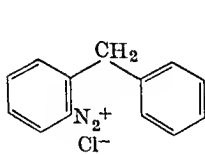
CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	410
MECHANISMS OF THE REACTIONS	411
Comparison with the Gomberg-Bachmann Synthesis	412
Evidence for a Heterolytic Cyclization	415
Products of the Homolytic Reaction	417
SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS	417
Examples of Different Types of Bridge	419
Side Reactions	420
Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Hydroxyl	420
Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Hydrogen	421
Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Halogen	421
Coupling of the Aryl Groups	422
Formation of Xanthenes	423
Elimination of Carboxyl and Nitro Groups	424
Deamination in Phenanthridone Syntheses	426
Formation of Indazoles, Cinnolines, and Triazoles	429
Factors Affecting the Direction of Ring Closure	430
Simultaneous Closure of Two Rings	430
Aliphatic Analogs	439
EXPERIMENTAL CONDITIONS	439
Preparation of the Amines	439
Pschorr Reaction Intermediates	432
Intermediates for Dihydrophenanthrenes	432
Intermediates for Fluoranthenes	432
Intermediates for N-Substituted Carbazoles and for Dibenzofurans	432
Intermediates for Fluorenones	432
The Cyclization Reaction	432

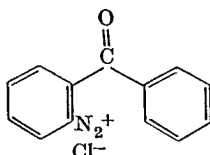
	PAGE
EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES	436
1-Bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic Acid	436
4,6-Dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic Acid	437
3-Chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic Acid	437
2-Nitrofluorenone	438
11-Chrysofluorenone	438
2-Bromo-4-methyldibenzofuran	439
3-Cyanocarbazole	440
TABULAR SURVEY OF DIAZONIUM RING CLOSURE REACTIONS	440
Table I. Phenanthrene Derivatives	441
Table II. Dihydrophenanthrene Derivatives	448
Table III. Fluoranthene Derivatives	449
Table IV. Carbazole Derivatives Prepared via Triazoles	450
Table V. Carbazole Derivatives	451
Table VI. Dibenzofuran Derivatives and Sulfur Analogs	452
Table VII. Fluorene Derivatives	454
Table VIII. Fluorenone Derivatives	455
Table IX. Phenanthridones	457
Table X. Aporphine Derivatives	458
Table XI. Sultones and Sultams	460

INTRODUCTION

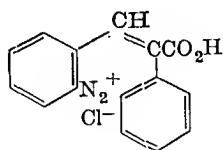
In the middle eighteen nineties three groups of chemists independently discovered a new cyclization reaction of certain appropriately constituted diazonium salts. Fischer and Schmidt¹ reported that an aqueous



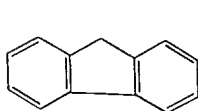
I



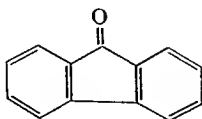
III



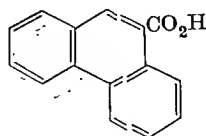
V



II



IV



VI

solution of 2-benzylbenzenediazonium chloride (I) furnished fluorene (II) on heating. Graebe and Ullmann² reported that 2-benzoylbenzene-

¹ Fischer and Schmidt, *Ber.*, **27**, 2786 (1894).

² Graebe and Ullman, *Ber.*, **27**, 3483 (1894).

diazonium chloride (III) yielded fluorenone (IV), and Staedel³ reported a somewhat similar result from the action of nitrous acid on 2,2'-diaminobenzophenone, a reaction that produced a little 1-hydroxyfluorenone. Two years later Robert Pschorr⁴ applied the ring closure reaction to the diazonium salt derived from *trans*-2-amino- α -phenyleinnamic acid (V) (aryl groups *cis*) to obtain phenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid (VI). The principal utility of these cyclization reactions has been the synthesis of substituted ring structures in which the positions of the substituents are known. In a series of papers Pschorr⁵⁻²¹ reported the application of the reaction to the synthesis of a large number of phenanthrene derivatives with special emphasis on morphine degradation products. Although Pschorr was not the first to use the reaction, he was the first to exploit it extensively for the determination of structure. The phenanthrene synthesis, appropriately known as the Pschorr reaction, is still the best known of the various diazonium cyclization reactions. Various aspects of the cyclization reactions of diazonium salts have been reviewed previously.²²⁻²⁵

MECHANISMS OF THE REACTIONS

Comparison with the Gomberg-Bachmann Synthesis

Intermolecular analogs of the cyclization reactions have been recognized for many years. Pschorr⁴ pointed out their similarity to the biphenyl

³ Staedel, *Ber.*, **27**, 3362 (1894).

⁴ Pschorr, *Ber.*, **29**, 496 (1896).

⁵ Pschorr, Wolfes, and Buckow, *Ber.*, **33**, 162 (1900).

⁶ Pschorr, *Ber.*, **33**, 176 (1900).

⁷ Pschorr and Sumuleanu, *Ber.*, **33**, 1810 (1900).

⁸ Pschorr and Jaeckel, *Ber.*, **33**, 1826 (1900).

⁹ Pschorr and Buckow, *Ber.*, **33**, 1829 (1900).

¹⁰ Pschorr, Seydel, and Klein, *Ber.*, **34**, 3998 (1901).

¹¹ Pschorr and Schröter, *Ber.*, **35**, 2726 (1902).

¹² Pschorr, Seydel, and Stöhrer, *Ber.*, **35**, 4400 (1902).

¹³ Pschorr and Vogtherr, *Ber.*, **35**, 4412 (1902).

¹⁴ Pschorr, Stählin, and Silberbach, *Ber.*, **37**, 1926 (1904).

¹⁵ Pschorr, Tappen, Hofmann, Quade, Schütz, and Popovici, *Ber.*, **39**, 3106 (1906).

¹⁶ Pschorr and Busch, *Ber.*, **40**, 2001 (1907).

¹⁷ Pschorr and Zeidler, *Ann.*, **373**, 75 (1910).

¹⁸ Pschorr and Knöffler, *Ann.*, **382**, 50 (1911).

¹⁹ Pschorr, Selle, Koch, Stooß, and Treidel, *Ann.*, **391**, 23 (1912).

²⁰ Pschorr, Zeidler, Dickhäuser, Treidel, and Koch, *Ann.*, **391**, 40 (1912).

²¹ Avenarius and Pschorr, *Ber.*, **62**, 321 (1929).

²² Saunders, *The Aromatic Diazo-compounds and Their Technical Applications*, 2d ed., p. 254, Longmans, Green & Co., New York, 1949.

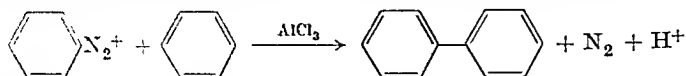
²³ Holzach, *Die Aromatischen Diazoverbindungen*, p. 231, Ferdinand Enke, Stuttgart, 1947.

²⁴ Fieser and Fieser, *Natural Products Related to Phenanthrene*, 3rd ed., pp. 8, 29, Reinhold Publishing Co., New York, 1949.

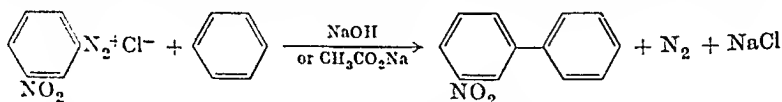
²⁵ Leake, *Chem. Revs.*, **56**, 27 (1956).

²⁶ Hey and Osbond, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 3164.

syntheses of Möhlau and Berger²⁶ which employed a diazonium salt, an aromatic solvent, and anhydrous aluminum chloride, and to those of



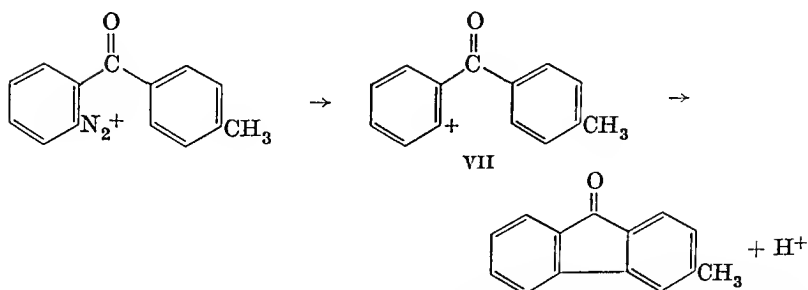
Kühling and of Bamberger²⁷ which were forerunners of the Gomberg-Bachmann reaction. More recently the analogy has generally been drawn with the Gomberg-Bachmann reaction itself^{28,29} a typical example of which is the preparation of *m*-nitrobiphenyl by the reaction of *m*-nitrobenzenediazonium chloride, benzene, and alkali in a two-phase system.



There are, however, a number of points of difference between the two-phase, alkaline, Gomberg-Bachmann reactions and the cyclization reactions. Many of the cyclization reactions, e.g. the fluorenone syntheses, are carried out in acidic solutions. Such systems are initially single phase and only incidentally become multiphase owing to precipitation of reaction products. The Pschorr reaction is usually carried out in strongly acidic solution in the presence of copper powder. In a few cases it has been carried out in a homogeneous alkaline solution. Thus, in considering the mechanisms of the cyclization reactions, evidence concerning these intermolecular reactions is helpful but must be interpreted with due caution.

Evidence for a Heterolytic Cyclization

Preliminary work on the mechanisms of the cyclization reactions³⁰⁻³¹ has shown that the fluorenone synthesis as usually carried out takes place by a heterolytic³⁵ (ionic) mechanism as shown in the equation. On the other hand, the copper-catalyzed Pschorr reactions may occur by a homolytic (free-radical) chain mechanism, though adequate evidence is

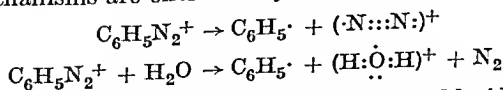


not yet available. The diazonium cyclization reactions therefore appear to belong to a lengthening list of reactions that occur by more than one mechanism.

Evidence for a heterolytic fluorenone formation is derived from (1) general studies of the mechanisms of diazonium salt reactions and (2) specific studies of the fluorenone cyclization reaction.

There is good evidence based both on rate studies and on product studies with several diazonium salts that in water and in alcohols the thermal decomposition of the diazonium group is a heterolytic process under acidic conditions in the absence of light or of reducing agents, and that under alkaline conditions the decomposition takes place at least in part by homolytic processes.

The evidence for a heterolytic mechanism for the thermal decomposition of several diazonium salts in acidic aqueous solutions is based on the observation that the reaction is accurately first order over the full course (10–99%)^{36–38} and is independent of the presence of or absence of a large variety of anions, or of acidity, over a considerable $p\text{H}$ range. This independence rules out various homolytic mechanisms involving hypothetical intermediate covalent diazo compounds such as the diazo chloride, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}=\text{NCl}$, or diazo hydroxide, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}=\text{NOH}$. The diazonium cation itself can give rise to radicals only by reactions yielding ionized nitrogen or water molecules and hence requiring prohibitively high energies. Thus homolytic mechanisms are excluded by the kinetic evidence.



Product studies show that benzenediazonium chloride reacts with methanol under acidic conditions to give high yields (90–95%) of anisole.³⁹ In the presence of sodium acetate the principal product is benzene (85–90%), and the reaction is very sensitive to oxygen. Such results

³⁶ DeTar and Ballentine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **78**, 3916 (1956).

³⁷ DeTar and Kwong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **78**, 3921 (1956).

³⁸ Moelwyn-Hughes and Johnson, *Trans. Faraday Soc.*, **36**, 948 (1940).

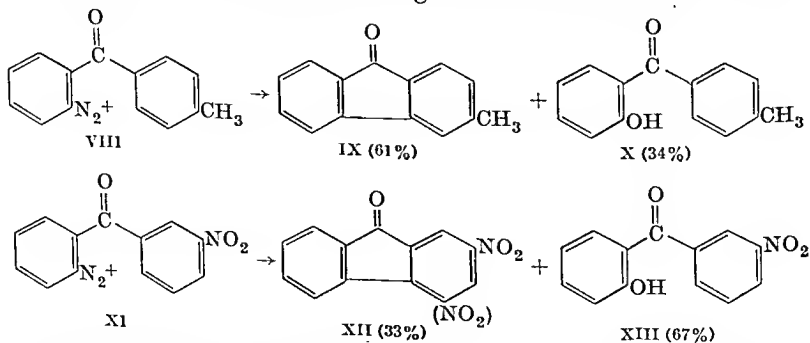
³⁹ DeTar and Turetzky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **77**, 1745 (1955); **78**, 3925, 3928 (1956).

require a homolytic mechanism in the presence of the acetate buffer and a heterolytic mechanism under acidic conditions.

In water the reaction of diazonium salts in the presence of alkali is highly complex, and the problem of unraveling mechanisms is difficult. However, the two-phase Gomberg-Bachmann reaction clearly requires some sort of homolytic mechanism as shown by the excellent orientation studies of Hey and his co-workers.⁴⁰ The activating effect and the ortho-para directing effect of the nitro group of nitrobenzene afford perhaps the clearest single item of evidence in favor of a homolytic mechanism for the Gomberg-Bachmann reaction.

The fluorenone ring closure occurs readily under acidic conditions. Accordingly, a heterolytic mechanism seems most probable. This hypothesis is easily subject to further experimental investigation by use of appropriately substituted benzophenones in the ring closure reaction. The thermal decomposition of the diazonium salts derived from 2-amino-benzophenone in aqueous solution gave 65% of fluorenone and 35% of 2-hydroxybenzophenone, these two products together accounting quantitatively for the starting material.³¹ The product ratio and yield were insensitive to temperature in the range 25–75°. These products are ascribed to two competing heterolytic displacement reactions of the diazonium nitrogen; the one, intermolecular, involving a water molecule as the nucleophilic reagent and the other, intramolecular, involving an aryl group as the nucleophilic reagent.

Since a methyl group enhances and a nitro group diminishes the nucleophilic capabilities of the aryl ring, a methyl group should increase and a nitro group decrease the yield of fluorenone if the reaction is heterolytic. But, since the nitro group is an activating group for homolytic substitution reactions,⁴⁰ the ring closure should be more favored



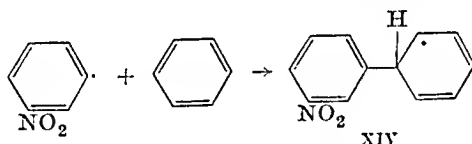
⁴⁰ Augood, Cadogan, Hey and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1953, 3412, and earlier papers. See also DeTar and Scheifele, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 1442 (1953); Dannley and Gippin, *ibid.*, 74, 332 (1952); Rondestvedt and Blanchard, *ibid.*, 77, 1769 (1955).

with the nitro derivative if the reaction is homolytic. The yields given in the equations show that the methyl group of VIII is without effect, though the nitro group of XI does diminish the fluorenone yield. The results are, therefore, in satisfactory agreement with predictions based on a heterolytic mechanism for the ring closure. The small effect of the substituents on the product ratio and yield, kinetic evidence, and certain other product evidence have been cited³¹ as favoring an S_N1 loss of nitrogen rather than an aromatic S_N2 type of replacement.

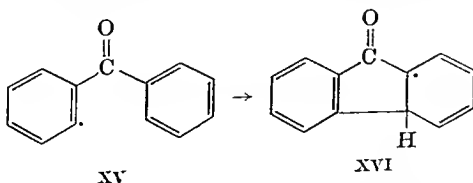
Products of the Homolytic Reaction

Under alkaline conditions the diazonium salts derived from 2-amino-benzophenone can be expected to react to some extent by a mechanism involving homolytic C—N bond cleavage. With alkali present (pH 12), only about 25% of fluorenone is produced. A similar reduction in yield under alkaline conditions has been observed for many of the diazonium cyclization reactions. In view of the demonstrated simultaneous occurrence of heterolytic and homolytic mechanisms,³⁹ it is not at all certain that even these low yields of fluorenone have resulted from free-radical intermediates.

The usual hypothesis about the mechanistic details of the homolytic Gomberg-Bachmann reaction is shown in the equation. The substituting radical is pictured as adding to the aromatic ring to give the new radical

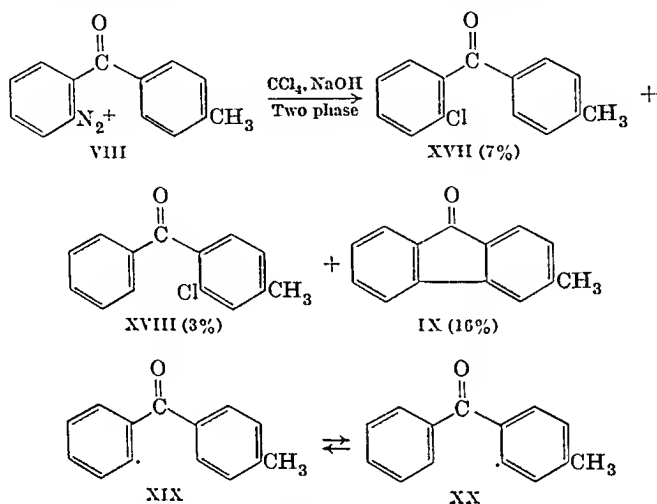


XIV which loses a hydrogen atom to some other radical present in the solution. The intramolecular version of this step (XV \rightarrow XVI) might

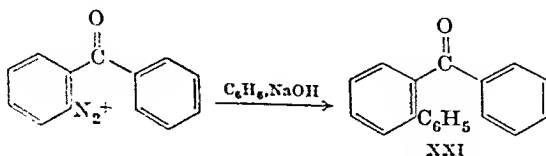


be expected to occur even more readily by virtue of the proximity of the radical to the potential reaction site. Reactions in which there is closure of a five-membered ring usually occur much more readily than their intermolecular counterparts. For some unknown reason the *o*-benzoylphenyl radical (XV) does not undergo this cyclization reaction at all readily in comparison with competing reactions. Treatment of diazotized

2-amino-4'-methylbenzophenone (VIII) with alkali and with carbon tetrachloride leads to 3-methylfluorenone (IX), 2-chloro-4'-methylbenzophenone (XVII), and 2-chloro-4-methylbenzophenone (XVIII).^{33,34} The 2-(4'-methylbenzoyl)phenyl radical (XIX) evidently reacts with carbon

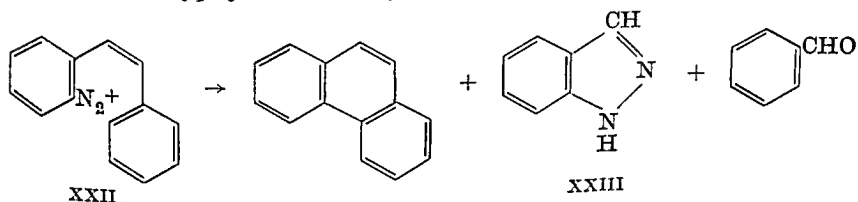


tetrachloride to abstract a chlorine atom to give 2-chloro-4'-methylbenzophenone (XVII) and with itself by an intramolecular chain transfer step to give the isomeric radical XX, which leads to 2-chloro-4-methylbenzophenone (XVIII). Even if all of the 3-methylfluorenone is ascribed to free-radical cyclization of XIX or XX, the free-radical cyclization is a relatively inefficient process. The chlorobenzophenones XVII and XVIII are not expected from a carbonium ion intermediate. Although the general possibility of chlorine abstraction from carbon tetrachloride by a carbonium ion intermediate has perhaps not yet received a really rigorous investigation, the formation of the chlorobenzophenone XVIII from the carbonium ion VII is unlikely in view of the ease with which this ion cyclizes. Further evidence pointing to inefficiency of the free-radical cyclization step is the fact that the Gomberg-Bachmann reaction of diazotized 2-aminobenzophenone with benzene in the presence of alkali gives a 20% yield of 2-phenylbenzophenone (XXI) and little fluorenone. If these reactions are formulated as radical substitution processes, it is strange



that an intermolecular reaction should take precedence over an intramolecular one, especially since the carbonyl group is expected to aid the cyclization process, for the carbonyl group is probably an activating group for free-radical substitution reactions.⁴⁰

Preliminary studies of the Pschorr reaction with the diazonium salt derived from *cis*-2-aminostilbene (XXII) have provided results quite different from the above.³² The thermal decomposition in aqueous solutions gives low yields of nitrogen and of phenanthrene (15–40%), the yields being higher at 100° than at 25°. A search was made for a nitrogen-containing by-product which was thought likely to be 3-phenylcinnoline. The product turned out to be indazole (XXIII). Several workers had previously reported benzaldehyde in reactions of this type, but no one had isolated the other cleavage fragment.^{41–43} These results then seem to typify the heterolytic process in the phenanthrene series.



If copper powder is present, the reaction is faster and the phenanthrene yield is higher (60–85%). It may be that the copper is promoting a homolytic reaction as has been suggested by Waters,²⁸ or perhaps some quite different intermediate steps are involved. The assumption of a homolytic process finds some support in work on the mechanism of the reduction of diazonium salts with hypophosphorous acid, a free-radical chain reaction that is initiated by copper.⁴⁴ Treatment of diazotized *cis*-2-aminostilbene with hypophosphorous acid leads to phenanthrene, not to *cis*-stilbene.⁴² Furthermore, sodium hypophosphite and copper powder have been used in a number of Pschorr reactions. Examples are to be found in Table I.

SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS

Examples of Different Types of Bridge

The diazonium cyclization reaction has been carried out with compounds having a number of different types of bridge. To the examples already mentioned (I, III, and V) may be added compounds XXIV–XXXIII.

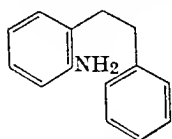
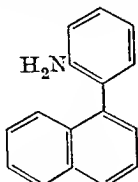
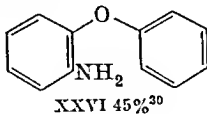
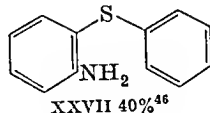
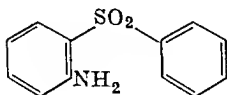
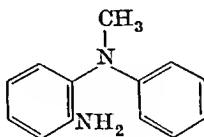
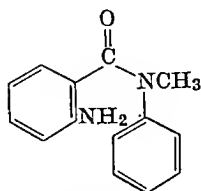
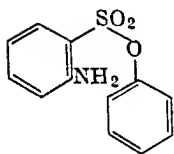
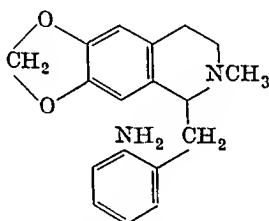
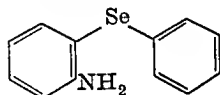
⁴¹ Sachs and Hilpert, *Ber.*, **39**, 899 (1906); Ullmann and Gschwind, *Ber.*, **41**, 2291 (1908).

⁴² Ruggli and Staub, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **19**, 1288 (1936); **20**, 37 (1937).

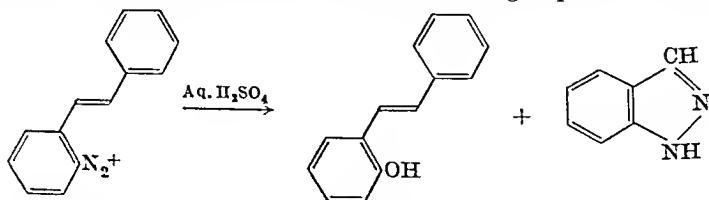
⁴³ Simpson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1943**, 447.

⁴⁴ Kornblum, Cooper, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **72**, 3013 (1950).

(The percentages following the Roman numerals indicate the yield of normal Pschorr cyclization products.)

XXIV >20%⁴²XXV 48%⁴⁵XXVI 45%³⁰XXVII 40%⁴⁶XXVIII <30%³⁰XXIX 67%⁴⁷XXX 50%⁴⁸XXXI 52%⁴⁹XXXII 24%^{50,51}XXXIII trace⁴⁶

For the success of the cyclization reaction the carbon atoms that are to be linked together must be near each other. Perhaps the most favorable bridging group is the rigid ethylenic bridge of a *cis*-2-aminostilbene derivative (V and XXII). The corresponding *trans* ethylenic derivative undergoes other reactions typical of the diazonium group,^{32,42} but is quite



⁴⁵ Forrest and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1948, 1137.

⁴⁶ Cullinane, Rees, and Plummer, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1939, 151.

⁴⁷ Hey and Mulley, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 2276.

⁴⁸ Heacock and Hey, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 1508.

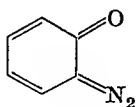
⁴⁹ Schetty, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 32, 24 (1949).

⁵⁰ Barger and Weitnauer, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 22, 1036 (1939).

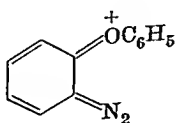
⁵¹ Marion and Grassie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 66, 1290 (1944).

incapable of giving phenanthrene. Hey and Mulley have calculated the distance of closest approach between the two relevant carbon atoms for several compounds (1.5 Å for V and XXII, 2.0 Å for XXIX, 2.2 Å for I, and 2.4 Å for III).⁴⁷ The calculated values are rather sensitive to the angle of the C—X—C bond of the bridge; unfortunately this angle is not accurately known for most of the systems of interest, and hence present calculations cannot be expected to have quantitative significance. However, the estimates do clearly show that the stilbene derivatives have the most favorable spacing. There is a definite decline in yield of cyclic product with increasing bridge size as in the sulfide XXVII and the sulfone XXVIII, while the still larger selenide XXXIII gave only traces of cyclic product. Electrical factors seem to play a somewhat secondary role. The decrease in yield from 65% for fluorenone (IV) or for 3-methylfluorenone (IX) to 35% for the nitrofluorenones (XII)³¹ is important practically, but relatively small as such effects go. (Compare the factor of about a million in the difference in the rates of nitration of benzene and of nitrobenzene.) For the most part the data available are insufficient to permit an appraisal of the importance of the electrical effect of the groups present. Generally such effects may be neglected in planning a synthesis.

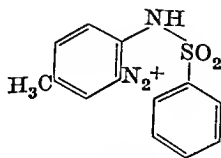
However, there is one electrical effect that seems to be of some importance. When a hydroxyl group is *ortho* to a diazonium group, a diazo oxide is formed (XXXIV). An *ortho*-quinoid structure is a possible resonance form even if the oxygen atom is part of an ether (XXXV). Similar structures are possible with *ortho* amino groups. Such structures may be responsible for resin-forming side reactions that often occur with compounds such as XXVI and XXXVI containing an oxygen atom or a nitrogen atom *ortho* to the diazonium function.⁵²



XXXIV



XXXV



XXXVI

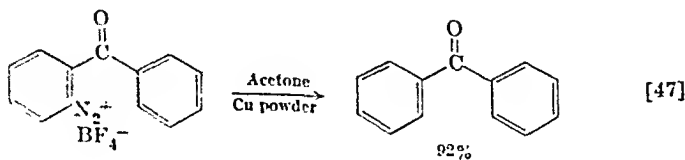
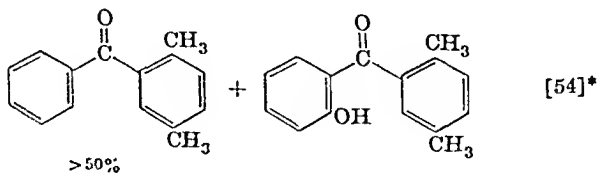
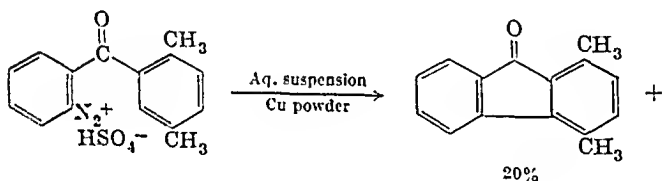
Side Reactions

Because the diazonium group is highly reactive, a number of reactions with external reagents can compete successfully at the expense of the cyclization. Examples of four such reactions follow.

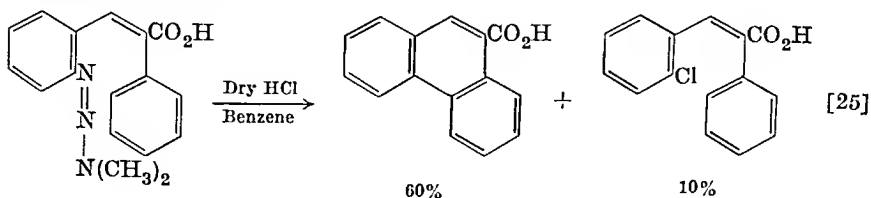
⁵² Ullmann and Gross, *Ber.*, 43, 2694 (1910).

Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Hydroxyl. This reaction is always a potential competitor. Examples are the formation of 2-hydroxy-4'-methylbenzophenone (X) and 2-hydroxy-3'-nitrobenzophenone (XIII), both of which were mentioned earlier (p. 414).

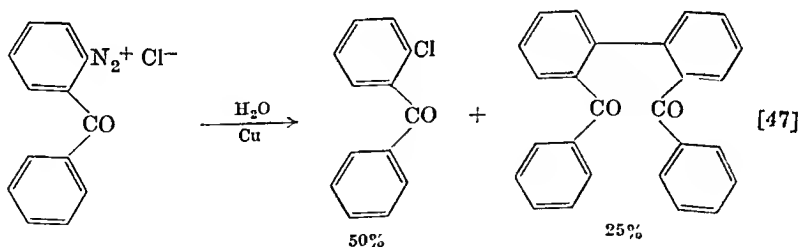
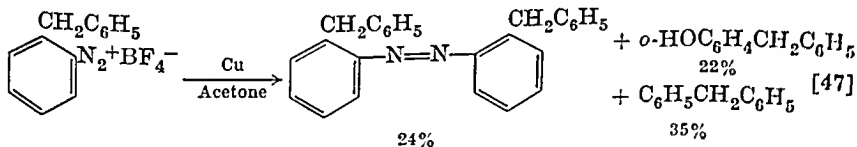
Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Hydrogen. This occurs in the presence of reagents known to promote such a replacement. For example, sodium hypophosphite and copper convert diazotized *cis*-2-aminostilbene (XXII) into phenanthrene in an 80% yield.⁴² However, this combination is of little use outside the phenanthrene series since diazonium salts less susceptible to ring closure give the normal replacement by hydrogen.⁴⁴ Diazotized *sym*-2-aminodiphenylethane (XXIV) is thus converted into *sym*-diphenylethane rather than into 9,10-dihydrophenanthrene.⁴² The use of alcohols as solvents also can lead to reduction.⁵³ A copper suspension in aqueous or in organic media sometimes gives reduction products even though such obvious hydrogen sources as the alcohols are absent.^{54,55}



Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Halogen. The Gattermann reaction usually does not occur, but can compete if excess hydrochloric acid is present. A recently suggested procedure involving formation and decomposition of a triazene sometimes gives chlorine-containing by-products.²⁵



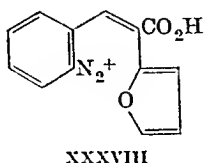
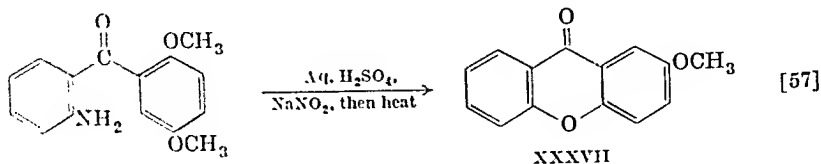
Coupling of the Aryl Groups. The Vorländer-Meyer⁵⁶ coupling of diazonium salts leads either to biphenyl derivatives or to azobenzene derivatives. Ammoniacal cuprous hydroxide is one of the best reducing agents for the coupling reaction when this reaction is desired. The coupling side reaction has not usually been reported, but may well be the cause of some of the low yields obtained.



In addition to side reactions due to external agents, there are a number of side reactions that can occur intramolecularly.

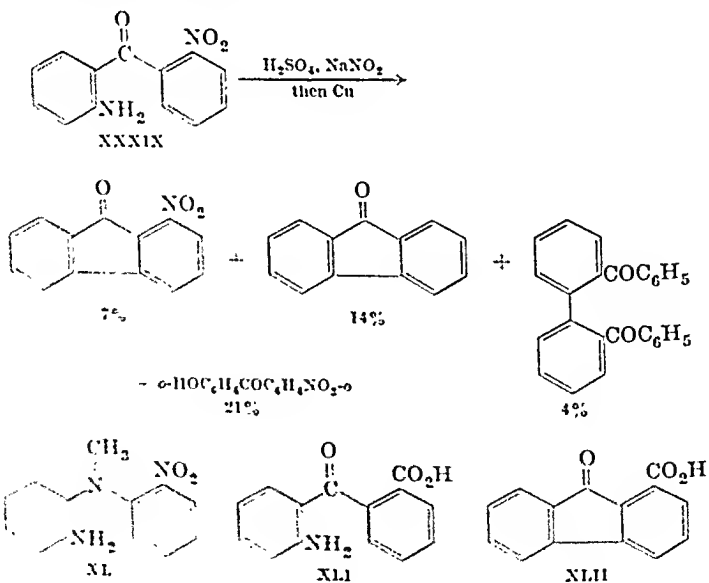
Formation of Xanthenes. An alkoxy group in the 2'-position interferes with many of the cyclization reactions. In the fluorenone series the product is a xanthone derivative, e.g. XXXVII,⁵⁷⁻⁵⁹ rather

than a fluorenone derivative. The failure of diazotized *trans*-2-amino- α -(2'-furyl)cinnamic acid (XXXVIII) to give identifiable products may have

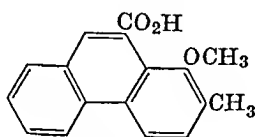


been a result of the occurrence of reaction at the oxygen atom rather than at the 3-position of the furan ring.⁶⁰

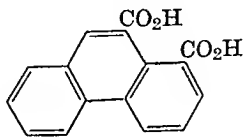
Elimination of Carboxyl and Nitro Groups. Examples of the elimination of 2'-nitro groups and of 2'-carboxyl groups have been reported. The 2'-nitro group of diazotized 2-amino-2'-nitrobenzophenone (XXXIX) is eliminated to an appreciable extent.⁴⁷ The 2'-nitro group of 2-amino-2'-nitro-N-methyldiphenylamine (XL) is largely eliminated if copper



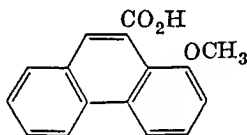
powder is used in the decomposition of the diazonium salt, and largely retained if the copper is omitted.⁴⁷ Thermal decomposition in aqueous sulfuric acid solution of the diazonium salt derived from 2-amino-2'-carboxybenzophenone (XLI) in the absence of copper led to approximately 10% yields each of fluorenone and of fluorenone-1-carboxylic acid (XLII).⁶¹ Side reactions of these types seem to be less important in the phenanthrene series, though detailed product studies have yet to be made. Thus several 1-methoxy- and 1-carboxy-phenanthrene derivatives (XLIII-XLV) have been prepared by the Pschorr reaction.^{5,15,62}



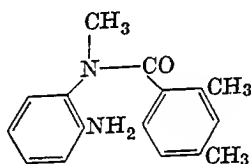
XLIII



XLIV

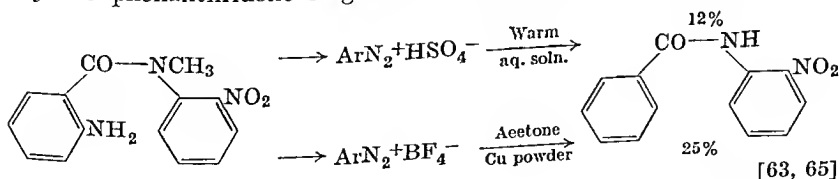


XLV



XLVI

Deamination in Phenanthridone Syntheses. An intramolecular hydrogen abstraction and resultant demethylation reaction has been reported^{63,64} in an attempted preparation of 4-substituted phenanthridones from 2-substituted N-(2'-aminobenzoyl)-N-methylanilines.⁶⁵ Incidentally the phenanthridone ring closure has usually been unsuccessful if



the amino group is not in the benzoyl ring; the amide XLVI gave no phenanthridone.⁶⁶

⁶¹ Sieglitz, *Ber.*, **57**, 316 (1924).

⁶² Hill and Short, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1937**, 260.

⁶³ Hey and Turpin, *Chemistry & Industry*, **216**, 216, 221 (1954).

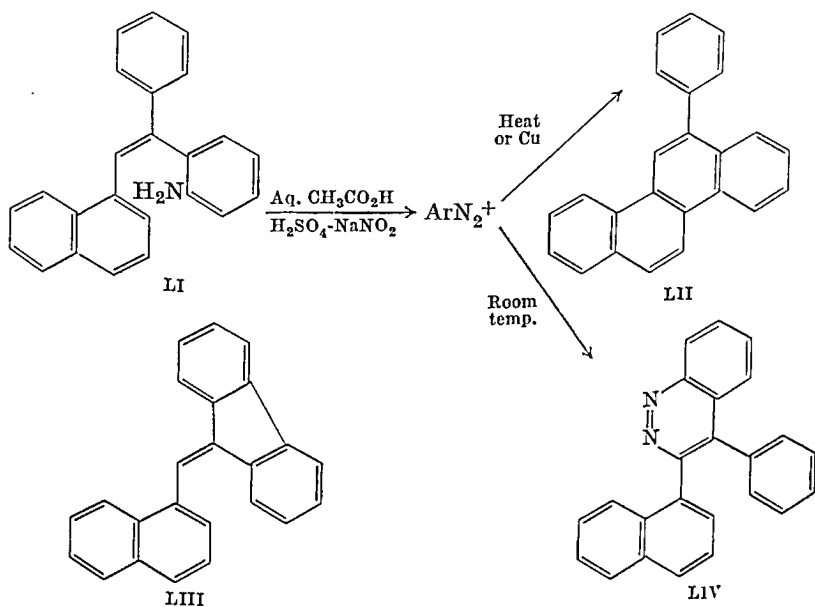
⁶⁴ Forrest, Haworth, Pinder, and Stevens, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1311.

⁶⁵ Forrest, Haworth, Pinder, and Stevens, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1953**, 3.

⁶⁶ Heacock and Hey, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1953**, 3.

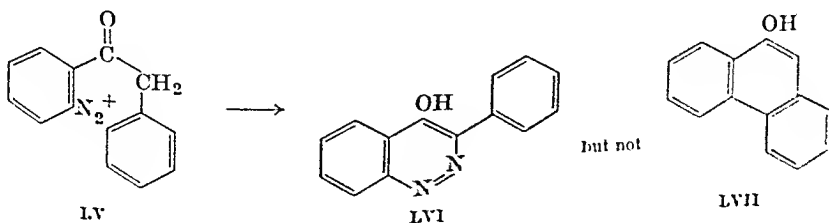
⁶⁷ Chardonnens and Würmli, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **33**, 1338 (1950).

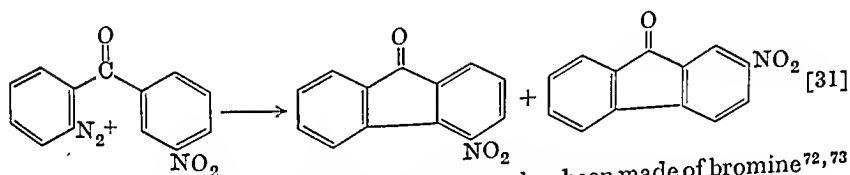
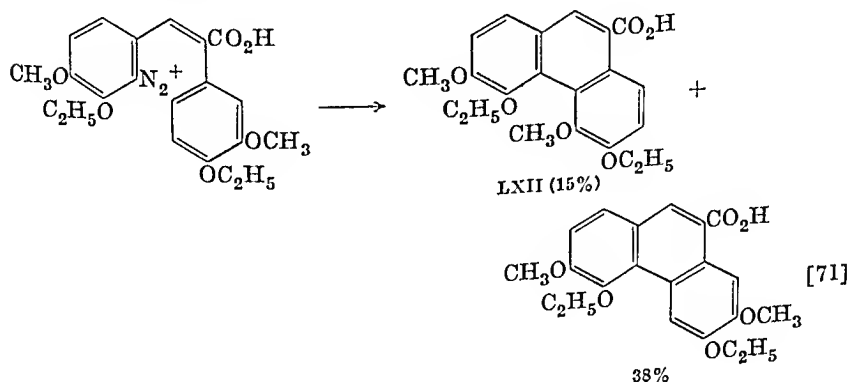
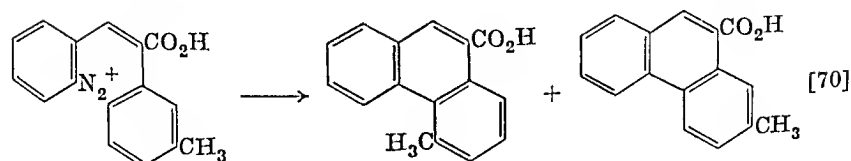
Simpson⁴³ has discussed in admirable fashion the factors that lead to cinnoline formation rather than to carbon cyclization. The diazonium salt derived from *cis*-2-(1'-naphthyl)-1-(2"-aminophenyl)-1-phenylethene



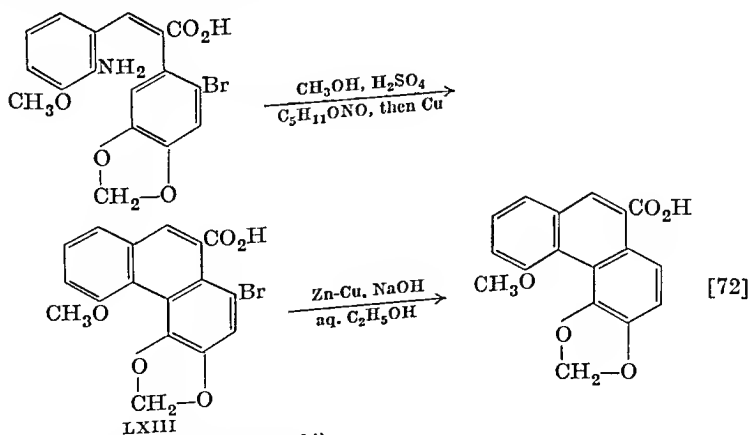
(LI) reacted on warming to give 2-phenylethrysene (LII). The presence or absence of 9-(1'-naphthylmethylene)fluorene (LIII) was not ascertained. At room temperature 3-(1'-naphthyl)-4-phenyleinnoline (LIV) was the major product. Cinnoline formation, like the indazole (XXIII) production observed with diazotized *cis*-2-aminostilbene (XXII), evidently has a lower activation energy than does loss of nitrogen, for nitrogen elimination is favored by high reaction temperatures. In general, the presence on the ethylenic bridge of electron-releasing groups aids and the presence of electron-attracting groups hinders cinnoline formation. With a carboxyl group present on the bridge, cinnoline formation does not occur.

Cinnoline ring closure occurs if an active methylenic bridge is present; the ketone LV gives the cinnoline LVI rather than the phenanthrol LVII.





In the phenanthrene series considerable use has been made of bromine^{72, 73} in the 6'-position as a blocking group, the bromine being removed eventually by reduction. Although the phenanthrene ring can be formed with



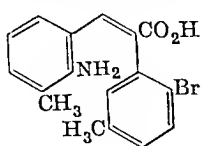
⁷⁰ Mayer and Balle, *Ann.*, **403**, 167 (1914).

⁷¹ Späth and Tharrer, *Ber.*, **66**, 904 (1933).

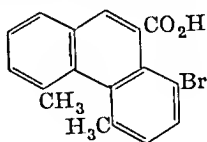
⁷² Girardet, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **14**, 513 (1931).

⁷³ Lewis and Elderfield, *J. Org. Chem.*, **5**, 290 (1940).

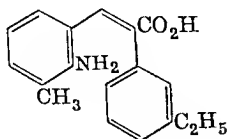
two alkoxy groups in the 4- and 5-positions as shown by LXII and LXIII, two alkyl groups in the 4- and 5-positions are too bulky to permit closure. No identifiable product was obtained from the reaction of diazotized



LXIV

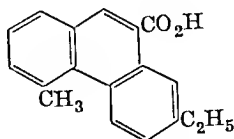


LXV



LXVI

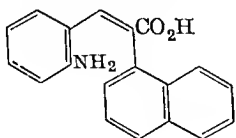
Diazotize,
then heat



LXVII

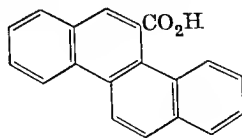
trans-2-amino-3-methyl- α -(2'-bromo-5'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid (LXIV).⁷³ (The acid LXV was *not* formed.) It is possible to use this effect to advantage in preparing dialkylphenanthrene derivatives. Diazo-tized *trans*-2-amino-3-methyl- α -(3'-ethylphenyl)cinnamic acid (LXVI) gave a good yield of 7-ethyl-4-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid (LXVII), uncontaminated with the 4,5-isomer.

With a 1-naphthyl group in the α -position of the cinnamic acid, closure takes place in the 2-position rather than in the 8-position. *trans*-2-Amino- α -(1'-naphthyl)cinnamic acid (LXVIII) when diazotized and treated with copper powder and sodium hypophosphite gave chrysene-5-carboxylic



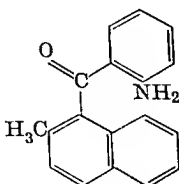
LXVIII

Aq. C₂H₅OH
H₂SO₄, NaNO₂
then Cu, NaH₂PO₂

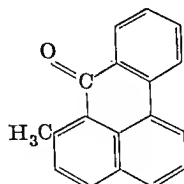


LXIX (28%)

[74]



LXX



LXXI

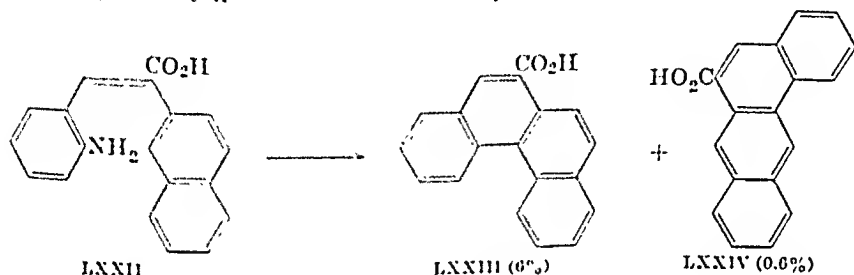
[75]

⁷⁴ Fieser and Joshel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **62**, 1211 (1940).

⁷⁵ Lothrop and Goodwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **65**, 363 (1943).

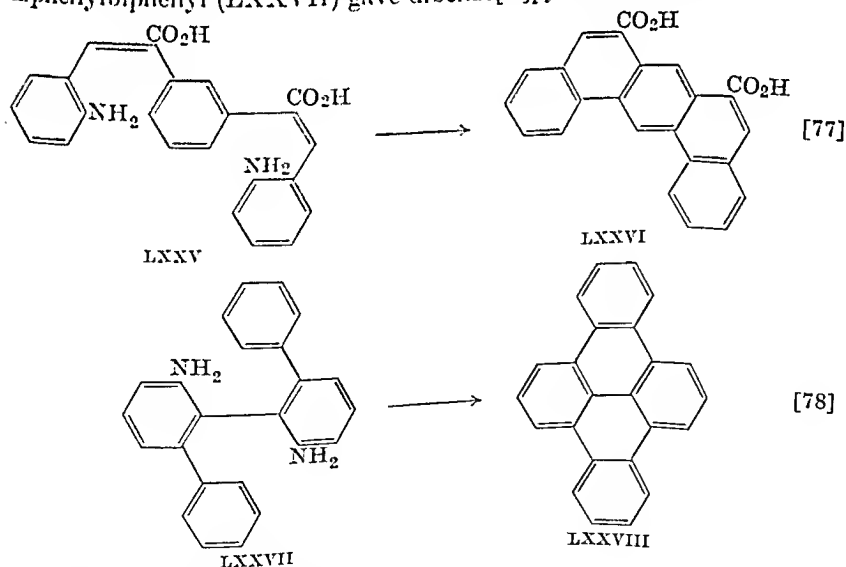
acid (LXXIX). The 1-naphthyl ketone LXX in which the 2-position is blocked does, however, give a small yield of the 1,8-cyclization product LXXI.

With a 2-naphthyl group, closure takes place to the 1-position in preference to the 3-position. This is illustrated by the reaction of diazotized *trans*-2-amino- α -(2'-naphthyl)cinnamic acid (LXXII) to give primarily benzo[*c*]phenanthrene-6-carboxylic acid (LXXIII).⁷⁶



Simultaneous Closure of Two Rings

A few examples of the simultaneous closure of two rings have been reported. The *m*-phenylenediacetic acid derivative LXXV gave dibenz[*a*]anthracene-6,8-dicarboxylic acid (LXXVI) and 2,2'-diamino-6,6'-diphenylbiphenyl (LXXVII) gave dibenzo[*cl*]pyrene (LXXVIII).



⁷⁶ Cook, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1931, 2524.

⁷⁷ Cook, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1932, 1472.

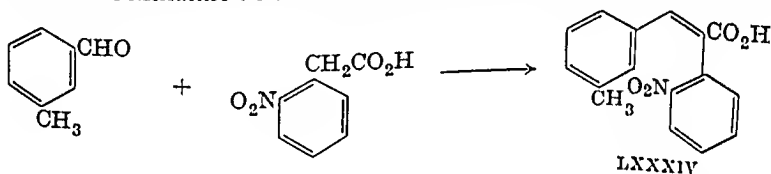
⁷⁸ Sako, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Japan*, 9, 55 (1934) [*C. A.*, 28, 3730 (1934)].

using *o*-nitrobenzaldehyde or a substituted *o*-nitrobenzaldehyde. The reaction is illustrated by the preparation of *trans*-2-nitro- α -phenylcinnamic acid (LXXXIII).^{32,82}

Pschorr originally specified the use of fused zinc chloride in this reaction, but its presence appears to be detrimental⁸³ although many succeeding workers have followed the original procedure. For the condensation of *o*-nitrobenzaldehyde with phenylacetic acid, potassium carbonate proved a more convenient catalyst than potassium phenylacetate, and it gave the same yield. Small amounts of acetic acid or moisture had no effect on the yield.

Fortunately, the presence of the carboxyl group leads to the formation of more of the *trans*-cinnamic acid with the aryl groups in the proper *cis* relationship than of its undesired stereoisomer. A discussion of the preparation of the *o*-nitrobenzaldehydes and of the phenylacetic acid derivatives is beyond the scope of this chapter. Examples of such preparations are available in many of the references cited in Table I.

A few nitrocinnamic acids such as LXXXIV have been prepared from



o-nitrophenylacetic acid,⁷⁰ which is readily available from *o*-nitrotoluene. Condensation of *o*-nitrotoluene with diethyl oxalate in the presence of sodium methoxide followed by hydrolysis gives *o*-nitrophenylpyruvic acid, which is readily oxidized to *o*-nitrophenylacetic acid with hydrogen peroxide.⁸⁴

The most satisfactory reducing agent for the nitro group is an ammoniacal suspension of ferrous hydroxide. The hydrated iron oxides are readily removed. Catalytic hydrogenation is difficult to control and often leads to partial reduction of the ethylenic bond.

Some of the amino acids exhibit an interesting polymorphism.^{4,84a} Crystallization of *trans*-2-amino- α -phenylcinnamic acid from ethyl acetate leads to a bright yellow modification, m. p. 186–187°, whereas crystallization from ethanol gives colorless prisms sintering at 170° to give the yellow form which then melts at 185–187°.

Several *cis*-stilbene derivatives have been obtained by decarboxylating the cinnamic acid derivatives using the copper chromite hydrogenation

⁸² DeTar, *Org. Syntheses*, 35, 89 (1955).

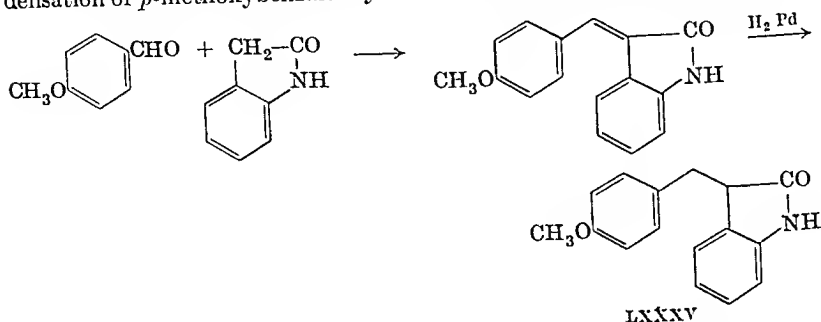
⁸³ Bogert and Stamatoff, *Rec. trav. chim.*, 52, 584 (1933).

⁸⁴ May and Mossetig, *J. Org. Chem.*, 11, 435 (1946).

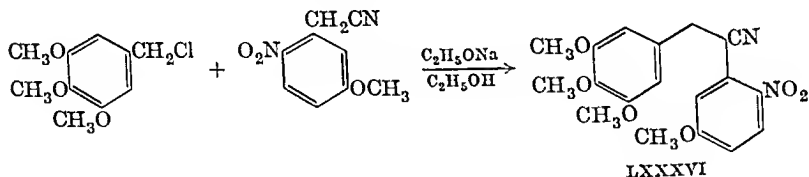
^{84a} Gulland and Virden, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1928, 1478.

catalyst in refluxing quinoline.^{32,42,85} Rearrangement to the *trans* isomer occurs to only a relatively minor extent during the decarboxylation.

Intermediates for Dihydrophenanthrenes. Catalytic reduction of the 2-nitro- α -phenylcinnamic acids leads to the formation of *sym*-2-aminodiphenylethane derivatives. Another method utilizes the condensation of *p*-methoxybenzaldehyde with oxindole, followed by catalytic

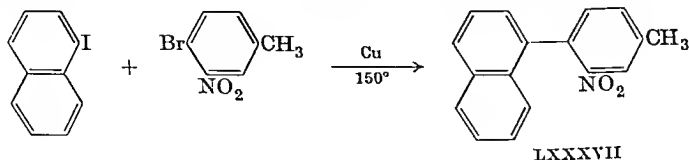


reduction to give 3-(4'-methoxybenzyl)oxindole (LXXXV). The oxindole LXXXV can be hydrolyzed by aqueous barium hydroxide at 170–180°, to give α -(2-aminophenyl)- β -(4'-methoxyphenyl)propionic acid.⁸⁶ A third synthesis utilizes the condensation of a benzyl chloride with a phenylacetonitrile as in the preparation of LXXXVI.⁸⁷ The nitro



compound was reduced catalytically with 2% palladium on strontium carbonate in dioxane solution.

Intermediates for Fluoranthenes. The required 1-(2'-nitrophenyl)-naphthalene is usually obtained by a mixed Ullmann biaryl synthesis, as



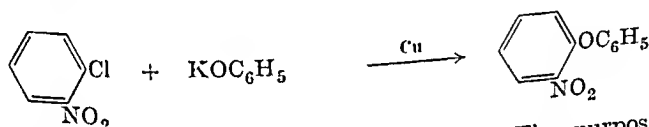
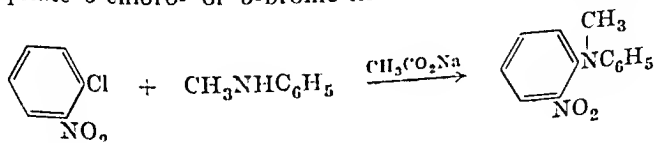
⁸⁵ DeTar and Carpino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **78**, 475 (1956).

⁸⁶ Windaus and Eickel, *Ber.*, **57**, 1871 (1924). Compare, Kirchnor, *Nachr. Akad. Wiss. Göttingen*, **1921**, 154 (*Chem. Zentr.*, **1923**, **1**, 944).

⁸⁷ Cook, Dickson, Ellis and Loudon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1949**, 1074.

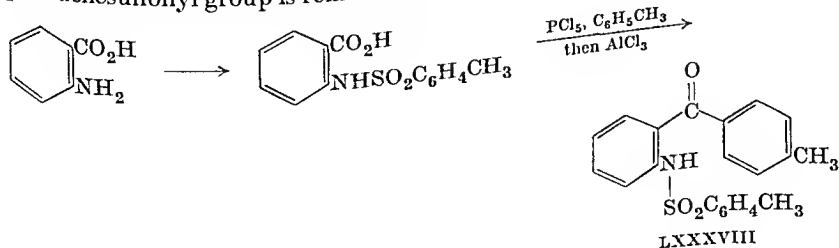
illustrated for the preparation of 1-(2'-nitro-4'-methylphenyl)naphthalene (LXXXVII); this product was isolated by a combination of distillation and chromatography and was hydrogenated catalytically using Raney nickel.⁸⁸

Intermediates for the Preparation of N-Substituted Carbazoles and Dibenzofurans. The required 2-aminodiphenylamine or 2-aminodiphenyl ether is obtained by either catalytic or chemical reduction of the corresponding nitro compound,^{30,89} the latter being obtained from an appropriate *o*-chloro- or *o*-bromo-nitrobenzene by reaction with an



aniline derivative⁴⁷ or with a phenolate salt.⁹⁰ The purpose of the copper powder in the 2-nitrodiphenyl ether preparation is less that of a catalyst than of an inhibitor. In the absence of the copper, an exothermic reaction takes place leading to a black resin, due perhaps to oxidation of the phenol by the nitro compound.

Intermediates for Fluorenones. The preparation of 2-aminobenzophenones has been reviewed.⁹¹ One useful method starts with anthranilic acid.⁹² The amino group is protected with a *p*-toluenesulfonyl group, and then a Friedel-Crafts synthesis is carried out on the carboxyl group, and then a Friedel-Crafts synthesis is carried out on the carboxyl function as illustrated in the preparation of LXXXVIII. By this procedure *p*-toluenesulfonyl group is removed by acid hydrolysis.



⁸⁸ Tucker and Whalley, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 3213.

⁸⁹ Gilman and Broadbent, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 69, 2053 (1947).

⁹⁰ Brewster and Groening, *Org. Syntheses Coll. Vol. 2*, p. 445 (1943).

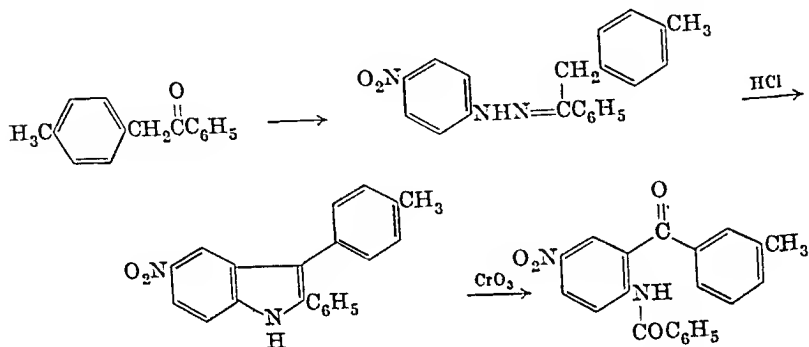
⁹¹ Simpson, Atkinson, Schofield, and Stephenson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1945, 646.

⁹² Ullmann and Bleier, *Ber.*, 35, 4273 (1902).

2-aminobenzophenone and 2-amino-4'-methylbenzophenone are obtained in a 50% over-all yield from anthranilic acid.⁹³

Unfortunately *o*-nitrobenzoyl chloride gives very poor yields in Friedel-Crafts reactions.⁵⁴ *o*-Chlorobenzoyl chloride reacts normally, but ammonolysis of the halogen is difficult.⁵⁴ On the other hand the *o*-carboxyl group of *o*-benzoylbenzoic acids can usually be converted to an amino group via the Hofmann or the Curtius reaction.^{95,96}

An interesting oxidation of indole derivatives obtained from phenyl-



hydrazones by the Fischer indole synthesis makes available a number of hitherto inaccessible 2-aminobenzophenones.⁹⁴

The Cyclization Reaction

The amine is usually diazotized in aqueous sulfuric acid. Insoluble or unreactive amines have been diazotized in acetic acid, methanol; or ethanol with butyl nitrite and sulfuric acid or hydrochloric acid. Amino acids are often dissolved in alkaline solutions along with sodium nitrite, the mixture being run into sulfuric acid.

The numerous methods for bringing about cyclization by decomposition of the diazonium salt fall into a relatively few classes. Although some comparative quantitative data are available on the efficiency of these cyclization procedures, it is necessary in most cases to rely on the evaluation of semiquantitative preparative runs.

Method 1. The diazonium salt solution is merely heated. This procedure nearly always gives some of the cyclization product if cyclization

⁹³ DeTar and Scheifele, *Org. Syntheses*, **32**, 8 (1952).

⁹⁴ Schofield and Theobald, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1950**, 1505.

⁹⁵ Graebe and Ullmann, *Ann.*, **291**, 8 (1896).

⁹⁶ Wallis and Lane, in Adams, *Organic Reactions*, Vol. III, 267, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1946; Smith, *ibid.*, 337.

is structurally possible. In the fluorenone series the use of 50% sulfuric acid gives somewhat better yields of the fluorenone and less of the hydroxybenzophenone than does 1 *N* sulfuric acid.⁹⁷ Concentrations of sulfuric acid greater than 75% tend to give lower yields of 3-methylfluorenone, probably because of sulfonation (however, cf. the preparation of 2-nitrofluorenone below, p. 438). For the production of phenanthrene this method is definitely inferior to Method 2 using copper powder.³²

Method 2. The diazonium salt solution is heated in the presence of copper powder. Gattermann copper⁹⁸ prepared by reducing cupric sulfate with zinc dust has been used frequently, though other types of copper may be as good or better. The use of copper powder in the presence of alcoholic solvents is inadvisable except for the phenanthrene cyclization. In other systems the procedure leads to extensive replacement of the diazonium group by hydrogen.

For 2-(4'-methylbenzoyl)benzenediazonium salts, thermal decomposition in 1 *N* sulfuric acid gave 65% of 3-methylfluorenone, while copper powder in 1 *N* sulfuric acid gave a 50% yield and led to the formation of some 4-methylbenzophenone. In 50% sulfuric acid an 80% yield of cyclic product was produced whether or not copper or solid cuprous chloride was present. On the other hand 2-(3'-nitrobenzoyl)benzenediazonium salts gave a 35% yield of cyclic product in 1 *N* sulfuric acid and a 55% yield in 50% sulfuric acid, but with copper powder present a 95% yield of cyclic product was formed in 1 *N* sulfuric acid and an 85% yield in 50% sulfuric acid. From 2 to 5% of 3-nitrobenzophenone was also produced when copper powder was present. The above results were obtained with crystalline diazonium salts and are based on quantitative chromatographic isolation of the fluorenone-benzophenone mixtures, these being analyzed by their infrared absorption spectra.⁹⁷

Method 3. The diazonium salt solution is made alkaline and heated. In most cases this method gives poor results. It has been used successfully with some Pschorr cyclizations and may have particular merit if there is a hydroxyl group ortho to the diazonium group (resulting in the formation of a relatively stable diazo oxide rather than a diazonium salt).

Method 4. The diazonium salt solution is treated with sodium hypophosphite and copper. This procedure is usable only with the Pschorr cyclization. In all other cases it leads to replacement of the diazonium group by hydrogen. This procedure was first described by Ruggli and Staub⁴² and appears to have become fashionable, although there does not appear to be any information about its merit in comparison with Method 2.

⁹⁷ DeTar and Whiteley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **79**, in press (1957).

⁹⁸ Gattermann, *Ber.*, **23**, 1219 (1890).

Other Methods. In a few examples the crystalline fluoborate has been suspended in acetone and stirred with copper powder.²⁵ The method may prove to be of advantage in some cases, but the reported high yields are mostly based on the fluoborate. Yields calculated on the basis of the amine are less attractive.

Another method consists of reaction of the diazonium salt with dimethylamine to give a triazine. The triazine is suspended in an organic solvent and treated with hydrogen chloride. The reported examples seem to give relatively poor yields.²⁵

The N-nitrosoamide decomposes on heating to give some cyclization product.^{25,98a} This method also seems to be of no particular preparative use.

EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

1-Bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic Acid. (Pechorr synthesis using Gattermann copper paste⁹⁸ in an aqueous acidic medium.)⁹⁹

(a) *Preparation of the amine, trans-2-amino-6-bromo-3,4-dimethoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid.* A mixture of 15 g. of 6-bromo-3,4-dimethoxy-2-nitrobenzaldehyde (6-bromo-2-nitroveratraldehyde), 8.3 g. of dry sodium phenylacetate, and 90 ml. of acetic anhydride is heated at 100° for thirty hours. Water (750 ml.) is added and, after hydrolysis of the excess anhydride, an excess of ammonia is added and the mixture extracted with two 400-ml. portions of ether. Acidification of the aqueous layer gives 13 g. of the crude nitrocinnamic acid which gives 10.7 g. of material, m. p. 193–200° after one crystallization from methanol. Recrystallization of the combined products of several runs gives the pure nitrocinnamic acid, m. p. 206–208° (30% yield). Reduction with ammoniacal ferrous sulfate gives the aminocinnamic acid in 98% yield.

(b) *Cyclization.* To a mixture of 2 g. of *trans*-2-amino-6-bromo-3,4-dimethoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid, 20 ml. of ethanol, and 5.2 ml. of 3 *N* hydrochloric acid is added at 0° a 50% solution of butyl nitrite in ethanol. After one-half hour, the orange solution is diluted with 200 ml. of water, and copper paste is added in small portions with mechanical stirring.* The mixture consisting of light green solution, copper powder, and a white solid, is extracted with ether. Sodium carbonate extraction of the ether followed by acidification of the extract gives 1.57 g. of 1-bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid. The yield of partly purified product from several runs was 72–82%. After washing

^{98a} DeTar and Savat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **75**, 7117 (1953).

⁹⁹ Small and Turnbull, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **59**, 1541 (1937).

* The quantity of copper paste is not specified in the original article, but the writer has found that quantities of the order of one gram are satisfactory.

with acetone followed by several recrystallizations from ethanol and from acetic acid, the product melts at 260-270° (evac. tube).

4,6-Dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic Acid. (Pschorr synthesis using 75% ethanol as the solvent with copper and sodium hypophosphite as promoters.)⁷³

(a) *Preparation of the amine, trans-2-amino-3-methyl- α -(4'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid.* A mixture of 37.6 g. (0.2 mole) of potassium *p*-methylphenylacetate, 33 g. (0.2 mole) of 2-nitro-3-methylbenzaldehyde, and 204 g. (2 moles) of acetic anhydride is heated with stirring for eight hours at 105-110°. The anhydride is decomposed at 100° by careful addition of water, and the reaction mixture is poured into 1 l. of cold 5% hydrochloric acid. The solid is recrystallized from acetic acid and then from ethanol to give 38 g. (65%) of the nitrocinnamic acid, m. p. 250.5-251.5°. A suspension of 36 g. of the nitro acid in 500 ml. of warm dilute aqueous ammonia is stirred into a boiling mixture of 240 g. of hydrated ferrous sulfate, 500 ml. of water, and 500 ml. of 12 *M* aqueous ammonia. Boiling is continued for an hour, and the mixture is allowed to stand overnight. The filtrate from the hydrated iron oxides is acidified to Congo Red with hydrochloric acid. The resulting crude amino acid is recrystallized from 70% methanol to give 27.2 g. (84%) of product, m. p. 176.5-177.5°.

(b) *Cyclization.* A suspension of 15 g. of *trans*-2-amino-3-methyl- α -(4'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid in 150 ml. of 15% ethanolic hydrogen chloride is stirred for an hour at 0°, then 20 ml. of freshly distilled amyl nitrite is added and stirring continued for another hour. The solution is then added to a suspension of 1 g. of copper powder in a solution of 50 g. of sodium hypophosphite in 50 ml. of water containing 2 drops of concentrated sulfuric acid. A violent evolution of nitrogen occurs, and the phenanthroic acid separates. After stirring for thirty minutes with gentle heating, the solution is cooled and the acid collected and dissolved in sodium hydroxide solution. The filtered alkaline solution is acidified and the 4,6-dimethyl-9-phenanthroic acid is recrystallized from 80% methanol, using decolorizing carbon (Norit), to give 10 g. (71%) of fine colorless needles, m. p. 216-217°.

3-Chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic Acid. (Pschorr reaction via *o*-nitrophenylacetic acid; cyclization with copper powder in aqueous ethanol.)⁸⁴

(a) *Preparation of the amine, trans-4-chloro- α -(2'-aminophenyl)cinnamic acid.* A mixture of 28 g. of sodium *o*-nitrophenylacetate, 19 g. of *p*-chlorobenzaldehyde, 2.5 g. of fused zinc chloride, and 100 ml. of acetic anhydride is heated on the steam bath for twenty hours. Excess anhydride is hydrolyzed, and the crude product is precipitated with water and

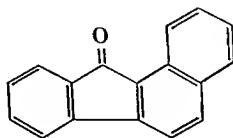
recrystallized from acetic acid to give the nitrocinnamic acid; 14.9 g., m. p. 196–199°. For reduction, 5.1 g. of the nitrocinnamic acid is dissolved in 50 ml. of 4 *M* aqueous ammonia and added to a hot (80–90°) slurry prepared by addition of 85 ml. of 12 *M* aqueous ammonia to a solution of 34 g. of ferrous sulfate in 102 ml. of water. After ten minutes the mixture is filtered through diatomaceous silica (Filter-Cel). Acidification gives 3.4 g. of the aminocinnamic acid. Attempted crystallization from ethanol gives the lactam, 4-chlorobenzaloxindole.

(b) *Cyclization*. To 80 ml. of 5 *N* sulfuric acid cooled to -3 to $+2^\circ$ is added during twenty minutes a suspension of 5 g. of *trans*-4-chloro- α -(2'-aminophenyl)cinnamic acid, 3 g. of sodium nitrite, 75 ml. of water, and 2 ml. of *M* aqueous ammonia. After an additional hour of stirring at 0 to 5°, 20–30 ml. of ethanol and 5 g. of copper-bronze are added, and the mixture is heated to 70–80° for one-half hour. The precipitate is collected on a filter and the alkali-soluble material leached from the copper with hot dilute sodium hydroxide. The alkaline filtrate on acidification gives crude 3-chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid, which on recrystallization from glacial acetic acid has a m. p. of 249–251°; yield 1.4 g.

2-Nitrofluorenone. (Fluorenone cyclization in concentrated sulfuric acid.)¹⁰⁰ To a solution of 3 g. of 2-amino-5-nitrobenzophenone in 30 ml. of concentrated sulfuric acid, 1 g. of powdered sodium nitrite is added over a period of fifteen minutes at -5 to 0° . The solution is heated at 95° for two hours, then diluted with 60 ml. of water. The product on recrystallization from ethanol gives 1.7 g. (60%) of 2-nitrofluorenone, m. p. 220–221°, and 0.4 g. (13%) of 2-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzophenone, m. p. 119–121°.

With 85% sulfuric acid the yields are 56 and 16%, respectively; with 50% sulfuric acid and copper powder the yields are 15 and 6%.

11-Chrysofluorenone (LXXXIX). (Fluorenone synthesis, use of copper powder; diazotization with isoamyl nitrite.)¹⁰¹



LXXXIX

¹⁰⁰ Nunn, Schofield, and Theobald, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 2797.

¹⁰¹ Orchin and Reggel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 436 (1951). The authors give extensive details.

(b) *Cyclization.* The diazonium solution is added slowly to 150 ml. of boiling 50% sulfuric acid, and the furan steam-distilled to give 4 g. (40% based on the nitro compound) of material, m. p. 106–106.5° after recrystallization from ethanol.

3-Cyanocarbazole. (Example of preparation of a triazine and of a carbazole by thermal decomposition of the triazine.)¹⁰³ 2-Nitro-4-cyanodiphenylamine is prepared in 78% yield by heating to the boiling point equimolecular quantities of aniline and of 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzonitrile. Reduction in 78% yield is carried out with stannous chloride in glacial acetic acid and hydrochloric acid. Diazotization yields the triazole in 65% yield. The triazole (1 g.) is heated in a metal bath until nitrogen evolution ceases. Extraction with ethanol and recrystallization from toluene gives 0.3 g. (35%) of 3-cyanocarbazole, m. p. 184–185°.

TABULAR SURVEY OF DIAZONIUM RING CLOSURE REACTIONS

The various examples of the cyclization reaction have been grouped in the following tables according to the type of bridge group involved. The examples are intended to be complete through May, 1956, although by the very nature of the subject some references will certainly have been overlooked. Table IV, which lists a number of examples of carbazole derivatives that have been prepared by heating triazoles, does not aim at completeness.

¹⁰³ Preston, Tucker, and Cameron, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1942, 500.

TABLE I
PHENANTHRENE DERIVATIVES

Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Conditions	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{11}H_{10}$	<i>cis</i> -2-Aminonaphthalene	Phenanthrene	Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu Na_2CO_3 Aq. H_2SO_4 , NaH_2PO_2 , Cu	16-42 60-80 65 — 80	32 32, 42 42 104 42
$C_{12}H_9Br_2O_2$	<i>cis</i> -2,4'-Diaminonaphthalene	Phenanthrene	C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	18	105
$C_{13}H_9Cl_2O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4-bromo- α -(4'-bromophenyl)-ethanamine acid	3,6-Dibromophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , Na_2CO_3 , Cu, NaH_2PO_2	70-90 crude	106
$C_{13}H_9Cl_2O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(3',4'-dichlorophenyl)ethanamine acid	5,6- and 6,7-Dichlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu, NaH_2PO_2	75 crude	107
$C_{13}H_9BrO_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-bromophenyl)ethanamine acid	8-Bromophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	50-60	20
$C_{13}H_9ClO_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-bromophenyl)ethanamine acid	9-Bromophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	15, 108
$C_{13}H_9ClO_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-chloro- α -phenylethanamine acid	2-Chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	65	108
$C_{13}H_9ClO_2$	<i>trans</i> -4-Chloro- α -(2'-aminophenyl)ethanamine acid	3-Chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	30	84
$C_{13}H_9ClO_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-chlorophenyl)ethanamine acid	6-Chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	28	109, 110
$C_{13}H_9NO$	3-(2'-Aminoethylidene)oxindole	Lactam of 8-aminophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	55	15
$C_{13}H_9NO_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-nitrophenyl)ethanamine acid	8-Nitrophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	24	111
$C_{13}H_9NO_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -phenylethanamine acid	Phenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Acetone, Cu Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu Aq. HCl, Cu bronze Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. pH 5 Aq. pH 7 Dry, acetone, Cu* Dry, acetone, Cu* Nitrosamide, C_6H_6 Nitrosamide, $(C_2H_5)_2O$ Triazene† Aq. C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	93 crude 86 40 60 57 75 81 94 43 37 58 18	4, 25 47 25 47 25 47 47 25 47 25 25 105

trans-2-Amino- α -(4'-aminophenyl)ethanamine acid Phenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 420-462.

* The crystalline diazonium chloride was used, and the yield is based on the diazonium salt.

† The literature was obtained by coupling the diazonium salt with dimethylamine.

TABLE I—Continued

PHENANTHRENE DERIVATIVES			Yield, %	Reference
Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product		
$C_{13}H_{10}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-hydroxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	2-Hydroxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	55	15
$C_{16}H_8O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-carboxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	Anhydride of phenanthrene-8,9-dicarboxylic acid	40-45	15
$C_{16}H_8N_2O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-cyanoophenyl)cinnamic acid	0-Cyanophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	58	111
$C_{16}H_{10}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-carboxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	Phenanthrene-6,9-dicarboxylic acid	48	111
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4,5-methylenedioxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	2,3-Methylenedioxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	85	112, 113
$C_{16}H_{12}O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-methyl- α -phenylcinnamic acid	2-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	75 crude	70
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methyl- α -phenylcinnamic acid	3-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	75 crude	70
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methyl- α -phenylcinnamic acid	4-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	20	15
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid	6-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	20	20
		Na_2CO_3	70	70
		HCl , C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	3	15
	<i>trans</i> - α -(2'-Amino-5'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid	7-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	60-70	70
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid	4-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	—	70
	<i>trans</i> -3-Methyl- α -(2'-aminophenyl)cinnamic acid	2- and 4-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	—	70
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(3'-methylphenyl)cinnamic acid	7- and 5-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	—	70
$C_{16}H_{14}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-methoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	2-Methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	80	10
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	3-Methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Quant.	8
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-methoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	6-Methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	50	5
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-methoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	8-Methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	55	5
$C_{16}H_{12}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methoxy-4-hydroxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	3-Hydroxy-1-methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	ca. 3	7
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-hydroxy-4-methoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	4-Hydroxy-3-methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	60 crude	13
$C_{17}H_{11}BrO_5$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methoxy- α -(2'-bromo-4',5'-methylenedioxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	8-Bromo-4-methoxy-5,6-methylenedioxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	57	72
$C_{17}H_{12}O_5$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methoxy- α -(3',4'-methylenedioxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	4-Methoxy-6,7-methylenedioxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	—	72

$C_{17}H_{13}BrO_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy-6-bromo- α -phenylcinnamic acid	1-Bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	70-80	99
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy-5-bromo- α -phenylcinnamic acid	2-Bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	95 crude	99
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2'-bromophenyl)cinnamic acid	8-Bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	60	15
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-bromo-4',5'-dimethoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	8-Bromo-5,6-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	60-65	19, 99
$C_{17}H_{13}ClO_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4,5-dimethoxy- α -(4'-chlorophenyl)cinnamic acid	6-Chloro-2,3-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	35	115
$C_{17}H_{14}O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methyl- α -(4'-methylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	4,6-Dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu, NaH_2PO_4	71	73
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2',5'-dimethylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	5,8-Dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	85 crude	116
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2',4'-dimethylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	6,8-Dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	87 crude	83
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(3'-ethylphenyl)cinnamic acid	5- and 7-Ethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	H_2SO_4 , Cu	95	117
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-ethylphenyl)cinnamic acid	6-Ethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	40	83
$C_{17}H_{14}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3-methoxy- α -(2'-methylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	4-Methoxy-8-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu, NaOH	80 crude	118
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(5'-methoxy-2'-methylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	5-Methoxy-8-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	—	119
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-methoxy-2'-methylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	6-Methoxy-8-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	NaOH	—	120
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-methoxy-3-methylphenyl)-cinnamic acid	8-Methoxy-7-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Na_2CO_3 , Cu	—	62
$C_{17}H_{14}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(4'-ethoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	6-Ethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	—	114
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4,5-dimethoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	2,3-Dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	50-60	9
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -phenylcinnamic acid	3,4-Dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	70-80	7
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-cinnamic acid	6,7-Dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	80	121, 122
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-methoxy- α -(3'-methoxyphenyl)-cinnamic acid	2,5-Dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	60	19
		2,7-Dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. Na_2CO_3	35	123

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 460-462.

$C_{18}H_{16}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(4'-methylphenyl)ethanamine acid	3,4-Dimethoxy-6-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	80	15
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2'-methylphenyl)ethanamine acid	3,4-Dimethoxy-8-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. Na_2CO_3	90 crude	15
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4-hydroxy-3-methoxy- α -(2',5'-dimethylphenyl)ethanamine acid	5,8-Dimethyl-3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Dioxane, H_2SO_4 , Cu, NaH_2PO_2	47 crude	128
$C_{18}H_{16}O_5$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(4'-methoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	3,4,6-Trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	70	12
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2'-methoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	3,4,8-Trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	—	16
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(3'-methoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	3,4,5- and 3,4,7-Trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	—	20
$C_{18}H_{14}O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-naphthyl)ethanamine acid	Benzofuranthrene-6-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	6	76, 129, 130
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(1'-naphthyl)ethanamine acid	Chrysene-5-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	0.6	74, 130
$C_{19}H_{17}BrO_6$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2'-bromo-4',5'-dimethoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	8-Bromo-3,4,5,6-tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu, NaH_2PO_2	28	131, 132
$C_{19}H_{16}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2',3',4',5'-tetramethylphenyl)ethanamine acid	5,6,7,8-Tetramethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	27	133a
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-methyl-5'-isopropylphenyl)ethanamine acid	8-Methyl-5-isopropylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	30	83
$C_{19}H_{18}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(2'-methyl-4'-isopropylphenyl)ethanamine acid	6-Isopropyl-8-methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , HCl, Cu	65 crude	133b
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2',5'-dimethylphenyl)ethanamine acid	3,4-Dimethoxy-5,8-dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Dioxane, H_2SO_4 , NaH_2PO_2 , Cu	50	128
$C_{19}H_{16}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4,5-dimethoxy- α -(2',5'-dimethylphenyl)ethanamine acid	2,3-Dimethoxy-5,8-dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Dioxane, H_2SO_4 , NaH_2PO_2 , Cu	83 crude	134
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2'-ethoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	8-Ethoxy-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	80	17
$C_{19}H_{16}O_6$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4,5-trimethoxy- α -(4'-methoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	2,3,4,6-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	50	135, 136
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-methoxy- α -(3',4',5'-trimethoxyphenyl)ethanamine acid	2,5,6,7-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. dioxane, NaH_2PO_2 , Cu, H_2SO_4 , Aq. Na_2CO_3	63	137
				—	138

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 400-402.

TABLE I—Continued

PHENANTHRENE DERIVATIVES

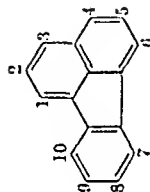
Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Conditions	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{10}H_{18}O_6$ (Cont.)					
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2',5'-dimethoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	3,4,5,8-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	50 crude	139
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(2',4'-dimethoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	3,4,6,8-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	30	18
	<i>trans</i> -3,4,5-Trimethoxy- α -(2'-amino-5'-methoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	2,3,4,7-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Dimethylformamide, H_2SO_4 , Cu	65	140
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4,5-trimethoxy- α -(3'-methoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	2,3,4,5- and 2,3,4,7-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. Na_2CO_3	—	136
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4,5-trimethoxy- α -(3',4'-dimethoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	3,4,5,6-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	6	131, 132
	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-4,5-methylenedioxy- α -(1'-naphthyl)cinnamic acid	3,4,6,7-Tetramethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. dioxane, C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu, NaH_2PO_2	95 crude	141
$C_{20}H_{12}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-5-methoxy- α -(1'-naphthyl)cinnamic acid	8,9-Methylenedioxychrysene-5-carboxylic acid	Aq. C_2H_5OH , Na_2CO_3	25	81
$C_{20}H_{14}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(5'-ethyl-2'-methoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	5-Ethyl-3,4,8-trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	35	142
$C_{20}H_{20}O_3$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(4'-ethoxy-3'-methoxy)cinnamic acid	6-Ethoxy-3,4,7-trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	35	143
$C_{20}H_{20}O_6$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(3'-ethoxy-4'-methoxyphenyl)cinnamic acid	6-Ethoxy-3,4,5-trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	13	
		7-Ethoxy-3,4,6-trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid		35	143
		5-Ethoxy-3,4,6-trimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid		9	
		Cholanthrene-12-carboxylic acid		5	144
$C_{21}H_{14}O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(3'-acenaphthenyl)cinnamic acid	1,12-Dimethylchrysene-5-carboxylic acid	Dioxane, C_2H_5OH , Cu, NaH_2PO_2	30	145
$C_{21}H_{16}O_2$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino- α -(3',4'-dimethyl-1'-naphthyl)cinnamic acid	1,2-Dimethoxychrysene-6-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	05 crude	146
$C_{21}H_{16}O_4$	<i>trans</i> -2-Amino-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(1'-naphthyl)cinnamic acid				

TABLE II
DIHYDROPHENANTHRENE DERIVATIVES

Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Conditions	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{13}H_{11}N$	1-(2'-Aminophenyl)-2-(2"-pyridyl)ethane	5,6-Dihydrobenzo[<i>f</i>]quinoline	Aq. dioxane, H_2SO_4 , Cu Nitrosoamide Triazene*	4 40 0	25 25 25
$C_{14}H_{12}$ $C_{13}H_{12}O_2$	1-(2'-Aminophenyl)-2-phenylethane α -Phenyl- β -(2-aminophenyl)propionic acid	9,10-Dihydrophenanthrene 9,10-Dihydrophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	C_2H_5OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	— —	42 4, 86
$C_{16}H_{12}O_4$	α -(2-Aminophenyl)- β -(3',4'-methylenedioxy-phenyl)propionic acid	9,10-Dihydrophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid 2,3(or 3,4)-Methylenedioxy-9,10-dihydrophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	20 20	86 86
$C_{16}H_{14}O_3$	α -(2-Aminophenyl)- β -(4'-methoxyphenyl)propionic acid	3-Methoxy-9,10-dihydrophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	15	86
$C_{19}H_{19}NO_4$	α -(2-Amino-5-methoxyphenyl)- β -(3',4',5'-trimethoxyphenyl)propionitrile	10-Methyl-9,10-dihydrophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid 2,3,4,7-Tetramethoxy-9-cyano-9,10-dihydrophenanthrene	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu Aq. dioxane, HCl, Cu Na_2CO_3 or CH_3CO_2Na	Small 45 None	156 87

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 460-462.

* The triazene was prepared by coupling the diazonium salt with dimethylamine and was then heated in benzene solution while hydrogen chloride was bubbled in.

TABLE III
FLUORANTHENE DERIVATIVES

Numbering System for Fluoranthene

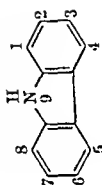
Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Conditions	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{16}H_{10}$	1-(2'-Aminophenyl)naphthalene	Fluoranthene	$Aq. CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4, Cu$	45	45
$C_{17}H_{12}$	1-(2'-Amino-6'-methylphenyl)naphthalene	7-Methylfluoranthene	$Aq. H_2SO_4, Cu$	—	85, 157
	1-(2'-Amino-3'-methylphenyl)naphthalene	7-Methylfluoranthene	$Aq. CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4$	45*	157
	1-(2'-Amino-4'-methylphenyl)naphthalene	8-Methylfluoranthene	$Aq. H_2SO_4, Cu$	—	88
$C_{17}H_{12}O$	1-(2'-Aminophenyl)-2-methoxynaphthalene	1-Methoxyfluoranthene	$Aq. H_2SO_4, Cu$	—	153
	1-(2'-Aminophenyl)-4-methoxynaphthalene	3-Methoxyfluoranthene	$Aq. H_2SO_4, Cu$	48	158
	1-(2'-Amino-4'-methoxynaphthalene	7-Methoxyfluoranthene	$Aq. CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4, Cu$	—	158
$C_{18}H_{14}$	1-(2'-Amino-4'-methoxyphenyl)naphthalene	1,3-Dimethylfluoranthene	$Aq. HCl, Cu$	52	159
$C_{19}H_{14}O_2$	1-(2'-Amino-4'-carboxyphenyl)naphthalene	Ethyl fluoranthene-8-carboxylate	$Aq. H_2SO_4, Cu$	Poor	45
$C_{19}H_{16}$	1-(2'-Amino-4'-carboxyphenyl)naphthalene	1,2,3-Trimethylfluoranthene	$Aq. H_2SO_4, Cu$	15	88
$C_{22}H_{12}$	3-(2'-Aminophenyl)-2,3,4-trimethylnaphthalene	Indenol[1,2,3-cd]fluoranthene	$Aq. CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4, Cu$	38	161
$C_{23}H_{14}$	4-(2'-Aminophenyl)-1-methylfluoranthene	5-Methylindenol[1,2,3-cd]fluoranthene	$Aq. CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4, Cu$	—	162
	4-(2'-Aminophenyl)-2-methylfluoranthene	5-Methylindenol[1,2,3-cd]fluoranthene	$Aq. CH_3CO_2H, H_2SO_4, Cu$	—	162

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 400-402.

* The use of copper did not increase the yield.

TABLE IV
CARBAZOLE DERIVATIVES PREPARED VIA TRIAZOLES

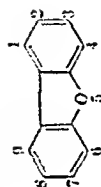
Numbering System for Carbazole



Formula	Product	Name	References	Formula	Product	Name	References
$C_{11}H_8N_2$	5-Pyridyl[4,3-b]indole		103	$C_{11}H_{13}N$	1,3-Dimethylcarbazole		165
$C_{12}H_7N_2O_4$	1,3-Dinitrocarbazole		164	$C_{16}H_9N_2O_4$	8,10-Dinitro-7-benz[k]acridine		164
$C_{12}H_7ClN$	2-Chlorocarbazole		105	$C_{16}H_{11}N$	Benzol[a]carbazole		164
	3-Chlorocarbazole		105, 166		7-Benz[k]acridine		105
$C_{12}H_8N_2$	2-Aminocarbazole		103	$C_{17}H_{13}N$	10-Methylbenzof[e]carbazole		169
	3-Aminocarbazole		105	$C_{19}H_{13}NO$	3-Benzoylcarbazole		168
	1-Nitrocarbazole		103	$C_{20}H_{10}BrNO_2$	7-Bromo-12-naphtho[2,3-a]carbazole-5,13-dione		
$C_{13}H_8N_2O_2$	3-Nitrocarbazole		103	$C_{20}H_{11}NO_3$	12-Naphtho[2,3-a]carbazole-5,13-dione		
	Carbazole		99, 167				168
$C_{13}H_9N$	3-Cyanocarbazole		103	$C_{21}H_{16}N_2$	1,1'-Bicarbazole		170
$C_{13}H_8N_2$	1-Methylcarbazole		105		3,9'-Bicarbazole		171
$C_{13}H_{11}N$	3-Methylcarbazole		105		3,3'-Bicarbazole		172
$C_{13}H_{12}N_2$	3-Amino-9-methylcarbazole		103	$C_{26}H_{17}NO_2$	3,6-Dibenzoylcarbazole		173
$C_{14}H_{11}NO$	3-Acetylcarbazole		103				

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 400-402.

TABLE VI
DIBENZOFURAN DERIVATIVES AND SULFUR ANALOGS



Numbering System for Dibenzofuran

Product Formula	Starting Material	Product	Procedure	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{11}H_8Br_2O$	2-Anilino-1,5-dibromodiphenyl ether	2,7-Dibromodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
	2-Anilino-1,4-dibromodiphenyl ether	2,8-Dibromodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
$C_{14}H_8Cl_2SO_4$	2-Anilino-1'-chloro-5-nitrodiphenyl ether	2-Chloro-7-nitrodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
$C_{11}H_8Cl_2O$	2-Anilino-1,4'-dichlorodiphenyl ether	2,8-Dichlorodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
$C_{11}H_8BrO$	2-Anilino-4-bromodiphenyl ether	2-Bromodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
	2-Anilino-4'-bromodiphenyl ether	2-Nitrodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
$C_{11}H_8ClO$	2-Anilino-4-chlorodiphenyl ether	3-Bromodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
	2-Anilino-5-chlorodiphenyl ether	2-Chlorodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
	2-Anilino-4-chlorodiphenyl ether	2-Chlorodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
	2-Anilino-5-chlorodiphenyl ether	2-Chlorodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	3	177
$C_{11}H_8SO_4$	2-Anilino-5-chlorodiphenyl ether	3-Chlorodibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	176
$C_{11}H_8O$	2-Anilino-diphenyl ether	Dibenzofuran	Aq. H_2SO_4	30	178
			Aq. H_2SO_4	45	30
			Aq. NaOH + CuOH	0	30
			Aq. NaOH	0	30

TABLE VII
FLUORENE DERIVATIVES

Pre-1,4 Pre-1,8	Starting Material	Product	Procedure	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{13}H_{10}$	2-Amino-1-phenylmethane	Fluorene	Aq. HCl Aq. HCl, Cu (C_2H_5O) ₂ , Cu Acetone, Cu Aq. H ₂ SO ₄ Nitrosamide, C_6H_6 Aq. H ₂ SO ₄	13 0 0 0 — —	47 47 47 47 1 47 183
$C_{13}H_{13}NO$	10a-(1'-dimethylamino)phenyl)-2-amino-3-nitrophenylmethane	3,4'-Bis-(dimethylamino)-7-nitro-9-phenylfluorene			
$C_{13}H_{14}N_2$	10a-(1'-dimethylamino)phenyl)-2-amino-3-nitrophenylmethane	3,4'-Bis-(dimethylamino)-9-phenylfluorene	Aq. H ₂ SO ₄	16	183
$C_{13}H_{14}N_2$	10a-(1'-dimethylamino)phenyl)-2-amino-3-methyl-9-phenylfluorene	3,4'-Bis-(dimethylamino)-7-methyl-9-phenylfluorene	Aq. H ₂ SO ₄	22	183
$C_{13}H_{14}N_2$	10a-(1'-dimethylamino)phenyl)-2-amino-3,7,7'-Tri-(dimethylamino)-9-phenylfluorene	3,7,7'-Tri-(dimethylamino)-9-phenylfluorene	70% H ₂ SO ₄	30	184
$C_{13}H_{14}N_2$	10a-(1'-dimethylamino)phenyl)-2-amino-3,7,7'-Tri-(dimethylamino)-11-phenylbenzo[a]-fluorene	8,1'-Bis-(dimethylamino)-11-phenylbenzo[a]-fluorene	Aq. H ₂ SO ₄	—	183

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 460-462.

TABLE VIII
FLUORENONE DERIVATIVES

Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Procedure	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{13}H_6N_2O_5$	2-Amino-3,5-dinitrobenzophenone	2,4-Dinitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	78 erude	185
$C_{13}H_7BrO$	2-Amino-6-bromobenzophenone	1-Bromofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	25	186
$C_{13}H_7NO_3$	2-Amino-6-nitrobenzophenone	1-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	7	100
	2-Amino-2'-nitrobenzophenone	1-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	9	47
			Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	7	47
			Acetone, Cu	0	47
	2-Amino-5-nitrobenzophenone	2-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	55-60	100, 187
			Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	45	
	2-Amino-4-nitrobenzophenone	3-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. CH_3CO_2Na , Cu	95 crude	100
	2-Amino-3-nitrobenzophenone	4-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	48	100
	2-Amino-3'-nitrobenzophenone	2-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	20*	31
$C_{13}H_9O$	2-Aminobenzophenone	4-Nitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	15*	
		Fluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	65*	31
			Aq. H_2SO_4 , $CuSO_4$	60*	31
			Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	71*	31
			pH 9, 12	25*	31
			Acetone, Cu	0	47
			Aq. HCl , H_3PO_2 , Cu	0	47
			NH_4OH + Cu	10	30
			$NaOH$	20	31, 47
$C_{14}H_8N_2O_5$	2-Amino-6-methyl-3,5-dinitrobenzophenone	1-Methyl-2,4-dinitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	80	95
$C_{14}H_8O_3$	2-Amino-4-methyl-3,5-dinitrobenzophenone	3-Methyl-2,4-dinitrofluorenone	Aq. H_2SO_4	65	188
	2-Amino-2'-carboxybenzophenone	Fluorene-1-carboxylic acid	Aq. H_2SO_4	50	188
		Fluorene	Aq. H_2SO_4	10	61

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 460-462.

* These yields are based on the isolated diazonium fluoborate; the other yields in the table are based on the amine.

TABLE VIII—Continued

FLUORENONE DERIVATIVES

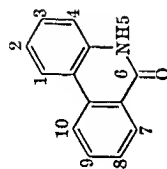
Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Procedure	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{11}H_9NO_2$	2-Anilino-6-methyl-3-nitrobenzophenone 2-Anilino-6-methyl-5-nitrobenzophenone 2-Anilino-4'-methyl-5-nitrobenzophenone 2-Anilino-4'-methylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-2'-methylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-3'-methylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-4'-methylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-4'-methoxybenzophenone 2-Anilino-4'-dimethyl-3-nitrobenzophenone 2-Anilino-4'-dimethyl-5-nitrobenzophenone 2-Anilino-2'-dimethylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-2'-dimethylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-5,6'-dimethylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-4,4'-dimethylbenzophenone 2-Anilino-4,5-dimethoxybenzophenone 2-Anilino-3',4'-dimethoxybenzophenone 1-Benzyl-2-naphthylamine 1-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)naphthalene 3-Benzyl-2-naphthylamine 2-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)naphthalene 1-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-2-methylnaphthalene 1-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-methoxynaphthalene 3-(2'-Naphthyl)-2-naphthylamine 1-Anilino-2-(2',5'-dimethylbenzoyl)naphthalene	1-Methyl-4-nitrofluorenone 3-Methyl-2-nitrofluorenone 3-Methyl-7-nitrofluorenone 1-Methylfluorenone 2-Methylfluorenone 3-Methylfluorenone 3-Methoxyfluorenone 1,6-Dimethyl-4-nitrofluorenone 3,6-Dimethyl-2-nitrofluorenone 1,3-Dimethylfluorenone 1,4-Dimethylfluorenone 1,7-Dimethylfluorenone 3,6-Dimethylfluorenone 2,3-Dimethoxyfluorenone 11-Chrysofluorenone 11-Chrysofluorenone 11-Benzof(b)fluoren-11-one 7-Benzof(c)fluoren-7-one 6-Methyl-7-benzof(c)anthracene-7-one 5-Methoxy-11-chrysofluorenone 12-Dibenzof(b)fluoren-12-one 9,12-Dimethyl-8-naphthol(2,3-c)fluoren-5,8,13-trione	Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. HCl Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 Aq. HCl Aq. H_2SO_4 CH_3CO_2H , H_2SO_4 , Cu Aq. HCl Aq. HCl Aq. HCl Aq. HCl Aq. HCl Aq. CH_3CO_2H , HCl Aq. HCl Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	55 60 75 crude 50 low 60* 80 crude 55 70 54 102 70 193 60 crude 33 25 13 Traces 10 55 20 25	188 189 180 75, 192 75 31, 187, 189 92, 190 188 191 66 54 102 191 193

Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 460-462.

* These yields are based on the isolated diazonium fluoroborate; the other yields in the table are based on the amine.

PHENANTHRIDONES

Numbering System for Phenanthridone



Product Formula	Starting Aniline	Product	Procedure	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{14}H_9N_3O_3$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-3,5-dinitro-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-1,3-dinitro-6(5)-phenanthridone	Acetone, Cu*	35	65
$C_{14}H_{10}BrNO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-bromo-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-2-bromo-6(5)-phenanthridone	Acetone, Cu*	33	196
$C_{14}H_{10}ClNO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-chloro-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-2-chloro-6(5)-phenanthridone	Acetone, Cu*	44	196
$C_{14}H_{11}N_2O_3$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-nitro-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-2-nitro-6(5)-phenanthridone	Acetone, Cu*	28	65
$C_{14}H_{11}NO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-6(5)-phenanthridone	Aq. H_2SO_4	50	48
			Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	50	48
			Aq. HCl	29	48, 197
			Aq. NaOH	11	48
			Dioxane, H_2SO_4 , H_3PO_2 , Cu	40	48
			Acetone, H_2SO_4 , Cu	53	48
			Acetone, HBF_4 , Cu*	50	48
			ArN_2BF_4 , pet. ether	17	48
			Aq. H_2SO_4	50	64
$C_{13}H_{11}NO_3$	N-(2'-Amino-4',5'-methylenedioxybenzoyl)-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-8,9-methylenedioxy-6(5)-phenanthridone	—	—	225
$C_{13}H_{12}BrNO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-bromo-N-ethylaniline	3-Bromo-5-ethyl-6(5)-phenanthridone	Acetone, Cu*	50	196
$C_{13}H_{12}NO_3$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-N-methyl-4-toluidine	2,5-Dimethyl-6(5)-phenanthridone	Aq. H_2SO_4 or acetone, Cu*	35	196
$C_{16}H_{12}NO_3$	N-(2'-Amino-4'-carbomethoxybenzoyl)-N-methylaniline	5-Methyl-9-carbomethoxy-6(5)-phenanthridone	—	—	196
$C_{14}H_{13}NO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-2,4-N-trimethylaniline	2,4,5-Trimethyl-6(5)-phenanthridone	Aq. HCl, Cu	10	66
$C_{13}H_{11}NO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-methyl-N-ethylaniline	5-Ethyl-3-methyl-6(5)-phenanthridone	—	—	225
$C_{20}H_{14}NO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)carbazole	13-Indolo[3,2,1-de]phenanthridin-13-one	Aq. H_2SO_4	—	173
$C_{23}H_{19}NO$	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-N-benzylaniline	5-Benzyl-6(5)-phenanthridone	Aq. acid	54†	198
	N-(2'-Aminobenzoyl)-4-ethoxy-N-benzylaniline	5-Benzyl-2-ethoxy-6(5)-phenanthridone	—	—	198

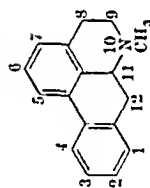
Note: References 104-225 are listed on pp. 460-462.

* The crystalline diazonium salt was used.

† The yield was the same in the presence or absence of copper.

TABLE X

APORPHINE DERIVATIVES



The *Chemical Abstracts* name is 6-methyl-5,6,6a,7-tetrahydro-4-dibenzo[de]quinoline, and the numbering starts at porphine C5.

Numbering System for Aporphine

Product Formula	Starting Amine	Product	Procedure	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{17}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Amino-5'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-methylenedioxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	5,6-Methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	22	50
$C_{17}H_{15}N$	1-(2'-Amino-5'-methoxybenzyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	Aporphine	Aq. HCl , Cu	20	199
$C_{17}H_{17}NO_2$	1-(2'-Amino-5'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-methylenedioxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	5,6-Methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	24	50, 51
$C_{19}H_{15}NO_3$	1-(2'-Amino-4',5'-methylenedioxybenzyl)-6,7-methylenedioxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,3,5,6-Bis-methylenedioxy-12-ketoporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	30	200
$C_{19}H_{15}NO_3$	1-(2'-Amino-5'-methoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6,7-methylenedioxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2-Methoxy-5,6-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	20	201, 202
$C_{19}H_{15}NO_3$	1-(2'-Amino-3'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-methylenedioxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3-Methoxy-5,6-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	24	201, 203
$C_{19}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Amino-3'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-methylenedioxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	4-Methoxy-5,6-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	15	204
$C_{19}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Amino-3',4'-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3,4-Dimethoxyaporphine	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	40	205, 21
$C_{20}H_{17}NO_4$	1-(2'-Amino-4',5'-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6,7-dimethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	5,6-Dimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4 Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	15 10 15	206 206 207
	1-(2'-Amino-4',5'-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6,7-methylenedioxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,3-Dimethoxy-5,6-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	25	208, 209
	1-(2'-Amino-4',5'-methylenedioxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3,4-Dimethoxy-5,6-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	25	210

$C_{10}H_{13}NO_3$	1-(2'-Anilino-3',4'-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-methyl-6-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3,4,6-Trimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	211
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_3$	1-(2'-Anilino-1'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3,5,6-Trimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	212
$C_{11}H_{13}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-4',5'-methylenedioxybenzyl)-7-ethoxy-6-methoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	5-Ethoxy-6-methoxy-2,3-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	213
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-1',5'-methylenedioxybenzyl)-6-ethoxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	6-Ethoxy-5-methoxy-2,3-methylenedioxyaporphine	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	214
$C_{11}H_{13}NO_3$	1-(2'-Anilino-4',5'-dimethoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,3,5,6-Tetramethoxy-12-ketoporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4 , Cu	200
$C_{11}H_{13}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-1',5'-dimethoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,3,5,6-Tetramethoxyaporphine (glaucaene)	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	14, 55
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-1',5'-dimethoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,3,6,7-Tetramethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	215
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-1',5'-dimethoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3,4,5,6-Tetramethoxyaporphine	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	210
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-3',4'-dimethoxybenzyl)-5,6-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3,1,6,7-Tetramethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	217
$C_{13}H_{17}N_2O_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-4'-acetamino-3'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3-Acetamino-4,5,6-trimethoxyaporphine	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	218
$C_{11}H_{13}NO_3$	1-(2'-Anilino-1'-ethoxybenzyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3-Ethoxy-5,6-dimethoxy-10-ethylnoraporphine	Cu	219
$C_{11}H_{13}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-1'-ethoxy-5'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3-Ethoxy-2,5,6-trimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	220
$C_{11}H_{13}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-1'-ethoxy-5'-methoxybenzyl)-7-ethoxy-6-methoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	5-Ethoxy-2,3,6-trimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	220
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-5'-ethoxy-4'-methoxybenzyl)-7-ethoxy-6-methoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,5-Diethoxy-3,6-dimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	221
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-2'-ethoxy-4'-methoxybenzyl)-6-ethoxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2,6-Diethoxy-3,5-dimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	221
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-5'-ethoxy-4'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	2-Ethoxy-3,5,6-trimethoxy-10-ethylnoraporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	222
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-4'-ethoxy-5'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3-Ethoxy-2,5,6-trimethoxy-10-ethylnoraporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	222
$C_{10}H_{11}NO_3$	1-(2'-Anilino-1',4'-dimethoxybenzyl)-6-benzoyloxy-3,4-dihydroisoquinoline	6-Benzoyloxy-3,4-dimethoxy-10,11-dihydroisoquinoline	Aq. H_2SO_4 , Cu	223
$C_{12}H_{15}NO_4$	1-(2'-Anilino-4'-benzoyloxy-5'-methoxybenzyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2-methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline	3-Benzoyloxy-2,5,6-trimethoxyaporphine	Aq. CH_3OH , H_2SO_4	224

NOTE: 104-225 are listed on pp. 450-452.

TABLE XI
SULTONES AND SULTAMS

Molecular Formula of Sultone	Corresponding Sulfonic Acid	Yield, %	Reference
$C_{12}H_6Cl_2O_3S$	4,5'-Dichloro-2'-hydroxybiphenyl-2-sulfonic acid	16*	49
$C_{12}H_7ClO_3S$	5'-Chloro-2'-hydroxybiphenyl-2-sulfonic acid	15	49
$C_{12}H_7ClO_3S$	5-Chloro-2'-hydroxybiphenyl-2-sulfonic acid	80	49
$C_{12}H_8O_3S$	2'-Hydroxybiphenyl-2-sulfonic acid	52	49
$C_{13}H_9ClO_3S$	5-Chloro-2'-hydroxy-5'-methylbiphenyl-2-sulfonic acid	46	49
$C_{16}H_{11}O_3S$	1-(2'-Sulfohenyl)-2-naphthol	50	49
$C_{16}H_{11}O_3S$	2-(2'-Sulfohenyl)-1-naphthol	32	49
$C_{17}H_{13}O_3S$	5'-tert-Amyl-2'-hydroxybiphenyl-2-sulfonic acid	23	49

Molecular Formula of Sultam

Sultams

$C_{12}H_9NO_2S$	Sultam of 2'-amino-2-biphenylsulfonic acid	76†	52
$C_{13}H_{11}NO_2S$	Sultam of 2'-methylamino-2-biphenylsulfonic acid	80†	52
$C_{16}H_{11}NO_2S$	Sultam of 2-(2'-amino-1-naphthyl)-benzenesulfonic acid	90‡	52

* The sultones were all prepared by heating the diazonium salt in the presence of copper powder

† The sultam was prepared by heating the aqueous solution of the diazonium salt.

‡ The sultam was prepared by pyrolysis of the triazene in the presence of sodium hydroxide and copper powder.

References to Tables I-XI

- ¹⁰⁴ Taylor and Hobson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1936, 181.
- ¹⁰⁵ Ruggli and Dinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 24, 173 (1941).
- ¹⁰⁶ Barber and Stiekings, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1945, 167.
- ¹⁰⁷ May and Mosettig, *J. Org. Chem.*, 11, 627, 631 (1946).
- ¹⁰⁸ Schofield and Swain, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 2393.
- ¹⁰⁹ Nylén, *Ber.*, 53, 158 (1920).
- ¹¹⁰ May and Mosettig, *J. Org. Chem.*, 11, 441 (1946).
- ¹¹¹ Hey and Osbond, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 3172.
- ¹¹² Mosettig and Burger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 52, 2988 (1930).
- ¹¹³ Konovalova, Yunusov, and Orekhov, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [5] 6, 1479 (1939); *J. Gen. Chem., U.S.S.R.*, 9, 1507 (1939) [*C. A.*, 34, 2852 (1940)].
- ¹¹⁴ Werner and Scherrer, *Ann.*, 322, 135 (1902).
- ¹¹⁵ May, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 69, 717 (1947).
- ¹¹⁶ Akin, Stamatoff, and Bogert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 59, 1268 (1937).
- ¹¹⁷ Mayer and English, *Ann.*, 417, 60 (1918).
- ¹¹⁸ Hill, Short, and Stromberg, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1937, 937.
- ¹¹⁹ Ilginbottom, Hill, and Short, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1937, 263.
- ¹²⁰ Hill, Short, Stromberg, and Wiles, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1937, 510.
- ¹²¹ Holmes, Lee, and Mooradian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 69, 1998 (1947).
- ¹²² Knorr and Hörlein, *Ber.*, 40, 2040 (1907).
- ¹²³ Rapson and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1935, 1541.
- ¹²⁴ Akin and Bogert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 59, 1564 (1937).
- ¹²⁵ Shirai, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, 63, 517 (1943) [*C. A.*, 45, 3401 (1951)].
- ¹²⁶ Knorr and Hörlein, *Ber.*, 42, 3497 (1909).
- ¹²⁷ Schlittler and Müller, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 31, 1119 (1948).
- ¹²⁸ Cassaday and Bogert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 61, 3055 (1939).
- ¹²⁹ Mayer and Oppenheimer, *Ber.*, 51, 510 (1918).
- ¹³⁰ Weitzenböck and Lieb, *Monatsh.*, 33, 549 (1912).

- ¹³¹ Kondo and Ochiai, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, No. 539, 17 (1927) [*C. A.*, 22, 4531 (1928)]; *Ann.*, 470, 224 (1929).
- ¹³² Goto and Sudzuki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Japan*, 4, 163 (1929) [*C. A.*, 24, 122 (1930)].
- ^{133a} Hewett and Martin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1940, 1396.
- ^{133b} Wolf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 75, 2673 (1953).
- ¹³⁴ Cassaday and Bogort, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 61, 2461 (1939).
- ¹³⁵ Sharp, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1936, 1234.
- ¹³⁶ Buchanan, Cook, and Loudon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1944, 325.
- ¹³⁷ Rapoport, Williams, and Cisnoy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 73, 1414 (1951).
- ¹³⁸ Barton, Cook, and Loudon, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1945, 176.
- ¹³⁹ Gulland and Virden, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1928, 1478.
- ¹⁴⁰ Rapoport, Allen, and Cisney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 77, 670 (1955).
- ¹⁴¹ Briggs and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1941, 500.
- ¹⁴² Gulland and Virden, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1928, 921.
- ¹⁴³ Späth and Tharrer, *Ber.*, 66, 583 (1933).
- ¹⁴⁴ Fieser and Kilmer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 62, 1354 (1940).
- ¹⁴⁵ Hewett, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1938, 1286; 1940, 293.
- ¹⁴⁶ Rajagopalan, *Proc. Indian Acad. Sci.*, 13A, 566 (1941) [*C. A.*, 35, 7965 (1941)].
- ¹⁴⁷ Barger and Silberschmidt, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1928, 2919.
- ¹⁴⁸ Cook and Stephenson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 842.
- ¹⁴⁹ von Braun and Zobel, *Ber.*, 56, 2142 (1923).
- ¹⁵⁰ Cook, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1933, 1592.
- ¹⁵¹ Weitzenböck and Klinger, *Monatsh.*, 39, 315 (1918).
- ¹⁵² Waldmann, Spiegel, and Kunz, *J. prakt. Chem.*, [2] 135, 1 (1932).
- ¹⁵³ Waldmann and Pitschak, *Ann.*, 527, 183 (1937).
- ¹⁵⁴ Hornig, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 74, 4572 (1952).
- ¹⁵⁵ Cassaday and Bogert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 61, 3058 (1939).
- ¹⁵⁶ Windaus, Jensen, and Schramme, *Ber.*, 57, 1875 (1924).
- ¹⁵⁷ Tucker and Whalley, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 3187.
- ¹⁵⁸ Stubbs and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1954, 227.
- ¹⁵⁹ Hawkins and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1950, 3286.
- ¹⁶⁰ Tucker and Whalley, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1949, 632.
- ¹⁶¹ Stubbs and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1951, 2936.
- ¹⁶² Beaton and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 3870.
- ¹⁶³ Bremer, *Ann.*, 514, 279 (1934).
- ¹⁶⁴ Waldmann and Back, *Ann.*, 545, 52 (1940).
- ¹⁶⁵ Ullmann, Kogan, and Deletra, *Ann.*, 332, 82 (1904).
- ¹⁶⁶ Ullmann, Kogan, and Deletra, *Ann.*, 332, 82 (1904).
- ¹⁶⁷ Storrie and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1931, 2255.
- ¹⁶⁸ Campbell and MacLean, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1942, 504.
- ¹⁶⁹ Ullmann and Illgen, *Ber.*, 47, 380 (1914).
- ¹⁷⁰ Hunter and Darling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 53, 4183 (1931).
- ¹⁷¹ Ullmann and Illgen, *Ber.*, 47, 380 (1914).
- ¹⁷² Hunter and Darling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1933, 1520.
- ¹⁷³ Macrae and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1933, 1523.
- ¹⁷⁴ Nelms and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1926, 3033.
- ¹⁷⁵ Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1926, 3033.
- ¹⁷⁶ Plant and Tomlinson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1932, 2188.
- ¹⁷⁷ Burton and Gibson, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 125, 2501 (1924).
- ¹⁷⁸ Preston and Tucker, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1943, 659.
- ¹⁷⁹ McCombie, MacMillan, and Scarborough, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1931, 529.
- ¹⁸⁰ Cullinane, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1930, 2267.
- ¹⁸¹ Graebe and Ullmann, *Ber.*, 29, 1876 (1896).
- ¹⁸² Cullinane, Davies, and Davies, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1936, 1435.
- ¹⁸³ Davies, James, Middleton, Porter, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1955, 1565.
- ¹⁸⁴ Block, Jr., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 72, 5641 (1950).
- ¹⁸⁵ Neumoyer and Amstutz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 66, 1680 (1944).
- ¹⁸⁶ Guyot and Granderye, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [3] 33, 198 (1905).
- ¹⁸⁷ Guyot and Granderye, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [3] 25, 750 (1901).
- ¹⁸⁸ Haller and Guyot, *Bull. soc. chim. France*, [3] 25, 750 (1901).

- 185 Ullmann and Broido, *Ber.*, **39**, 356 (1906).
186 Huntress, Pfister, and Pfister, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **64**, 2845 (1942).
187 Ullmann and Mallett, *Ber.*, **31**, 1694 (1898).
188 Chardonnens and Lienert, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **32**, 2340 (1949).
189 Chardonnens and Perriard, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **28**, 593 (1945).
190 Lifschitz, *Rec. trav. chim.*, **54**, 397 (1935).
191 Chardonnens and Würmli, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **29**, 922 (1946).
192 Mulholland and Ward, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1954**, 4676.
193 Reichert, *Arch. Pharm.*, **270**, 551 (1932) [*C. A.*, **27**, 717 (1933)].
194 Graebe, *Ber.*, **29**, 826 (1896).
195 Schaarschmidt and Herzenberg, *Ber.*, **53**, 1807 (1920).
196 Heacock and Hey, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1952**, 4059.
197 Pictet and Gosnet, *Arch. sci. phys. nat. Genève*, [4] **3**, 37 (1897) (*Chem. Zentr.*, 1897, I, 413).
198 Mitsuhashi, *J. Pharm. Soc. Japan*, **63**, 177 (1943) [*C. A.*, **45**, 628 (1951)].
199 Gadamer, Oberlin, and Schoeler, *Arch. Pharm.*, **263**, 81 (1925).
200 Schlittler and Lindenmann, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **32**, 1880 (1949).
201 Faltis, Wagner, Adler, *Ber.*, **77**, 686 (1944).
202 Marion, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **66**, 1125 (1944).
203 Schlittler, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **15**, 394 (1932).
204 Barger and Schlittler, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **15**, 381 (1932).
205 Späth and Hromatka, *Ber.*, **62**, 325 (1929).
206 Gulland and Haworth, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 581.
207 Haworth, Perkin, Jr., and Rankin, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **127**, 2018 (1925); **1926**, 29.
208 Gulland and Haworth, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 1132.
209 Späth and Hromatka, *Ber.*, **61**, 1334 (1928).
210 Kitasato and Shishido, *Ann.*, **527**, 176 (1937).
211 Gulland and Haworth, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 2083.
212 Goto, Ianba, and Nozaki, *Ann.*, **530**, 142 (1937).
213 Shishido, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Japan*, **12**, 150 (1937) [*C. A.*, **31**, 5802 (1937)].
214 Shishido, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Japan*, **12**, 419 (1937) [*C. A.*, **32**, 944 (1938)].
215 Callow, Gulland, and Haworth, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1929**, 658.
216 Späth and Hromatka, *Ber.*, **61**, 1692 (1928).
217 Gulland and Haworth, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1928**, 1834.
218 Robinson and Shinoda, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1926**, 1987.
219 Goto and Shishido, *Ann.*, **539**, 262 (1939).
220 Manske, Charlesworth, and Ashford, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **73**, 3751 (1951).
221 Schlittler, *Ber.*, **66**, 988 (1933).
222 Barger, Eisenbrand, Eisenbrand, and Schlittler, *Ber.*, **66**, 450 (1933).
223 Kondo and Ishiwata, *Ber.*, **64**, 1533 (1931).
224 Douglas and Gulland, *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1931**, 2893.
225 Govindachari and Arumugam, *J. Sci. Ind. Research India*, **14B**, 250 (1955) [*C. A.*, **50**, 342 (1956)].

INDEX

Numbers in bold-face type refer to experimental procedures.

- Acetic acid, preparation of substituted derivatives, 149
- Acetoacetic ester condensation, *Vol. I*; *Vol. VIII*, 67
- Acetonitrile, preparation of substituted derivatives, 149
- 2-Acetoxyindan-1,3-dione, 94
- Acetylenes, *Vol. V*
halogenation with acyl hypohalites, 341, 354
- Acylation of ketones to β -diketones or β -keto aldehydes, *Vol. VIII*
- Acyl halides, preparation by Hunsdiecker reaction, 345
- Acyl hypohalites, addition to olefins, *see* Prévost reaction
- cleavage to organic halides, *see* Hunsdiecker reaction
- use as halogenating agents, 352-355, 361-362
- Acyloins, *Vol. IV*
- Addition of alcohols to nitriles, 128
- Aldehydes, preparation of, by Gattermann-Koch reaction, *Vol. V*
by Gattermann synthesis, 37-72
by Hunsdiecker reaction, 345
by Reimer-Tiemann reaction, 53
by Rosenmund reduction, *Vol. IV*
by Sommelet reaction, *Vol. VIII*
from carboxylic acids, *Vol. VIII*
using N-methylformanilide, 52-53
reaction with diazoalkanes, *Vol. VIII*
- Alkylation, of aromatic compounds by Friedel-Crafts method, *Vol. III*
of esters, 107-331
of nitriles, 107-331
- Alkylidene derivatives of esters and nitriles, addition of organomagnesium halides, 146, 318-320
rearrangement, 131, 133
reduction, 145, 314-317
- Alkylidene malonic esters, double-bond migration on alkylation, 112-115
- Alkyl migration in Gattermann aldehyde synthesis, 49
- Amides, formation during alkylation of nitriles, 127
formation from ketones and sodium amide, 1-36
- Amination of heterocyclic bases by alkali amides, *Vol. I*
- α -Amino acids, synthesis from malonic esters, 151-153
- β -Amino acids, cyclization of derivatives to β -lactams, 391-394
- 2-Aminobenzophenones, preparation, 433-434
- trans*-2-Amino-6-bromo-3,4-dimethoxy- α -phenyleinnamic acid, 436
- 2-Amino-4-bromo-6-methyldiphenyl ether, 439
- 2-Aminodiphenylamines, preparation, 433, 440
- 2-Aminodiphenylethanes, preparation, 432
- 2-Aminodiphenyl ethers, preparation, 433, 439
- trans*-2-Amino-3-methyl- α -(4'-methylphenyl)cinnaemic acid, 437
- p*-Anisaldehyde, 56
- Aporphines, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-436, 458-459
- Arndt-Eistert reaction, *Vol. I*
- Arsinic and arsonic acids, synthesis by the Bart, Beecham, and Rosenmund reactions, *Vol. II*
- Arylmalonic esters, preparation, 143, 146-147
- Azetidinone, 389
- Azlactones, *Vol. III*

- Baeyer-Villiger oxidation of aldehydes and ketones, 73-106
 Barbituric acids, preparation, 156
 Benzoin, *Vol. IV*
 1-Benzoyl-2-aminonaphthalene, 439
 Benzyl phenylacetate, 360
 1-Benzyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone, 394
 Biaryls, *Vol. II*
 Bischler-Napieralski reaction, *Vol. VI*
 2-Bromobicyclo[3.2.1]octane, 343
 2-Bromocyclohexyl benzoate, 361
 1-Bromo-3,4-dimethoxyphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid, 436
 α -Bromo esters, reaction with zinc and imines to form β -lactams, 394-395
 2-Bromo-5-methyldibenzofuran, 439
 Bucherer reaction, *Vol. I*
 α -*n*-Butyl- α -methylcaprylic acid, 16

 Cannizzaro reaction, *Vol. II*
 Carbazoles, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-440, 450-451
 Carbethoxylation, 147-148
 Carbinamines, tertiary, 4, 13-14
 Carbon-carbon alkylation with amines and ammonium salts, *Vol. VII*
 Carboxamides, tertiary, 4-11
 Carboxylic acids, tertiary, 4, 12-13
 Catalytic hydrogenation of esters to alcohols, *Vol. VIII*
 Catechol, 92
trans-4-Chloro- α -(2'-aminophenyl)cinnamic acid, 437
 Chloromethylation of aromatic compounds, *Vol. I*
 3-Chlorophenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid, 437
 11-Chrysofluorenone, 438
 Cinnamic acids, *o*-amino-, preparation, 430, 432, 436-438
 Cinnolines, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 424-425
 Claisen rearrangement, *Vol. II*
 Cleavage of non-enolizable ketones with sodium amide, 1-36
 Clemmensen reduction, *Vol. I*
 Curtius reaction, *Vol. III*
 Cyanoacetic esters, alkylation of, 134, 262-282
 3-Cyanocarbazole, 440
 Cyanoethylation, *Vol. V*
 Cyanogen bromide, cleavage of tertiary amines, *Vol. VII*
 use in Gattermann aldehyde synthesis, 45
 Cyclic compounds, preparation by alkylation of esters, 153-156
 Cyclic ketones, preparation by intramolecular acylation, *Vol. II*
 preparation by ring enlargement with diazomethane, *Vol. VIII*
 Cyclobutyl bromide, 358
 α -Cyclohexylphenylacetone nitrile, 162

 Dakin reaction, 85, 103-104
 Darzens glycidic ester condensation, *Vol. V*
 Debenzoylation, *Vol. VII*
 Decarbalkoxylation during alkylation, 125, 127
 Decarbonylation of ethoxalyl derivatives, 147
 Decarboxylation of malonic acids, 149
 Dehalogenation, 125, 142
 Dehydrohalogenation during alkylation, 124
 Diarylacetic esters, preparation, 148
 Diarylacetone nitriles, preparation, 148
 Diazoalkanes, reaction with carbonyl compounds, *Vol. VIII*
 Diazonium group, coupling, 421
 replacement by halogen, 421
 replacement by hydrogen, 420
 replacement by hydroxyl, 420
 Diazonium salts, preparation, 434
 ring closure reactions, 409-462
 Dibenzofurans, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-440, 452-453
 1,4-Dibromobutane, 357
 1,10-Dibromodecane, 357
 Diels-Alder reaction, with cyclenones, *Vol. V*
 with ethylenic and acetylenic dienophiles, *Vol. IV*
 with maleic anhydride, *Vol. IV*
 3-(β -Diethylaminoethyl)-3-phenyl-2-benzofuranone, 161
 Diethyl benzylmalonate, 158

- Diethyl *n*-butylmalonate, 158
 Diethyl carbonate, use in carbethoxylation, 148
 Diethyl 1,1-cyclobutanedicarboxylate, 160
 Diethyl cyclopropylmalonate, preparation, 148
 Diethyl ethyl(1-isopentenyl)malonate, 161
 Diethyl ethyl(isopropyl)malonate, 159
 Diethyl ethyl(phenyl)malonate, 158
 Diethyl isopropyl(formanido)malonate, 160
 Dihalogen compounds, preparation by Hunsdiecker reaction, 344, 346
 3,4-Dihydroisoquinolines, preparation by Bisehler-Napieralski reaction, Vol. VI
 2,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde, 55
 2,4-Dihydroxy-6-methylbenzaldehyde, 56
 3,4-Dihydroxyphenanthrene, 92
p-Diiodobenzene, 362
 β -Diketones, preparation by acylation of ketones, Vol. VIII
 3,3-Dimethyl-1-ethyl-4-phenyl-2-azetidinone, 393
 4,6-Dimethylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid, 437
 α,α -Dimethyl- β -phenylpropionamide, 16
 3,5-Dimethylpyrrole-2-carboxaldehyde, 57
 Diphenic acid, 93
 1,4-Diphenyl-2-azetidinone, 394, 396
 1,4-Diphenyl-3-phthalimido-2-azetidinone, 402
 Elbs reaction, Vol. I
 Elimination reactions, during alkylation, 129-130
 Epoxidation of ethylenic compounds with organic peracids, Vol. VII
 see also Baeyer-Villiger oxidation
 Epoxyketones from α,β -unsaturated ketones, 81
 Eschweiler-Clarke methylation, Vol. V, Vol. VIII
 Esters, alcohol interchange during alkylation, 117
 Esters, alkylation of, 107-331
 catalytic hydrogenation to alcohols, Vol. VIII
 formation in Baeyer-Villiger reaction, 74, 77, 80, 81
 preparation by Prévost reaction, 339
 preparation by Simonini reaction, 334, 338
 Ethoxalyl esters, decarbonylation to malonic esters, 147
 Ethyl α -bromo- β -phenylpropionate, 359
 Ethyl *n*-butyl(isopropyl)cianoacetate, 161
 Ethyl α -ethyl- α -methylvalerate, 160
 Ethyl (1-ethylpropenyl)methylcyanoacetate, 161
 1-Ethyl-6-phenyl-3,3,5,5-tetramethyl-2,4-piperidinedione, 393
 Etiocholan-3 α ,12 α ,17 β -triol, 93
 Favorski rearrangement, use in preparation of tertiary acids, 13
 Fluoranthrenes, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-436, 449
 Fluorenes, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-436, 454
 Fluorenones, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-436, 455-456
 Fluorine compounds, aliphatic, Vol. II
 aromatic, Vol. V
 Formamide, use in Gattermann aldehyde synthesis, 45, 51
 Friedel-Crafts reaction with aliphatic dibasic acid anhydrides, Vol. V
 Fries reaction, Vol. I
 Fused-ring ketones, preparation by Diels-Alder reaction, Vol. V
 Gattermann-Koch reaction, Vol. V
 Gattermann synthesis of aldehydes, 37-72
 Adams modification, 38
 Glycidic esters, preparation by Darzens reaction, Vol. V
 Gomberg-Bachmann synthesis of biaryls, Vol. II
 comparison with Pschorr synthesis, 411-417
 Haller-Bauer reaction, 1-36

- N- α -Haloacylaminomalonic esters, conversion to β -lactams, 403-404
- β -Halo esters, preparation, *see* Prévost reaction
- Halogenation of acetylenes, 341
- Halogen-metal interconversion with organolithium compounds, *Vol. VI*; *Vol. VIII*, 280
- Halogen transfer in alkylation, 126
- n*-Heptyl bromide, 356
- 1,2-Hexadecanediol, 361
- Hoesch reaction, *Vol. V*
- Hofmann reaction, *Vol. III*
- Hunsdiecker reaction, 334-338, 341-348, 356-360
- Hydrocarbons, formation by cleavage of ketones with sodium amide, 1-36
- Hydrogen cyanide, use in Gattermann aldehyde synthesis, 54
- Hydrogenolysis of benzyl groups, *Vol. VII*; *VIII*, 4, 7
- Hydrogen peroxide, use in Baeyer-Villiger reaction, 74-105
- 4-Hydroxy-2,6-dimethylbenzaldehyde, 55
- Hydroxyhydroperoxides, 84
- Hydroxylation of ethylenic compounds with organic peracids, *Vol. VII*
- 2-Hydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde, 55
- Imines, use in preparation of β -lactams, 394-399
- Indazoles, formation from diazonium salts, 424
- Indoles, oxidation to 2-aminobenzophenones, 434
- Iodine triacetyls, 339
- thermal cleavage, 350
- 2-Iodocyclohexyl acetate, 360
- β -(2-Iodo-5-methoxyphenyl)propionic acid, 361-362
- 4-Iodoveratrole, 362
- N-Isobutyryl- β -ethylamino- β -phenyl- α , α -dimethylpropionic acid, 393
- Isocyanates, reaction with diazomethane to form β -lactams, 404
- Isoquinolines, preparation by Pictet-Gams reaction, *Vol. VI*, 76
- preparation by Pomeranz-Fritsch reaction, *Vol. VI*
- Isoquinolines, preparation from Reiser's compounds, *Vol. VIII*, 222
- Jacobsen reaction, *Vol. I*
- Ketenes, use in preparation of β -lactams, 395-399
- Ketenes and ketene dimers, preparation, *Vol. III*
- β -Keto aldehydes, preparation by acylation of ketones, *Vol. VIII*
- Keto esters, preparation from ester acid chlorides and organometallic compounds, *Vol. VIII*
- Ketones, from acylmalonic esters, 150
- from Hunsdiecker reaction, 345
- oxidation by Baeyer-Villiger reaction, 76-84, 93-102
- preparation by Sommelet reaction, *Vol. VIII*
- preparation from acid chlorides and organometallic compounds, *Vol. VIII*
- reaction with diazoalkanes, *Vol. VIII*
- Kostanecki reaction, *Vol. VIII*
- β -Lactams, synthesis, 388-408
- β -Lactam-thiazolidines, 397, 400-401, 403
- oxidation to 1,1-dioxides, 405
- Lactone $C_{21}H_{32}O_4$ from isoandrosterone acetate, 94
- Lactones, formation in Baeyer-Villiger reaction, 78
- from alkylation of esters, 155
- β -Lactones, *Vol. VIII*
- Leuckart reaction, *Vol. V*
- Lithium aluminum hydride, metalation with, *Vol. VIII*, 283
- reduction with, *Vol. VI*; *Vol. VIII*, 252-257
- Lithium diethylamide, use in alkylation, 118
- Malonic acids, decarboxylation, 149
- Malonic esters, alkylation of, 132-134, 164-261
- cleavage of *t*-butyl, tetrahydropyranyl, and benzhydryl, 150

- Malononitriles, alkylation of, 135, 278-283
- Mannich reaction, *Vol. I*
- Meerwein, Ponndorf, Verley reduction, *Vol. II*
- Mesitaldehyde, 54
- Mesoxalic esters, condensation with aromatic compounds, 146, 320-321
- Metalation with organolithium compounds, *Vol. VIII*
- 4-Methoxy-3-methylbenzaldehyde, 54
- Methyl benzylcyanoacetate, 148
- Methyl dibenzylcyanoacetate, 148
- Methyl 17-bromoheptadecanoate, 357
- Methyl 5-bromovalerate, 356
- 1-Methylcyclohexylamine hydrochloride, 15
- Michael condensation, as side reaction in acylation of ketones, *Vol. VIII*, 68, 82
as side reaction in alkylation of esters, 124, 125, 130
- Mononitriles, alkylation of, 136, 294-314
- Monoperphthalic acid, 91
- Nitriles, alkylation of, 107-331
- p*-Nitrobromobenzene, 359
- 2-Nitrofluorenone, 438
- 1-(2'-Nitrophenyl)naphthalenes, preparation, 432
- Nitrosation of aliphatic carbon atoms, *Vol. VII*
- Oppenauer oxidation, *Vol. VI*
- Organolithium compounds, metalation with, *Vol. VIII*
- Organometallic compounds, reaction with acid chlorides to form ketones, *Vol. VIII*
- Oxides, as intermediates in Baeyer-Villiger reaction, 75
- Pechmann reaction, *Vol. VII*
- Penicillins, 390, 392, 400, 405
- Peracetic acid, 91
- Peracids, use in Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 74-94
- Perbenzoic acid, 90-91
- Perfluoralkyl halides, preparation by Hunsdiecker reaction, 345
- Periodic acid oxidation, *Vol. II*
- Perkin reaction and related reactions, *Vol. I*
- Persulfuric acid, preparation, 90
- Phenanthrenes, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-449
- Phenanthridones, preparation by diazonium ring closure, 409-436, 457
- 1-Phenyl-3-ethyl-4,4-dicarbethoxy-2-azetidinone, 404
- Phenyl *p*-nitrobenzoate, 93
- 3-Phenyl-1,2-propyleneglycol dibenzoate, 360
- 2-Phenyl- α -succinimido-2-thiazolidine-acetic acid β -lactam, 403
- Phosphinic and phosphonic acids, *Vol. VI*
- Pictet-Gams synthesis of isoquinolines, *Vol. VI*
- Pictet-Spengler synthesis of tetrahydroisoquinolines, *Vol. VI*
- Polyhydric phenols, preparation by Dakin reaction, 85, 103-105
- Pomeranz-Fritsch synthesis of isoquinolines, *Vol. VI*
- Potassium, use in alkylation, 118
- Potassium hydroxide, use in alkylation, 119
- Prévost reaction, 334, 339-340, 350-352, 360-361
- n*-Propyl bromide, 356
- Pschorr synthesis, 409-462
- Pyrrolidones from 1,1-dialkyl-3-butenyl phenyl ketones, 7
- Quinolines, preparation from Reissert's compounds, *Vol. VIII*, 222
- Skraup synthesis of, *Vol. VII*
- Reduction, catalytic of esters to alcohols, *Vol. VIII*
with aluminum alkoxides, *Vol. II*
with lithium aluminum hydride, *Vol. VI*, *Vol. VIII*, 252-257
- Reductive alkylation, *Vol. IV*
see also Leuckart reaction, *Vol. V*
- Reformatsky reaction, *Vol. I*
- Replacement of aromatic primary amino group by hydrogen, *Vol. II*
see also 423
- Resolution of alcohols, *Vol. II*

- Ring enlargement of cyclic ketones with diazomethane, *Vol. VIII*
- Ring closure reactions of diazonium compounds, 409-462
- Schiemann reaction, *Vol. V*
- Schmidt reaction, *Vol. III*
- Selenium dioxide oxidation, *Vol. V*
- Silver benzoates, 355
- Silver bicyclo[3.3.1]nonan-9-one-1-carboxylate, 356
- Silver laurate, 355
- Silver methyl octadecanedioate, 355
- Silver salts of carboxylic acids, preparation, 355
- reactions with halogens, 332-387
- Silver undecafluorocyclohexanecarboxylate, 356
- Simonini reaction, 334, 338, 348-349, 360
- Skraup synthesis of quinolines, *Vol. VII*
- Sodium, use in alkylation, 118
- Sodium amide, cleavage of ketones, 1-36
- reaction with miscellaneous compounds, 11-12
- use in alkylation, 118
- Sodium hydride, use in alkylation, 118
- Sodium hydroxide, use in alkylation, 119
- Sodium triphenylmethide, use in alkylation, 118
- Sommelet reaction, *Vol. VIII*
- Stobbe condensation, *Vol. VI; Vol. VIII*, 67
- Sulfonation of aromatic hydrocarbons and their halogen derivatives, *Vol. III*
- Sultams, preparation from diazonium compounds, 460
- Sultones, preparation from diazonium compounds, 460
- Tartronic esters, condensation with aromatic compounds, 146, 320-321
- $\alpha, \alpha, \alpha', \alpha'$ -Tetramethylsebacic acid, 14
- Thiazoles, *Vol. VI*
- Thiocyanogen, addition and substitution reactions, *Vol. III*
- Thiophenes, *Vol. VI*
- p*-Tolualdehyde, 57
- Trialkylacetophenones, 8
- Triarylacetonitriles, 148
- Triazoles, preparation from diazonium compounds, 426
- Trifluoroacetyl hypobromite, as brominating agent, 341, 354
- Trifluoromethyl iodide, 358
- 2, α, α -Triphenyl-2-thiazolidineacetic acid β -lactam, 399
- n*-Undecyl bromide, 357
- von Braun cyanogen bromide cleavage of tertiary amines, *Vol. VII*
- Vorländer-Meyer coupling of diazonium salts, 421
- Willgerodt reaction, *Vol. III*
- Wolff-Kishner reduction, *Vol. IV*
- Xanthenes, preparation from diazonium salts, 421
- Zinc cyanide, use in synthesis of aldehydes, 38